THE BOOK OF INSTRUCTION IN THE ELEMENTS OF THE ART OF ASTROLOGY

By

ABU'L-RAYHAN MUHAMMAD IBN AHMAD

AL-BĪRŪNĪ

Written in Ghaznah, 1029 A.D. Keproduced from Brit. Mus. MS. Or. 8349

The Translation facing the Text by
R. Ramsay Wright, M.A. Edin., LL.D. Tor. and Edin.
Emeritus Professor of Biology
University of Toronto

LONDON
LUZAC & CO.

46 Great Russell Street

تذكار زوجة محبوبة

كتاب التفهيم لإوائل صِناعة التنجيم

تصنیف ابی الریجان محد بن احمد البیرونی

المكتوب في غزنه سنتنه

قد التزم طبعه وترجعه الى اللغة الانكليزية فى اكسفرد سيوين م



PREFACE

The History of Science is cultivated so assiduously at the present time, as one may judge from the periodicals exclusively devoted to it, and from the important books which appear from time to time elucidating the history of certain subjects or of certain periods, that the translation of a book which served as a Primer of Science for two or three hundred years efter it was written requires no apology.

This applies with special significance to the Tafhim of Al-Biruni because its author is one of the most outstanding figures of the eleventh century, which has been described as the blossoming time of Mohammedan nulture, and as the climax of mediaeval thought.

So characteristic for his age is its author that Sarton in his admirable "Introduction to the History of Science" styles the first half of that century the "Time of Al-Biruni.2"

Intimacy with Sir William Osler, whose fine library was assembled in illustration of the History of Science, and with Dr. Charles Singer whose notable contributions to it are well-known formed a favourable atmosphere for increasing interest therein and led to my undertaking the task of this translation.

The suggestion that the Tafhim was both worthy of being translated, and also suitable as a representative of its period was made by Professor E.R. Browne to Dr. Singer who kindly placed a rotograph of the Persian version (PL) at my disposal. It was from this that the translation was made in the first instance.

An enswer to a question as to the Persian source of Greaves' "Astronomica quaedam" brought me into communication with Professor Wiedemann of Erlangen. 4

¹ Chron. Text, IV.

² Washington, 1927, Vol. I, 693-737. I am indebted to Professor Fulton of Yale for this reference.

⁵ Bibliotheca Osleriana, Oxford, 1929.

⁴ Ueber die Schrift "Astronomica quaedam" von Greaves; R. Ramsay Wright mit einem Zusatz von E. Wiedemann, Beitraege, LXXVII.

had translated various passages from the Tafhim in his "Beitraege zur Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften" communicated to the Physico-Medical Society of Erlangen. and was good enough to look over my translation of this work and to make a number of valuable suggestions which have been incorporated into it. He advised that the Arabic versions should be collated with the Persian. lending me with this object photographs of the two Berlin MBS. (AB.AB'.) and presenting me with copies of his He was about to numerous papers on Arabic Science. write at my request a short Introduction to this work, which he did not live to complete, in which he proposed to compare the life and works of Al-Biruni in the East with those of his contemporary Ibn al-Haithem, better known in the West as Alhazen, so distinguished for his researches in Optics. I

A warm tribute to Professor Wiedemann, by his former assistant H.J Seemann, discusses his contributions to the History of Arabic Science, and gives a list of his numerous papers, which testify to the extent and diversity of his studies therein.

I take this opportunity of associating myself with Dr. Seemann in expressing my admiration of Professor Wiedemann's achievements, and my indebtedness for the

interest he showed in my work.

Sarton thus characterizes Al-Biruni in comparison with his more widely-known contemporary Avicenna (Ibn Sinā) "Al-Biruni represents the more adventurous and critical spirit, Ibn Sinā the synthetic; Al-Biruni was more of a discoverer and in that respect comes nearer to the modern scientist's ideal; Ibn Sinā was essentially an organizer, an encyclopaedist, a philosopher."

Two other contemporaries may be mentioned; Ibn Yunus distinguished for his astronomical work in Cairo and fall ibn fish for his researches in Ophthalmology.

l One of Wiedemann's papers deals with the lives and works of Ibn 21-Haitham and al-Kindi; Jahrb. f. Photo. u. Reproductions technik, 1911. Isis, May 1950 pp. 166-186. 5 Not to be confused with the Astrolabe-maker (p. 119) who lived under the Celiph Ma'mun nearly 200 years earlier, and whose tract on the Astrolabe has recently been edited by Father L. Cheikhu S.J. Ibn Yunus refers to him with enthusiasm (Not. et Extr. VII, 54) ranking

The Taffim is a Book of Instruction on the Principles of the Art of Astrology (Kitāb al-taffim li awa'il şinā'et al-tanjim) but may be regarded as a Primer of
elevanth century science, because apart from the elements
of Geometry and Astronomy, ('ilm al-nujum, 'ilm al-felak)
and the use of the Astrologe for estronomical and astrological purposes (Astrology is differentiated as 'ilm
al-tanjim, 'ilm aḥkām al-nujūm) it has sections on Geography and Chronology both fevourite topics at this
period. It is, therefore, often classified with other
works designated as ocamographies but the author places
it at the head of his list of works on Astrology. AlBirūnī insists that no one is entitled to call himself
an Astrologer unless he possesses a thorough knowledge
of these ancillary sciences.

The author, Abu'l-Rayhan !!uhemmad 1bn Ahrad Al-Mrud (Al-Khwarizmi) generally known for his nisbeh, which means that he belonged to the suburbs, outside (birun) the walls of the Khwarizmian Capital, but also often referred to by his kunyah, which is bocasionally written Abu Rayhan. No mention is made of Al-Riruni's offspring nor is there any indication why 'rayhan' (literally sweet-basil, but also a not uncommon name) should have been selected as his kunyah. Sprigs of this fragrant plant are often work by Arabs, and it may have been as characteristic for him as an orchid for a distinguished politician. In its feminine form, Rayhanah, it is a woman's name like any other taken from flower or plant like Myrtle. One of Muhammad's wives, a highly-educated Jewish girl from Khaibar; was so-called. It is also the name of the lady, Rayhanah the Khwarizmian, daughter of Al-Husan, to whom this book is dedicated, and at whose request, indeed, it was written.

The Tafhim occurs in both Arabic and Persian versions, neither of which according to Rieu purports to have been translated the one from the other. Browne speaks of the bilingual Tafhim (Lit. Fist. II, 102) and of its having been composed simultaneously in both languages (Chahar Maqalah) while a Paris MS. (AP) has been regarded on inadequate grounds as favouring the view that it had been translated from the Persian by the author. (p.XIV under AP.)

him with Ptolemy and Galen. Nor is he to be confused with Tsa ibn Ali, a physician of the 3rd century attached to the court of Mutawakkil (and Murtamid?)

Rayhanah being a native of Khwarizm would necessarily be more familiar with Persian than with Arabic,
which would account for the Persian version. Al-Biruni
wrote in Arabic and was accustomed to make use of assistants in his literary output. There are some indications that the translator into Persian was less
familiar with Arabic than Al-Biruni. (v. note p. 81)

The following sketch of the life of Al-Biruniis compiled from that by Sachau in the Preface to the Arabic Edition of the Chronology, and from material translated by Wiedemann from Yaqut's Biographical Dictionary, VI, 308, and references by Al-Baihaqi and Ibn Abi Usmibi's.

Al-Biruni was born in 362 A.H. (973 A.D.) in a suburb (birun) of the Capital of the Principality of Khwarizm, corresponding roughly to the former Khanate of
Khiva, at that time a Province of the Samanid Empire under Nuh ibn Mansur (ob. 387/997-8). The Capital, Kath,
situated on the right bank of the Oxus, where is now
Shaikh Abbas Wali, was the seat of the last Khwarizmshah, Abu Abdallah Muhammad, a direct descendant of the
Khusraws, but the greater part of the Province was governed by the Emir Ma'mun ibn Muhammad from Gurgānj, an
important city, now Kuhna Urgenj, a hundred miles to the
N.W. situated on the branch of the Oxus leading to the
Caspian.

He overthrew the ancient dynasty of the Khwarizmshahs in 385 A.H., appropriating the title. By this
time the Oxus had already destroyed the Citadel of the
Capital, and was making further inroads in the city.
These circumstances may have led to Al-Biruni's leaving
for the court of Mansur, for in a verse quoted by
Yaqut, he refers to him as his first patron.

Little is known up to this time of Al-Biruni's early history; he knew little of his grandfather and nothing of his father, but he must have profited by his studies under Abu Near Mangur ibn 'Ali ibn 'Iraq, for he had already written a number of scientific papers, and had had discussions with his younger contemporary Avicenna before leaving Khwarizm, and while Avicenna was still in Bukhare.

I Wiedemenn u. Hell; Mitth. z. Gesch. d. Naturwiss. u. Med. XI,375. Wiedemann, Beitraege, XX, XXVIII, LX. 5 v. note 5 p. 186. Wiedemann, Beitraege, LX, p. 61, No. 2. 5 Wiedemann, Beitraege, LX, p. 62, No. 4. 6 Wiedemann, Beitraege, LX, p. 61, No. 5.

While at the Sumanid court he probably met Qabus ibn Washmgir Shams al-Ma'all' who had taken refuge there, and when Qabus regained his Principality in 388, Al-Biruni at his invitation joined him in Gurgan at the S.E. angle of the Caspian. To him Al-Biruni's first important work, the Chronology of Ancient Nations, is dedicated; it was finished in 390-1/1000 A.D., and, although not his first work, represents the summation of his researches up till that time.

It is uncertain when Al-Biruni returned to Khwārizm, certainly before 399 A.H., for he speaks of his kind reception at Gurganj by Abu'l-Hasan 'Ali, the eldest son of Ma'mun who succeeded his father in 387.2 [All died in 399, and was followed by his brother Abu'l-'Abbas Me'mun ibn Me'mun, with whom Al-Biruni occupied an honourable position as Councillor during the whole of his reign till 407, when

he was murdered by rebellious subjects.

It was to revenge this murder that Mahmud of Ghaznah Ma'mun's brother-in-law, set out to conquer Khwarizm, placed Altuntash on the throne, and carried the surviving members of the Boyal family and other nobles to Afghanistan in 408, and with them Al-Biruni and two other savents Abu'l-Khair ibn Khammar the physician, and Abu Nagr ibn Traq, the mathematic-Mahmud had previously tried to attract the learned men of Gurganj to his own court for already Avicenna (Abu "Ali ibn Sinā) and Abu Sahl "Isā ibn Yahya al-Masihi6 had fled from Gurganj, probably in 598 before Al-Biruni's arrival, rather than accept Mahmud's somewhat peremptory invitation.

I At a later period of his life he must have met Qabas' grandson, Ungur, author of the Qabus nameh who was companion of Mas and from 422-432 and married his sister. Von Diez, Buch des Kabus, p. 136 s Wiedemann, Beitraege, LX, p. 61, No. 4. Von Diez, Buch des Kabus, p. 136 seq. 3 Wiedemann, Beitraege, LI, p. 61, No. 5. Hurra b. Subuktigin, Mahmud's sister was first married to fall and subsequently to Marmun. Mehmud also married a sister of Ma'mon, name not recorded. (Zambaur, Manuel de Genealogie et de Chronologie, 1927.) 5 Firdawsi had fled from Chaznah seven years before this. ^o v. note p. 325.

In one of his verses Al-Pirini says Mahmid did not cease to load him with benefits; 1 he may have occupied an official position as Astrologer; but many of the twelve years between 408 and the completion of his second great work "India" (Ta'rikh al-Hind) in 421/ 1030 must have been spent in travel and study in India, as well as in the extraordinary and encyclopeedic literary activity, including the Tafhin in 420/1029, which may be gathered from his own bibliography of his writings up to 427, contained in the Leiden MS. Golius 135, printed by Sacheu in his Preface, and translated by Wiedemann, with the appendix of Al-Ghadanfar (630-692 A.H.) who is responsible for the details on which the figure of Al-Biruni's horoscope p. 191 is founded. Mahmud, to whom the Indica would probably have been dedicated, died (421/1030) before the work was sotually finished, so there is no dedication.

poseu his third principal work, the Canon Masudious, and was in receipt of a pension which enabled him to devote the rest of his life to his scientific studies and his literary work. Yaqut relates that Masudious sent him an elephant-load of silver coin for the Canon, but that Al-Biruni returned it to the Treasury.

Masudious and died at Chaznah in 440/1048.

Wiederal , Beitraege, LX, p. 61, No. 6.

7. Chahar Maquiah, XXIII; Browne, Lit. Hist. of Persia, II, 97; D'Merbelot, under Abu Rihan.

2 Sachau, Preface to Chron. Text. pp. XL-XIVIII and Wiedemann, l.c. pp. 71-77 and notes to p. 96.

4 I am obliged to H.A.R. Gibb for the rest of the quotation from the Leiden MS., and to Dr. Fotheringham for calculating the cusps of the houses from the data there gives.

To return to Raybanah to whom the Tafhim is dedicated; she must have been carried off to Cheznah in 408 A.H. with the rest of Mahmud's involuntary guests. It has been suggested that she was a sister of Abu'l-'Abbas, but in such event she would have been 'bint al-Ma'mun'not bint Al-Hasan.

Abu'l-Hasan is a common kunyah which does not necessarily imply the existence of a son Al-Hasan, otherwise one might suspect a relationship to Abu'l-Hasan "Ali ibn Ma'mun, whose only recorded son Abu'l-Haris succeeded his uncle Abu'l-'Abbus for a few months; or to Abu'l-Hasan "Ali ibn Abi al-Fadl Al-Khāssī to whom, according to Uājjī Khalifa (II, 585) an edition of the Tafhim was dedicated in 421 A.H. Al-Khāss was a willage near the ancient Capital of Khwarizm, (Ta'rīkh-i Rashidi, p. 45) and Abu'l-Hasan was evidently one of the exiles in Ghaznah.

Al-Biruni occupied such a prominent position in Gurganj, it is possible that Rayhana! was a namesake (samiyyah), daughter of some friend at !a'mun's court whatever her origin she is marked out among oriental women by her oraving for scientific knowledge, and by the rare distinction of having a book dedicated to her.

TARLE OF CONTENTS.

The paragraphs (abwab) are referred to in the text by numbers alone.

CECHETRY

Deal with definitions and propositions of Euclid 1-28. Book I.

55-56. Of Books III and IV. Of Book II. 29-52.

Ratio of diameter to circumference. **37.**

38-51 and 55. Definitions of BOOK V. 52-54. Of Book VI.

Definitions from Books II and III. 56-71.

ARITHMETIC

Hemes and properties of the various kinds of numbers. 72-95. Arithmetical Operations. Decimal Notation. 96-10B. 116-119. Representation of numbers by Algebra. 109-115. letters of the alphabet.

ASTRONOMY

125. Stars and Plenets. The Spheres. 120-124. Celestial Movements. Horizon. Meridian. Cardinal 126-131. Points. Indian Circle. Day and Night. Dawn and Twilight. Hours. Equinoctial. Ecliptic. Parallels of Declination and 132-137. 138-145. of Latitude. Muqantarahs, Equinoxes. Solstices. Subdivision of the circumference of the circle. 144-145. Relation to it of the diameter. 147. Declination and Latitude of Stars. THE SIGNS. THE PLANETS. Superior and Inferior. The Epicyole. 146. 150-152. Combustion and Conjunction with the Sun. 155-154. Wexing and Waning of the Moon. Phases peculiar to 155-156. the Moon? The Fixed Stars. Their arrangement in Constellations, 157-162. Zodiacal, Northern and Southern. Tables of these.

MANY ONS OF THE MOON. Their Ascension. Star names. The Galaxy. Order of succession of Signs. North-165-166. 167-169.

ern and Southern Signs and Mansions. Mumaththal orbit or Pareoliptic. Apogee of Sun. 170-175. Its Excentric Orbit. Its Mean Movement, Mean Argument and Equation. The amount of its movement in the Ecliptic.

176-185. Inclined Orbits of Planets, their Nodes. Epicycle;
Deferent; Equant. Apogee of Epicycle, Mean
rate of Planet, Mean and True Anomaly. Mean and
Corrected Longitude. Equation of Anomaly. True
Position among the stars.

186-190. Orbits of the Moon. Its Movements. Those of the Planets. Revolution of the Planets.

191. The Trepidation Theory.

192-196. Latitude of the Moon and of the Planets. Position of their Apogees and of their Nodes.

197-198. Daily rate of movement of Planet, BUHT.

199-201. Megamat, Ribatat, Nitagat.

203. Planets. Ascending and Descending. 205. Increase and Decrease of the Planets.

204. World-Days and World-Years.

205-209. Size of Planets. Distance from the Earth. Size of the Earth and surrounding Elements.

210-215. Distribution of Land and Water. Equator. Erect Posture.

214-219. Latitude and Longitude of Locality.

220-222. Ortive Amplitude. Day and Night. Diurnal Arc. 225-224. Stars of Perpetual Apparition and Occultation.

225-226. Altitude and Zenith Distance.

227-229. Groson and Shadow.

250-255. Azimuth. Meridian Altitude and Shadow. Relation to time of Prayer. Azimuth of Qiblah. Direction of Mecca.

GEOGRAPHY

256-240. The Seven Climates. Their Extent and Cherecteristics. Qubbat al-ard. Other Methods of dividing the Earth.

241. Cities in the Seven Climates.

ASTRONOMY

242. Co-ascensions of Equinoctial and Ecliptic.

243. 'Epoch' of Star with Latitude. Degree with which it rises, sets and crosses the Meridian.

244. Da'ir. Are of parallel of a star traversed from the horizon at a given time.

245-248. Ascendant. Houses. Cadent and Succeedent. Their Angles.

249. Anniversary. 250. CONJUNCTIONS of Saturn and Jupiter.

250-254. Conjunction and Opposition of Moon. Phases (Fagisat) at which forecasts are made, Athazer (al-tasyirat).

255-267. Belipses of Moon. Eclipses of Sun. Parallaxis.

CHRONOLOGY

269-272. Months. Solar and Lunar Years. Leapyear. Interoalation.

"Indu Hames for Days of the Week. 273**a.**

Months of the Various Nations. 273-279.

282. Feasts and Fasts of Dates. Cycles. Bras. 280-281. the Nations.

301. Puslim. 291-300. Christian. Jewish. 283-290.

Persian. 302-310.

316-320. Soghdian and Days in Greek Calendar. 211**-315**. Khwāri zmien.

Page of a Persian Calendar. 311-323. THE CALENDAR.

ASTROLABE

324-346. The Astrolete. Its Perts. Various Kinds. Uses.

ASTRCLOGY

THE SIGNS

Their Nature and Characteristics. Relation to 347-358. Points of the Compass and to the Winds.

Tables giving Indications as to their influence on 359-371. Character, Figure and Face, Profession, Disease. Crops. Animals.

Years of the Signs.

272. Signs and Flanets in Aspect and Inconjunct. 373-376.

Relations other than Aspect. 377.

Ascending and Descending helves of the Zodisc. **378.**

Triplicities and Quadrants of the Zodiac. **379-380.**

THE PLANETS

Their Nature and Characteristics. Relation to 381-393. points of the Compess. As Lords of Hours and Days of the Week. Relation to Climates and Cities.

Their YEARS. Periods (FIRDARIA) of control of 394-395. Human Life.

TABLES giving Indications as to Soils. 396-435. Countries. Jewels. Foods. Drugs. Crops. Parts of the Body. Disposition and Menners. Disease. Professions &c.

ORBS and YEARS. Details of Firderia. 436-439.

Domiciles and Detriments. Exaltation and Fall. 440-444.

As Lords of the Tr plicities. 445.

Planets in Aspect. Friendship and Enmity of 446-447. Planets.

DIVISIONS OF THE 3IGN3

448-452. Palves. Peces. Paranatellonta. Decanates. Ptolemy's thirds.

453-454. TERMS and their Lords. 455-456. Ninths and

457-460. Characteristics of DEGREES of the Signs.

THE HOUSES

461-474. TABLES of Indications at Nativities, at Horary Questions, as to Organs, Powers, Joys and Powers of the Planets. Sex. Characteristics of Groups of Houses in Threes and Sixes.

THE PART OF FORTUNE

475-480. Tables of other LOTS cast in a similar way.

481-488. Relative Position of Planets and Sun. Cazimi. Orientality. Influence changed under certain conditions. TABLES.

489-490. APPLICATION and SEPARATION. 491. DEAD DEGREES.

492. Conjunction in longitude and in latitude.

492-505. DICNITIES. Order of precedence. Pavourable and unfavourable situations of the Planets in the Signs and Houses.

506-509. Interference with their conjunctions, Reception &c.

510. Substitutes for conjunction and aspect.

511. Opening the doors.

512-513. Strength and Weakness of Planets.

514. The Combust Way.

JUDICIAL ASTROLOGY

515-519. The Five Divisions and the astrological principles on which inquiries are to be based in each.

520. The Lord of the Year. Salkhuda.

521-523. The determining conditions at a nativity, Hyleg, Kadkhuda, Ascendent, Horoscope, Pigure of the Heavens. Direction or Aphesis (Tasyir)

Janbakhtar. Gifts of length of life. Position of the malefics (qawāṭi*) which terminate it.

524-526. Procedure at birth. Use of Numuder. A similar substitute for Ascendant (Rectification).

527. 'Elections'. Selecting suitable time for action. 526-530. General Questions. Thought reading. Penger of hasty conclusions.

MSS. EXACTNED.

PERSIAN

PL. Brit.		7697. 23566.	Cat.	Pers.	153.	II.	451 452
DD BINI		774.	**	17	*	#	49

ARABIC

4.	AL. Brit. Mus. Add. Or	r. 8349.	Recently acquired.			
5	AO. Rodl. Marsh.	572.	Cat.	Arab.	153.	I, 281
6.	AO'. " Bodl.	281.	**	77	77	II, 262
7	AB. Königl. Bibl. Berlin	5666.	**	•	99	V, 150
d.	AB'. "	5667.	**	#	₩.	•
9.	AP. Bibl. Nat. Paris	2497	•	71	•	443

The translation was originally made from PL., was afterwards collated with and amended from AO and AO', while the reproduction of AL which accompanies the translation has had some lecunes supplied from AO and AO'.

PL.

This MS. is unique in being preceded by a list of the 550 paragraphs (abwab) into which the work is divided. This is more detailed than that given in the Bodleian Catalogue of Arabic MS3. II, 262-8. Further it is the only MS. in which the paragraphs are numbered, and in which there are figures of the constellations.

There are certain lacunae, viz. 91-95, 195-196, 206-7, 476-481; all of these can be supplied from PL' except the

last, which, however, is in PP.

The soript is described in the Catalogue as a fair maskhi The table in 455 has been substituted for the Arabic one as a specimen of the neat calligraphy. Professor Browne in a letter to Dr. Singer refers to the archaic writing; this is chiefly noticeable in dall being written dhal between vowels and after a vowel at the end of a word, and in forms like ank and anch for anki and anchi (v. Horn, Neu-Persische Sprache, pp. 81 and 121).

The MS. is deted the beginning of Remadan, 666 A.H. (end of October 1286 A.D.), and was written 'by the most weak hand' of Al-Haliq ibn Ghulam al-Qunawi. It is interesting that Ibn Ghulam is the copyist (692 A.H.) of the Leiden MS. Colius 135 (Cat. II, 296) in which his master Al-Ghadanfar, a great admirer of the Tefhim, discusses the life and works of

Al-Birdni. (Chron. T. XV.)

A note indicates that the MS., written in Konia, was bought in Siwas in 752 A.H.

PL.

A MS. of the 19th century: complete except for absence of paragraphs 473-489 and 513-523. This MS. is referred to in the B.M. Catalogue, II, 451, and elsewhere as giving the date of writing (521) as 425 A.H. instead of 420 as in other MSS., but this is due to a mistake of the copyist as will be seen from the subjoined passage:-

"pas in rus sih shambih ast ki bist u penjum Ramadan andar sal ohaharsad va bist u penjum az Hijra, va ham haftum az Tishri al-awwal

andar sal

(hazār va sīşad va chihil yakum ast az Iskandar va rūz ardibahisht sivvum Abānmāh andar sāl)

sized ve nuved ve hashtum az Yezdigird"
The words in brackets are omitted. The Calendar is the same
as in PL with some inacouracies.

PP.

Although this MS. is complete (as is AO) it has many dropped lines and other mistakes. The script is very legible; ff. 39 and 110-1 are by another and more elegant hand. It is dated Monday 19th Ramadan 668 A.H. (12th May 1270 A.D.) The date of writing the Tafhim is as in PL, 'bistum ast' for bist, f. 66r. M. Blochet in speaking of this MS. refers to an Arabio edition, which he regards as probably the original.

AL.

This is the MS. which has been selected for reproduction on account of its legibility. A few folios are lost which are copied from AO and AO'. These are from AO pp. 52-3, 60-62: from AO', 90, 115-9, 150-1, 158: from AO, 219-22, 240-5. The colophon does not indicate the date or the name of the copyist, but two owners have written the dates on which the book came into their possession, viz. Auhad b. As'ad b. Mihrlar all'ustawfi in the month of Allah, Rajab the deaf, 859 A.H., 1455-6 and Alā b. al-Hunain b. Alā al-Sahīqī, 889 A.H. (1484-5 A.D.)

AB

This 'S. is dated the last day, salkh, of Dhu el-Qi'dah, 835 A.H. (20 Aug. 1450 A.D.) It begins with paragraph 42 and omits 64-67, 150-165, 460-490.

AB'

This MS. is dated 635 A.H. (1237-8 A.D.) It begins with paragraph 120: f. 19 should come between ff. 10 and Il; ff. 98-99 should follow f: 34. Paragraphs 280s-346 are omitted with exception of part of 32: on ff. 60-61; 350-372 are omitted; f. 113 should follow f. 104.

L

This MS. is duted 9 Ramadan 1035 A.H. (4 June 1626 A.D.) 23 Lyyar 1938 is given as a concordant date but is equivalent

to 2 June 1627, allowing ten days for 0.5.

The text is preceded by a confused and rambling account of the contents, which does not occur in any other of the MSS. examined, and is certainly not attributable to Al-Biruni, in the course of which the writer says "we have trenslated this into Arabic".

Joseph Ascari summarising this introduction says "the work has been translated from the Persian by an anonymous author", and De Slane describing the MS. refers to it as a translation of a Persian work on the Elements of Astronomy by Al-Biruni. I have not found in the MS. any statement to the effect that this is a translation from the Persian by the author himself.

Rallino refers to this MS. I p. LIV, and later I. p. 239 to the passage on f. 28 where the position of the sujat of the

planets in 420 A.H. is discussed. (195)

The text, which is imperfect, agrees as fer as it goes with the other Arabic texts; it begins with persgraphs 116-119, continues with 147-300 and finishes with 304-359.

AO and AO'

These MSS. are described at length in bodl. Cat. II, 250. Au' is mentioned for the legibility of its script, AO. for its age and accuracy. The scripts may be compared in the pers; raphs referred to under AL above.

AO was written for his own use, by a Copt, Abu Shakir Tumā' b. Abi al-Parah, a Cairene writer known as Ibn al-'Ushsha'. It was finished on a Londay being the Feast of the apostles, L. Id al-rusul, 21st Rabi' al-awwal 681 A.H. (29th June 1282), or the 5th Ebib (Efffl), 998, Era of the Martyrs, E.M., and the 29th Hazīrān, 1594 (should be 1593) of the Seleucid Era, 3.E., and the 26th Shehrir mah, 651 of the Yezdigird Ere, Y.E., in Cairo (Migr al-mahrusah) at Qaşr al-Shem'. lagr al-Sham' remained a refuge for the Copts till after the Englis' occupation of Egypt. [Encycl. Islam)]

I The Feest, a fixed one, is now celebrated on the lith July, 11.3. (Lene, anners and Customs, Everymen Ed. p. 547) The Reek and estern Churches have retained Old Style.

AD*

This MS. is undated but belongs to the 9th or 10th century of the Hijra. In addition to the usual title it has an alternative rhymed one, apparently invented by one of its former owners. Yusuf ibn Ahmad ibn Ibrahlm al-Mablasi al-Shafi'i, which does not occur elsewhere:-

Kitab inaret el-helek, fI sinaret 'ilmi el-falek A book to lighten our derkness in the ert and science of the sphere. It is complete except for a lacuna including paragraphs 380-443. Between AO' and AB' there is evidence of direct filiation, e.g. the substitution of the word muraghaman for muza aman, 493.

Nicoll in his account of AO' explains that he gives a list of the Abwab of the Tafhim, because the answers to the questions posed not only serve to show the scope of the sciences cultivated by the Arabs, but also furnish explanations of many terms the meaning of which is not always obvious. It is hoped that these have been adequately dealt with in the following pages.

As there are several places in the Tafhim where dates other than A.H. are cited, the conversion of these into A.D. may be effected by the following formulas:-

To convert E.M. (p. 173n) into A.D:- as let Thoth, l E.H. = 29th Aug. 284 A.D., add 283 years + 240 days:- e.g. (date A0) to 5th Ebib 998 (997y + 305d) result 1281y + 180d, 29th June 1282.

To convert S.E. (Alex.) 280^a, into A.D.:- as 1st Tishrin I, 312 S.E. = 1st Oct. 1 B.C., deduct 311 if the day of the month is in the last 9 months of S.E. (first 9 of A.D.), 312 if in the first 3 of S.E. (last 3 of A.D.); e.g. (321) 7th Tishrin I 1341 S.E. - 312 = 7th Oct. 1029 A.D., and (date AO) 29th Haziran 1595 - 311 = 29th June 1282.

To convert Y.E. (p. 172n) into A.D.: - as the lat FarwardIn : Eh 1 Y.E. = 16th June 632 A.D. (651y + 167d), this has to be added to the Y.E. date to obtain A.D., but, owing to the fact that the Y.E. year is shorter by quarter of a day than the solar year, the number of leap-years has first to be deducted from the 167: - e.g. (321) 3rd Aban man 398 Y.E. (397) + 213d) = 7th Oct. 1029 A.D., for, deducting 398/4 from the above 167 leaves 67 days and adding 631y + 67d to the Y.E. date gives 1028y + 280d = 7th Oct. 1029.

NOTES AND CORRECTIONS

Paragraphs (abwab) are referred to by numbers alone; pages with a prefixed p. Paragraphs are numbered at top of page; pages at bottom.

with regard to transliteration & is represented by ' in the type-script and & by a slight modification thereof

- P. 1 The baslama and first paragraph from PL.
- P. 3 Note, Bodl. MS. Thurston 11.
- P. 11 The passage on proportion, 39-55, translated by Wiedemann, Beitrag, KLIV.
- P. 39 Note 2. Wieleitner finds that x is derived from an r 7 in use for res in the middle ages.
- P. 45 Note 1; in his translation of Bar Hebraeus' "Livre de l'ascension de l'esprit."
 - P. 47 Note 2. Brehm's Thierleben.
 - P. 52 Note 1, by Wiedemann.
 - P. 57 Note 1 for 378 read 377.
 - P. 79 Ideler, Ursprung u. Bedeutung d. Sternnamen.
 - P. 82 for hadi al-najm, the leader, read hadi al-najm, the driver.
 - P. 95 The diagram is modified from Manutius' Translation of Ptolemy's Syntaxis, II p. 413.
 - P. 114 The Book of the Thousands (Kitab al-uluf), v. note p. 320, deals among other things with the emergence of new religions. Astrologers commonly associate this with the entry of the vernal equinox into a new sign. v. Dupuis, Origine de tous les cultes.
 - P. 134 Chaucar, v. Skeat p. 194 note 1.
 - P. 145 The Mountains of the Moon regarded now as applying only to the Ruvenzori range.
 - P. 144 Note 9. v. De Goeje, De Muur Van Gog en Magog, Versl. d. Kon. Akad. Amsterdam. Letterk. 4th series. 1st Part p. 87.
 - P. 160 Accidentally omitted: see inserted slip.

268. Mā el-ayyām al-wustā el-mu'addalah. If the sun had no eastward movement and simply continued revolving in virtue of the first movement,

- P. 177 and 195 a and b; umm has acquired an initial ' by mis-
- P. 178 The rule for finding Easter requires to be modified; if the number to be deducted is greater than 27, Easter is four weeks later than the result arrived at.

P. 190-1 The figures placed here on account of available space refer to p. 205.

P. 191 The method adopted in constructing the figure is as follows: - Two great circles, the meridian and a circle of declination through the point of the ecliptic ascending divide the heavens into four quadrants. The two Eastern quadrants are unequal: the XII, XI and X houses are each made the arc of the ecliptic corresponding to one-third of the semi-diurnal arc of the ascendant, and the I, II and III houses to the arc corresponding to one-third of its semi-nocturnal arc. The houses of the Western quadrants are the Nadirs of those of the Eastern.

P. 226 Note, see figure on p. 225.

P. 229 A convenient edition of the Tetrabibles is contained in Junctinus' Speculum Astrologiae.

P. 228 Chaucer says; v. Skeat p. 194.

P. 253

Text, last row, for haiyah read harbah and for tinin, thalathin. Translation, note, alsad is 300 although there is some excuse for Steingess translating it 3000; formerly sized.

P. 265 Text 3rd line; note Arab transliteration of genitive of Astaratos with otiose alif.

P. 279 note 2, read 290 seq.

P. 282
Madkhal Kabir, Abu Ma'ashar, Bodl. MS. Hyde 7.
No. 51, for al-taqal read quttal, pl. of qatil,
killers, anaeretai, usually qawati', sing. qati'
a highwayman (pl. in latter sense qutta'). Qawati'
in addition to its astrological meaning is also
used for incisors and migratory birds in contrast

to perennial residents (awabid). Qata'a in the sense recorded by Dozy II, 367a, does not occur in the Tafhim, nor does he refer to the astrological meaning of Qati'. of. p. 323 1.8 and note 5.

P. 288 last line, for " read

P. 292 No. 6. Iron, a peculiar crop, but hadid and ahan occur in A and P.

P. 308 The urjuzah is not the only Arabic astrological poem, it consists of 372 verses; the Mugni' of Al-Susī with 97 verses has several commentaries.

See Not. et Extr. XXIII for two Byzantine poems, the one by Theodore Prodromus in political metre, the other by John Kamateros in twelve-syllable lambics; the latter contains references to two Babylonian Astrologers Selekh and Meslas or Lasbas not otherwise known. 1354 verses.

P. 329 Nurudher, Vullers' 'repraesentans'.

P. 332 Prol. The Prolegomena of Ibn Khaldun translated by De Slane.

ABEREVIATIONS

- The Chronology of Ancient Nations and the Indica of Al-Miruni, texts edited and translated by Bachau, are indicated by Chron. and India.
- Dictioneries by the names of their authors: Lans, Dozy,
 Steingass, Vullers; the Muhit al-Muhit appears as Muhit,
 the Dictionary of Technical Terms used in the Sciences
 of the Musalmans (Bibliotheca Indica) as Dict. Sci.
 Terms and Berbier de Meynard's Dictionnaire Geographique
 de la Perse as Dict. Geog. Pers.
- Bouché-Lecleroq's, L'Astrologie Grecque appears in the notes as BL, Mafatib al-'ulum as M'U.
- Nellino, when unspecified, refers to his magnificent Al-Battani.
- Nau, to his translation of Bar-Mebraeus, "I'mscension de l'esprit."
- Pocooke, Specimen; for Specimen Historiae Arabum.
- Junctinus is for Junctinus' Speculum Asurologiae which together with the two following works give an adequate account of Arebic Astrology.
- Albohazen-Haly is for Abu'l-Hasar 'Ali b. Abi'l-Rijal. His Urjuzah appears in a recent summery of Arabic Astrology by Ghazal al-Müsawl. His 'De judiciis Astrorum' and the 'Tractatus de Astronomia' of Bonatus (Guido Bonato) were both issued at Basilea 1571 and 1550.
- Wilson for Wilson's Dictionary of Astrology which is referred to for definition of terms.

My thanks are due to Messrs. Percy Lund, Humphries & Co. for the excellent manner in which they have reproduced the 15. and type-script.

1

[In the Name of God the Merciful, the Compassionate. Him do we ask for aid.

The Teaching of the Master, Abu'l-Rayhan Muhammad ibn Ahmad al-Biruni(May the Mercy of God be upon him)on the Elements of the art of Astrology by way of Introduction].

The comprehension of the structure of the universe, and of the nature of the form of the heavens and the earth and all that is between them, attained by rehearsing information received, I is extremely advantageous in the art of Astrology, because thereby the listener acquires practice, he becomes accustomed to the terms current among astrologers, the apprehension of their meanings is facilitated, so that when he again meets them in his study of the various problems and demonstrations he brings to these a mind freed from having to deal with difficulties from both sides (the problem and its terms).

It is on this account that I have prepared, at her request, an aide-mémoire for Rayhanah [the Khwarizmian] daughter of al-Hasan, in the form of question and answer, which is not only elegant, but facilitates the formation

of concepts.

I have begun with Geometry and proceeded to Arithmetic and the Science of Numbers, then to the structure of the Universe, and finally to Judicial Astrology, for no one is worthy of the style and title of Astrologer2 who is not thoroughly conversant with these four sciences.

May God by His grace, and in the fullness of His mercy, favour accuracy of statement in the work.

GEOMETRY

1. Al-handasah. Geometry is the science of dimensions and their relations to each other and the knowledge of the properties of the forms and figures found in solids. By it the science of numbers is transferred from the particular to the universal, and astronomy removed from conjecture and opinion to a basis of truth.

lBa rūī shanīdan va taolīd giriftan. 21.simat al-munajjīm; Safter şawāb ins. al-qawl fī'l-'amal bi minnat wa sa'at.

اذاعًا دعلِها مُعَمَّافَجِو مَعِلِها مَعْ الْعُراهِدِ علمه أيَّ حل الماني واللَّه على النصَّ الله ممليله اب والعدد م عب مراح الم اح كام المنوم التلاث الكانساك الب الجنبان للمن المنعة مأ لمجتم صالمجود بسر اللرفائم بنعت

2-5.

- g. Ma al-jim. A solid body is that which can be felt by the sense of touch; standing by itself, it occupies only its own share of space but entrely fills that to the extent of its dimensions, so that no other solid substance can occupy its place at the same time.
- three in number, length, breadth, and depth; these terms are not applied to the dimensions in themDIMENSIONS selves so as to be invariable, but relativeOF SPACE ly, so that as soon as one of them is called length, that which crosses it is breadth,
 and the third, which traverses both, depth, but it is customary to call the longer of the first two, length, the
 shorter, breadth or width, and that which is extended
 downwards, depth[or thickness], while if its extension
 upwards is considered, height.
- dimensions at both ends are known as the six sides,
 those of the length being described as
 the SIX front and back, of the breadth, as right and
 left, and those of the depth as upper and
 lower.
- 5. Al-sath. The solid is necessarily terminated on each of Its sides by a boundary; this is 'a surface' which like the roof of a house, is called sath! because of being on the top, or also THE basit, because it is, as it were, spread out SURFACE on the solid. It possesses length and breadth, but one dimension less than a solid, viz. thickness, because if it had that it would be a solid, and we have assumed it to be a boundary thereof. When a solid is of a deep opaque colour, it is the colour which is seen on the surface, because whatever there is below is concealed from vision. In this way it is easy to picture a surface to oneself, and still easier if you put oil and water in a glass and of werve that they do not mix but are in intimate contact at a 'surface' between them. A surface is of two 'inds, either plane or not[according to the solid].

The roots sth and bat both mean spread out, so that sath may be a pavement as well as a roof.

مدأخذ منطفه وملأمز بعباد المصان أسأ وي فارده ومنع عني من المندينات انتارك وكرورك المالعادللكارما عَيْلَةُ نَسْمِ الطولُ والْعُرْضُ فَالْمِعْنُ ولَيُنِتُ مِنْ الْمُسَامِ وَافْعِيمُ عَلَى لا بعاد لمع جى لانبدك ولحنها بالمنافة فاذاسم واجرامها طولاك المغرض عضاوالمُعِرْضُ عِلَيكُم اعمناه جرى الرسم وتشهد المؤل الاقليط وافه هاعضاه المتدالي سف أغبف افالهند الحاعلي ترسمك المهائب السنتام عسمونه الابعادة خبنهامعافاجد مْ الْمُولِ هُوالْأُمَامُ وَالْأَحْمُ الْوِرَا وَأَجْدُ مِنْ الْعِرْفِ الْمِبْزِقِ لَأَخْرَالْبُسَادِ وَا مرالع والغوق الآخرالي المسطح مأهو الجردي الدمناه في جميع الد معانيد بغواليه فيتدب عيالارلاندة فدوسي اصابت بطألانه كالمنتوط عليد فعوطه الدعرة فيقط بنقس عزل ليرتيراه اجدادهوالعمة الاندلوكان ذاعم إحال بناجتماوم ومناه بماية لدوللتماد احتان كوماحيه عترمسف فلوندالاتي وسطيد لانطاجت ولأرد وكالمصرة بهذا بشهانيسوم وزمن عهد لذّا خماء الماءُ الدُمن البية فانهما لابمعر حاف يهما بنماتيان على سطح ببها والسطح بوعان سنعبر والأخرعة مستعبر للخراعة

- necessarily lines, and lines have length without breadth therefore one dimension less than the surface, as that has one less than the solid; if it had breadth, it would be a surface, and we have assumed it to be the boundary of a surface. A line can be imagined by observing the oil and water at the side of the glass, or the line between sunshine and shadow, contiguous on the surface of the earth, or, also, it is possible to picture all that to oneself from a thin sheet of paper[although it has thickness], until the familiar sense-perception leads gradually to the intellectual concept.
- 7. Al-nuqtah. If a line is finite its extremities are points. Points have one dimension less than lines,

 viz.length; they have neither length,

 breadth, nor thickness, and are indivisible.

 The point of a sharp needle may be taken the point of a sensible world, but surface, line, and point, although they occur on the solids which bear them, apart from them cannot be apprehended except by the intellect.
- face is the shortest surface between two lines which are its boundaries, and a straight line PLANE SUR- is the shortest line between two points FACE AND which are its extremities. If on a surstraight LINE face there are lines which exactly correspond to each other, the surface is a plane surface; and similarly, if in a line the points are exactly opposited to each other it is a straight line.
- 9. Al-zāwiyah. An angle is the termination of a surface in a point at which two lines meet each other, but not in the same straight line. If both the lines re straight, the angle is a rectilineal angle, otherwise it is not.

lbarabar yak digar. P The translation by Ishaq ibn Hunayn of Euclid's definition is preferable; the plane surface is that which conforms everywhere to the straight lines upon it.

اذاكالهو شامياكات نابته للعالمة ما وعبطول كمعن في عزال بطر بعرا واجر ومواكع مرلانة لو كان ع ملكان بطا وفع فرنسا معابة لذوكيه لضون مزللط المنور فالفادورة الجامعة وللكأوالاه ما بزالط والنباع للكاصِفُ بنعل وجد الأض عصابات ورحمية بالكي المرفي حى إلى المدين المسور المسور عرب اللهوم المعمول المقط قدما فحاف كاللائناها كالناه المنطقات عللط سعدوا جدوهوالطول واسرالعط فأداطول والأعرض للاعمو والماجها بألهامان والملك الإجزاكا وبيكون الجبور فللطابع الجان وكافاجين للط والسط والمفلد اغاتوجد باللي وموجاملها فأمامانغراد بجرنة ما بما الأسكورُ الم فالعِفالْ فَهُذا المسطى وللنظر ا سنفهم والماء والافعرفياب بالبند فاذاكان والسطرخطوط بالمت بعضها مع بعض فعي مستنفيم ولذلك اذ أنق المت المفلا على خطر كالأ

10-15

- kinds. When one straight line falls on another[like the tongue of a balance on the beam] if the tongue of a balance on the beam] if the KINDS OF resultant angles on either side are equal, they are called right angles, of imah, and the one line is said to be perpendicular, ramid, to the other. If the angles are not equal, the line in question is not perpendicular; the larger angle is styled obtuse, munifarijah, and the smaller acute, haddah.
 - 11. Al-shakl. A figure is that which is surrounded by one or more lines.
- surface bounded by one line, the circumference, muhlt,

 dawr. In the middle is a point, the centre

 markaz, from which all straight lines
 reaching the circumference are equal.
- through the centre of a circle and reaching the circumforence by its two ends is a diameter,

 DIAMETER att, which cuts the circle into two semicircles. If such a line does not pass
 through the centre, it is a chord, watar,
 which cuts the circle into two unequal parts, and the
 circumference into two arcs, gaws, one larger than the
 other.
- 14. Al-sahm. A sagitta is the line between the middle of a chord and the middle of the corresponding arc. It is part of a diameter of the circle, and is longer than half the diameter if the arc is larger than a semi-circle; shorter, if not.
 - 15. Al-jaib al-a zam. The half-diameter of a cir-THE RADIUS cle is called a whole sine.

The figure on the left illustrates 'perpendicular' and right angles, that on right 'not perpendicular' and obtuse and acute angles.

المدنكرانواع النعاما اذا فقرخدسة المالنا فنان فنرجة ومسفها فماجان الشح الما معومون عيد باخط ماحادات العابع ماج ع شعل في تعريب نفير عبط بوخط و بسم عيماً وبسي إن ادوز أوف داخله نفط مشي مرك وكالمنفه المخرج مهاال لمبط مساويعيه البيس الفطر والوسماهم مستنقم مبع فالداره ونتهي المفد المالح طاندان على لرعاسة الدام وفنها بسفي في الم المرعل مسي والبيس العارم بفسم فضلف و الداب، حيان المنها كالمنافظ وان النالموس على على الداب، حيان المنافظ من العظم المنافظ من العظم من العلم من العل

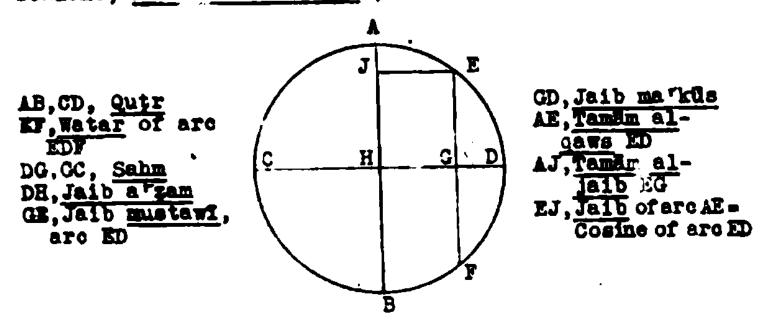
16-19

of the chord of a doubled arc, or if you prefer it, the perpendicular dropped from one end of the arc on to a diameter passing through the other end. If the expression jaib is used without qualification, it means a natural sine.

17. Al-jaib al-ma kus. A versed sine is the sagitta of the doubled are or the line from one end of the are to the extremity of the sine opposite VERSED SIME it. The greatest of all versed sines is a diameter, as that of all natural sines is a radius.

of an arc is that which, when added to the arc, makes it a complete quarter of a circle, and concomplement sequently when you subtract the arc from of ARC AND 90° its complement remains. Also the complement of a sine is the amount required to be added to it to make a redius.

three and al-mutherlathet. Every triangle has three and each opposite each is a straight line, the side, dil. In accordance with the reside, dil. In accordance with the residence of the sides the triangles are either equilateral, matasawi al-adla; isosceles, mutasawi al-saqain, when two scales, mutasawi al-saqain, when two scales, mukhtalif al-adla, when all differ in length;

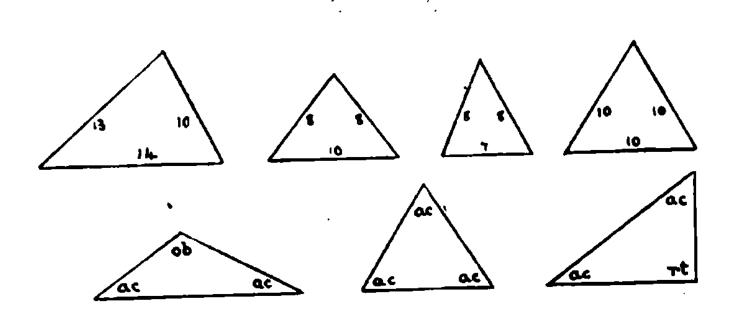


الماره وبقال الماجب كالماللي الفؤس فانضبث فلت عوالجود الماذل الشبث فل المطالواصل فِاللَّلْ لَمْ الْمَلْعُ قَبْلُتُ زُوالِ فَرْجِهِ فِي الْمَا الْمِعْدُ الْمُلْتُ الْمُلْكُ الْمُلْكُ الْمُلْكُ الْمُلْكِ الْمَا الْمُلْكِ الْمُلِكِ الْمُلْكِ الْمُلْكِلِلْكِلْلِلْلِلْكِ الْمُلْكِلِلْلِلْكِ الْمُلْكِلِلْلِلْكِلْلِلْلِلْكِلْمُ لِلْمُلْكِلِلْكِلْمُ لِلْمُلْكِلِلْكِلْمُ الْمُلْكِلِلْكِلْلِلْكِلْمُلْكِلِلْكِلْمُ لَلْمُلْكِلِلْكِلْمُ الْمُلْكِلِلْمُلْكِلْمُ لِلْمُلْكِلْمُ لِلْمُلْكِلِلْمُلْكِلِلْمُلْكِلِلْمُلْكِلِلْمُلْكِلْمُ لِلْمُلْكِلْمُ لِلْمُلْكِلِلْمُلْكِلِلْمُلْكِلِلْكِلْمُ لِلْمُلْكِلْمُلْكِلِلْمُلْكِلِلْمُلْكِلِلْمُلْكِلِلْكِلْمُلْلِمُلْكِلِمُ لَلْمُلْكِلْمُلْكِلْمُلْكِلْمُلْكِلِلْكِلْمُلِلْكُلْكِلِلْمُلْكِلِمُ لَلْمُلْكِلْمُلْكِلْمُلْكِلْكِلْلْمُلْكِلِمُلْل

20-22.

in accordance with the angles, either right-angled; që'im al-zëwiyah, obtuse-angled, munfarij al-zëwiyah, or acute-angled, hadd al-zawaya.

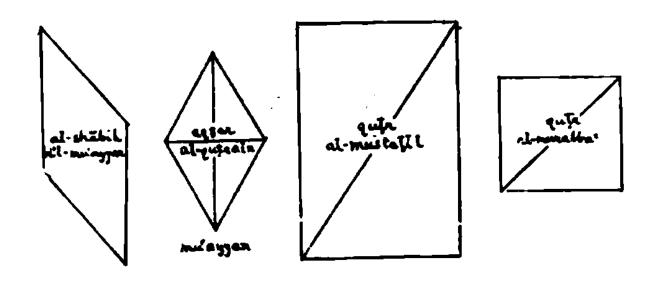
- 20. Amud we qaridah. The perpendicular is the line proceeding from one of the angles of a triangle at right angles to one of the sides; and PERPENDICULAR the base is the side on which the perpand BASE endicular falls.
- stone is the point of the base which the perpendicular reaches. Some people call by this name where the smaller of the two parts into which stone FALLS the base is thus divided, but such use is remote from what the word and its meaning require.
- 22. Asmā' al-adla' ghayr hadhihi. The side of a triangle opposite a right or obtuse angle is the longest side, if it is a right angle, the OTHER NAMES hypotenuse, qutr or watar. Of the FOR THE SIDES other sides, if they are different, one is designated the shorter of the short sides, the other the longer of these.



اذاكان وزادب فاعد شريها فإعالزاوي والمالك ادا المبكن في زاوب ما مالمعى فه أنجم الصلاح المسلف ماسماعترها الفلع الذي فالمل المائعة المنطرة المائد المائد عامد فطراً المائد عامد فطراً 25. Dhawit al-arba'at adli. Of quadrilateral figures, the first, murabba, is the square in which all the sides are equal, and all the QUADRILATERAL angles right angles [like a tile] and the diagonals joining opposite angles FIGURES equal. The second is the oblong, mustatil, which is longer, has all the angles right angles, the diagonals equal, but only the opposite sides equal. The third is the rhombus, murayyan, [i.e., has chashma; by this expression is meant that the diagonals are unequal just as chashma-yi tarazu means that one half of the beam of a balance (steelyard) is longer than the other.] It has all the sides equal, the diagonals different, and the opposite angles equal but not right angles. The fourth is the rhomboid, shabih bi'l-mu'ayyan, which differs from the foregoing in having only the opposite sides equal. Any other quadrilateral figure is called a

Any other quadrilateral figure is called a trapezium, munharaf. As to polygons, mudalla at, which have their sides and angles equal, these are named after the number (5,6,7,etc.) of the sides, mukhammas,

musaddas, musabba', etc.



laceording to Steingass, "the eye in which the tongue of the scales plays", but here used as the equivalent of A. Yayz, "the inclining of the balance", Lane, p.2, 217. Example of explanation of difficult Arabic words in the Persian version.

منوالمعافاه المنطق أستفع فاخلاجها كالمحرال سراله بعد والمستفع في الما ما المطول المعافية والمنافعة والمعافقة والمنافعة والمعافة والمعافقة والمنافعة والمنافع

24-27

24. Al-khutūt al-mutawāziyah. Parallel lines are those on a plane surface, whose distance from each other remains constant, and which PARALLEL LINES when produced continually in both directions do not meet.

25. Al-zawāyā al-mutaqābilah. When two straight lines cross each other, four angles result, and the OPPOSITE ANGLES opposite angles are equal.

26. Al-zawāyā al-mutabādilah. When a straight line is drawn between two parallel straight lines, the angle which is at one side of one of these two lines is said to be alter-ALTERNATE nate to the angle at the other side

ANGLES

of the other line; the alternate angles are equal. 27. Zawiyah kharijah min al-muthallath. When one

side of a triangle is produced, there is formed an angle called the exterior angle, and each of the two angles not adjacent ANGLE EXTERIOR to it is called an interior and op-TO TRIANCLE posite angle.

shakl _al-zamāyā the same as The distance . X × the distance here here is al-mutaqabilah mutabādilah al-khāri jah min al-muthallath mutabadilah

lal has hadithah.

اداباب كِالْمِينِ لِمَلْمُ فِ	ما بنه اواذ الخرجة على تعامنها لخواج
	ابنویاه
ان من العدار من المانيع دُوا با	مَا لِنِ عِلِمَا لَمُنْ مَا لِلْهُ الْمُنْ الْمِنْ الْمُنْ الْمُنْ الْمُنْ الْمُنْ الْمُنْ الْمُنْ الْمُنْ الْمِنْ الْمُنْ الْمُنْ الْمُنْ الْمُنْ الْمُنْ الْمُنْ الْمُنْ الْمِنْ الْمُنْ الْمِنْ الْمُنْ الْ
ويستون مساوبه اذاوقع خط سنتغيم على البني	ما الزوابا المتعابلة الما المعالمة في المعابلة والما المتعابلة المتعابلة المتعابلة الما المتعابلة الما المتعابلة الما المتعابلة الما المتعابلة المواللة المعابلة المواللة المو
سُنعُمِرْمَعُ البِرِطَالِيَّ جَنِهُ عِنْدُ احْلِلْطَبِنُ الدَّلِيُّةِ الْمِنْطُلِمُ	
احانه طبر مهاد الدهي براجبنوا مرب	
4116	
ح اجدا صلاع المله على المنظرات	ماالوالمالكادنهزالماك اذاء
	منع خارج الملك زاويد ألم المركب والمجار
W.	مُنْ مُنْ الْمِدَ الْمُهَا لَمُهَا لَمُهَا لَمُهَا لَمُهَا لَمُهُا لَمُهَا لَمُهَا لَمُهَا لَمُهَا لَمُهَا لَم

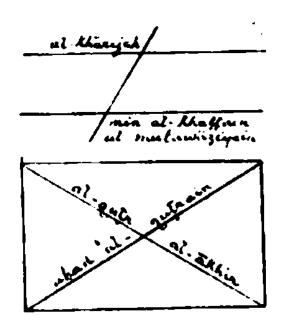
28-31

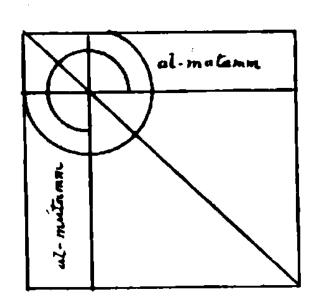
28. Zāwiyah khārijah min al-khāţţain al-mutawāziyain. If the line drawn between two parallel linus be
produced, there result, outside these,
ANGLE EXTERIOR two angles called exterior, each of
TO PARALLEL which is equal to the interior and
STRAIGHT LINES opposite angle on the same side of
the line.

29. Mutawazī al-adlār. A parallelogram is a quadrilateral figure of which the opposite sides are equal and parallel to each other, and the PARALLELOGRAM line which is drawn between opposite angles is called a diagonal, qutr.

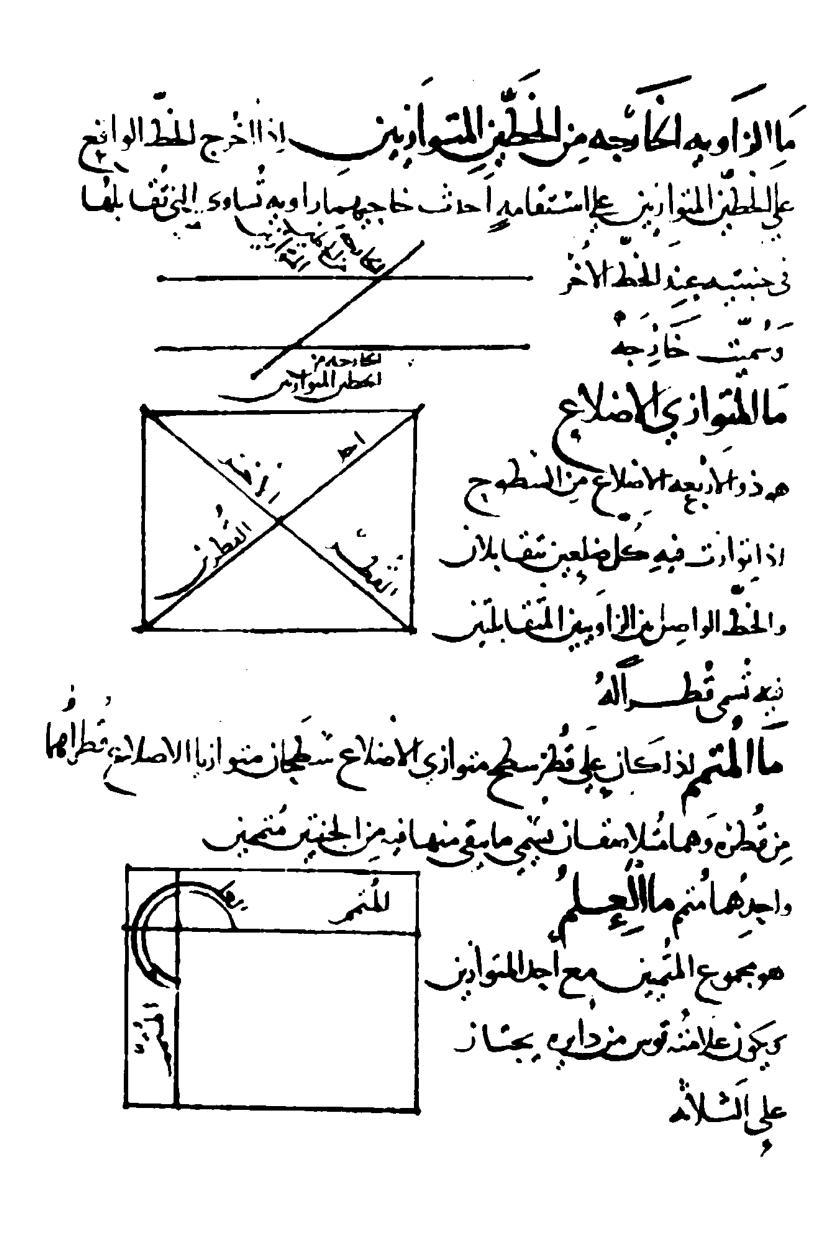
30. Mutamman. When two parallelograms are constructed on the diagonal of a parallelogram in such a way that the extremity of the diagonal construction of the former is in conparallelograms that with that of the other, each of the two remaining parallelograms is called a complement, mutamm.

parallelograms constitute a gnomon, 'slam, which are shown in the diagram by segments of GNOMON a circle, passing through the three.

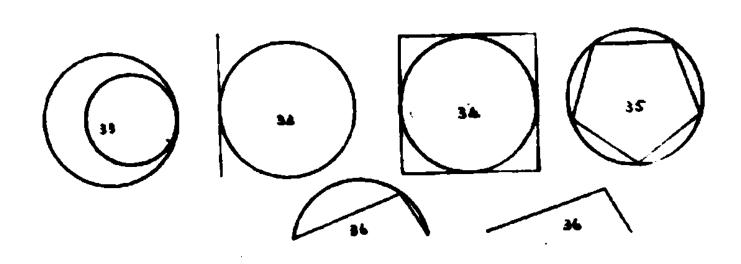




lThis is numbered 27 in PL, while under 28 are, out of place, numbers 36,37,38, of the table of contents.



- ord of one is placed at right angles to an end of the other and caused to pass over it so as time X LINE to describe a rectangular figure, the plane so described is a square if the lines are equal, an oblong, if unequal.
- 33. Mutamassan. Tangency may occur between two circles, internally if they are of different diameters, and externally whatever their relative dimensions; also between a line and a circle if the line is straight and is in contact with the circle, without the one cutting the other.
- 34. Shakl muhit bi'l-da'irah. A rectilineal figure is said to be described about a circle when all its FIGURE ABOUT sides are in contact with the A CIRCLE circle.
- figure is said to be inscribed in a circle when FIGURE WITHIN the latter passes through all the A CIRCLE angles of the former.
- which is received by an arc is the interval between two lines proceeding from the ends of the lines proceeding in one point thereof, arc, and meeting in one point thereof, [and any equal angle is said to be accepted, pizrufta, by that arc].



موأمرانا جرما لمندسط فامالزه المجيط بدد المت الخطار فان سنقم اذ ألكفياه م عضع اجرسماالاخرى

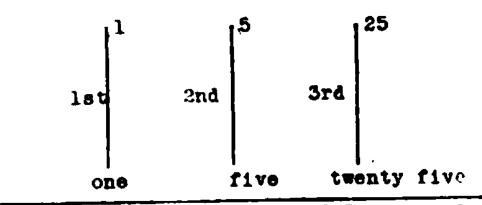
على المديب

Jawr al-da'irah idha gutruha wahid. If the diameter of a circle is one (cubit or a span or any other measurement), the circumference RATIO DIAMETER- is approximately three and a seventh -CIRCUMFERENCE times as much according to the investigations of Archimedes, who found that it is between two numbers, being a little less than the larger and a little more than the smaller. If half the diameter be multiplied by half the circumference, the result is the area of the circle, and in this exemple (diameter one) would be a half and two sevenths or 11/14.

38. Juz' we amthal. If one magnitude is used to measure another, and found to enter it several times without remainder, the former is alliquot part, juz', of the inter. The former is necessarily smaller than the latter, which is described as a multiple, amthal, adaf, of the former, because it contains it so many times.

39. Nisbah. Ratio is the relation between two things of the same kind, by which we know the measure of the one as compared with the other. Thus we call a man 'father' when we contrast him with his son, and the latter 'son' when comparing him with his father. Similarly we call one thing half of another, which is double the former.

40. Tanāsub. Proportion is the equality of two or more ratios between a series of terms, at least three in number, e.g., the first is one-fifth of the second and the second one-fifth of the third, as 1 is to 5, as 5 is to 25.



l l.al-awwal Khums sl-thani wa'l-thani Khums althalith.

كُرْبُ وَمُعَالَا مِن الْمُعَالَا مِن الْمُعَالَا مِن الْمُعَالَا مِن الْمُعَالَّا مِن الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالَّا مِن الْمُعَالَّالِي الْمُعَالِّمُ الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِّي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِّا مِن الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِّي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعِلَّالِي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِقِ الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعِلَّالِي الْمُعِلَّالِقِي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعِلَّالِي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعَالِقِي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِّي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِي

بعد ناف وسيع على أجهد في من الجانفة أنه المن المفارد من الفطرة المن الدونا جنيف من المعنى وأعلمها واذا منه العلن والممال نعم الدونا جنيف من اجد نسب وأجد ما ليل والممال الأعرب المناز المقد أذ عرف مراك وافنا وسيح والدوه والأصغر والمالا المناز المقد أذ عرف المناز المقد المناز المناز

منالداز النسبه المناد ا

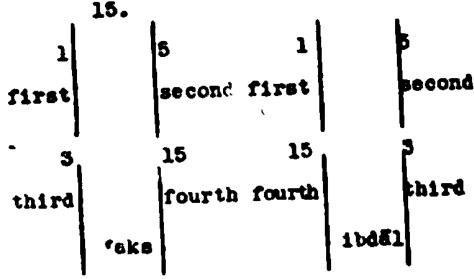
the ratio of the first to the second being the same as that of the third to the fourth, whether PROLONTIONAL the second and third are equal or no, MAGNITUDES then the first multiplied by the fourth is equal to the second multiplied by the third, also the third divided by the first is equal to the fourth divided by the second thus;

lultiplication between those which are diagonally opposite always gives is to: is to the same product, as does division between those on the same side, not diagonally.

42. Huqaddam we tali. Of two terms between which there is a ratio, that which is mentioned first is called the antecedent, muqaddem, and that which is mentioned second, the CONSEQUENT consequent, tali.

43. *Aks al-nisbah. Then there are four proportionals, and the second is to the first as the fourth is to the third, the proportion is said to be inverted, *aks or khilaf PROPORTION al-nisbah, [bashgunz], e.g., 5: I

44. Ibdal al-nisbah. When there are four proportionals, the first of which is to the third as the second to the fourth, the proportion is
said to be by permutation. Our example is one-third, ag., 1:5::5:



المايع إلاول ساويا والمالص مزكولحرأ وينسب المارالالبع وهمائ مثلالم المات مأركب المنبع المات المنابع المات المنابع المات المنابع المات المنابع المات المنابع المات المنابع المناب

- ionals, and the sum of the first and second is to the second as the sum of the first and second is to the second as the sum of the third and fourth is to the fourth, the proportion is said to be by composition. Our example is a multiple and the fifth thereof, 5:1::15:3
- tionals, and the excess of the first over the second is to the second, as the excess of the DIVISION third over the fourth is to the fourth, the proportion is said to be by division or separation. As the first term in our example is smaller, than the second, 1:5::3:15, proportion by separation can only occur after inversion, thus; 5:1::15:3 yielding 4:1::12:3.
- 47. Qelb al-nisbah. When there are four proportionals, and the first is to its excess over the second, as the third is to its excess over the fourth, the proportion is said to be by conversion. Our example after inversion, 5:1::15:3, gives 5:4::15:12.
- 48. Misbah al-musāwāt al-muntazimah. When the ratio of the first to the second is the same as that of the third to the fourth, and that PROPORTION BY of the second to the fifth the same and so on for any number of proportionate terms, then the terminal numbers are also in proportion, as in our example, the first is 1/5 of the second, and the second 1/4 of the fifth, so the first is 1/20 of the fifth, as is the third of the sixth.

SO OI	THE I	TT AT	23	13	0440	
,1		5			20	
lst	<u>1</u>	2nd	• • •	1/4.	5 th	
3	<u>ì</u> 5	15		1.4	60	
3rd	5	4th		4	6th	
1		ı			13	•

عرسيد جلد الأول والماب اللاسد حسنبد جلد المال والرابع اللابع مَعُارِهُ مَالنَا مُسْبِهِ المُراوالْ المُسْبِهِ مَا لَعُصِيراً المُسْبِهِ مَعُونَهُ وَلَا المُسْبِهِ مَعُونَهُ وَلَ على إلى الله خصت بدنها والمالم على الله بعد المالم والمالم وال مغرزاليا فانعذا المنسبل بمكالإحون البيرالع حسائ فتبدالمان اللاولحي برالما في الاحرة النسيد مقدما تم بكور في السبد جنب في الم الانبعة المشارقك النشيدما هو مونسة الأول إنا بالعطال عنسبه اللات البرادن على المام وبعث الما الماع عن في اللا الله الله عاس كن المسبد نسبد حسد المال فا فالملت كما قلنا كالتحدد المال ماالنت بدالمساواة المشطهداذاكات نتبد الول إلى المحضيد المات اللاابع ونسبدالان اللهاب اللهاب المالم

of the first to the second is the same as that of the fourth to the sixth, and that of the proportion by third to the fourth the same as that incompliants of the second to the fifth, the midelevaluation of the last case, but the ratio of the first to the fifth is the same as that of the third to the sixth, then the proportion is said to be by inordinate equality, e.g.,

the ratio of the first to the second is 1/5, as is that of the fourth to the sixth, while the ratio of the second to the fifth is 1/4 as is that of the third to the fourth. The second and fourth are not proport- ionate, while the extreme	lst	<u>1</u>	5 2nd 1 4	20 5th
terms, first and fifth, and third and sixth have the same ratio, 1/4 of 1/5	3		12	60
	3rd	_	4th	6th
		1 4	5	

ratio is continued between a long series of terms in such a way that the ratio of the DUPLICATE RATIO first to the second is the same as that of the second to the third, and that of the third is said to be the duplicate, muthannah, ratio by repetition, takrir, of the ratio of the first to the second, and the ratio of the first to the second, and the ratio of the fourth, the triplicate, muthallathah, ratio thereof,

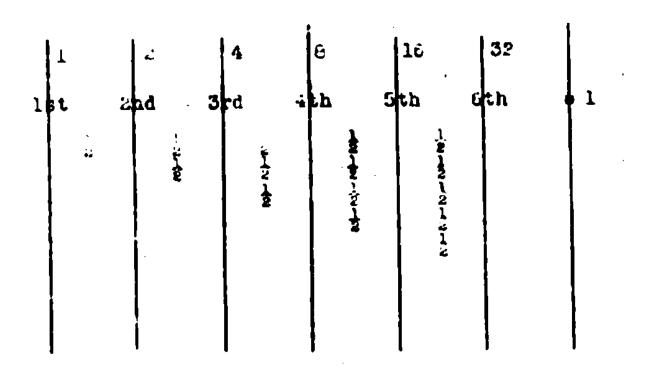
مَهُنهُ تَسْجُسُنا وَاحِمُضَطَى وَبِعُ مُنَالِنَا نَسْبِهُ الْوَا مانالت اللابح كالم نستبه المول إلى المسوع بنبه زبع

50-51.

and so on according to this analogy. Do you not see that if the ratio between these numbers is, for example, 1:2, then the first is 1 of the second, and 2 of 2 of the third, (the half occurring twice), and 2 of 2 of 3 of the fourth, and 2 of 2 of 3 of the fifth, (the 1 recurring four times).

The analogy is the same if you assume some other ratio, such as 1:3 or 1:4, or any other fraction or

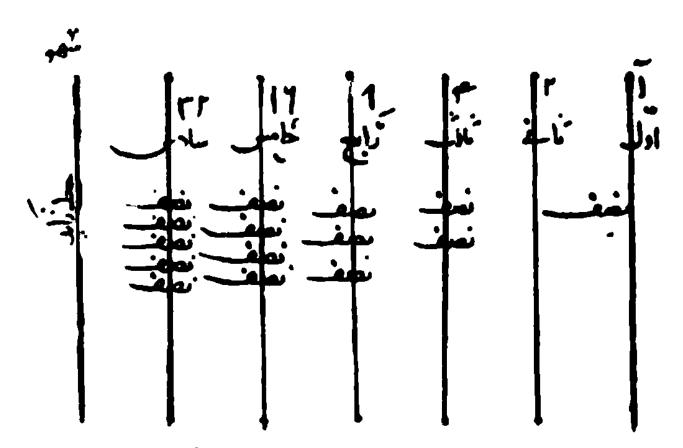
multiple.



foregoing, the duplicate, except that in the latter the ratios between the terms are identic-COLPCUID RATIO al, while in this, the ratios are different, such as 1:4, or 1:5. For instance, between two proportionate terms a third is interposed, and the ratio of the first to the third is said to be compounded of the ratio of the first to the second and that of the second to the third. Just as in the case of a road between two towns the distance

15

I The copyist remarks that this line m was added inadvertently.

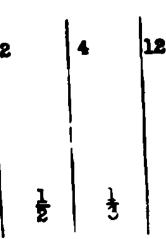


المنهدادات النه بن المنه المناد والمعاد المنه ال

51-53

is made up of the stretches between the various stages. Sometimes instead of the expression compound, tailif, it is described as duplicate, tathniyyah, it being said that the ratio of the first to the third is equal to the ratio of the first to the second multiplied by the ratio of the second to the third. But compound is preferable.

As an example of the compound ratio, let 2 and 12 be two terms and let 4 be interposed. The ratio between the first and the third, one sixth, is composed of the ratios between the first and second, and the second and third, viz., one balf of one third; while if the proportion be inverted, the ratio between the third and first, viz., six times, is composed of the ratios between the third and second, three times, and the second and first, twice, viz., three multiplied by two.



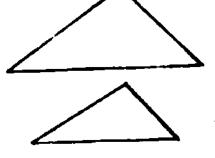
52. Irtifar al-shakl. The altitude of a figure is the greatest perpendicular from an angle ALTITUDE of the figure [internally] to its base, or OF FIGURE [externally] to its base produced.

triangle, the angles of which are severally equal to the angles

SIMILAR of another triangle, is a

TRIANGLES similar triangle, and the

corresponding sides,



nazā'ir, (which are opposite any two equal angles of the two triangles) have the same proportion to each other.

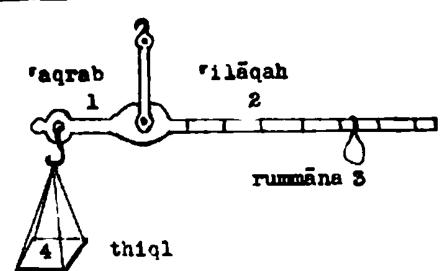
من أمات المراجل المج عنها وتها عبرعن البالب المبد ففيل تبديلاول الالناك كنسيم الأول إللاب منناه فئيد اللي اللاك فديض انالبف لبضن البذك انضبه النبن الماني عشره ومنهد المدس وأذااوسطناسهماا وبعدكان للسيدالمنكئ مولف مزيسيداني الاربعدوجى نبدالنسف ومرني بعداد بعدال الني عش وه نسبد المكث ونسف المكث بكون سُاسُوا مَلْنَا ضِفُ النُّلْبُ او عُلْمَا لَكُ النَّصِفُ وابضًا فاذ ا عضناكاتنبمائخ المأمن وجي نبدان معايب مولد أشاعشل لجاديج ومحضبه لمشدامعاف ومزني والمعدال أنبر وعيبه صعفانكان كمنه اسال الملزاية كالألك والمتال في مندأمثال إنتفاع المنكرماهوارتفاء الشكلع اعظمر الإعلى المادلد مززه اباله حصل على المعام المنكمات المستابع ع للإساوي دوابا كولواجره في لم المطبئ اب

54-57.

54. Nisbah dhāt wasat wa tarafain. When a line is divided into two parts in such a way that the lesser is to the greater as is the greater to the whole, the ratio is said to be EXTREME RATIO dhāt wasat wa tarafain; the line is cut in mean and extreme ratio.

55. Takāfil al-nisbah. This kind of proportion differs from that dealt with in paragraph 41, in having the second and third terms on the same THE STEELYARD side. It is well seen in the steelyard, qarastun, 2 where the ratio of

the distance of the hook, fagrab which carries the scale-chains, from the fulcrum, ilagah, is to that of the [adjustable] counterpoise, rummana, 5 from the fulcrum, as the weight of the counterpoise is to the weight of the load, thiql, which is being measured.



ouwwah, and its side, tul. When the power of a certain line is spoken of as equal to the power AND ROOT product of a certain line by a certain line, know that its square is equal to the rectangle designated by those two lines.

57. Al-mule ab. A cube is a solid body like the dice in nard, bounded by six squares disposed in the six relative directions so that its AL-NUKA AB length, breadth, and height are equal.

^{1.} The sixth form of kafi does not occur except when used for kafa'a, so that the form takafu is preferable which contains the two meanings of eqality and inversion.

2. From xapictiwe; v. Lane under tir Qabban from P. kapan.

3. A pomegranate; P. nara; a stone weight of this shape.

4. A kind of backgammon: v. Hyde, Historia Nerdiludii, p. 250.

او منالمت على مرسكان من كالمربعة من المربعة المربعة المربعة مربعات

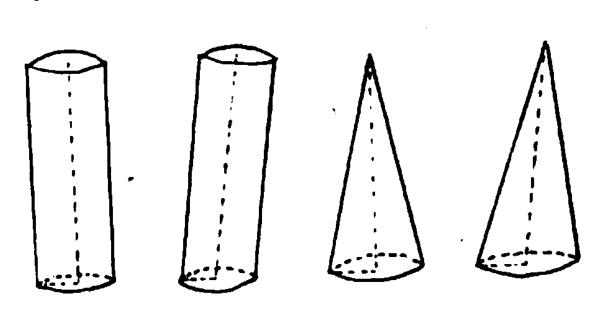
58-61

58. Al-manshur. A prism has for its sides three surfaces, square or rectangular, and two triangles, one above and one below. Sometimes the squares THE PRISM may be replaced by rhombs and the rectangles by rhomboids.

of which are joined by the axis of the cylinder, which is the shortest line between these two points, while the side is the shortest line between their circumferences. It is generated by the rotation of a line perpendicular to the circumferences of the two circumferences.

where the axis is not perpendicular to the ends. The top and bottom of a column need not oblique cylinder is one top and bottom of a column need not and equal figures, such as two triangles or two squares or other many-sided figure, mudalla.

61. Al-makhrut. A cone is a solid whose base is a circle or other figure, from which it diminishes to a point. It may be regarded as a cylinder THE CONE tapered from the base, the one end remaining as before, the other, the point, being the centre of the circle above. If the cylinder is a right cylinder the cone is a right cone, if oblique, oblique.

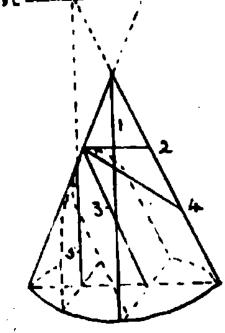


مركز الأحرب المجالة والمركة طالعام ماسة فإنكات المراكة وطا Cle las العاعن

A cone is always the third part of a cylinder [having the same base and altitude]. The axis, sahm, of the cone is the straight line from the vertex to the centre of the base; and the side, the straight line from the vertex to the circumference of the base.

of the base, producing a circle, [smaller than the base];

the third, parallel to a side, resulting in a parabola, mukāfi. If the plane of section, the fourth, is not parallel to the side of the cone, but meets the side within the cone towards the base, and when produced emerges there, the section is an ellipse, nāqiş; while if it meets it towards the vertex and emerges there, the section, the fifth, is a hyperbola,



These are the only sections of the cone, unless it is oblique, in which case the plane of section, although not parallel to the base may still produce a circle if adjusted to the axis.

63. Al-kurah. A sphere is a rounded body bounded by one undivided surface; within it is a point, the centre,

THE SPHERE lines which reach the surface are equal. If you imagine a circle rotating on its own diameter which remains stationary,

¹ PL and PP have niz for tir.
2 PP has magrit throughout and drops a line describing the parabola.

³ should read: - while if, instead, it intersects the base and when produced towards the vertex reaches the side of the second cone (as in P and above) it is a hyperbola etc.

فابمآ وإنصات ملله سيخ وطرآ ما بلاوم المالت اسطوائد وسهم المروط على اسد احدث في المنهط مثلثاً ستقيم المسلاع وانض فمجدع لح موأداه فاعره كاللطع داب وانقطهدعلى وأداه ضلع مز اسلاعد بسرالعطع مساف युक्त الله المنات لموازالسطح العاجع للنبلع ترافطع ماضا وانلق ميرج غيالم اذال خرج البدسي لفطع ذابعاً وكا لمروط فطع عبر هن المنوط للباطانة أذا قطع عسطيعبرموان للساعين مادات دواباه معروابا الساعي كالمطهرابساداب ماالحكوه وجهم سندم بمطر وسطح واحديم مستقم الحالم

on its own diameter which remains stationary, until the circle has come back to the point from which it started, a sphere has been described.

64. Bi kam shakl tuhit al-kurah. How many figures (polyhedra) can be inscribed within a sphere? When the

POLYHEDRA and equiangular and all equal and of one IN A SPHERE kind, only five [the five (Platonic) regular bodies]; and these five are re-

lated by resemblance to the four elements and the sphere. When, however, the faces are of various kinds, there is no limit to the number.

with regard to the five referred to; these are, first, the cube, bounded by six squares, called earthy; second, the icosahedron, by twenty equilateral triangles; it is the watery one; third, the octahedron, by eight equilateral triangles, the airy body; fourth, the tetrehedron, by four equilateral triangles, the prickly body, hassaki, fiery; and fifth, the dodekahedron, by twelve [equilateral and equiangular] pentagons, [the sphere].

of the sphere and divides it into two hemispheres; it has two poles equidistant from the centre. If it is desired to draw a circle on a plane surface about a centre, the compass must be opened to the extent of a radius. Similarly, to describe from a pole a great circle on a sphere, the compass must be opened to the extent of the sphere, the side of a square inscribed in the circle.

The plane of a small circle, on the other hand, does not pass through the centre of the sphere; it divides the sphere into two unequal parts, and in consequence the distances from its centre to the poles of

l It will be observed that paragraphs 1-64 are substantially from the definitions of the first six, and the 11th and 12th books of Euclid.

2 The Persian rendering.

الالط الميط بعامساء بو وسون حوالك ومزادان داره والمعلم وفات الانعود العنبعالاول بكرشكا عبط الحير فنجوز عربح وده ولأسرون المصعب ذفيت فواعدم تعات وسم ارضيا والماند ذوالعسن فاعده متساوبات الاصلاع وهوالمآى والنائد والماز فهاعد شلمان كالك رهوالهواي والرابع للمنكح والاربح فواعد ملات وهوالماري الكاسرفكالمناعشفاعاه مخسات ماالدوا بوالعيط اموالسغاق مذاانما متاك الني على طح الدوم مالدابس العظم علما على ترسطي تهد الكرم منها بمعنى ويدى لطاع حمداً قطان بنساو ي الم عمله حازاله والربحط فالسطوح المستغيد على زاحره المربع العافع فيها والمالاه الرالسف أدفع الولا بمرسطها على مرعيز المدينة المالاء على المدينة المالان عنها الدرعية المدينة الما منها الدرعية المدينة ال

the sphere are unequal. All great circles on a sphere are of equal size, being the largest possible on the sphere. The dimensions of small circles, on the other hand, are not only less than those of great circles, but are unequal in size, and vary from what is just less than a great circle to the smallest possible size.

sphere, in view of the fact that they are all of the same dimension, and cut the sphere PROPERTIES OF into two halves, necessarily intersect THESE CIRCLES each other because their being parallel or independent is absolutely excluded. They cut each other into halves at two opposite points, and whenever one great circle passes through one of the poles of a second great circle, [it necessarily passes through its other pole] and if perpendicular to it, cuts it at right angles; likewise the second passes through the poles of the first.

The area of a great circle is quarter of the area of the sphere on which it is described, and in accordance therewith, when the diameter is multiplied into the circumference, the area of the surface of the sphere results.

with regard to small circles on a sphere, in view of the fact that their dimensions are less than those of great circles, and that they offer an uninterrupted sequence in decrease of size from these, they may be parallel to each other and to great circles, and may be cut into halves or unequal divisions by other circles great or small. They cannot be described by opening a compass to the side of an inscribed square, as in the case of great circles, but by different measures.

67. Qutb we minwar. We have already referred to the poles of a sphere from the point of view of drawing a great circle thereon; the pole POLE AND AXIS represents here the centre of a circle drawn on a plane surface. But we also speak of the poles of a sphere from the point of view

فالمنبزومة اذالعظام واحدلاند اعطم مابدى ويطسطرالعس معيف خواص من الروابر الدوابر البيف مالى على المن مراحانها وج مقاديها وتنسبها الكرسقا لمهر ون لانالواذي عالبابرفس بمسح اصلاوتعطع كالماحرة بيهما الاخرى بعف بعط تقطيز مقابليز وبهامن عظبه على طب اخري فامت على عودان عرب داب عظبه على طب داره عظبه مرّن من ابضاعلى طب الأولى ساحه مطاهاب العِلمي بع مساجه سطح الدع والألك اداخرب مظرها فيدودماجه نكسب بسطاكص وامااله وابرالم بعانالي الكع فلاعط لطمف إدرها على غدانا لعجم ودوام نساع ها بحز بهانة وادى تواني المبط ام وان فطع سمف برويسم في لمن في واجدم العطام الميغان وادارته اعلي طوالك ولابدون يعيصلح معا المحق العطب المان بحوز فطب الدان برجعه تعطبطها معنى مقام المرجعة تعطبطها معنى مقام المرجعة وتعالم المرجعة وتعالم المرجعة والمان بحوز فطب المامز الحالم المرجعة معنام المرجعة وتعالم المرجعة والمان المرجعة والمرجعة والمان المرجعة والمرجعة والمرجعة

of its movement, for then if it moves in its own place, revolving by itself, there are two points opposite each other which are obliged to remain stationary as in a turner's wheel, shahr al-kharrātin. The line joining these points, the axis, is also stationary while the sphere is revolving.

- is the great circle half-way between the two poles

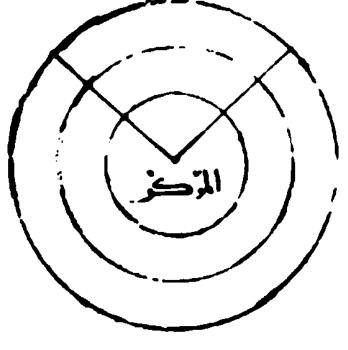
 of the movement of the sphere. On this

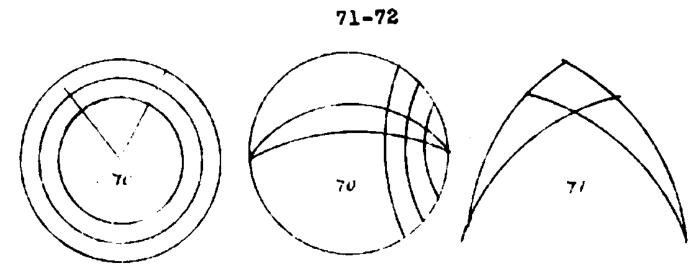
 EQUATOR OF account it is called mintagen, as re
 MOVEMENT sembling a girdle; this girdle revolves

 itself but its plane is not marked ex
 ternally. Other great circles, however, are then marked
 externally on the sphere, or sections of it like the
 hoop of a tembourine, shanbar al-daff.
 - 69. Madarat. Small circles on the surface of a sphere parallel to each other are called PARALLELS madarat.
- 70. Quel mutashābihah. Similar arcs on a plane surface are those which are intercepted between two straight lines proceeding from the centre of a series of concentric circles towards SIMILAR the largest of these. On the surface of a ARCS sphere, however, they are the portions of parallel circles intercepted between two great circles passing through the pole of these. Similar arcs are either all arcs of small circles or one may be an arc of a great circle; they are said to be similar because they are the same proportionate parts of the circles of which they are parts, whether on a sphere or on a plane surface. [If, for example, one is a third of its own circle, all the others are thirds of theirs.]

l charkh-i huqqagaran. P. Charkh is the ordinary
Persian word for a wheel, and occasionally appears as
jarkh in Arabic; v. Bocthor, Dict. Fr.-Arab. Vulg.
under 'roue', while 'tour' is as usual mikhratah. Shahr
(or jahr) is an unusual word for a lathe, but is noted
by Dozy; here by mistake, sahm.
2 Arabic form of chanbar P. Meaning of last sentence
obscure.

وذك اللحن اذاعرف بع مصلهاولستداد تعليمهااصطب السكون فطن علهام فالمبزع مع للزاطبز ويحوز الحطالوام الغط بزاب اساحندمع دفرازال عروسم عوذ آمام فلفد للد والواره العظبه الى وسط فبلي لمركد و لهذا سمن منطف و في فيدم علىفها الابرسم سطيها عبريفسع فاماسا بزالاه ابرالعط ام فأنها ترسم منيذاماالح مساواما قطع إمنها سنبية بشنيز لكرفط المراوات وللعابرالمسفاذ المتواذب على ماالفسي المنست إمهداما عالل عبد المستقبره فتى العشى من العابد الى نعم فيها بز حلين ستعمير فأشبغ مزحزماال فيطلبا والماعلي طرالك فبحالف مزالموانه فعابز حارب عطبه بنت فللعبز على فطب السوازم الفسى المسامه اماان بكون لهامزد وابن مغان واماان بكون فهاواجن فعلمن إدعظهم وسمن مستابع ملان بنهاال وارها مدولها





71. Shakl al-quta. A spherical transversal figure results, when of four arcs of great circles intersecting each other, each two unite in one 'SECANT FIGURE' point; as when the points of the middle fingers of each hand are in contact, and the points of the index fingers are brought against the middle joints of the opposite middle fingers, as in the diagram.

In view of the fact that geometrical propositions make use of Arithmetic in the sciences of Astronomy and Astrology, we shall proceed in the first place to describe the properties of numbers.

ARITHMETIC

applied. Complete in itself it does not admit of being added to or subtracted from, nor is it altered one in substance from its original condition by multiplication or division. It has the powers of all numbers and all the properties pertaining to these, and has in addition a special technical function to discharge with regard to things which are numbered. In this sense it occupies an intermediate position between the higher numbers, which result from the continuous addition of units, and the lower fractions into which it may be divided, and differs fractions into which it may be divided, and differs from both in that it does not alter by being multiplied or divided by itself, whereas the former are respectively

The spherical transversal proposition was of fundamental importance in the evolution of spherical trigonometry; al-Biruni develops it in the Mas udi Canon, and wrote a separate work on the subject. V. Björnbo, Thabit's Werk of the den Transversalensatz, Erlangen, 1924, p. 84.

باولاوصف الإعداد ما الماجد موالذي منم بالوجن وموالت أمراله ب الاجواده فبجميع لواحقها فغنع الصاحال الواجع للصطلع علبه فالمعدودات وهوه المف فيابزال بالما كاصله مزيل عدوبن المناعن دونه معالى المعالى المنعب في المال المعالى المنعب في المال المعالى المنعب في مناه او في معالى المعالى المنعب في مناه او في معالى المعالى المنعب في مناه او في معالى المعالى المنعب في مناه او في مناه او في معالى المناه في المناه المناه في المناه في

72-75

respectively increased or diminished, and the latter diminished or increased by these processes while one occupies its own position between the two.

73. Kaif yatajaza'a al-wahid wa ila kam juz'. Although 'one' is in reality indivisible, nevertheless the unit, one as a technical expression, employed in dealing with sense-objects, SUBDIVISION whether by weighing, measuring by bulk, OF ONE or length or number, or merely in thought, is obviously capable of sub-division, tajzi'ah, for as a technical expression one only means unity, wahdaniyyah In the science of Astronomy the unit employed is the degree, darajah, it is divided into sixty parts, smaller, adagg, than the first and these are called minutes, dagarig, on this account. This method of division is oustomary in dealing with money, the dirham is divided into sixty fulus, 2 and in mensuration, the jarlb3 has sixty rashir. Again these minutes are divided into sixty seconds, (the second time of division) and the second into sixty thirds and the thirds into sixty fourths, and so on for the whole series of natural numbers as far as the arithmetician desires in any particular case.

74. "Adad. A number is defined as a sum of units: one is therefore excluded from the category of numbers NUMBER and is not called a number.

75. Al- adad al-tabilyyah. The natural series of numbers results from the successive addition of a unit to one and is, therefore also known NATURAL NUMBERS as mutawall, consecutive, like 1, 2,3,4,5.

l For muhal read mujalla. 2pishIz P:v.Wied. Beitr. XIV.

3 Jarib, a measure of corn and of land sown therewith,

3,600 sq.cubits. The "ashIr, 60 sq.cubits is one-tenth

of a qufiz, which, therefore, is here one-sixth of a

jarib. Gari P is any standard of measure, also of time,

jarib. Gari P is any standard of measure, also of time,

as in India ghari, 21 minutes, 1/60 of 24 hours.

The fifths u to the tenths are specified, khawamis,

sawadis sawabir, thawamin, tawasir, awashir, all on

measure fawafil instead of the usual affal.

بهماد فأناتذاد بالنكب رتناقس بالقيترولاك تغدالا المتحاء غانيا تتناض المنتم وتزداد بالتسهة والواحد على المتناسلها كن فني الماحدوالي كم خود الواحد المحتسقي غير متجروا غا الواحد المستعلية المحسى ات واحد بالاصطلاح سواء كان واذنا او كايلاً اوذارعًا اومقدورًا مومومًا فعال ان يتبل الواحدي غنيروان يتكثر بالقسمة ناما الواحد المصطلح على حد اينته فاند مسفرمناعة التينيم ستيرج زواادت من الاول ومي عندهم وتموما لذلك دقايق وذلك جمحتط العادة فى صمة الديم يدنين طسا والجهب بستيرع شيك تعرفتم المتابق الدعابق بسين ثانية اى مَنَّ ثَانِيةٌ والنَّانِية بستين ثالثةً والنَّالَة بستن راينةً وككى مذا مًا بمرّد مُعامِن الخواس والسّوادس والسّواج والتّحاص التّحام والتّحام والتّ والمواشروما ورآوذ لك من ميات الاعلاد المتوالية غيرمناهية بالطبع الااذااحب الجاسب الوفزف عند بعضها ما العدد هوج اعتر مركبة مناحاد ولذلك اخرج الواحد منجلها فلم سيم عدد اما الاعداد الطبيعية مى الناشية من عند الواحد المنزايي بواحد و تسمى ايضامتوا

- 76. Zawi. Even numbers are those which are divisible into equal parts, i.e., halves; the first of these is two, and the successive even numbers are 2, EVEN 4,6,8,10,etc.
- 77. Fard. Odd numbers are those not so divisible, except by making use of a fraction; the first is three and the successive odd numbers 3,5,7,9,11, ODD etc.
- 78. Zawi al-zawi. Evenly-even numbers are those which can be divided into halves, and each half into halves, and so repeatedly until the EVENLY-EVEN quotient is one.
- 79. Zawj al-fard. Unevenly-even numbers are those which admit once of division by two yielding an odd number as quotient, not one, like UNEVENLY-EVEN ten.
- 80. Zawj al-zawj wa'l-fard. Evenly-even-odd numbers are those which admit of being divided into halves more than once, but the division EVENLY-EVEN-ODD does not extend so far as to yield a quotient of one, like twelve.
- 81. Fard al-fard. Oddly-odd numbers are those which are divisible by an odd number with an odd number as quotient; such as nine, into which ODDLY-ODD three enters thrice, or fifteen, into which five enters thrice and three five times.
- which has no other factor than unity, and no fraction except that resulting from division by PRIME NUMBER itself and called after itself, like five, in which one is contained five times, and of which fifths are the only fractions; or like seven, of which one is the seventh part, sevenths the only fractions, and into which no other number enters without remainder.
 - 83. Ma al- adad al-murakkab. A composite number

مثل ١١٦ م ١ ما الزوج موالدد المنتم بسمين مناطير اعنى في مناطير اعنى في مناطير اعنى في مناطير اعنى في مناطير المناح موالاتنان وتكون الازواج المتوالية ١٩٢٨ ما ما النزد موالعدد الذولاينيسم تبنين الايذكوكم كمعه واوللافاد موالثلثة وتكون الافراد المتوالية ، و ١٩ ١١ ما زوج النجعوا لذى فيتم بنصنين ونصنه بنصنين مكذلك دايماالان ينتهى لل الحاحد ماذوج النسرد عوالذى مب التنبيث من واحن ولا ينهق الحالواحدوذلك مشلالعش ماروج الزقب والغرج موألذى بتبدل لتضمف اكثمن من ولاينهم سلك الواحد وذلك مثل الاننى عشرما وزد العرد موالذ ين عدد فرد بعدد فرد وذلك شل التسعة فان المكثة بعد عائلت مراب وسلالمنة عشرفان المنة تعدما ثلث مراب واثلة معد خس تات ما العدد الاولد مالذى لا يعن عيرالواحدولا يكون له غيرالجزم السي له مشل الخسسة فلا يعد ما عدد عيرالوا حد خمس مرات وبكون ميالمااعن خساوليس لهاجرة غيرا كمنرو كالسمة فالواحد سبعهاسي لها ولايعدها عين ولذلك كابن لهاسوي التبع ما العدد المركب موالّذي بعن عدد ان اواكنّ ويكون له اجزاً، غير

83-85

has more than one factor, and has fractions other than
those bearing the same name, like
composite number six, in which one is contained six
times, two three times, and three
twice, the corresponding fractions being a sixth, a third
and a half.

number is that which results from the multiplication of one number by another. If the two one numbers are the same the result is a square, murabba, and one of the two numbers multiplied, its root, jidhr. For example, if three be multiplied by three the product, nine, is a square, the root of which is three. If the two numbers differ by one, the plane number is said to be altered, ghayri; this is the case with twelve which is the product of three and four, while if they differ by more than one the result is a rectangular number, mustatil.

Twelve is also an example of a rectangular number, for it is the product of two and six, a difference of four between them, and so from one point of view it is ghayri, and from another mustatil.

85. We el-aded al-mutammam. When the root of a square number is multiplied by the root of another square number, the product is a complete number, mutammam, because the sum of the two squares plus twice the complete number yield another square number, whose root is the sum of the two roots in question.

For example six is a complete number, being the product of two by three, the roots of four and nine, and twelve added to the sum of these squares gives twenty-five, whose root is five, the sum of two and three.

The plane numbers are important because the ancients in multiplication considered the factors as lines, the products as planes. Wiedemann.

ميه وذلك مثل لتة فان الحاحديين ست مرات فيكون سدسه والاثنان بيد المرتلث مرات ومهاثله والثليثة تعذه مرتين فعيضعنه ما العدد المسطح موالجستم من تضعيف عَدْدٍ بِعَدْدٍ فان تناط كان مباً وسماحد ذانك المددين حذرًا لموذ لك شلالتليز افاضعنت بثلثة إجنم تسعة فان التسعم بع والثلثة جذن وان تغناضل لعدد ان بواحد سمى المجسمم منها غيرها وذلك شل الاشاعش فانه مجستم من تنعيف الثلثة بالارب فا وبينه مأواحد وان تفاضل المددان باكترس واحد سي المجتم منها متطيلًا وذلك شل التناعش فانتر مجستم من تضعيف الانتين بالتتة وبيفا ادبعة والاثناعش منجعية عيرى ومنجعية متعليك ما العدد المتم موما عمل من تصعيف جذر مربع آخلان مجموع عذين المربس م بسمف المتم مرتب أنا لثاجدن مجسوع جذرى المرتبين وشالران الادسة مرتبجذن اثنان وتسعة مرتبع جذن ثلثة فاذا ضي عن كلثنان باللثة اجتمع ستة وعوالمتم لان ضعف وعوا شاعشى ع محوع المرتبين وهوستعش كون حسة وعشرب وهوم بعجدن خسندما الاعراد

86-89

86. Ma al-a'dad al-mushtarakah. These are numbers like 15,25,30, which share (sharaka) a common factor other than one, for each of them is dinumbers with visible by five without remainder, and common factors shares in having the fraction called after five viz. a fifth. And these fifths have a definite relation to each other and to the numbers themselves, for the fifth of fifteen is three-fifths of the fifth of twenty-five, and the fifth of twenty-five is five-sixths of the fifth of thirty. The number which is shared by them, the common factor, is called wafq, and when they have all been divided by it, the quotients are styled matwiyyat.

87. Ma al-a'dad al-mutabayinah. These are numbers like seven and ten, which have no common factor other than one, and do not share in other SEPARATE NUMBERS particulars. They are therefore spoken of as separate numbers.

88. Ms al-radad e1-tamm. A perfect number, tamm, is one the aliquot parts of which being added together yield the number in question, like PERFECT NUMBER six; for half of six is three and a third two, and a sixth one, all of which being added together make, six.

number, nagis, is one the fractions of which added together amount to a sum less than the
number in question, like eight; for
ABUNDANT NUMBERS its half, four; and its fourth,
two; and its eighth, one; amount
to seven, less than the eight itself.

An abundant number on the other hand, zā'id, is one whose component fractions amount to more than the number itself, like twelve; for its helf, six; and its third, four; and its fourth, three; and its sixth, two; with its twelfth part, one, add together to sixteen.

المشتركة مى الى بعيد عاجيها عدد واحد غيرا لواحد وذلك سئل ١١٤٦ ، والمنسة تعد المنافع إذا تشرك بالجزا لتى للخسة وحوالمنس عنى ان ككل واحدٍ منها خسا والمخاسه ايتم بمضها مند بعض مقام تلك الاعلادا نسنها فانخس لاآ بكون ثلة الحاس خس ٢٩ وخس ٦٩ بكون خسة اسلاس مس وتتي لعد المشترك ألذى بعد ها مفتابينها واذا فتم مسكل ملحد عليه ميت الخارجات من المتمة مطوية ما الاصاد المتايد مى ألى لا يوجد عده سيدما شل لسبعة والعشق فانترلابعدهما معاغيرالولعد ولايسر في جني ما العدد النَّام موالذي بساوير مجوع اجزابر مثل لنبَّة فان له نصفًا من وثلثا من وسدسًا موا وجلة ذلك سنة ما العد الزّايدوالنّا قص امّا النّا قس فهوالذى نقص عنه مجموع اجزأبُه مشل لتمانية فان لهانسنًا صم ودبعًا عدا وثمنًا من آوج عما سبعة المآمن ننس لمثانية والماالزايد فهو الذى ينصل عليه محوع اجزاب مشل الاثن عشرفات له نصفًا عن و دب اعر وثلثا عن م وسدشاه وسوا من اشخ عشره والمجيدي استدعش كثرم ننس

90-91

90. Mn al-a ded al-mutahabbah. These are any two numbers, the fractions of one of which being added together are equal to the other number.

AMICABLE NUMBERS ber. One of each such pair is always abundant, the other deficient.

An example of such a pair is furnished by 220 and 284.

The former is an abundant number; its fractions are:-a half, 110; a quarter, 55; a fifth, 44; a tenth, 22; a twentieth, 11; a hundred and tenth, 2; a twenty-fifth, 4; a forty-fourth, 5; a twenty-second, 10; an eleventh, 20; and a two hundred and twentieth, 1; which numbers being added together make 284.

The other number of the pair is a deficient number; its fractions are: - a half, 142; a quarter, 71; a hundred and forty-second, 2; and a two hundred and eighty-fourth, 1. These add up to 220, and the numbers of this pair are therefore called amicable numbers.

solid numbers result from the multiplication of one number by another and the product solid NUMBERS by a third. If the three numbers are all alike, the product is a cube, muka reb and one of the three, the cube-root, karb. Sometimes this name is given to the cube itself, in which case the root is spoken of as a side, dilr.

For example, if three is multiplied by itself and the product again by three, the result is 27. This is the cube, muka **b, and the cube-root, ka*b, 3; or the cube, ka*b and its side dil*, 3. If two of the three numbers are alike, and the third smaller, the result is

الاعدالما بد وكل عدب كون محمع اجزاءالم ساديا للآخعيكون دا يكاسعما ذايكا وأيآخرنا فسكاوذ للصنور ومعود ذا يدلمس الاجزا نصف وعوملا وربع وعلى لا لا وخس وعوعم وعش وعوالا وبصف عشره عوا وجروش ماية وعشى عوا وجروش خسة وخسين عوعم وجؤومن اربعة وأدبعين عو لآ وجزمن الني عشرياف وآوجز من احد عشرهى ٢٠ وجزء من مائى وعشري موآ وجوع من البزاء م ٢٨ وذلك موالعدد الآخوالناقس لان له نصعًا عوم ١٣ وربعًا عوالا وجزامن ماية والمين والبين عولا وجزء من احد وسبعين عمرة وجزوا من مايتي وادبيته عمانين موآ ومجسوع عذ الاجزاء مهذان العددال أذا تغابان ماالاعداد الجستة مى الاعداد الحاصلة من تضعيف عدد بآخروما اجتع بدد ثالث فان تساوت عن الاعدا د اللثة مي المجتمع منها مكتبًا واحد من الاعداد الثلثة كمب ودتمامي المجستع كعبًا واحد المثلثة ضلعه شال ذنك الآلمئة اذاض عنت بثلثة اجمع تسعة مان نسعنت من ثانية شلثة احمرتسعة فان صعفت من ثانية بثلثة اجمعت سعة وعشري عق مكب كعبد تلنة اوموكع ضلعه ثلثه وان تساوى اثنان س المث الاعلاد

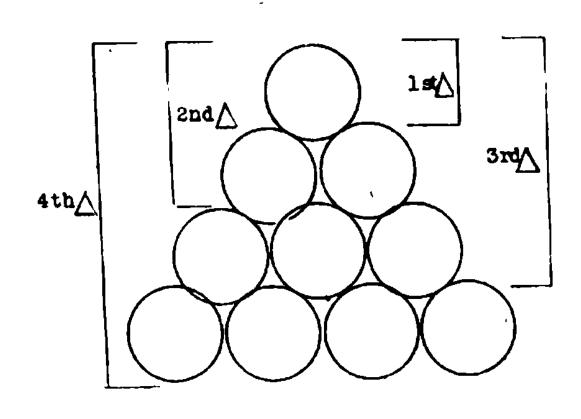
91-92

like a brick, library. For example; I multiply the three by three and the product, 9, by two, the resultant eighteen is a library number. On the other hand if the third number is larger, the result is known as tirry resembling tir, the main beam of a house, P or judhu, the trunks of trees.

For example; I multiply the three by three and the product by four, the result is thirty-six, a tiriy number. Should all the numbers be different the result is a lauhiy number, [lauh, a table;] for example; I multiply the three by four and the product by five making sixty; this is a lauhiy number.

92. Ma al-a dad al-muthallathah al-mutawaliyah.
Successive triangular numbers result from the summation
of consecutive natural numbers
TRIANGULAR NUMBERS beginning with one. They are
called by the Hindus sankalita.

One which has the powers of all the numbers, is the first triangle; one added to two makes three, the second triangle; the third triangle, six, is formed by the addition of one, two and three; while the fourth, ten, is the sum of one, two, three and four; and so further on this analogy. The figure is intended to show the relation of the triangles.



الملتة وكانالثالث اصغرتي لحبتم لبنيا ثبيها باللبنة مثاله انااصغنا ثلة بثلث تم اضعنناا لتسعد باثنين فاجتم عانية عشره موعدد لبخان كانالثالث اعظم مى الجسقع تبرما شبيها بالجذوع مثاله اناا خااضعفنا ا لنلة بثلث والنسّعة باربعية فاجتع سسّة وثلوْن وموحدد تيري وان اختكنت الاعلادا للذتن المجتم منها اوجاشا لدانا اخااضعننا الملة بالآد فاجتع انخصن ثم اصعننا حابخسة فبلغ شين وعوعدد لوحى ما الاعداد المشلثة المتمالية ميجوع الاعداد المتمالية منعنه المواحل التيتني بالمندير سنكلت مثالهان الواحد مومثلث بالتتى لأناقلناان في جميع الانتياء والمثلث المانى عموع آس وذلك ثلث والمثلث الما لنجيع يقتوجاله المثلات انان

93-94

93. Mā al-ardād al-murabbarah al-mutawāliyah.

Successive square numbers are arrived at by the summation of successive odd numbers.

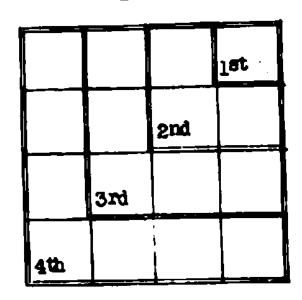
SQUARE NUMBERS One is the first square, which with the addition of three yields four, the second square, the product of two by two.

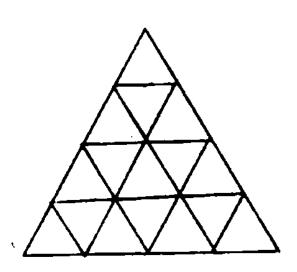
By adding five to four we have the third square, nine, the square of three, which with the addition of seven gives sixteen the fourth square, four by four.

The figure verifies the foregoing.

of Me al-a'dad al-makhrutiyyah. Conical numbers are obtained by the summation of successive triangular numbers; they are called by the Hindus sankalita. The first cone is one, to which the second triangular number three being added gives four, the second conical number. With the addition of six, the third triangular number, we have ten, the third conical number, [and by adding ten, the fourth triangular number].

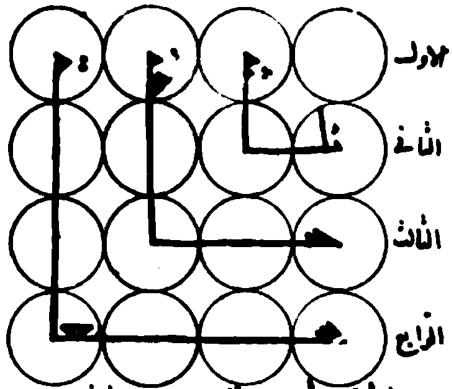
The figure 1 facilitates the conception of these.



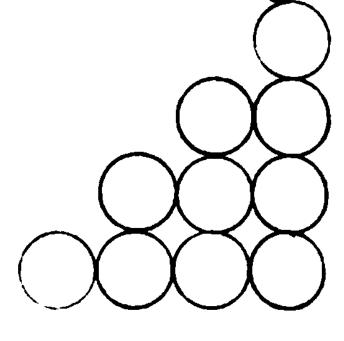


lall the MSS reproduce this figure which when completed is evidently a summation of the odd numbers as seen in the successive squares. One MS gives an elegant conical figure here reproduced, which however, like the other has the numbers 1,3,5,7 instead of 1,5,6,10.

ما المدد المرتبة المتوالية مع جمع الافراد المتوالية بالمرتبع الافراد موالوامد فازيد عليه م المبتع المبتع المبتع المناف الحاصل من تنسيف النين بانين وا ذا ذيد على الا دبعة كه احتم تسعة وموالم في المنالث الحاصل تنبعيث فلذ ومن عن المستون تيقيق ذ المستسسس



مالاعداد المخ وطسة مجبع المثلّات الموّالية وتسى بالهندية منكلت فالواحد موالمخ وط الاول وجبوع المثلّات وص ادبعة موالمخ وط مائنًا في ويجبوع المع وص ادبعة موالمخ وط مائنًا في ويجبوع المعمود ويجبوع المعمو



95-98

95. Mā al-a'dād al-ahrāmiyyah. Pyramidal numbers are piled up like the arrangement of the weights of a balance, one above the other, the PYRAMIDAL smaller uppermost, like steps and stairs. When the steps have the same height like successive squares, as l,4,9,16,25, the sum is called by the Hindus varga sankalita; when different, like successive cubes, ghana sankalita, 1,8,27,64.

The properties of numbers and the technical terms applied to them seem to be interminable just as numbers are; we shall, therefore, proceed to mention some of the processes in which they are used.

96. Mā al-hisāb. Arithmetic is the treatment of numbers and their properties in solving problems by way of addition and subtraction, i.e.

ARITHMETIC increases and decreases.

97. Mā al-darb. Multiplication is the taking one of two numbers and adding together so many fold? of itself as there are units in the other MULTIPLICATION number. For example, if we wish to multiply five by seven, this is equivalent to adding seven fives, the sum of which is thirty-five; similarly the addition of five sevens gives the same result; for the meaning of our expression five by seven is the amount of five taken seven times or seven taken five times.

a single share, hissah, [bahr P,] of a quantity, the dividend, al-maqsum, which has to be DIVISION divided into a certain number of parts by the divisor, al-maqsum ralaihi. Such share is called the quotient, qism.

For example, I have to divide thirty-five, the dividend, by seven the divisor. Let us call the dividend

3 ted if is not confined to doubling, but extends to trebling, four-folding, etc.

¹ The MS has 8 for 9.
2 The MSS have <u>nazk</u> or <u>tark</u>. <u>Sankalita</u> means addition; varga, square; ghana, cube.

مالاعداد الامرامية مى المتراكمة علىثا لدون خات الميران بعضها فوق بعض اصغرها فوق الاعظر حتى يكون كالدّرجات والماقى فتوكانت الذرجات منساميرالتمك فانرمجوع المرتبات الموالا شلآم مم مم العلمي ول سنكل بالهندية ومتحانت الدرجات مختلفة فانرمجسوع المكتبات المتوالية مثل آخ ١٦ أم ٢٧ ثمم ويسى الهندية كمن سنكلت بخاص الاعداد والقابها تكاد تكون فيرئتنا عيبة فقدل الى ما يستعمل منه ما الحساب عومن اولدالاعداد وخواصها فحاستغراج المطالب بنوعى الجسم والتغزيق اعنى بالزبادات والنعضانات ماالضرب موتضيب احدالمدد مرات تساوى اطاد الاخرساله انآارد ناضرب خسيخ في سعير فاما ان تضعف الخسة سبع مرّات فتكون خسة وثلثين وامّا التضعف التبعيز خس مرات فتكون فنست ونلين لان مسى قولنا حسة في سعير كرموخسة سع مراتي ادكرسبعة خسى مات ما المنتمذ مواخراج حسة ولعد المنسوم عليه من المنسوم وتسى عن الحصر قما شالم انا تنتهمنة وللين وهى المسوم على بعير وهوا لمنسوم عليه ولنم المسوم

99-101

a sum of money, mal, and the divisor a number of men, the share of each man will be five and this is the quotient.

multiplied by the same number the product is the

square, mal, of that number, the opera
SQUARE AND tion, squaring, being called tamwii.

SQUARE-ROOT For example, if seven be multiplied by
seven the product, forty-nine, is the

square of seven. Taidhir on the other hand, is the
ascertaining of the number which, when multiplied by
itself, will give the square in question, in this case
the number seven. This is called the root, jidhr or
asl, because the side of the square, dil', is the
original dimension to which it is related.

rational, muntag, and irrational or surd, asamm, roots; the former, known also as mantug bihi, RATIONAL AND mutlag, maftuh [and nātig], can be ergured ROOTS pressed in whole numbers, like three in relation to nine, or four in relation to sixteen, but the latter cannot be so expressed. It is impossible, for instance, to find a number which multiplied by itself will yield ten, and the effort to do so merely ends in a surd root, called asamm, because there does not exist any method of arriving at it except approximately.

tak'ib, is multiplying it by itself and the product by the original number; the result is a cube, muka'ab. For example, three cube-ROOT multiplied by three gives nine, and nine multiplied by three gives twenty-seven. The extraction of the cube-root, tadli; is the finding of the number which after being so treated

I delete sittah

² MS has aidan.

³ fl mithlihi is omitted.

مالاوالمتسوم عيبه رجاكا فتكون حستة التجل الواحد من ببن اللا لخستر معالمتم ما التوبل والجتزب التوبله وضهب المدد فعشله كالطختع مذلك ينى مالامثل المتبعد فانها اذا ضرب فى سبعد اجتم تسعة واربيون وهوالمال واما المتذير فعواسخزاج العدد الذى حصل الماك من من من من من من التبعث التبعث التعمل المتعد والادبعون من مربها فشلها دبي مذاالعدد بذكاى اصلالان مناع المال عاصله آ الذى ينب اليه ما الجذر المنطق والجذرالاصم المنطق ما يكي أطئ بعيتت ويتجابضا منطوقا برومطلتا ومنتوكا مثلا لثلثة للتسعد وأثخاذ لتة عشرواما الاسم فأنه مالا يمكن ان بنعلى برمثل بدر المنتى فستنعان يوجدعدد اذاض بفاشله اجتع ستدعش ومتى ايشالا تركا يجتلعب الذى بيلبه فيجبن الأبالتغرب ماالتكي والتضليع التكيب مى نهب العدد في شلرما اجتمع في ذلك المعدد لان المجتمع من المثبي مكتباشل اللاثة فانهاا ذاصرت في الثَّلَّة تُمِّدُ ثلثة احتم سنة وعشري وعوالمكتب واماالتمنلع فهوا سخزاج المدد الدى مسل

101-104.

gives the cube in question, in this case the three whose cube is twenty-seven. This number is called the side of the cube, dil. Sometimes it is called kab, but by the people generally the cube itself is known as kab for short, so we are constrained to name the root dil instead of kab to avoid ambiguity.

takhattī, is used in extracting the square or cube root.

You neglect one or more ciphers, and

TRIAL AND [assume an approximate value for the unknown quantity] saying in the case of the square root, yakūn, lā yakūn, yakūn, tit is, it is not, it is;] and in that of the cube root, yakūn, lā yakūn, lā yakūn, yakūn. Some people instead of yakūn say ya'ti - it will give (the answer) - until the last position is arrived at, which satisfies all the ciphers.

103. Mā al-mukhraj. The denominator of a fraction is the number of the parts into which the integer is divided, and the fraction is less than DENOMINATOR that number. Take for instance, the three of a third, for the latter is one part of the integer if that is divided into three parts. So also two-thirds are two of these parts. Similarly four stands in the same relation to a fourth, as does five to a fifth. The denominator should always be the smallest in which the fraction can be expressed, for two-tenths and three-fifteenths are each of them one-fifth, and while there is no limit to higher terms, there is to the lowest, wherefore the latter are preferable.

fractions homogeneous, tajnis, the integer must be multiplied by the denominator of the REDUCTION fraction and the numerator added to the sum, so that the whole is now of one kind. For example, three and a quarter may be expressed as three wholes and one of four parts of a whole; to make them homogeneous we must multiply the wholes by the denominator, four, making twelve fourths to which

I So vocalized in Elias' Eng.-Arab. Dict. Magam is the usual expression for denominator, as is bast for numerator, and mukhraj really refers to the lowest terms in which a fraction can be expressed. v. Dict. Sci. Terms.

والميشرون منضربها فالثلثة مرين وبيم هنا المعد ضلع المصعب عبا ينكبئا ومن الناس من بني المكتب للقنيف كعبئا فنضطر إلى تعمية كيبه ضلمًا ليلابشب ما الضطى موتل مهة اورات المخراج الجنودو فينال يكون لايكون كوق الجذبر وتيالي تسليع المكعب بكور لايكون كايكون ودتماميل مدل كون معلى تيمين بذلك المعطبة الاجمع فحالمات ما المخرج مواجزاً، الواحد المتعبر الى بنسب اليها الكيرالذي مواَّعل مها شر الثلثة التلث فانترجز فأواحدًا من العيم إذ اجسل ثلثة اجزاء وكذلك للكا جزآن منها ممثل الادمبت للربع والمنسة للخس ويكون المخرج اقل عد بصلح لفالت فان الانبن اين اخسر المشق والثلث خس المنسة عشى ولكى الكن غيرمه والافل عدود فيب ان يهنذ برما الجنيس موان كون صاح وكسو منسويتر الى مخرج مينه بالمخرجة فالقعاح وبزاد المبلغ على الكسي تتصيا كملة منجين ولعرر ومثاله ثلثة وربع وإثبالتر مكون للذ سحاح وجزمن اربعتر اجزاء من العقيع فاذا الدنا الجنس من المنت المتعام ف المخرج الذي المناعث في المخرج الذي المناعث وزدنا وعلى المكري في المنطق المناعث وزدنا وعلى المنطق المناعث وزدنا وعلى المنطق عشردبسًا وإيضاا ذاكانت كسودمستلفذ كان حبيها بالجنيس أسبين وثلث

104-105

there has to be added one fourth in all 15/4. Or if there are two different fractions such as 2/7 and 3/5, and you desire to add them, then the denominators must be multiplied, $7 \times 5 = 35$ which becomes the denominator for both fractions. Now 2/7 of 35 is 10 and 3/5 of 35 is 21, so that when these are added the combined fraction; rendered homogeneous become 51/35.

In the case of fractions in the sexagesimal scale used in Astronomy, such as minutes and seconds, thewanI, and whatever fractions are beyond these, when It is desired to make them homogeneous, the highest denomination must be multiplied by sixty, the next lower must be added to the product, and the operation repeated until the lowest is reached, and all are of the same denomination. [manzil. pl. manāzil]

For example; we have to make homogeneous three minutes, four seconds and five thirds, thaudlith, then $3' \times 60 = 180'' + 4'' = 184'' \times 60 = 11040''' + 5''' = 11045''' -$

one of the denominations of the sexagesimal system, more than sixty, we raise it to the next ASCENDING higher denomination by dividing it by REDUCTION sixty, and this operation is repeated until we have if possible only whole degrees.

For instance we have 11045 seconds which it is proposed to raise to a higher denomination. Divided by sixty we have 184 minutes and five seconds, and when this is repeated the result is 50 4.5.

In the table of contents of PL tarfl occurs under 105 PL. The term is a synonym of bardschtan-i 'adad under which title raf al-adad is discussed in PL 106. The numbering of the paragraphs readjusts itself, PL 108 being 107 & 8.
Wiedemann refers to this passage in Act. Oriental. V, 155, where he observes that Reduction is expressed by forms of hatt VII.

اخاى فانا اذا اردنا جمعا ضربنا المخرج في المخرج اعنى ستنفخ خسة فابع خسة وُلمُون وموا لمخرج لعسامعا ويكون التبعان منه عشى والمله كالمخا احدوعتمون ومجوعها احل وبلؤن وذلك جملمالتيعين والملئة الملخا مرجنرواحد وايضافاذا كانت كسودمن المستبنية التي يتعليف البيني التابية والموانى مادونها واردنا تجنيها ضهبا اعلاها في ستين وردنا المبلغ على الذي ينن من اسفل ترضى با المجتمع ايضافي بين وزدنا المبلغ على الذي لي ساسندالى الصخلعا الى اسفل منزلة فنكون ابحلة منحبنها مثالمان عند للائدة الى وادبع والحمس والت وارد ناتجنيها فاناص اللات دقايوت فيتين فيصيى ماية وغانين يزاد على ادبع ثوانى ويضه الجملة في سنين فيجتم احدعشمالف واربعين المنة ويزيدها على الخرالتوالث فيجتم احد عشرالمت وارسين المة ويزيدهاعل الخسر الثوالث بنجيم احدعش المنتوس والبين مالنة وذلك جله مكان عنذا مجعول نوالث ما رفع العدد متاجتم مناعدد في إحد المناذل السِّينيَّة اكنَّ من يِّن دفعنا والي المنزلز الرَّفِيَّا بالمتمرع ستين وياتزال تفعيل ذلك الحان تبلغ العماح ان أمكن ذلا فيها مثالم إن معنا احدعش المن وحنى وا دىبون ٹائىد وكايجوزان بكون ف

106-107

to their lowest terms of two numbers which share a common factor, by dividing each of REDUCTION TO them by their highest common factor, LOWEST TERMS wafq. For example if we have the two numbers seventy two and three hundred and sixty, seventy two is the wafq between them, divided by which, they yield one and five their lowest terms, and 1/5 is equal to 72/360.

107. Mā al-marātib al-ţabi'iyyah. When one is multiplied by any other number and the product multiplied repeatedly by the same number, there results a series of proportional NATURAL SERIES numbers the so-called powers of that POWERS product. The first power, martabah, after the one posited, is called the root; the second, the square; the third, the cube; the fourth, the square of the square; the fifth, the square of the cube; and the sixth, the cube of the cube; and so further on this analogy. The ratio of the one, with which we begin, to the root is the same as that of the root to the square, and of the square to the cube, and of the cube to the square of the square etc.

The example shows the first to the sixth powers of two and three.

Names of powers	One	lst Root jidhr	2nd Square <u>māl</u>	3rd Cube ka*b	4th Square × Square	5th Square × Cube	6th Cube × Cube
1 × 2	1	2	4	8	16	32	64
1 × 3	1	5	9	27	87	243	729

l The Persian expression is navardidan which is a translation of A. al-tayy, folding (into the smallest compass).

من لك اكر من منسون منسها على لنين فعير ما يروا دبعة وعانون حقية وسنحض نوانى ولان الدفايق اكترسن سين يسمها ايسا عليها فيخرج للذ مزالعاح وببى ادبع د مَا بِى والعماح وان كُرَّت فانْها لا رَّخ فنعصل معنابالغ نلشصل وادبع دقابي وخسرفاني ماالعلى مقتليل للذد المشتكين يسيركل واحدمنها على لحقف واقامه مايخ منها مقامهامثاله ان عندنا النان وسعون من ثلمًا يه دستين والوفي بينما النان وبون فاخا متناكل واحدمنها عليه خرج من كالأول واحد ومن المان خسد والواحد الخسد كالاثنين وسعين الثلفاية والستين فيعيم لواحد والمخسة مقامهما ماالمانب الطبيعية افاوضت ولعلامهم فعدما واخذت نعنب مايجمع والتعالي المدد حسلت اعدا دامتناسبة يتماقها بدالواحد الموضوع جذرا والمان ملاوالثالث كمباوالاابع مال مال والخامس مال كعب والساد كمب كعب وعلى ذالتياس فينظم البياق وكون نسبة الواحدا بذا الى الجد وكعنبت الجوز الحالمال وكنبة المال الحالكب وكنب ة الكحب الى مال المال وكنب مال المال الى مال الكعب وكنب خ مال الكعب الحكعب كعب المال ذلا في صنين من الاعداد احد معاماصل ما بنترب في النين والاخرال وينافر

108

grouping of numbers, depending on their relative position, used in the operations of DECIMAL NOTATION arithmetic, is one of the methods of arranging the separate numbers in multiplication and division. It is a decimal system and so the ratio between the various groups is based on the number ten.

The first group is that of the units from one to nine, advancing by one; the second, the tens, from ten to ninety, by ten; the third, the hundreds, from one hundred to nine hundred, by a hundred; and the fourth the thousands, from one to nine thousands.

This fourth group in so far takes the place of the units that the tens of thousands follow it in the same way as the tens follow the units, and the only difference between them is that the increment is by thousands.

Again when the actual position of a number in a particular group is established, it is invariably one-tenth of the number occupying the same position in the succeeding group.

Should any group lack a number, a sign is used to indicate the vacancy. We employ for this purpose a small circle, o, and call it a cipher, sifr, or zerol but the Hindus use a point,...

The accompanying figure illustrates numbers in their respective groups, indicated by the separate columns.

l Zero, as well as cipher, is derived from sufr, empty; cipher being afterwards extended to the nine digits. Carra de Vaux, Penseurs de l'Islam, II, 109, suggests that cipher in its other meaning is traceable to sifr, a book, or writing, with sin instead of şād.

B.	18.	YE4	10.	4	×	14	温道
496	٣٢	17	1	46	۲	J	المرسى
771	242	11	47	1	٢	3	الغرب في الم

كما المرانب الوضعيد

والمنتجلدة مزاوله للمناب وجلهد سروب المنهبه اذ الهدلاخ برباده المفروض المرب واقع على الجراء ملاكم المنتبه متحون بجابه المحاد والماله المناب ال

108-109

9	0	0	8	6	7	5	0	3	4	1	0	2
Billions	Hundreds of Milliards	Tens of Millards	Millards	Rundreds of Millions	Tens of Millions	M11110ns	Rundreds of Thousands	Tens of Thousands	Thousands	Hundreds	Tens	Units

If we desire to write this sum or to express it by word of mouth, we say nine thousand thousand thousand thousand thousand thousand, and six hundred and seventy-five thousand thousand, and thirty-four thousand and one hundred and two.

[Nine billion eight thousand six hundred and seventy-five million, thirty-four thousand one hundred and two]

different nature in the scales of a balance are in equilibrium, the scales remain parallel, the ALGEBRA tongue vertical and the beam level. It is obvious that if you take anything from one of the scales of one kind you must remove the like from the other both in kind and amount so as to preserve the equilibrium and the previous condition. Similarly, if you add anything to one scale you must add a like amount to the other.

Should there be a minus quantity on one side it is necessary to remove it and to restore the equilibrium by adding a like amount to the other side. This is the operation of jabr; for example, if we have on one side 100 dirhams minus 14 dinars and on the other 15 staters

l jabara; cf. Mujabbir, A bone-setter and Spanish Algebrista, El que profesa la álgebra, ó arta de concertar los huesos dislocados. (Cañes, Diet. Esp. Arab.)

فلااً دُوا حَبِهِ الْهِ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُناسَعِهِ الْمُسَالِفُ الْمُنافِ الْمُنافِقِ الْمُنَافِقِ الْمُنافِقِ الْمُنافِقِي الْمُنافِقِ الْمُنافِقِ الْمُنافِقِ الْم

109-110

staters of iron plus 12 dirhams, the operation of jabr eliminates the minus quantity and completes the 100 dirhams so that we have

100 dirhams = 13 staters - 12 dirhams + 14 dinars and if the same operation be carried out on the other side we have

112 dirhams = 13 staters + 14 dinars

When the operation of jabr has been concluded, we turn to that of <u>muqābalah</u> which consists in comparing things of the same nature, <u>mujanasāt</u>, which may be on opposite sides, and then deducting the smaller of these from both sides. For example:- if we have

112 dirhams - 13 staters + 12 dirhams

by deducting the last item we have

100 dirhams = 13 staters

with three elements: 1/a simple number unrelated to the others; 2/another number so related, simple mudaf, the root of a square number; and EQUATIONS 3/ the square number itself. In simple equations mufradat, these are associated in three different pairs: 1/roots equal to number; 2/squares equal to number; 3/squares equal to roots.2

l Gr. cratíp, A.istar, P.sitir. The stater = $\frac{41}{2}$ mithquis or dinars, and the dinar = 1.3/7 dirhams. The stater, therefore, is 6.3/7 dirhams. The equations above come out 7 and 7.7 respectively. For Arabic weights, see Wiedemann's account of these from M*U, Beitr.XXII, 304.

² e.g. 4x = 16; $4x^2 = 64$; $x^2 = 4x$.

كُنْ مَا أَوْلَا الْمُ الْمُعْلَمُ الْمُدِي الْمُعْلَمُ الْمُعْلَمُ الْمُدِي الْمُعْلَمُ اللَّهُ اللِّهُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللِّهُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعُلِمُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعِلِمُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعُلِمُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللَّهُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعْلِمُ اللْمُعُلِمُ اللَّهُ اللْمُعْمِلِمُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللْمُعْل

مراد صناعه للبرعلى للذاد كالألجه أعرد مطافى برمضاف الماند عدد مناف وهو جزر المال والمالث عرد مناف ومو مال جذر وبغر بنها لله انده اجات او كما جزر بعول عرد أو معناه أي مال جزره أو عوم من اجزان كالماجزة والماجزة الموال تعول عرد أم مال المال أو أوال اجزان كالماد أو الماجزة الموال المول عرد المعناه أي مال او أوال

111-112

111. ME al-mutarant al-muta Edilah. These equations of the second degree result from the association,

composite squares, roots, or number with the two of EQUATIONS each of the foregoing simple equations.

The first of the three resultant equations is SQUARES + ROOTS = NUMBER, which means that one or more squares associated with one or more roots are equal to such and such a number. For example: - a square plus ten of the root is equal to thirty-nine; the square is nine and the root three.

The second maqrun is SQUARES + NUMBER = ROOTS.

This particular form in some cases admits of two answers e.g., a square plus thirty is equal to thirteen roots and this is satisfied either by a hundred with root ten or nine with root three.

The third maqrun is ROOTS + NUMBER - SQUARES e.g., six plus ten of the roots is equal to the square; the square is thirty-six and the root six.

an unknown quantity; it means 'thing'; and corresponds to 'x' in modern algebra. When multiplied 'x' by itself it gives shai' square.

l v. Muhammad b. Müsä al-Khwārizmī; Colebrook, Algebra from Sańskrit, 1817, p. LXXV; and Karpinski, Univ. Mich. Stud., XI, 1915, p. 71.
The solution of these is arrived at as follows:-

 $x = x^{2} + 10x = 39$. $x = \sqrt{5^{2} + 39 - 5} = 3$. $x^{2} + 30 = 13x$. $x = 6 \cdot 5 \pm \sqrt{6 \cdot 5^{2}} = 30 = 6 \cdot 5 \pm 3 \cdot 5$.

In his last example A and PL have 10 instead of 5, and PP dah panii Karpinski remarks on the persistence of this example from Khwarizmi, borrowed by Al-Biruni 200 years later and by Omar Khayyan 100 years after him.

²In early books of algebra translated 'res'; the transliteration into Spanish 'xei' has been suggested as the source of the modern 'x'. (Arabic words in Spanish such as sharab (sherbet) were formerly spelt with an initial x, now with J, jarabe.)

موجداعدد والملاف الوالكنج لجروزاً ومعناه اعمالك اموال أساوي جذذ احفمااد جذوزه ما المفتريات المنعادله موانعة ترزيخ كالنبن المفردان وبعادل يثماو بزاليان بجبلز ذكك كلاث مبادلات عللم ترمات فاعلما بعادل العدد معواموال وجدور تعدل عدد اومعناه ايمال اذاد دنسيط بعجد وأه اوعن اجزاره بلغ حدا عَردا ومِسَّالهُ مال وعِسْن لجزاد مُعَرك مُسْعد وَمُلْبِر وَعَذِ المال مُسْعد وحذره للند والمفروز الفاج مأبعاد للارومواموال وعدد تعدل بذوراومعناه اعمال إذادة تعليد كذام العيد ساولجنه اوعده اجان معذا المفرد ون المابذ بجوزع بعض المجوال ذا وحبز أعجمل عزالسوالحوابن متلامال فلوز بزالعدد بعدل لمتعضر جرنافان مزاالمال امامابد مكبن عشر وامانسعيد وكبرن لمند فعلاجمل الحجبر معاوالمف وألاك مايعادل المال وعوض وعدد يعرله مالأمعة اعمال بسكاويه عدد الذادبر علي وعرب العياد ومناله ستعمي العدد، عشى اجداد تعدل ما لأمف اللال سند و للون وجزت في ما للم ما للمن على ما للمول الذلك اذا منرب في تلوسان ما المستح المنطق الم

113-116

a number n gives n shal', when multiplied by minus

(1118, kemp) shal' gives a minus square,

mal nagis mustathna; when minus shai' is

multiplied by a number the result is minus

n shai', and when minus shai' is multiplied by itself a

positive square, mal za'id results, because the minus

sign, istithna', is not abolished except by multiplication by itself.

- method of reckoning derived from Algebra. As there are sometimes more unknown quantities than y. z one. it becomes necessary to have names
- y. z one, it becomes necessary to have names for them. Some people call them dinars, dirhams and fulus, while others adopt the Hindu method of naming the ashya' black, yellow and gray.
- which appears to be suitable for solving the problem;
 if a test indicates its accuracy, it is
 RULE OF unnecessary to proceed further, but if
 TWO ERRORS it has led to an error, the amount of
 that must be noted and the process repeated after the unsuccessful guess, when either you
 hit upon the correct answer or else you have a second
 error. Then the answer can be deduced from the two errors by a method which is known [to Arithmeticians].
- notation of numbers by Arabic letters is a matter of agreement and convention; for it

 ARABIC LETTERS would have been possible to use the FOR NUMERALS letters in the ordinary order of the alphabet, a, b, t, th, etc., because there are nine units, nine tens, nine hundreds, which, with a sign for a thousand, are provided for by the twenty-eight letters.

ly. Colebrook, 1.c.p.139. For akhab read ashhab.

2 Carra de Vaux quotes an example from Al-khwārizmī,

1.c.II,117. x - 1/3 x - 1/4 x = 8. Try 12, result 5,

(-5); try 24, result 10 (+2); 12 x -3

24 x +2 multiply

diagonally, result 24, and -72; add, because signs

contrary, result 96/5 = 19 1/5.

جهف ضرب الامشيادة أذا ضرب بوالني المبنع منيه مالا ماذا منب في عديا عنبع النباء بملك العِنه فاذا صرب المني فالاشي المنبي ككالعد فنبالاك فاشبا فاذاص للشيء عدد اجتمع مال وابد فان السننالأبطلل بمثلد ماحساب المنباده وصلب سنخرج مزالم والمعامله وأعات الاسباالم ولداحة مزواجد وأجمع الم المنبها فنهر مرطف بدنبان ودرج وفلرومن ممر بلول استا كالمندفانهم بغولون تخاسور واصغر واحعب ماحساب لحنطا بغر بغض المطلوب ماانعن مراكعواد فإزلداه المجانه الي المسواب مندوجد والداة الالخطاج فطمقدان وأعاد ذكك بعدد اخرعيف ماا تفوعل ان المالطلوب والمان على مان بدئم بستحرج المطلوب مز مذرله طابر بطريق شهود كيف انبات الأعراد امواضيعه واصطلاح ففلك المج المنوده على أب ن ن فانعائدة عن المجادات م

116-117

However, people selected the order of the <u>burdf</u> aljummal because this was widely diffused among people of the Book before the time of the Arabs. The mode in which the letters are apportioned to the several numbers is shown in the accompanying table.

	-1	اب	?	5	8	9	j	2	b	
Units	a	b	3	a d	h	M W	Z	. 4	ş·	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	1
	2	5	J	٦	3	٦	ع	6	ص	
Tens	y	k	1	D D	a n	8	Br	1	. 4	
	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	
Hun- dreds	ۊ)	مثن	ت	ڮ	خ	5	છ	ظ	غ
	q	a r	a sab	a t	13	a kb	<u>.</u>	4	* *	ह्ये
	100	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900	1000

these letters is economy of space and ease of writing numbers especially in astronomical MOROCCAN USAGE tables. Among astronomers there is no disagreement as to their use, but there are perverse people outside the profession who put sa'fad for sa'fas, thus making s 60, and d 90, and carasat for qarashat, basing their objections, some on linguistic, others on religious grounds; but this is all nonsense. Were it not that a general agreement has

A memoria technica is made by the insertion of vowels as indicated in the transliteration above. Pococke, Spec. Hist. Arab., p. 308, refers to the use of the first six words for the days of the week from Saturday to Thursday, Friday being al-varubah.

The Muslims of Morocco make the last four words, sa flad, qarasat, thakhadh, zaghash.

وَلِحِنْ الْهُومِ جَهِلُوا مُنْبِ مَن الإعِلاد فِي مُ وف الجُلْلِ فَالْمُرْمِبِ هوالماشي فابن فريق مالم رميز أع اللحاب معولا أجد مه مُورِ حُطِي هُ حَلَيْ عُسَمِينَ مَ مَعْضَى عُ وَمُنْفَ عَ خَذَ عَهِ مَنْظَعُ مُ مَحِمَهُما

هل حلف العرف العادي العادي المول ومن العادل العرف المعرف و المعرف المعرف المعرف و المعرف المعرف المعرف المعرف و المعرف المعرف و المعرف المعرف و المعرف المعر

مرج سريح

117-118

been arrived at as to this order by its users, their objection might be allowed, but it would constitute a departure from an established custom.

conserved in combining these letters. Of the units, tense and hundreds, the hundreds come first, combination the tens next and the units last; thus of letters lis is written qyh, and [when written in black] must have a line over it to show that it is not a word. So los is written qh, and 42 mb, and look ghb. On the other hand 2000 is written bgh, the smaller number coming first to distinguish it from ghb, and to show what is intended.

The customary way of writing these letters is that jim 3, is written without a tail to distinguish it from ha's; little attention need be given to kha' 600, as astronomical calculations are concerned with numbers less than 360; [it is pointed without a tail]. Ya' must have its tail drawn backwards, in case it should be mistaken for a nun with its point. Kaf must be written horizontally, so as not to resemble lam, and nun must be written larger than za' and pointed, for za' also is pointed, and ra' unpointed. Shin 300, must be pointed to distinguish it from sin 60, and attention must be paid to other pointed letters.

when nun or ya' are combined with units, na 51, ye 11, nun must be pointed, and indeed the ya' also should have its points.

When zero, sifr, has to be written in places lacking a number, its circle must have a line over it, we touching, to distinguish it from ha, but in the Indian notation this line is unnecessary, for there, there is no resemblance to ha.

Generally the right end of the line in question is continued downwards to the left to join a very small circle Las two horns, & ; compare & and ha' in future tables.

تأميلات اليفراض فاعتشاده موكالمذبان لعاطبا فالمستبيل علمنا المربب لجوذنا خلافه ولعندخروج عزالعيان كمف بحصو وتركيب اذاجم مزالع ومرات كالأجاد والميترات والمأمز فالمالاعط اغ بالمامن عماله شرات فم كلأجاد مثال ذكر مابدو خسد عنه فاحت م فنه وخط فرفد حطابرل علية حساب لا كله فاذا كالليد ما بوق ملحته ففرانكالنبط ببطحتدمب مانكالله وانبر فاكتبدغب فالجبناالك بدالف فاكتبد بحلانه والاصغر عالاعظ نفصله عزعب وبدل على الميزماوالع ال جادبه في الجرف أنلا بعطف للبغ فأبها وبزاع وفلع بحاج اللا الانحسارات المنوم على المروسين العجف المالالود الانساب النوز مع المفطرة الكاف مسوطه عبمشابه للام وتعونالفنال عبن الالم ومنقطا للنرف بماقال المنقوضة بالراعبي فقوطه والهذ والحسير والسير آن المنبغ منفوطة وسابر مابع ها كالكرم معدومي نركب النوب والبامع لجاد نشيابها مسعون فطدالمون فاصلابهما والاخساط وجب باعجام الباابسا والأخبج الحسبه صفرام لاالموضع العادع عمل داين و فوها خط

119-121

a'dad. The same letters are used for another purpose, namely, for designating the signs of the FURTHER USE zodiec as in the following table:-

Names of Signs. Symbols

Aries	T 8 0	The foregoing amount of
Taurus	8 I 1	arithmetic will suffice
Gemin	$\Pi - 2$	for anyone who desires an
Cancer	©5 → 3 ∬ > 4	introduction to it.
Leo	N. 3 4	
Virgo	mr 0 5	Now, however, we must
Libra	6 و 🗻	proceed to the description
Scorpius	m.) 7	of the form of the heavens.
3agittarius	4+ ₹ B	
Capricornus	HT B	
Aquarius	半 上10	
l'isces	X 4.11	

ASTRONOMY

like a ball revolving in its own place; it contains within its interior objects whose move—
THE CELESTIAL ments are different from those of the sphere itself, and we are in the centre of it. It is called falsk on account of its circular movement like that of the whirl of a spindle, and its name, athir, (ether) is current among philosophers.

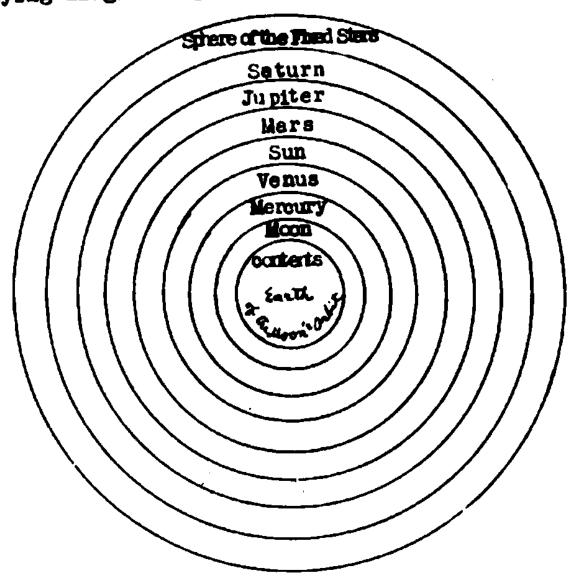
spheres enclosed the one within the other, like the skins of an onion; the smallest sphere MORE SPHERES is that which is nearest to us, within THAN ONE? which the moon is always travelling alone, rising and setting, within its limits. To each sphere there is a certain amount of space between the outer and inner boundaries so that the planet to which it belongs has two distances, the one further, the other nearer. The second sphere above that of the moon belongs to Mercury, the third to Venus,

مَا سُهَالِعَدُ فَ جِنْدُهِ مِنْ الْحَالَى فَامَا جَلَاذِ فَامِ الْمُنْ سَهُ فَلِمِنْ سَهُ الْحَالِظَ الْمُلْكِ اذْ لِمِرْضَالُ مَا تَعَلَّقُ الْسُنْعِمِ لَكُونُ لِلْمُرْفِقِ فَى عَبِرًا لَا عِلَالْ اللّهِ الْمُؤْمِلُ وَ فَ مُدَجُّعُ لِعَلَاماتُ الْمُرْوحِ وَاصلَهُ الماحِ وَ الْمِنَا مِنْ لَكِبِنَا الْمُؤْمِلُ وَسَعْعُ وَاللّهُ اللّ

وجونه عالسا عدمتر صدبليعا كوك دويخرك وسطووسي ملحا الاستعلام وجرك دنشيها الماه بفلصد المعزل ويحريك مذفيها بزالعلاسف ابراً المو ولجدا واحتر النفلاك ثابذ أحرم لف وبعثها بعفر المسلف في الما الانتيب إلى السط الفرسير فيه

121-122

the fourth to the Sun, the fifth to Mars, the sixth to Jupiter, the seventh to Saturn. These seven spheres belong to the planets, but above them all is the sphere known as that of the fixed (or desert) stars. The accompanying diagram represents them.

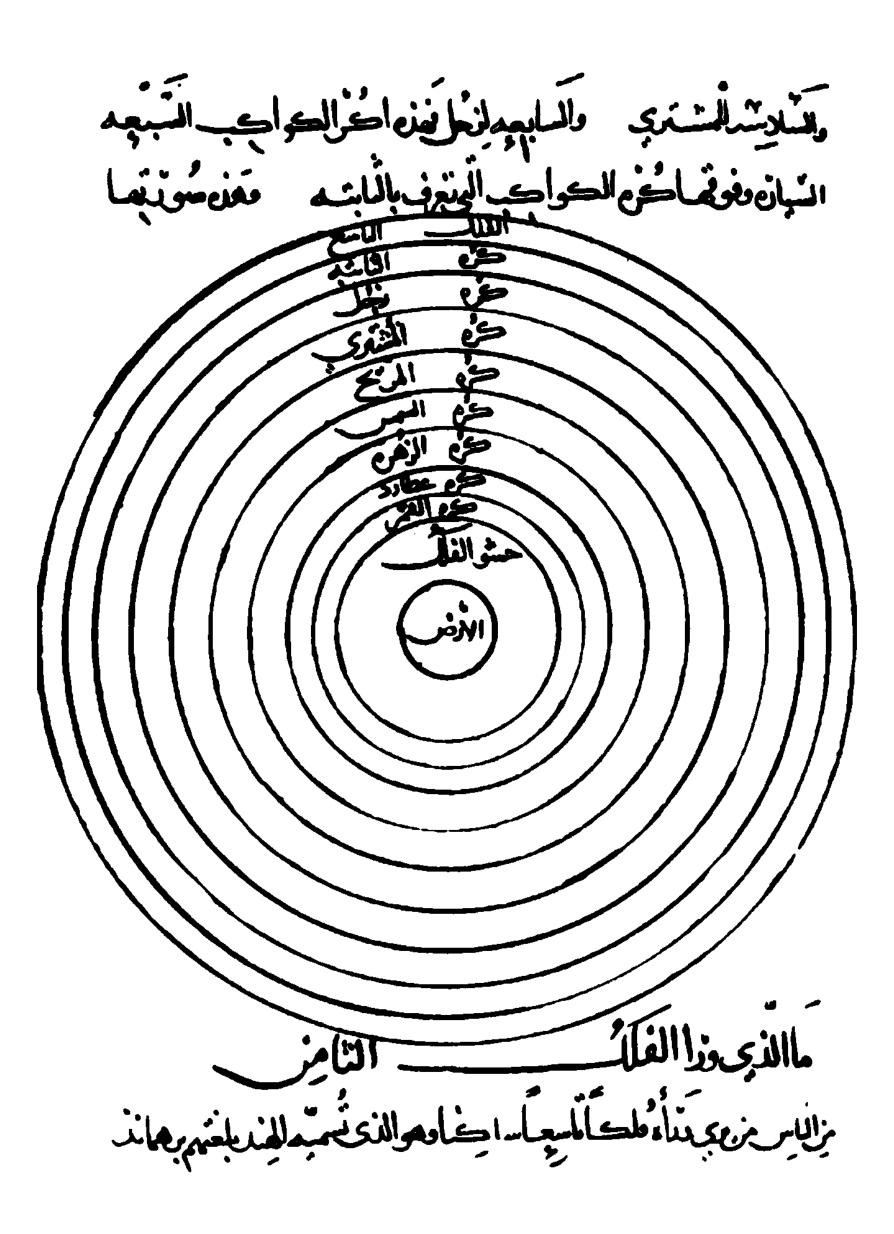


of people consider that beyond the eighth sphere there is a ninth entirely quiescent; it

WHAT REYOND is this which the Hindus call in
EIGHTH SPHERE their language brahmanda, 2 i.e., the
egg of Baraham, because the prime

l Ukar, pl. of ukrah; unusual as pl. of kurah. V. Dozy, I, 30.

2 Brahmanda means the aid of with all the products of creation in it. India, I, 221.



122-124

mover must not be moved, and it is on this account that they describe it as motionless. But it is possible that it is not a body like the other spheres, otherwise its existence could be demonstrated, and that to apply this name to it is an error. Many of our ancestors considered that beyond the eight spheres there is an infinite empty space, others, a boundless quiescent substance, while according to Aristotle there is neither substance nor void beyond the revolving bodies.

thing which is above you or covers you. In a restricted sense it refers to the clouds or the THE HEAVENS roofs of the houses, but when used without qualification it corresponds to the Persian word asman, and means the roof of the world or the spheres of which we have been speaking. The word asman, i.e. like a millstone, (as manand) shabih bi'l-rahad refers to the circular movement.

124. Ma alladhī fī hashw falak al-qamar. In the centre of the aphere of the moon is the earth, and this centre is in reality the lowest part (and this is a real centre, because CONTENTS OF all neavy things gravitate towards it; MOON'S SPHERE The earth is, as a whole, globular, and in detail is rough-surfaced on account of the mountains projecting from it and the depressions on its surface, but when considered as a whole it does not depart from the spherical form, for the highest mountains are very shall in comparison with the whole globe. Do you not Lee that a ball of a yerd or two in diameter, covered with millet seeds and litted with depressions of similar size, would still setisfy the definition of a sphere. If the surface of the earth were not so uneven, water coming from all sides would not be retained by it, and would certainly submerge it, so that it would no longer be visible. For water while it shares with earth in

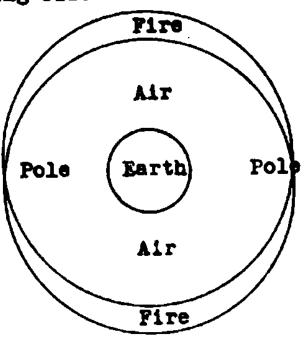
l Dr. W.D. Ross informs me that the words quoted occur in De Caelo, 278b 21, and 279 11. Bar-Hebraeus follows Al-Biruni in referring to the same passage. The external surface of the ninth sphere is in contact with nothing, because beyond it there is 'ni vide ni plein' V.

الخياس وباج الأفاء المحتن عبدان اسعنا المكانك المانين المعادة ملكند عب الإبعوز الضابضم آلاز كآل بغرب بالمله بن سند بالمال حَطَالْنَكُلُ . وَمِزَالْهُومَ إِمِزَجِعِ لِهِ أَهُ خَلًا لاَنْهَ الْمِلْهُ وَمِنْهُم رَجِعِ لِمُجْتِم أَ لايف لبدائد وابرعن واسطوطالبرون لفابة الأجرام الجتم والأعلاما السم السما فاللغه كأماع لآك فاطلك جنان مذالا مربقع ما بمنب على الساء وعلى من والبيون فاما ما لإط لأف فعوالسّفف المرفوع للعالم وهوالعَلّا الذي من من وعن علم المن الفر ملع بم المال المالم المجامر قباح كما المستدب ماالذي بجشوفاك الغربه ذن فالوسط مالوسط مو السفال لجنبند والأمزرون بالتكلبد ومضمد بالجزود مزجه إلجال المارد ووالوهدات العابره والمنترجها ذلك يزالك وأذاوفع المترسها على لجلد لازمها ديرُ للمبال وان منصص العباس لي في آلان الأرم الآري ال الكرالى مطها ذراع اوذراعان لا نامنه احالجاورسات وعارفها الملامنع ذلك عزاج المكام المدون علمه المالفي واولامدا المذربر الحاطبها المامز حميع للهائ والغرماحي المبكن في المنافر الما والما والمراع الما والمراع المراع المراع

124-125

having a certain weight, and in falling as low as possible in air, is nevertheless lighter than earth, which therefore settles in water sinking in the form of sediment to the bottom. Moreover water, although it does not penetrate earth itself, sinks into the interstices thereof, and there becomes mixed with air, and as a result of the intimate contact becomes suspended in the air. When the air escapes to the outside, the water regains its natural state in the same way as rain falls from the clouds. On account of the various irregularities projecting from the surface, water tends to collect in the deepest places giving rise to streams.

The earth and the waters together form the one globe, surrounded on all sides by the air; as much of the latter as is in contact with the sphere of the moon becomes heated in consequence of the movement and the friction of the parts in contact. Thus is produced the fire which surrounds the air, less in amount in the proximity of the poles owing to the slackening of the movement there.



The fixed stars are those which stud the whole heaven, whose distance from each other is fixed great and proach each other nor separate from each other. In Persian they are called the desert stars biyābānī, for finding the right way through deserts depends on them.

The planets, on the other hand, seven in number, each moving in its own sphere, continually alter their distance from each other and from the fixed stars, sometimes being near and sometimes opposite, in virtue of the difference in the rapidity and character of their movements.

l By way of declivities and fissures and ditches, ba sul shlvha va gauha va maghakha. P

2 124 is quoted by Yaqut in the Geographical Dictionary.
v. Wiedemann, Arch. Gesch. Naturw. u. Technik, I, 26:
and cf. Chron. p. 247.

مالكولها الماند الماند

ذلك

126-127

sees that the sun, the moon and stars are engaged in a first or westward movement; they rise FIRST WESTERLY gradually, attain the summit of their MOVEMENT course, and then descend little by little till they disappear, thereafter returning to the place where they rose. It is owing to the heavenly bodies that this movement is perceived; it is well-known to animals as they disperse in search of food, more so indeed than to man, for there are animals whose movements correspond with it like the chameleon, which facing the sun turns with it, as do the leaves of many plants, notably, vetch, mash, and liquorice, sus.

It is called the first movement as it is this movement of the heavenly bodies which first attracts our attention, and gharbiyyah, because the goal of the course reached by them is setting in the west.

second or eastward movement of all planets is towards
the quarter where they arose; but
SECOND EASTERLY the movement of the fixed stars is
MOVEMENT very small, and on account of the fact
that the distance between them remains the same, they are called fixed, whereas the motion
of the planets is much greater, more obvious, and also of
varied nature.

It is most obvious in the case of the moon on account of its rapid movement, for, from the time when the moon appears in the west, it moves further away from the sun and any star which is between it and the sun, and ap-

¹ Al-Biruni says, India, I, 277, that all astronomical phenomena can be equally well explained by the theory of the rotation of the earth.

2 See Lane under hirba. Brehms VII, 245 says that though its colouring varies with the intensity of light the chameleon is the most sedentary of animals.

3 Mahk in Persian, misspelt in PL, PL', and PP.

AO has susan, lily, for sus.

والنبعد الراحص واحرمها بدع علم ولابرال كواجرمها بعرب س مزغبي السبان ومزالواب وسعيعها بالمسافه والمحاذاه وَدَلَكَ المعلى ونزعه سنب مالطحدالاولحالغربيد والمبعابر بكاط ميم التنم والفر والمتواجب طالعاوم تفعادوه العابرة مخط أعنه اللبا فلبلاغ عاربا والعطلع مبذلك عابداً وهَن الحركُمُ بالاتعام الغبى مجسوب للإلحق عليجوان فالمنشأ وللعائز فضلاع اتساف مزللهان ما بغرك على وألها كالجرابيا سنفبالها المنهر كبف ماداد وكُولُكُ اورُاوَالْبان وعي إوراف الماش والسوس الهروسميت عن الخرصة الاول لهااول مايحرب مزالج كان العلويد النفها والمذكبها مني أموالغروب مالط كدالما بطالون كالحدم الحواجب بسير غوالمه والمحمه النروف سيراما دهو فالنواب كالهافلباللفعال ولبنات ابعادما بهما سمب مابنده ب السبان احنى اطهرومع ذلك يخلف مَانَدُمِزَعَدَاللهِ فِي إِلَى المغرب برداد كُللهِ مِن النَّمْرَ وَمَا بِنَهُ وَبِهُا مِن الحولج، بُعِ مُعِ الحواج، الْمِعِ النَّهِ فِي النَّمْرُونِيةُ وَمِا واذا سُعَرَ

127-128

approaches any star which is on the other side of the sun from it. When it occults one of these, it does so with its eastern border and clears it with the western.

This second movement is common to all the planets; it is an inverted replica of the first, but is not an exact counterpart, for it deviates from it slightly. It is called second, because it is different in amount for each planet, while the first is uniform and prevails over all the second movements, although in the opposite direction. It is like the movement of a ship whose passengers may walk in the direction of the current, while they are all being carried up stream by the ship; the uniform movement prevails over the contrary one by reason of greater efficiency.

The second movement is not obvious like the first, but requires some consideration and reasoning based on observation. It is called sharqI, eastward, on account of its direction towards the rising of the sun.

128. Mā al-ufq. Only about half of the vault of heaven is visible to the observer; it is like a dome placed over the earth, its margin THE HORIZON forming a circle round about him. Whatever is above this circle, known as the horizon, is visible to him.

There are two kinds of horizon, the one sensible or visible, hissi, the other true or astronomical, hadiqi. The sensible horizon is that already referred to, which we always see when on the surface of the earth, and which divides the celestial sphere into two parts, an upper smaller one, and a lower invisible to us.

The true horizon is parallel to the other, but on a plane passing through the centre of the earth and cutting the celestial sphere into two equal parts. That which is between the two horizons is small in amount so as not to be obvious when the sphere is large [the celestial sphere] but large when the sphere is small [the earth].

l "Like a ship floating downstream, a passenger may welk in the opposite direction, so that he is at once moving both forwards and backwards, but the direct movement is more effective than the contrary one."

من المناه و المناه المناه و المناه ال الرالميه مائ متابله للاول للبراف والإواجعه بالمهرا فلبلاد سمنت الد النهاغنلفمالكسيمية كالمجيع الصواجب والاولى سنوبو والحافد مامع بربرها ومخ كمال خلاها كنيرب السنب من العلاجم حران المادم مُعَرِي فيها الخلاف جري الما والاستواعل خلف مربع ولنرف والمست عن ابضا في الطهون حد المرام المعاج في وينها الفياس سنفاد مزالج ساس وسن رفيه المنالخ كريه بنوا بله فراتي باالمروف مالافولارال بري مزنقب السافر مزالسف وبسون كانم أيدمم ومعالى أرض فهالها بحون دابع جول الاسان بحوب ما فوتم الحامل لدُوهُ وهُ العَابِي جِهِ الْعَانِ فِي عِنْ عَارْجَسِي حَفِيقٍ ، الْمَالِمَ عَلَيْهِ عَارْجَسِي حَفِيقٍ ، الْمَالِمُ عَلَيْهِ عَارْجَسِي وَحَفِيقٍ ، الْمَالِمُ عَلَيْهِ عَارْجَسِي وَحَفِيقٍ ، الْمَالِمُ عَلَيْهِ عَلِيهِ عَلَيْهِ عَلِي عَلَيْهِ عَلَ فهوالممالاي دعمالك على الأص المستعب منة الافغالك معلميمه وأما يجعل للقطع مالكي فوقد اصغر من الي تحفي ولا يري و واما الافن المقبقي مهنهى السطح الما دعلى ركزا لارم مواد ليطح الافل لحتى والذي بنها نفل مقران اذاعلت المتص حنى لبطه وبجنر اذاصرت المتن المكن المعان المفاق المعان المعا

129-151

world day is caused by the track of the sun from its rising to its setting; its course is eall-meridian ed the arc of day, and the circle which passes through the zenith and everywhere divides the day into two halves is called the meridian. Every point in the celestial sphere which becomes visible rises towards this circle, reaches it, and then begins to sink till it disappears towards the west.

the places, mahabb, from which blow the four familiar winds. The zephyr, which comes from winds. The zephyr, which comes from CARDINAL POINTS the east, is called saba and qabul, on account of its blowing towards the ka'bah; the dabur comes from the west from behind the ka'bah; and the north wind, al-shamal, from the direction of the pole, i.e., from the left hand, shimal, of any one facing east; it is called jirbiya' in Syriac (a name which is familiar although not of our language).

The south wind, al-janub, blows from the opposite pole, from the right, yamin, of one facing east; it is on this account that this region is called janub and

yaman, and in Syriac, tayamai.

The names of the intermediate quarters are not very current (except among the Hindus, where they often conflict with each other), but any wind blowing from one of these is called a side-wind, nakba.

131. Fa kaif istikhrāj hadhihi al-jihāt. In order to establish exactly the direction of these four quarters, level a piece of ground as far INDIAN CIRCLE as possible, until you get it in such a condition that water poured on it haphazard flows evenly in all directions, without any tendency towards depressions in any one of these. When the ground is levelled then draw a circle² on it of any diameter, and fix in the centre a sharp-pointed stick the length of half the radius. This must be perpendicular to the surface as determined by a plumb-line³ passing from the point to the centre of the circle.

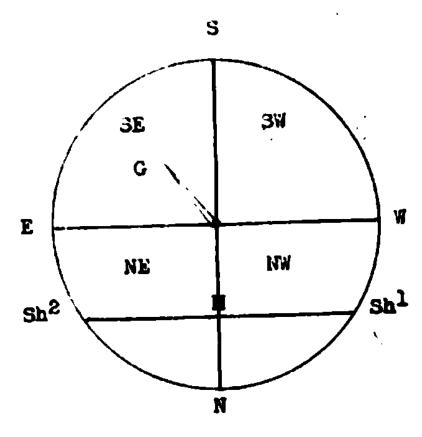
l Zakhmgāh, usually the seat of a wound, but zakhm is 'ictus' as well as 'vulnus'.

² The Indian Circle. See Wiedemann, Acta Oriental. V. 106. 3 Plummet, shāqūl.

نمارك أسطد فالعكم مأرشم مرالاطلوعا العروبها ونبي وس المعادلها فالداب المئ تمرعل مت الداس فينسف ما نجيح النقط عو مَلاسِيد الماد والإوال كانفط منطلع صاعن البد مرتفع دير والمادك المنادك اخدية الموط والانجران مح الغيري ماجهات العلام مهار الرماح لادبع المستهون فهب المسباعوز المشرف ينتم المسبأ ابضافتو لأكستمالها وجدالحجبد ومعب الأبون في المغرب وهي المع وما المحجبد م ولتمالي جعب غي القطب وعوبسًا دمن ليستعب الليزف وسي عن الجعد مما كأوبع ابسالله بباوعواسم سواني ومعب للخوس مزمة المذالقطب وتعويمز مزاستنقب للمنزف للكريميث من للمقيض والماللات المنوسط مطذة الانبع عبرمشهوره والربح الماجيز عمص انسرندا فكيف استعراج هن الجهانث سوى لادنرمالمعنك غيمبري مأم اذاسب علمها يجرف الالحبع المواج عليوام عرب الله وإجره منها سنوى وجد الانص الك فادرعلد دان ماي مين وانسبه بلي خطائر والمربط والمنال في المربط والمنافع المربط المالي منال المربط والمربط والمربط

131

Then watch the shadow in the first half of the day as it extends to the west and gradually shortens, and when it enters the circle, mark that point of the circumference; similarly, in the afternoon, when it lengthens and passes out of the circle, that second point. Join these two points of entrance and exit by means of a cord or rule, bisect the line so obtained and join the middle point to the centre of the circle by a straight line which can be produced to the north and south This is the meridian points of the circumference. which divides the circle into east and west halves, the quarters of the rising and setting of the sun. Then divide each of these halves into two by a straight line at right ungles to the meridian passing through the centre of the circle, and mark the east and west points. This is the east and west line or khatt al-1 tidal, while the meridional line is known as khatt al-zawal. By these two the circle is divided into four quadrants, culled after the adjacent cardinal points, south-east, south-west, north-east, and north-west, as in the diagram.



NS, Meridian or khattal-zawal. Ew, East and West Line or khatt alitidal. M, Midday; middle of line joining entrance, Sh, and exit, Sh2, of shadow. G. the gnomon.

The copyist is unhappy in his nomenclature of the quadrants.

الدان على اسدِ ثم ادسُ مطلعب المنصف المول من النها وجي والمطلمُ على غوالمغرب وبناض لإال برخله والعابن فبعلم على المساحب بدخلها الطل ثمادسة ابسلبة النسف المحبر مزالها وجبز بالمطلع المادي ي مزالابن فعلاسا متعطه إعلى حدميها غصلما بزعلاني للدخل الخرج بخبطر المسهم والمرة فاللذالوا سيلم فبنر فه وعلى حطاً سننبأ مصخط يصف النماد واعب على فرولذي نحوالقلب السائوع طرنعالاخ للجؤب وقلانقشت الداب بعذا لحط سعف بالحدهما نزق والطلع منه والاخرغ ب والانول مِندُفافسٌ إحرَهُ في الضعب سِنعِب في من علم على من كُرُ الدابى خطاستنقيماوه خطالمنزف والمغرب واكتبهاعلط ونبر وفارسمى هزاللط خط الاعتدال وخط سف النهان خط الزوال والداره منفسد بها اذباع ندصان لكوبع منهااسم مزكب مناسم المهبن فلذى بن للترف للوب تسينزة والذي بلطبوب والمغرب عرى جنوب والذي بسالمغرب والسال تم غرّ به الذي بالمثرف النمال شدّ قي سال

132-133

The nychthemeron, shabanah-ruz', civil day, yaum, is that space of time between the sum's DAY AND NIGHT leaving one half of a great circle by the first movement and returning to the same half in the course of completing its revolution; the most obvious of such circles are the horizon and the meridian.

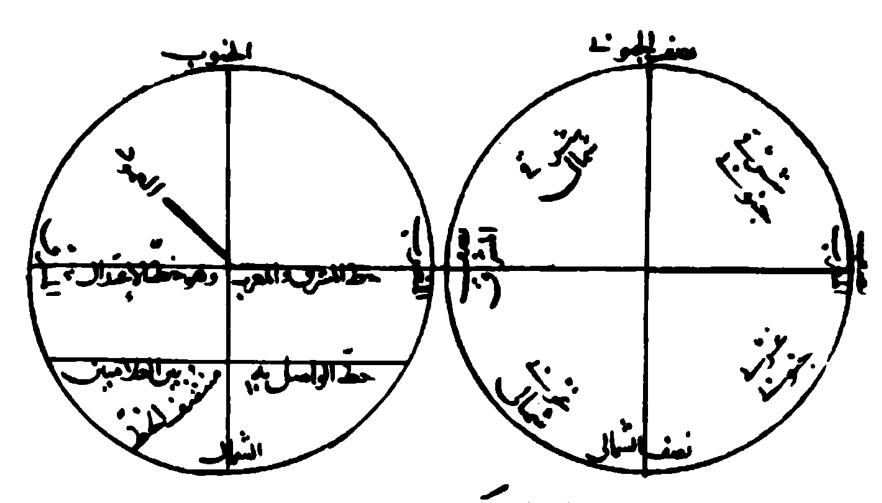
Day, naher, is that space of time during which the sun is visible above the horizon, and night, lail, that in which it is hidden under the earth.

The Arabic word, yaum, is sometimes used for nychthemeron and sometimes for day, if, therefore, it is intended to use it in the former sense, say, to make sure, the day and the night, al-yaum bilailatibi.

There is no star nor point in the heavens where there is no nychthemeron and no night and day. When these are mentioned in connection with something unspecified it is the sun which is referred to.

consists in our being in the darkness of the earth's shadow. When the sun is still hidden DAWN AND from us under the horizon, but is aptractional proaching, we first see the emergence of those rays which surround the shadow, the advance-guard of the sun, forming the dawn, fair, sapidah, in the east, and when the sun has set, the twilight, shafeq, in the west, its rear-guard.

l tali'ah, talayah^P.
² saqah.



ماليوم وما المهار وما اللبل بوم ورق ما بزين ا والمنسف وينده وعود وكره بالمورد واطهر بن الدورة واطهر بن المناف والمالية المناف والميان والميان والميان والمواج المبله وما من والمواج المناف وما من والمواج المناف المناف المناف وما من والمواج المناف الم

155

In the east the first light which succeeds the daybreak, sahar, is a long thin whiteness directed upwards. It is called the false dawn, al-subh al-kādhib, subh-i durūgh, during which no religious observances are enjoined. It is compared to a wolf's tail, dhanab al-sirhan, on account of its length, slenderness and erectness, and it persists for some time. Then comes the horizontally diffused light of the true dawn, the time of the morning prayer, and fasting (for those keeping a fast). Thereafter the horizon becomes red owing to the proximity of the sun and the diffusion of its rays through the impurities, kudūrāt, tīrakhā, in the vicinity of the earth (which consist of vapour and dust)P.

The same phenomena occur in inverted order in the west on the setting of the sun, first the red horizon persists for some time, then the red disappears and the white diffused light, the nadir of the dawn follows, both of which determine the time for the sunset and evening prayers. Thereafter the white light fades away and the long and high light appears, which corresponds to the false dawn, and lasts for a part of the night.

The Hindus call dawn and twilight sand (sandri)⁵ and do not reckon them as parts of the day and of the night respectively, but some of them (who see the absurdity of that)^P do not recognise such an intermediate period between night and day, and speak of sand as that time when the centre of the sun is on the horizon.

l Islam, III. Heft 1/2, where this paragraph is translated, tariki for bariki P. (and the light regarded as zodianal.

AO' has intight for intight.

4 Salat al-fajr. The other prayers are; salat al-zuhr, the time for it begins shortly after noon; salat al-esr when the sun is midway to setting; salat al-maghrib, sunset; salat al-isha, early night prayer. Cf. Wiedemann and Frank, Sitz. Erlangen, Vol. 58, p.29. Die Gebetszeiten im Islam.

5 Lidia, I, 364.

القرسه مرايارض فتبعد الطلوع واكالعدع فها لمراك بم مول كره و فع للماض للري مونطر العي وبدو الافق وفلك بصف الهارطام فهما اول فاقعا جالبي مليك وللمحور بوترو و فلا نصع الهارع الها و المحود بولك المارة المحمود بولك المارة المحمود بوللها المارة المحمود بولانا المارة الم

44

134-135

134. Mā mubdā' al-yaum wa'l-nahār wa'l-lail. It is permissible to select any time you please for the beginning of the nychthemeron, but the arrival of the sun at the horizon and BEGINNING OF DAY AND NIGHT the meridian are the most convenient for this purpose. Astronomers prefer the meridian to the horizon, as easier for carrying out some of their operations, some selecting the upper part (midday), others the lower (midnight). Few pay attention to the horizon except the astrologers, who do, on account of the rising and setting of the sun, both of which are more obvious phenomena than the arrival of the sun at the meridian. Those who place the night before the day (the People of the Book and Muslims) always regard the setting of the sun as the beginning of the civil day; other sects who give precedence to the day over the night regard sunrise as its beginning.

There is no conflict of opinion as to the beginning of the night, which is always considered to be sunset. So also the beginning of the day (nahar) is by general consent regarded to be sunrise, except by Muslims; whose theologians of all sects are agreed that it is a fundamental principle of the law (furl al-figh) that dawn should be regarded as the beginning of the new day, following in this the custom of the people of the present day, and their rule as to this and as to fasting at the appointed time. With us the period of the fast is the whole day with a certain limited portion of the previous night joined on to the beginning of it.

kinds, equal and unequal. The former, mustawiyyah, are each the twenty-fourth part of the toyil day, and are all equal in length. At the equinoxes there are twelve equal hours in the day and twelve in the night, but as soon as the day or the night is longer, the equal hours are unequally divided between day and night, the surplus in the one being equal to the shortage in the other.

مهمراخدسنهاالاخرالدى للبل وللمنهم وسيها لانق والما ما سوي المخير فا مواجد و رفيدالانفي الطاوع من والعزوب مراط لجبل مرفلك لاسطالها و فالله لم تقلم مهم الملابل في المنابل والمنابل والمنابل والمنابل والمنابل والمنابل والمنابل والمنابل والمنزي المهم خلاف والصلا الميل الموجوب المنابل والمنزي المهم خلاف والصلا الميل الموجوب المنابل والمنزي والمنابل والمنزي والمنابل والمنزي والمنابل وا

ما الشاعات وانواعها الساعات فوعات موعمستنو بزاله المحمد منها حروم ل ربعه في ترم و المرح الموم المحلوم قدا، فا والحالم الله والها ربعا ما منا و المحار المحمد والموجمة المحتفظة المرم المحرد ومعن ساعار للاحور لمحتف مقدر والده و الما المحار والما و الموجم المحتمد المحار والمبار والمبار والمبار والمبار والمبلل وا

135-137

The unequal, 'crooked', mu'wajjah, hours are in each case the twelfth part of the day or night, of whatever length these may be. An hour of a long day is, therefore, longer than an hour of a short day, and except at the equinoxes, the day hours differ in length from the night hours.

The equal hours, however, although their number in the day may be different from that in the night, are always equal in length, while the unequal hours differ in length but agree in number. The equal hours are also called murtadilah, even, and the unequal hours zamāniyyah, temporal.

well as everything which can be measured in length, or bulk, or weight, is divided into sixty min-DIVISION utes and each minute into sixty seconds. OF HOUR The Jews divide the hour into 1080 fractions, called in Hebrew halaq, but they make no smaller division than perhaps half a halaq.

137. Keif hal al-sa'at 'inda al-hind. The Hindus recognise the hour, but call it half a sign of the zodiac; in their language it is hur INDIAN DIVISION and not sa'ah; they only use it for OF HOUR astrological purposes, while the people generally divide the civil day into sixty parts called ghari, (twenty-four minutes) and the ghari into sixty parts called by some hassah and hakah, and by others biyari; these again into six pranas, which unit coincides with the average respiratory rhythm of a healthy man. The gharis, like equal hours, are a fixed quantity, and, unless day and night are equal, the number of gharis in a day is different from that in the night. To convert gharis into equal

l PL jilaq; PL', AO', hilaq; AO khaliq. v. Chron. p. 64, and 387 note, where I regar equals 1/76 of a halaq; but cf. Jewish Encycl. III, 503, for a different subdivision of the hour, and another value for the regar. 2 cashaka, vinādī, India, 337. PL jashah, habkah, banazi. PP jashahah, hakkah, banāzī. AO hashah, hakah, banāzī. AO', hassa, hakah, bizāri.

معنها فيالنعاذ الطوبل الملول منعاب المعاذ الفسير بل من لخلف المهارم لبله اختلف إبضاً شاجات اج وهمامع سلعات الأخر فالسلعات المستوواذ آ تُعُلف أَعِوادُم افِي للهَادُ واللبرانَ مَن عَن ادبرُها ، والْمِوتِب هي الْمُخلف مقادة هافهما فشفؤاع لدها وفلانس المستويد ابضام غلاله والمبحجه زمانيه فالحصرجى فنم الستاعه اساعه المخال المبدرع بداؤال جاويون حافلنا منسم إلى بن دفيقد ومابعيها والهود بقسو الهاعد الهابع عشرضع فاللسب وذكك الف فغانون فأبتمونها العبريبطن والإنجاد ونما المحاد ونها ورتباضف لللخ ففلا كبف حال أساعان عندلفندم سنونالساعه باسمنصف الربح وموبلغ بممودولا الماعه ولاستبعلونها الافالخبم فاما بحسب استيعالم العام فانتم بمبعو زالوم واجد م مِسْ ماستنف أبي في المرمه الكهري وكالكهري منتفها يتهابعنهم حيدوحه وبجنهم باذى وكالري سن وان عجوك ان برانه مُدِّه نَصْرُ اللهان المَعْدِل الإجهال وَبَعْنَ مَ مِن الفَسْمِه باجْ الساعات المسنه مدلان عمران مساوبه المقران وتخلف اعول دما فالمهاد ولبلم فنعلها الماسكية بهون بعبف خسها ونعالها عاتب

157-139

hours it is necessary to multiply by two and divide by five, and hours into gharis, to multiply by two and a half).

Another unit is also employed by the Hindus, the muhurta, which is equal to two gharis. If day and night are equal, each has fifteen equal muhurtas; if they differ in length, the muhurtas also differ in the same way as do the crooked hours.

the surface of a sphere have already been discussed.

For the movement of the sphere there are EQUINOCTIAL necessarily two poles and a great circle between them; one of the two poles of the first movement is visible to people in the north, while the other towards the south is concealed from them. Since the globe moves on an axis between these two poles, the movement is most rapid at the circle intermediate between them, and slackens at circles parallel thereto in proportion to their distance therefrom. This great circle is compared to a girdle and is known as the equinoctial or girdle of the first movement.

ecliptic is that great circle which is the girdle,

niting or mintagen, of the second movement; it is also known as the circle or
sphere of the signs, falak al-burni, to
which the sun in its eastward movement adheres and
does not leave. It is inclined to the equinoctial and
intersects it at two points opposite to each other, so
that one half of it is north and the other south of
the equinoctial; the poles, therefore, of the two

l Literally, write the number in two places, double the one, halve the other and add the results. 2 India, I, 338. Therefore, not always forty-eight minutes, but 1/15 of day or night.

للسني المحدى بيوز يعضع بدم حابزه بيث احما وبنصف الأخرع بجع ماعصل فيما والمفت رفيه الخري مية بالمعودت والوم بعالمون مح ي كُلِبونت حمونبزل ااسنوي المهامّع للدمكان كالحريبهما خسمعشرمهورنآواذ الخلف كان عددمهودت المعادبكوزتخالفا لعال المودن الله للج المقداد ما معل الما المطب مالماب عِلْ عَلَى اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّ والفطبان فبضبان إن عجم فها فهما واحرفهى لمركعة الاولطاع لاعل المسال والأخرخف عنم فالجنوب وفيابنهما دابن عطمواذا عركالكئ على بوزالوا ميل في كل العطيز لهب الجن عد الحلك ألداس المن سطد لانعاد سيعهاب ونصال وفيسا برالده ابرالميغانا لني زاعرها علاجي تصوزالطاعتب العدمها والوسط الدابن العطر سمن طف على جب المشبندن وبالماد اذا عوالاإن العكم المح منطف والحرك والاول بامنطق والبروج والداب الفكراني وينطفد ليحرك والبابد ونسج استأفاك المروج والمتمت فيجرك ماالمترفيد ملزم من العابي لأنبابا ومَن المنطقة مالملة عِنْ ول المهاد مقاطعه أباه على أبرت المبار

139-145

movements are distant from one another by the extent of this inclination (the obliquity of the ecliptic) both in the north and in the south. The great circle, (the solstitial colure) which passes through all four poles receives its name, al-mārrah 'alā al-aqtāb al-arba'ah, from this circumstance.

to the equinoctial towards the north and south are known as day-circles, (determining the length PARALLELS OF of day). They cut or touch points of DECLINATION the zodiac, or other stars or points in the sphere to which they are related as parallels in which they keep revolving.

141. Ma madarat al-'ard. Circles parallel to the ecliptic north and south are called parallels of (celestial) latitude.

PARALLELS OF LATITUDE

142. Mā al-muqanţarāt. These are circles parallel to the horizon; those towards the zenith are muqanţarahs of altitude, irtifă, those towards the MUQANŢARAHS antipodes, muqanţarahs of depression, inhiţāţ.

143. Mā nuqtatā al-i'tidāl wa'l-inqilāb. One great circle approaches another on a sphere till they meet and intersect at two points diametrically opposite1 to each other, and at the EQUINOCTIAL same time attain their greatest distance POINTS from each other at two other opposite It is thus that the ecliptic and the equipoints. noctial intersect each other at two opposite points and separate as far as possible at two others. The points of intersection are known as the equinoctial points, because when the sun arrives at them there is equality, iftidal, of day and night all over the world; that which the sun leaves on its journey over the northern half of the ecliptic is the vernal equinox, nuqtah

l For mutaqantarain read mutaqatarain.

مسبريسها في الماد ونسِمَها الأخرج جنوبه وبعد مَذا المراعليد مُدامًا منالِير عنين عُلم الجديم جمي المال المنوب والعان لله ترعا ملومعدل الهاد وقطى فكالدالم وج تعرف بالمان على المارك دبعد ما الموانات البوم مع المواديد لمعدل المهادبة جعمى المناس والمني المعانه على نقط مك الروج والماسد أباء فان است نسب الي الحواجب امالنقذاني تعذبها مامدارات العض عادوا تزالنوانه لمنعنابي في عنى المنال والمنوب عنها ما المعن حرات عاله عام الموازم للافق فانكاث فوقد نجوتمن الاسر في مفتطرات الانتباع وان حائث تحت الافت البرائية مندات النبط مانقط الاعتدال ما المسلاب الدابي العلم منسادب العابي العطم بالملاماء والمعاصع بد سوسين فنظرب ومباعد عنها بالخروج ولأل ومنطف عالمرفيح إذ معتاطيد ميذل الهادعلى فطبن فسأ المبز فانسا أعيره عندوا خزبر وتفضأ النف ليعرهما الاعتدال لألله تسراف اويهما استوي ليماد والإل على عبر المنظمة المراد المراه المال المراد من المنظمة المعالى المراد الم

143-145

where it enters the southern half, the autumnal equinox, nugtah al-1 tidal al-kharifi (tirrahi)P. For equality, istima is used as well as 1 tidal.

The middle points of the northern and southern halves, the most distant from the equinoctial (the summer and winter solstices) are known as the turning-points, inqilab, mungalib, the first al-inqilab alsaifi (tabistani), the second al-inqilab al-shatwi (zamistani), because the sun turns from the latter northwards towards its ascent, su'id, and from the former southwards towards its descent, hubut after its ascent.

lat. Bikam tuqsamu muhitat al-dawa'ir. Astronomers have agreed to divide the circumference of circles, whether great or small, DIVISION OF CIRCLE into 360 equal parts; those of the equinoctial are called azmān, units of time, because its revolution and time run together like two horses running a race, so that time, zamān, is called after these divisions, and is indeed counted by them. Those of the ecliptic are named degrees, darajah, because the sun on the two sides of its course ascends and descends among them as by the steps of a ladder; in other circles they are simply called divisions (ajzā').

145. Bikam tuqsamu aqtar al-dawa'ir. Our encestors believed the diameter of a circle to be one-third of its circumference, but

RATIO DIAMETER Archimedes and others showed that
TO CIRCUMFERENCE it is nearly a seventh more, so that if the circumference had 360 divisions the diameter would have 114 6/11 in accordance with the statement of Archimedes. On account of this fraction and its unsuitableness for reckoning with, for really it is like a surd root, Astronomers abandon

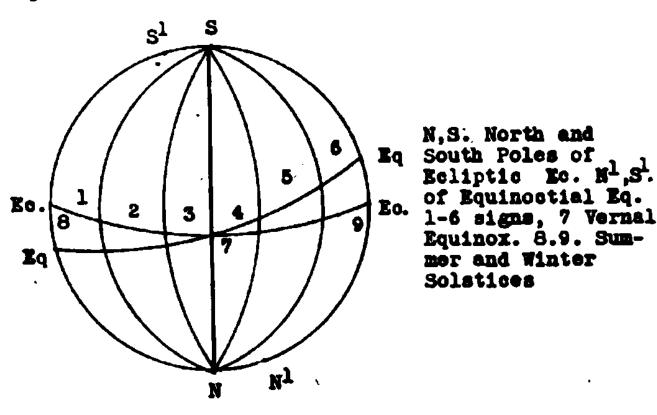
¹ The ecliptic is divided into ascending and descending halves by the solstices; cf. 378.
2 azman is the pl. of zaman, time.

الرتبعي والواذا فادفها النمرج بملك فالمسلط ويغطم والاعرال المزبغ وتبعب علاع تدال ابسا بالاستدار واما نعطنا الساعد فهاللاعلاب فالمج منهاب اليسف السال خاكس المروح سوالانف لاب والمتقلل سو والكي المضف الجنوب مندتشم الانقياب والمقلب السنوي لاللمس تنقلب مزعدها الالصعود بحالبهل بعللموط اوالالعبوط بجوللوب بعد السبود بحض نف بخيطان العابر السلام ما ب اطالها عدعا فهدد ورك إله إن عظن اوصغرت بالمابدون فيساً سوافي في عدل المهارفيم ازماماً لايفا في دورانهامع المان عفري ذعان حي آلمان كالمال الارمان، بعد بعاله مطفع البروج درجان لان الشريعيد وينفون في الجميز المسير فيها وهمام لوازم المرافع وهي السار الدوارنيم اخرا فكرنفس افطان اللابن انقدما كانوابد الدور تكنداسال الفطرفقط ألا إزامانك تمن سرواع الدعز مادتم عز الكذامال وإهافرب من معالم لما المان الدور كمن موسيع خزا كاناله طزمابه والعدعشم أوسند اخرامز احرعش وأجاب ماجك اغال مندر ولاجل الكرونس الحبولة

145-146

it and employ instead some other number which they select deliberately and properly so, for they cannot dispense with some approximate number which will allow them to study the ratios of the chords to each other. That which Ptolemy chose was 120, and that which we find in the tables of the Sindhind in our possession is five- divisions. [less?]

146. Mā al-buruj. If the ecliptic be divided into twelve equal parts beginning with the vernal equinox, and great circles be drawn through each SICMS OF THE division-point, the six circles inter-ZODIAC sect each other at the two poles of the ecliptic with the result that the sphere is divided into twelve sections, like a melon with twelve grooves. These sections are the signs of the zodiac, burj, pl. buruj, which are 50° long measured along the ecliptic, and 90° broad, north and south from the ecliptic to its poles. The annexed diagram represents these signs on one half of the sphere, because it is impossible to show the whole sphere on a flat surface.



¹ So A and P. - 115:360 would make 3.13. v. India I, 168 where the proportion used by Pulisa is stated to be 1:3 17/1250 = 3.1416.
2 read sharihah - a slice.

عزعتن والماهوع فالبلاز الامتروي واطالها بمدواستعاد ابير العدداد ادوه ماستمسال وغرس فأبعث فصارم فبدعه نسب للوما معضا المعض علني في بطلبوس تعدماً بدوعت زجزا والمستعد والإعاث المنتعف البيعب فأختماج اما للشروج اذام مطعندالبروح مائح عبرقيا أمنساه بدمزعند نقطعه المعتدال الرسع وأجبر على واصغ الانقسام دو إرعوام فاضعت السب اصلهاع وصي منصقدالبروج وصادت ألحن كبطيخة ذات المح ينسر سنويحد ك والمرمنه اهوالبرج وطولدهو مافدم المنطف وهوملته زيجه عرسه مان للطف م بري والمدير قطب بالسال والجنوب وهوربع داب فنسع في أيكو وع صديحوالمال في عون في الموالية والمال في المروع المالية مَهِن صُولِهِ ذَلَكُ لِنُعِفَ الدعج فلسرتم يستخر

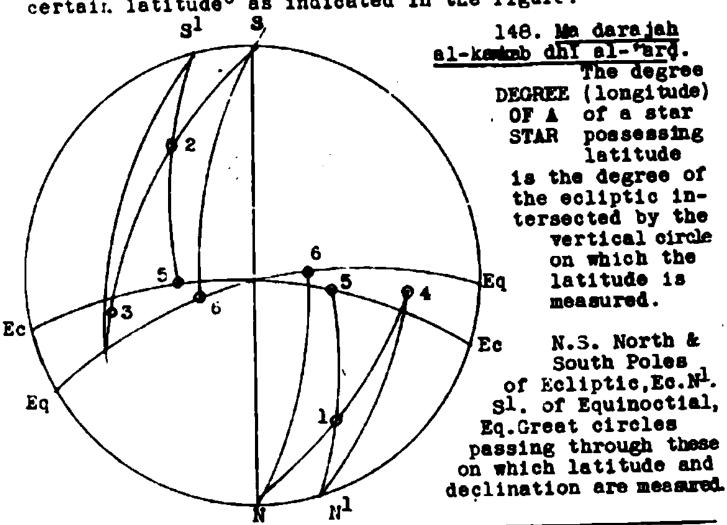
147-148

of e star from the equinoctial north or south is called

DECLINATION AND on the great circle passing through the and the poles, while the divergence from the ecliptic towards

the north or south is called 'ard, latitude, and is measured on great circles passing through the poles of the zodiac sphere. If the expression mail is used alone it refers to the sun or the degrees of the ecliptic which it does not leave, but if it refers to the moon or a planet or a fixed star that must be definitely stated. The expression 'ard is never used alone, but always associated with the moon or a star.

In consequence of the fact that the ecliptic and the equinoctial diverge from each other, it is possible that a star should be north of both or south of both, or north of one and south of the other, or distant from the one and near the other, so as to have a certain declination and no latitude, or no declination and a certain latitude as indicated in the figure.



The copyist remarks that he found this circle empty a his original. Aol and PP also deficient.

الهاد

اوالمنوب وبحثون مزاله إن المان على صلب والعرص والعباع منطفع البروح في إجدي المعنزورجي في الحان على على المروح دمها اطلن خطوللبل كالمنس ولدرجات الروج لانالتمر لأنالها ومناصم اللغ اواجللحاج السبان اوالمات مبد في المارة فلاسكو المانعية والسواجب والمطلق وأمابع ويمرعو لأولان بالمانع مطف مالروج متبابان في بعولي وب أنجون الباع كلهمااوجنوباع بطلها وبنفؤلة انجوك

شمالياغ ليرمملجنوب

الاخركانغؤلة أنعبد ع لحدهما ولا سعوف الأخورجون امير عدمالع شراود أغرض عويم المبل هسنه صوح

149-150

The declination of the sun is the same as that of the ecliptic; its maximum, (the obliquity DECLINATION observation is 23°35'. [Same as alof PLANETS Battani. Newcomb calculated for 1000 A.D. 25°54'6", Ptolemy 25°51', Ulugh-Beg, 25°50'17", now 25°26'25".] When this is added to the highest latitude of a planet we have its greatest declination. This is represented in the accompanying table;

Names of Planets	Greatest North Latitude		Greatest South Latitude		Greatest North Declination		Greatest South Declination	
	•	•	0	1	•	•	•	
Sun Moon Saturn Jupiter Mars Venus Mercury	5 5 2 4 6 4	2 5 21 22 5	5 3 2 7 6 4	5 8 7 22 5	23 28 26 25 27 29 27	35 35 37 40 56 57 40	23 28 26 25 30 29 27	35 35 40 43 42 57 40

The latitude of the fixed stars is known and does not vary. Whenever one of them coincides with a solstice, and the declination of the solstice and the latitude of the star are both northern or southern, the sum is the declination of the star north or south. If the one is north and the other south, the difference is the declination towards the side of the larger figure. If the star is not exactly on the solstice, the above does not apply and it will be necessary to make a calculation in each case.

lowing are the planets, Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Venus, and Mercury. They are called mutahaiyirah, planets erratic, because from time to time they retrograde from that quarter to which they are travelling by the second movement, and are still carried westward by the first. It is this retrograde movement which resembles confusion, tahayyur, and armandan.

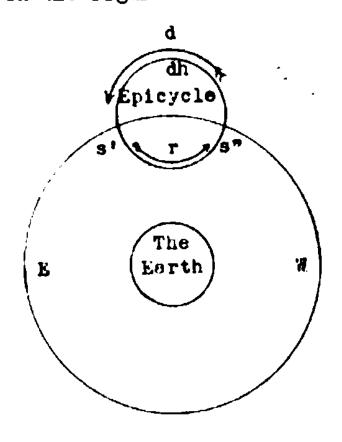
سيراعطي وضالينباره واعظم سولها الماكلات المسمرة وبيل منطقة البروح ومعدارها المي وحراه ما وحدارة والمسمرة وبيل المروح ومعدارها المي وحرارها المواحدة والمسمرة والمواحدة والمسلمة وجداله والمالي والمدومة والمواحدة وعروم المواحدة والمسلمة والمسلمة والمسلمة المسلمة والمسلمة وال

لميلد نطام وسيح اللحسائ ي	(C3)	اعط مولما الحد	3	اعط سواد الما	34	اعـ عود الموا	ا الا	اعط عماده السما	Sign
لتنواحده	ف	3	ال	? ·	وز	2	187	Ų	
ماالمفروب	ما	Ž	رله	Š	*	3,	*	8	السمس
•••	al	Z	3	3	~	٥	3	٥	الهر
الكواكب	1	حُو	1	کو	0	2.	٠	S	زحن
هنطوالمنكر									المشرب
رالريوالهمه	3	7	نو	بخر	ر	ر	كا	د	المدخ
وعطاردوس	ار	ڪلا	نو	کط	ڪ	9	5	9	الرهرد
متحدر لا بهامرهم	2	خ	و	حر	0	د	8	د	عطادد
سعها الاوساد	-				_				

151

Each planet has a small orbit known as an epicycle,
falak al-tadwir,; the earth is not
THE EPICYCLE within it but the orbit is entirely
above us. On the circumference of this
epicycle the planet moves, when on the upper part
towards the east in accordance with the succession of
the signs, and when on the lower towards the west;
during such movement it completes its revolution and
adheres closely to the circle.

But the epicycle itself is also constantly moving eastward, when, therefore, the planet is on its upper half the movements of the epicycle and of the planet coincide and the planet moves quickly on the direct path, but when the planet is on the lower half, the direction of the two movements is contrary, that of the epicycle being towards the east and carrying the planet with it, while that of the planet is visibly towards the west. If it is less than that of the epicycle the planet's movement is slowed, if more, it is necessarily retrograde, and if equal, the planet stands mucin, and this occurs at the beginning of the retrograde movement, ruju, and at its end, the beginning of the direct movement, istiqamah, as represented in the figure.



dh.summit of epicycle, dhirwah d.direct,r.retrograde path. s'first stop before retrograding. s". second, before entering on direct path.

P uses the Arabic names of the planets throughout.
The Persian names below are from Chron. p.172.

Arabic Fersian
Zuhal Kaiwan
Hurmuzd

Mirrikh Bahram
Shams Mihr, ihurshid
Zuhrah Wähld

Tuţārid Tīr Qamar Māh

اللا فهانسر المجر حديد يعرك حربها ونرمع عرف حمي لهاافلاآن سعا عرعيطما لارض مربع اوروع بطنهاوقا واللواكر للمحرة تروكر لحطها فادا فانسط قطعتها العليا فأتنبط غوالمشرف وعلقوالم البروح واداصارا قطعها الانعل وبتحالن يخوللعرب وازكارهوع خانهتم دوره وملزم الماره ع حركم للن أولاللاف بكر الضاغوا كلم المتره وفو العطور العلبا يحم حرفات سنتح دلااللوالب وحركم فلافالدور عولله ف فيري لكولب شريعنا واستقامنه ووالقطعة للنفل يحلف أبركا زقاؤل الهجيكللذه رنحوا لمترف وهامن فاللاكد المعنه المكرنكوب الهلكوكنفسه بالروبد تحوا لمغرب فأفاما نافلم وكرولاك المن المز السوركان عصامامها وابطا الكوكي لدلاك والكانت المز نے مواہدراوالاحریاحرا وانهار حوكا وارتساوتنا كاراللامعما في وضعه الرياد حرست وهدالمورد اواست الزوع واخره واسم للكوكة حدرم فنما للرحوع ومقبم المناهم المعالم مراللواك والمنفله مها العلوم اللواك والمنفله مها

152

152. Mā al- ulwiyyah min al-kawākib wa'l-aufliyyah minhā. Saturn, Jupiter and Mars are superior planets, while Venus and Mercury are inferior. as is the moon; but the moon is not SUPERIOR AND to be reckoned with the other INFERIOR PLANETS planets. The expressions superior and inferior refer to the position relative to the sun. They say that the Arabic word for the sun, shems, (which also means a collar) refers to the fact that the position of the sun among the planets is as if it were surrounded by a necklace, qiladah [P has shamsah.] All the conditions of the planets are certainly referable to the sun, especially the luminosity of the moon and the retrograde movement of the planets.

The difference between the inferior and superior planets is that the distance of the former from the sun 13 restricted and never exceeds a certain maximum elongation either in the East or in the West. When they precede the sun (are east of it) they leave it so far behind that they become visible after sunset in the evenings. Their visibility increases with the distance from the sun until the greatest eastern elongation is reached. Thereafter their movement becomes slower, and they again begin to approach the sun, when their slow movement comes to a complete stop. This is the stop before retrograding, the muqim lil-ruju. After this stop, iqamah, they turn back and their retrograde movement becomes more rapid until, at inferior conjunction, they become invisible in the rays of the sun, their evening occultation, ghaibah bi'l-'ashiyyat. After which, emerging on the other side of the sun, they move more slowly on their retrograde course, and begin to rise before the sun, so us to be visible when they have escaped from its rays,; this is called their matutine apparition, zuhur bi'l-ghadawat; then the retrograde movement becomes still slower till the planets reach the second stationary period, the muqim lil-istiqamat, before entering on their direct course. Then they soon reach their greatest distance from the sun, their western elongation, and proceed on their direct path till they again approach it, and, at superior conjunction, become invisible in its rays, their matutine occultation, ghaibah bi'l-ghadawat. Thereafter, passing through the rays, they again become visible in the west in the evening, the zuhur bi'l-'eshiyyat, thus returning to the sequence of the events described.

العلوم نطوللسترى والمرمخ والسفلم الهره وعطارد والغمر لترالع لنس والمنحره وهذا المشعلال لعاومقبيا المالنه عها وللعرص يري والمعرب المعرب والتزال روسه أسيكما زدما دنعر عرائشه المارسلم المألمة وضلعده بنه الاقامه وزرارسهم ورحوعهم يحمع لبنعاء الس ومم للغيد ماكعنها ب مهاورالنمّه راحعًا آلا كالمالي حرق وسنفريع وبندارا فالمدفاداان ألاكترا لمفرض لبغده وجرالمندمالغدوات ملح السمروي والوسطر والمغرب مالعندا العراب واما الم العنداب المال والمالل واما الم والدرالعلوم فليسلع وعرالهم والدرالعلوم فليسلع وعرالهمس

152

But the distance of the superior planets from the sun is not thus restricted; the sun moves quicker and outstrips them so that they escape from its rays and become visible in the east in the morning, their tashriq or orientality. 481. Every day their distance from the sun is increased as they proceed on their direct course, until at sunrise they arrive at a point in the heavens, which, if the sun were there, would indicate a time between the early and late They then attain the stationary efternoon prayers. point before retrograding, after which, their distance from the sun increasing every day, they reach the middle point of that course, they are in opposition to the sun, and have thus attained the greatest distance possible within their spheres. They then begin to rise in the east at sunset like the full moon at the fourteenth night of the month. Thereafter, the distance between them and the sun begins to decrease till a point is reached at sunset, which, if the sun were there, would indicate the forenoon. That time corresponds to the stationary period before beginning the direct course; thereafter the sun gradually approaches them till they come within its rays. and they become invisible in the west, a condition described as their taghrib, occidentality.

The difference, therefore, between the inferior and the superior planets is this, that the former are never further from the sun than the sixth of a circle, and in the middle of their retrograde course are occultated, their apparition and occultation occur both in the east and the west; while the latter attain the greatest possible distance from the sun within their spheres, are not concealed at the middle of their retrograde course but are there in opposition to the sun. Their apparition is only in the east, and their occultation is restricted to the west.

مالسلاه والمنع مندولا لكتبونا ونيسبقه السباعان عهاخي سرزت من شعاع ادفي المندوات والمشرف وَدَلِكُ عَد مِلا وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّالَّالَّا لَا اللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ واللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ واللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّالَّا لَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّا لَا اللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّا لَا لَاللَّا لَاللَّا لَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّا لَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ المجدبيه ارزداد والمعوعب مستقم المترالم أن ببرون علاع النهب لوسكا كالمشرفك لعطاف ابزسك بالطفر العمض مرسد المرجع أبرجع والمعدب كم وبزال شرييزداد كلوم المانج كماخ وسط البوع علىمنابلها وهاعظم بببعلى لسنني وحدث يبطلع مزالمترق وف غروب المن البدر لبلدالابع عند ومزاله في روبع ذك بإخراله بنهما فالناص انهبرالحوك وفتغوب المرعب لوكات متعاند لمتعان وقن الفهرو ذكك فف أفامند للاستفامد فاذااسمام لم ذلك من بدخيم على من المناعا بالمعاعا بالمعالم المناعا بالمعارة وذلك موتف ربيد والعرف بزله فيلح العله بحالله في الماسم المعدم المسمر الأنبياً عوود الفل من در الواسر و فنت في إن طالز جوع و بكون لا في المنظمة في المفرد عبد وظهور والعاوي معرف المرك الابعاد الكرب وبعابلها فوسطلاج ع ملانح فيد ولابك المنجه عالمنزف عبالطهور و عمدالمعرب سوكاحنا

155-154

bust, muhtariq, when it comes into conjunction with the sun, the expression being due to the com'COMBUST' parison of the sun with fire, and the nonappearance of the planet when it enters
the sun's rays, suggesting its combustion or destruction. This phenomenon is common to all the planets, and
occurs when they are at the summit or apogee, dhirwah,
of the epicycle. The superior planets differ from the
inferior ones in that the latter show the same phenomenon at its lowest point or perigee, hadid, whereas the
former do not, but are then in opposition to the sun.

154. Kaif dhālika fi'l-qamar. The moon exhibits the same appearance, but this is described as its conjunction, litimar. After its first appearance in the west as a slender CONJUNCTION crescent in the evening at the beginning OF MOON of the month, the illuminated surface grows with the increasing distance from the sun, till on the seventh evening, halfway between east and west it looks like a half-circle. When the moon has travelled 1800 from the sun by the fourteenth evening, it rises at sunset and the whole surface is illuminated. Thereafter as the distance decreases, the bright surface diminishes, so that by the twenty-second evening the dark part is again equal to the bright part; after which the dark part gains on the bright till the orescent shape like that of the new moon is attained, visible in the east in the morning. In all phases the luminosity of the moon comes from that surface which is towards the sun, consequently when it enters the rays of the sun, it is concealed, sarar,

مالاجنرل المراف ماجماع المعالي مع الشروم ممك تشبهاللن والاصف الصواجب بمباماع الابسار الاجراز ماللا يومذا مولاجتران عرض مالغه مطبع الصاحب المعبره فندر الاستقامه على وزه فلك الذوير ثم بفت اللعلمي على سط الرجوع . ٤ منبض فلكالدوبه فالله فالجبته ف فيدانها والعاد المجته ق م واند بمابل شركيف ذكك والفمرالع بشهل اعتباب في والله ورع ما لاً معلاف المعرب والأرال وداد بعده عزاله مسال الموال فيج معرفي اللانه بلغ منتصف ما بزللت وق المعذب في وللللهاء التابعيم النهر فبصبر النورج نسف مارى منه كهد نسف وابن وبعدذلك بمناللة زمنه عالها اللها الععشر فأند بتم فها بادا وبطلع بغ وب النمرك والعبونهما مسف دور فاذ أداد بعد الفرعلي كم نفس عابنت المنح فالبذا المنور في الأسلام والمفساف لمان بعود البيّا وي ب النور والطلام بعجمه إدالبها الماب والعشرون فضال طلم بعدم على الموزل انعبود الصورة المالال الاول الدفيق حمة المنترق طلغروات والمنورمند وجميع المجوال والجاب الذي لمجالتم فيم ستربع ودلك

154-155

muhaq, till after two days it again appears new in the west.

During these two days it is in conjunction with the sun, close union, ittisal, as Ptolemy describes it in the Najisti, and so it has come about to speak of this as compenionship, mugaranah, rather than as combustion, ihtiraq.

The opposite position of the moon, full moon, badr, imtila, when it confronts the sun, is known as istiqual.

155. Kaif ziyadah nür al-qamar wa muqsanuhu. The moon is a non-luminous globular body and its brightness is due to the rays of the sun WAXING AND which fall upon it as they do upon the earth, mountains, walls or the like, MANING the other sides of which are not OF MOON illuminated. When the moon is in conjunction with the sun, it is between us and the sun, because it is lower and the rays fall on that surface which is towards the sun, while we see only the surface facing us, and are unable to distinguish the dark mass of the moon from the bluel of the sky on account of the dazzling light of the sun, until the moon moves a little further away from it. Then a small part of the illuminated surface comes into view if the evening twilight is not too bright, and we have the DOW MOON.

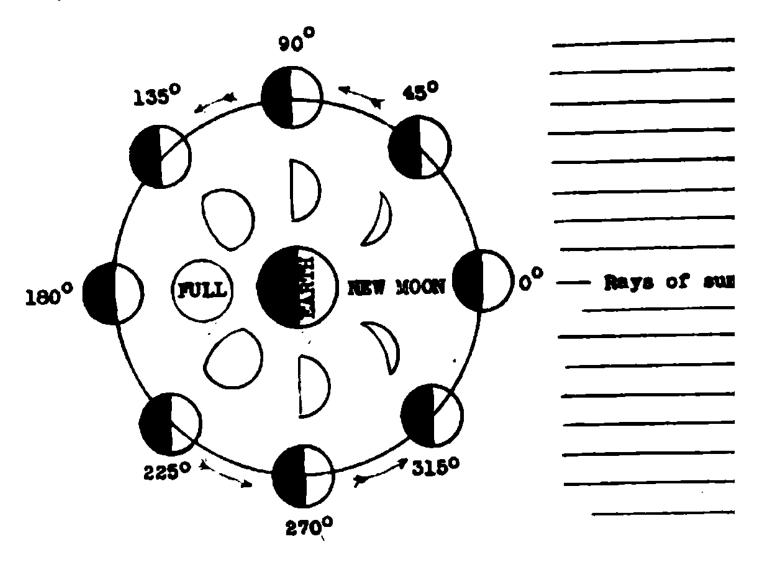
Owing to the spherical form of the moon, the margin of the sun's rays which fall upon it is necessarily circular, and so much of the illuminated half as comes into view is also bounded by part of a circle

l p. kabūdī, A. lāzwardiyyah, from P. lājward, lapislazuli.

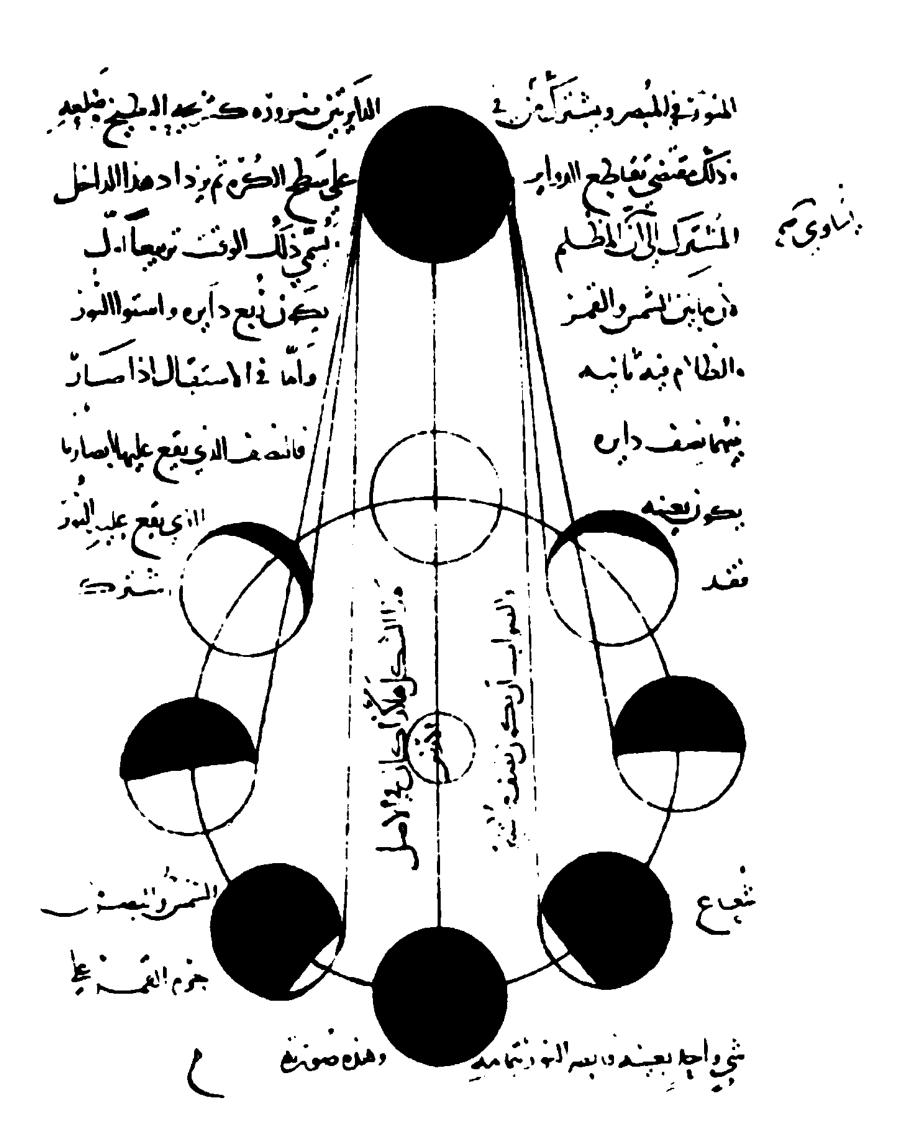
بنماع المنفر فبيتم مُدَّهُ السنسان سيراد الذكك وصاعاً عاف له فيدال ال بع دال والميلال عالمغرب بالعِنى بجمع والنس مع المعلى الم وترذ للاجتماعاً مطلب أسبه بطلبوس في حسّاب الجسطي السالا والمابوصف بالمنادندوم المجمّر الفيرجعيد العيان رام المحمد المابوصة المعادندوم المحمد المعادن ا والمسطلاح فامام حعيد العباس فانعذ الاجماء عومسا والفرالسم وأجذ إفد بما وحذلك بد ودو تتى استقب الأمطلف امت المفافي نورًالفرونفس مان جرم الفردة والشياعير من الدى ج بدمرال وراماهوه افعمر المفرعب حمارزي على أنس الجبال والجبنان والمام الاستالك الكانع وسالم واداكان العزم التمريث بينها وبسالانة اسفل ما وسيأوها بقع على باب الدي مجاديها وبخران أم تندابسارناالي الجانب لأم الذي لمبنا فلاجم كن منبر الفرمز لايه دد بم السمالطبدالسعاع فبحسفى النكأ والددعة جني أبعدعها بعداما فاط بدخل والجاب الذي لمبناه بغض ينومزا كإب المغراب بيبر فنطعه تمصران العلمامنوالسمق بيجب ملالالالالتعاعالوافع عليد بنه كلاجل ترب

155

on the spherical surface, the interval between them is at first crescentic like the slice of a melon. As the distance from the sun increases, the illuminated surface grows until it equals the dark part, and this is called the first quarter, tarbi", because the sun and moon are distant from each other by quarter of a circle. This equality of the bright and dark parts occurs also at the second quarter. At full moon, when it is separated from the sun by half a circle, the whole of the surface illuminated by the sun is visible to us, as may be seen from the diagram.



l Modified by the substitution of parallel rays for the sun, and by the representation of the real conditions of illumination, together with the appearance of there from the Earth.



156

people differ as to why this

PHASES PECULIAR waxing and waning of the moon is
not shared by the other planets, and
as to whether the planets are selfluminous like the sun, or merely illuminated by the
rays of the sun falling on them.

Many assert that light is exclusively the property of the sun, that all the stars are destitute of it, and that since the movements of the planets are obviously dependent on those of the sun, it may be assumed by analogy that their light is in the same position.

But others believe that all the planets are luminous by nature with the exception of the moon, and that its special peculiarities are its paleness and absence of brilliancy. This opinion is more in accord with the truth (as long as there is no evidence to the contrary) and that their concealment under the rays of the sun is just like their non-visibility in diffused daylight, which by its intensity so affects our vision, that we are unable to perceive them. But any one who looks out from the bottom of a deep pit by day may see a planet which happens to pass over the zenith, because his vision is relieved from the intensity of light by the surrounding darkness and strengthened by it, for black concentrates and strengthene vision, while white dissipates and weakens it.

whether the higher planets are self-luminous or not, they are always to be seen in the same condition. For if the moon were above the sun, it would cease to present the phenomena of waning, inthilam, and would always appear as full moon.

The situation, however, with regard to Venus and Mercury is this, that if they are not luminous, there would be a difference in the amount of their light when at their greatest distance from the sun, and when approaching their disappearance in its rays at conjunction, for indeed they are lower than the sun, and no such difference is observable.

لمأخص الفيزمز يزال المجاجب بزبان المؤد فعصاب والخلف أمللنا فاواد الداجب اعلىاذابد الممزالت سينفان بوقوع سعاعها فنهم زعب إلى الله مر منه منه منه الداحد المنه منه منه وقائر الامزينيل المرح كات الحواجب بحوك الشرعاب والدارها رمنه ومَزفِ إلى اللحواجب كلما بن ملط الغر والدُّخيوسر الحدده وعرم النساء هواه للتدليز طلبه ابده الم وحزير ورماء ال للملاف وذكك ان الحدوا حب بم ماله جدد و اختصادها عد المبعاء و كاخفاها الما المناخطاف النبالابسارا و كالمذلك عن ادداكها مان منظم فعرية عبف بعبدة الفرار والفق في وحيب علىمت داسم بالما داص المخطاف الطلدلسر وتعديد بها فاللهواد مع البصر وبقوب والمباص في و وهد علك العلوب العلوب حان بن اوعبر بن في الما ما ما عي شار جال ري الي واجب حياان القروعلا للمرك امراسلام المؤد ولوؤي الدالد تراول والناغ الزهن معضان فانماله إنب مابز بن المرب المماعد اعطم الباعد مِن النمْ و مِن البماع نِد المفرّاب من اختلاف في المالور

تبل

156-157

It is therefore preferable to regard the planets as self-luminous, while the special characteristics of the moon and the variety of the phases of its light are due to [three things, its captivity (by the sum, conjunction), bastagl, giriftagl, lits pale colour and absence of brilliance, and its position below the sum.

in the heavens are so multitudinous that it is impossible to enumerate them, yet those impossible to enumerate them, yet those endeavoured to recognize them and to determine their positions in longitude in the signs, and their latitude north and south of the ecliptic, observed that they differ in size and have consequently established a scale of magnitudes qadr, fuzz, to the two first degrees of which astrologers give the name of glory, sharaf. Of the first magnitude there are fifteen stars, of the second, forty-five, of the third, two hundred and eight, of the fourth, four hundred and seventy-four, and of the fifth, fifty-eight.

Among the stars of the sixth magnitude there are nine stars which Ptolemy described as 'dark', mixlim, apart from three others not counted with them, which together are called dhū'ābah and dafīrah, the tresses, (Coma Berenices), gīsū-dār', the lock-wearer.

Stars which are smaller than the sixth magnitude cannot be separately distinguished by our vision, or if they are can only with difficulty be kept under observation.

ما بماسللان عللم من وليرذك في ما يجسوس بالمنساط العر باحتلاف استحال الوزمير موحمون لوند وعدم مبايد مع حوند سفلا عزينز كراكواجب المابثه العداجب المات مبدالسمام الحسن بحيث فعز العاد ولمعت المرعنوا بجسبل واضعها طولآ فالمروج ومفادم غرفها بالسالع فالس البزوج والجذب مينه لماه جدوها عظفه الأجرام بالمناطرو العيان أنهما إمراب متوالد سموها افدارآه اعطام فاعطها خسيوش معدون مِز العُلم والعُدد الأول ونها عبر العالم المرا المنوف أماله إوالمشرف الاول بدل تول عبره الفود الأول تم التي اصغر منها فليلا في المدر الماني حمد واربع زد كا و العدر المال مأساد عوم -رما بدد و العدد الرابع المام وسيعون عداوا العدنا عرم مسان سبعه عشر حد كالور الماكر مركان وساء عودا و في العرد ماسماه بطلبوس طلا وني بعد سوى لمنه احراعبرمعده دومنها مرجملهاذواء وضفيع وماكال صغرمر العدزالسار مع الدي لمجاد المدسنية على والد وعد سعب

157-159

Apart from these there are five stars of the character of the milky way, like fragments of cloud latkhat, which are called nebulae. With them the number of stars registered is one thousand and twenty-two in all.

158. Ya kaif ma Tifah hadhihi al-thawabit. It would have been possible that a separate name should have been invented and given to each of HOW TO the fixed stars, were it not for the KNOW THEM length of the task, and the difficulty of keeping them in memory; but all nations, especially the Arabs, Hindus and Turks, have imagined them grouped into figures, with which they have associated various romances and fables.

The Greeks also have imagined lines round these groups, and out of them have constructed constellations, so as to make it easier to point them out when discussing their import or references to them in books, or when two people, familiar with the outline of the constellations, refer to the position of a star as in the hand or foot of such and such a figure.

Of such constellations there are twelve in the zodiac belt, twenty-one north thereof, and fifteen towards the south. Associated with some of them are certain stars, which are described as 'outside'.

- 159. Mā al-suwar allati 'alā minţaqat al-burūj.
 The constellations in the zodiac belt are those after which the signs of the zodiac are ZODIACAL called. Beginning from the vernal CONSTELLATIONS equinox they are:-
- 1. ARIES, al-hamal; berrah, represented in the form of a ram half-recumbent, but looking backwards with the mouth resting on the back.
- 2. TAURUS, al-theur; gav, in the form of the forepart of a bull, out in two at the navel, and with the head bent down as if about to gore.

¹ The Arabic names of the constellations are followed by the Persian ones, separated by a semicolon - these only occur in the Star-tables of the Persian MSS, ff. 37-38 PL. 25-26 PP.

عله منبليه و ذسه وبعد ذلك في الما خد عواجب مزجير المرمناب كالمامكيد غبم ولطات وبعابم عدد المحواج الموق الغادانى عشرون حود كافكيف معرفه هباه المولين المصيف انهم كاواج ومعاماتم ولاطول الأمزف وتنعذر جفيله وكل واجدم الام بتصور فهاصوراو يخرج لمااساط بروخوافات وخامنداله والمند والتركع فاماالو بالوزفعدته همواجه لهاخطوطا وعمله امنها معوزا لمنهالاسان المهاوخاسه فالمعابده فيمزال يسبخ فيباللح الذي عاغير سؤره كذااوبه ما او رجم افيدور مع لومااذا صارت فهابن الماضب عبله مدفن كآك العدر اناعت وصدن واقع دعلى طفد الروج واجدوع سنوس وروي السالعما وخرعش صون إلمان مَعَيْنِ مِعِلْ المُورْعِيِّ حواجب منسوب البهاالما حارجه عنهاع ماالصون الني علمطفرالسروح

عالم وسمت بماللبووج واسم الصون المواج في الماعت المالميمي الجل وهي و عبر في المنت إلى الدخي صادحه لم على المائية المور على و و المنت المقدم من توزي المنت المقدم من توزي المنافية المقدم من توزي المنافية المنافي

159

- 3. CEMINI, el-tem'amin; du paikar, two boys standing erect, one of them has his arm round the other's shoulder;
 - 4. CANCER, al-saratan; kharcheng, like a crab.

5. ILO, al-asad; sair,

6. VIHGO, al-'adhre'; dushize be khushe, in the form of a maid with two wings and a flowing skirt, (in her hand an ear or two of corn directed to the bottom of her skirt)?

7. LIBRA, el-mīzān; tarāzū, like a balance with

scales;

8. SCORPIUS, al- 'agrab; kazhdum,; as a scorpion;

9. SAGITTARIUS, al-remi; tir-andez, in the form of a horse as for as the base of the neck, from which there projects half of a man from the region of the loins upwards; he has long tresses, is fitting an arrow to his bow, which he has stretched to its utmost.

10. CAFRICORNUS, ul-judi; buz-ghāla, the front half like a kid, the hinder like a fish to the end of

the tail,

11. AQUARIUS, saqib el-ma; rizanda ab, a man with both hands outstretched, in one of them a pitcher which he has turned upside down, and from which water is flowing towards his feet and runs down from them.

12. PISCES, samakah; mihi, represented by two fishes whose tails are joined together by a thread called the thread of linen, khait al-kittin.

Although the Arabic name for Aries is al-hamal, a lamb, habsh would be more correct, because it is more like a ram on account of its horns; similarly Capricorn, in Arabic jadi, a kid, should really be called this, a gost, on account of its head; the Hindus call it magar, (mugger or crocodile) which is the name of a marine animal.

The common people call Gemini al-jauza instead of al-tau aman; Virgo, al-sunbula instead of al-fudhra; Sugittarius al-quus for al-raml; Aquarius, al-dalw instead of sakib al-ma; and Pisces, al-hut for al-samakah, but the names given in the first place are the correct ones.

بسفير على والمالم الومان على وره صبير عالم بروانع المرمان على خب الأخر والأبعد المرطان وصورت مامد ما كالمسدلات عذاك والماد مد العنداعل موره جارد دات جنا جن مداد للعاما والسابعد البران عسن وكالمدوالا مندالع غرب كذلك والماسعد الراب كانة جندماة الالفن أيرزين عيزالفؤ بسف ربل ذودوابسنلانبع المبهرية قوسير واغرف فإلنزع والعارش لكبي وهو الالمدرع في والمعتم من عبى المائي موخ سم عدال نها والجاد عشرساجب المأعل موزه ذجل فاعمآد الدرن باجد بغماكوذ مر فلنه ماسب المالل مقام وطب وجري بخها والمان عبزيم علصون مخصير فلعصل بساجها بنب المخرى يطربتي خبط المتعال وغدتم الجاجيساً وذلك أصوب الأندذ وفرون على إئيه حان عب النسخ المدئ بسألم فالمناد بنوند مصووه المركابه بحرمد مودا كالصون المحجبناها والمللعوام فقيل ستهرعنهم وجالتومير بمموالجوزا وبزح العندا بالمسنبلد والزام كالتوس كأثب الما بالالو والتمكد الخوت والأل موالمواب عاالمور المنالب

تزيلم

160

160. Mā al-suwar al-shamāliyyah. The following are the Northern Constellations. I. URSA MINOR. al-dubb al-asghar; khirs kuchak. 2. URSA MAJOR, al-dubb al-akbar; NOR THERN CONSTELLATIONS khirs buzurg. Both are pictured as bears standing with tails out-3. DRACO, al-tinnin; Azhdahā, is represtretched. sented as a very long serpent with many convolutions; it is coiled round the north pole of the ecliptic. 4. CEPHEUS, qifāūs or fiqāūs, is a man with a conical hat galansuwah, and is resting on one knee. He has both hands outstretched, as is the case with BOOTES, al- awwa, the shouter, who is erect. CORONA BOREALIS, al-fakkah, al-iklil al-shamali, qaş'at el-yetamî wa'l-masekin; afsar, is generally known us the beggar's dish. 7. HERCULES, al-jathî "alā rukbataih; zānū nishastah, is represented as a man kneeling. 8. LYRA, lura, al-sanj; chang rumi, as a Greek lyre, but it is sometimes called a tortoise, sulhafāh. 9. CYCMUS, al-dajājah; mākiyān, is like a duck with neck and wings outstretched in the act of 10. CASSIOPEIA, dhat al-kursi; khudawand-1 flying. kursi, the lady of the throne, is seated on a kind of 11. PERSEUS, barshāus, hāmil ra's al-ghūl; pulpit. burandah sar-i div. who is represented erect, holding in one hand the hideous head of the decapitated 12. AURIGA, mumsik el- enan; girandeh fenan, ghoul. is a man with a whip in one hand and holding the reins in the other. 13. SERPENTARIUS, al-hawwa'; mar afsay, the serpent-charmer, standing over a serpent, 14. al-hayyah; mar, the head and tail of which he holds aloft above his head. 15. SAGITTA, al-sahm; tir, also called al-bulah and al-nauk; because it is a long thing of indefinite form, and bears many names suggested by its resemblance (to an arrow). 16. AQUILA, al- uqub is an eagle seated on the arrow.

¹ bulah a short sword, naukP. for beak or mib.

الماالف المسغر والماسه الدب الاعبذة هاعل ودنى دبن فنب وذاب مادى الذب فالمالس حبد طويله كم عالالواوالا بعطاف الكسب عَلَى الزوج النَّالِد والرابع معاور حرَّط مناله من الدار لما الدن والمامس مالع الكالسياح درجل إمادالدن السارس الفت وأسمال حليل السمال فيع فدالع أمد بقسع فالسام والمساجين والسابعه الماء على حبيد وصورته كالمد والمامن وجوراهم المنظراد وع زما مستسطفاه والماسع مدالد جاجد و في و وبطم مان عنها ما شرم جناجها كالها نطير والعاند و ان الكوس كام اذر جال على ومراللنبذ واجاربري شيره ساوس ويتم حاماداس العول حرجافاعبين وإسآمتوه مقطوع والمنا بسيعشر ممسك العالب حرجل فالمبد اجدى ومرسوط والأخرى فأبضد على عال والمالة عن الجراد الماء والمابعة عنرجد الموامد فبضالح البده علها وفدر فيض رأيهاوذ ببهاجي علواراسد فالحامسة عشرالسهر وبمال انداله لدن جعيدانة تني ستطيل صهن لذ فيج لح المه بعج على سباهد والساري عنز العفاب وعووافع على السيم والمسابع عنز لدلفر وهوجوان بحري شبد

160-161

17. DELPHINUS, al-dulfin, a marine animal like an inflated water-skin; lit is friendly to man, accompanies boats, rescues the drouged, alive or dead, (and plays about in groups of ten). 18. EQUULEUS, el-fares elawal, pictured as the head and neck of a horse, and therefore referred to as git at al-faras. PEGASUS, al-faras al-thani, the fore part of a horse with two wings; there is no man with it, for it is cut in two at the navel, like Taurus above described. 20. ANDROMEDA, andrumida, she is the woman who has never seen a husband, al-marat allati lam tara ba lan, also al-musalsalah; zan ba zanjir, the chained woman, who stands erect, and according to Abu al-Husain al-Suff this chain is around her feet, while Aratus. 3 who described these constellations, placed the chains on her hands, so that she is as it were suspended by them. 2). TRIANGULUM, al-muthallath; sih sū, its figure corresponds with its name.

161. Ma al-suwer al-janubiyyah. The southern constellations are fifteen in number. 1. CETUS, qitus, this is a sea-monster with two feet and a tail like a bird's. 30UTHERN ORION, al-jabbar, jauzā', the tyrant CONSTELLATIONS with belt and sword. 3. ERIDANUS, al-nahr; jul, like a river with many bends. 4. LEPUS, al-arnab; khargush, the bare. 5. CANIS MAJOR, al-kalb al-akbar; seg buzurg. 6. CANIS MINOR, al-kalb alasghar also al-muqaddam; sag pishin. 7. HYDRA, al-shujat, a serpent long and slender. 8. ARGO, alsafinah; kashti, the ship. 9. CRATER, al-ka's, albatiyah; paiyala, the cup. 10. CORVUS, al-ghurab; kulagh. All of the above are figured as their names 11. CENTAURUS, qanțeurus, like Sagittarius suggest. is represented as half men and half horse (just as the Centaur is described in the Greek books).P 12. LUPUS, al-sabur; shir. This is a wild beast which the Centaur has seized by the feet, and holds aloft. 13. ARA, elmijmarah, an incense-burner. 14. CORONA AUSTRALIS. al-ikili al-janubi; afsar. 15. PISCIS AUSTRALIS, alhut al-janubi; mahl.

l ziqa. P. kh**i**k. 2 ανδρι μή **είδε**.

³ So in P, but Azarītas in A.

الذف المنوخ نجب للانرض انرما لمنفر فيتح للغرفا سوالجبااه و فعللا عثمر الفريزالاول وعوحراس فرسرا المغزز غنفده لمدائر فلعدالفرير والماسير الفرساليا فدوع عنسف فرترجيخ الانبالة مقطوع مزاليس مثالة ز الذي تقدم وخص في البنو وجوالم من المناه المواد المراه المو لم تربيها المر ايضاً المسلسد و بعضون امراه فابعد واما ابوالجسر المه في فالدّجعِل المسلسب ببطيها وامااداد بطرمصة زعن الصوره فاندجع السلسدب بربساك المالم بلقديها والجاربه وللعشون الملث وصورت كأسمره فاالصورلليوسيراه لماموره فبطر مع جوان عرى دو رجلز و ذبالطير والمان بدالجاد وصورته حرجل منطن بتين والمالن النه كالمحدول ذوعطفات والمابعيم الانب واكامس الكلب الاحبر والسارس العلد المندم والت يبعدانجاء والمناحند النغيند والمناسع الكاس وبركالاجه والعاشن الغرآب مسوده و كالماما والحاري عبس منطور يخالها ببرعنز المتنع وعاصنون الااي المنقدم وحن عالبزوح اغم مُولَفاً مَنْ بِسِفِ وَرُولِهُ إِنْ فَإِنْ فِي فِيلِ السِّبِعِ وَبِثَالِهُ وَالْمَالِمُ مِنْ المجمع والمرابع وعبشر المحالط والخام وعين المحراط ومودها كاساما

161

The translation of the matter on the opposite page is to be found at the top of p. 73.

ومن المنجلة العنور النالة العدة السعى بنب مذا الاحليل المائية وحد الكراسة والمرحدة المروح احتفى بنج الجؤت الماء ومائية والمناوت بالمرابخ المرابخ ومنا الجؤت المناوت معاجدا وقد أور بما يقط والمرابخ والمنون معاجدا وقد أور بما يقط والمجدود المنون معاجدا ومنع الماؤوج منها وقد وضع بها و هذا الجدول المعبر على سطها اها

161-162

The last two constellations must not be confused with those of similar names (Corona borealis and Pisced in the northern and zodiacal constellations.

differences of opinion as to the number of stars in each constellation, both as to number and NUMBER magnitude, also as to whether a particular of STARS star should be regarded as outside or not. The following tables present a catalogue convenient for reference and study.

	Northern Constellations	1	_	gn1 [.] 3	tude 4	.	6	'darid	nebulee	Sum
	Ursa minor	Ī	2	1	4	٦	Ť			7
	Outside				1	Ī				ı
2	Ursa major		6	8	8	5	,	1		27
	Outside			1	2	1		4		a
3	Draco			8	16	5	2			51
4	Cepheus			1	7	3				11
	Outside				1	1				2
5	Bootes			4	9	9			ł	22
	Outside	1							ļ	1
6	Corona borealis		1		5	1	1			а
7	Heroules			6	17	2	3	ļ	1	28
	Outside					1				1
8	Lyra	1		. 2	7					10
9	Cygnus		1	5	9	2				17
	Outside				2				1	2
10	Cassiopeia			4	6	1	2		<u> </u>	13
	Summary	2	10	40	94	31	8	4	<u> - </u>	189

١,	اسمَّالمُونْد بي كولكِ المُونِد													
351	الغائية	انظل	いい	7. K.	الرابح	المالية	之山	140	السالمد كل					
١	*	N	*	3	1,	١	_	*	الحب الاسغرآ					
	1	4	*	7	7	18	18	18	خادح الديام					
حر	3	•	ø	•	7	7	9	4	الأتسالك يرس					
34	4	4	•	1		1	শ্ব	8	خانح الدناكر					
Y	4	8	_	•	ی.	2	15	4	النبن ج					
6	4	*	*	7	ر	1	76	*	بنفاوس کے					
-	4	4	*	١	١	*	*	¥	خادح بنفاوس					
ڪ	*	8	4	ط	7	د	4	4	العوا ٥					
	4	4	*	46	4	16	*	1	حادح المواوعوال اع					
7	*	*	1	1	٥	4	1	8	العظم و					
É	4	18	7	_	و	g	18	N	الاتعلىطبيه					
	4	*	4	1	4	4	46	*	عارج المائي ز					
1	4	4	4	78	ر	_	*	1	اللوزاح					
7	46	*	8	<u> -</u>	<u>L</u>	•	1	4	العجاجد ط					
1	4	1	-1	*	<u>_</u>	4	18	18	خادح الدلجد					
+	16	8	_	1	و	>	46	140	الأرثي					

162

Northern Constellations Magnitudes continued 1 2 3 4 5 6 Wark nebulae												
From last page	2	10	40	94	31	8	4	-	189			
ll Perseus		2	5	16	2			1	26			
Outside					2		1		3			
12 Auriga	1	1	2	7	2	1			14			
13 Serpentarius			5	15	6				24			
Outside				5					5			
14 Serpens			5	12	1				18			
15 Sagitta				1	3	1	ļ		5			
16 Aquila		1	4	1	5		•		9			
Ou tside			4	1	1		1		6			
17 Delphinus			5	2		5			10			
18 Equulous							4		4			
19 Pegasus		4	4	9	3				20			
20 Andromeda			4	15	4				23			
21 Triangulum			3	1					4			
Summary	3	18	81	177	58	13	9	1	560			

The total number of stars in the northern constellations is therefore 360, of these 3 are of the first magnitude, 18 of the second, 81 of the third, 177 of the fourth, 58 of the fifth, 22 of the sixth including the dark ones, and 1 of the cloudy category.

The MS has 28 and 167 in this Summary for 18 and 177.

·	كولك المور													
1000	العاييه	المطله	المادم	(A K	الرابع	اتاع	111		عردالعور					
ڪو	1	•	*	1	نو	•		×	وشاوش ما					
7	25	-	*	1	4	10	•	*	سادح دساه					
مولا	4	*	+	}	د		1	_	مثلانان					
4	16	*	16	9	+	٥	*	46	للو" ا					
۵	8	4	*	16	•	*	4	16	غادخلوا					
7	4	4	4	1	}	٥	*	46	الجند مر					
ð	46	4	1	~	1	4	*	8	المهر مد					
ط	4	4	4	7		>	١	46	العُمَاب يو					
•	46	46	な	1	1	>	*	*	فازح انضار					
_	8	4	7	*	1	•	ત	8	الرفعب مر					
د	46	>	16	16	- 4	4	4	જ	فطعمالغرسخ					
حڪيط	4	4	4	7	4	7	•	*	الفراليان مط					
مي	*	4	*	>	مد	>	4	8	المالك					
>	4	4	16	16	1	7	46	46	اللذ كا					

عِمع الكواب الله المسود السالم المهابد وسنون و منا فالمخلولة لله وفي المان المهابد وسنون و مناول المدون المان و المان المان و المان و عنون مع المطلد والمعلول جو المان و عنون مع المطلد والمعلول جو و المان و عنون مع المطلد والمعلول جو

Zodiacal Magnitudes Constellations 1 2 3 4 5 6 'dark' nebulae S												
	Aries			2	4	6	1		200,2269	13		
	Outside			1	1	3				5		
2	Taurus	1		7	11	13	1		·	33		
•	Outside				1	10				11		
3	Gemini		2	5	9	2				18		
	Outside				3	4				7		
4	Cancer				7	1			1	9		
	Outside				2	2				4		
5	Leo	2	2	6	8	5	4			27		
	Outside				1	4				5		
6	Virgo	ı		6	7	10	2			26		
	Oŭtside ·					4	2			6		
7	Libra		2		4	2				8		
	Outside				5	2	1			8		
8	Scorpius		1	13	5	2				21		
	Outside			•		2			1	3		
9	Sagittarius		2	9	9	8	2		1	31		
ho	Capricornus			4	9	9	6]		28		
11	Aquarius	1		9	18	13	1			42		
	Outside				3				[3		
12	Pisces			2	22	3	7		1	54		
011-	Outside	<u></u>		_	4			<u> </u>		4		
of	nmary exclusive Coma Berenices shoontains 3 star	5	9	64	133	105	27		3	340		

	كولك النبوني												
	3	k 7	生	Į.	1	<u></u>	آءَ	يا	ا برا	و الم	الم الصو		
	*	8	14	1	,	د .	1	13	18		اعل		
		13	3	*	7	1	1	1 ~	3		طرح <i>ا</i> کمل		
	2 -	-8	14		4	<u></u>	1	3	1	ب	المدز		
		-5	-6	8	_		*	3	*		ط. حالة د		
	7	-6	4	4	ب_	ط		ا ا	4	7	للوزا		
	ソ	1 4	146	4	د	7	-6	-6	4	<u>.</u>	المارح المور		
	<u>b</u>	1	145	7	1.	د	14	-6	4	ر ر	السطال		
	<u>د</u>	4	3	4			3	*	16	ب	مارح الرطا		
	ے	-6	*	<u> </u>	٥	2	,		<u>۔۔۔</u>	۵	الارد		
ĺ	0	1-4	8	8	<u>></u>		16	8	8		-12-b		
فر	عو	14	8	_	<u>-</u>		و	4	<u> </u>	ر. 	السيلة .		
_	وا	1 4	-	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	.	*	-	*	7	اله. 	<u>المراد المرا</u>		
	7	40	4	3		2			~	ر	المراب		
	4	8	46	!	1	•		4	*		عارجالما		
کر	ڪا	*	8	4 ,		٥	2		<u> </u>		العفرس		
	7		_*	_′3			8	4	8	-	طرحالمف		
	Y		~ક	اس	ح	ط	7		*	1	الرامى		
	3	3	8	ا و	ط	<u>ط</u>		4	18	 -	ا المراق		
セ	<u>}</u>	8	*	i	اح_		اطر	- 3		<u> </u>	WC		
	\	8	— * i	3	3	~	4	46	46	UL.	ما جماک		
	1	43	46	او	_	وعد		-5	-4	<u> </u>	الخوسب		
!	2	45	48	46	5	-	4	4	4	<u>کہ</u>	خارح المن		
نی	، وخالا	لجس	للمهو	جلايه	عبام	ڪود	اربور	رسته	لدلمار	وللمويعا	جعما أالم		
	للادك	فتسهوبي	مانه و	إكام	إن	وللنرو	بعمايه	بغيالا	أستوز	لسادبعه	نسجدونج البا		
			-	عجاكب	ع ^ا له `•	بواليمج	الذوا	لمدسو	المحايب	وعثروك			

162

Southern									
Constellations	_1	_ 2		4	5	6	'derk'	mbilee	Sum
1 Cetus 2 Orion 5 Eridenus 4 Lepus 5 Canis major Outside 6 Canis minor 7 Argo 8 Hydra Outside 9 Crater 10 Corvus 11 Centaurus 12 Lupus.in, Camelus 13 Ara 14 Corona sustralis 15 Piscis australis Outside	21 1 11	2 61	10 3 2 5	26 6 5 9	3 2 4 7 7 1 18 6 2			1	28 39 34 18 18 11 25 25 27 7 37 19 11 6
Summary	7	18	68	165	54	9		1	316
Northern Zodiacal Southern	3 5 7	18 9 18	81 64 62	177 133 165	58 <u>35</u> 54	13 27 9	9	1 3 1	360 346 316
Summary	15	45	57	475	217	49	9	5	1022

Pomalhaut omitted, already assigned to Aquarius.
The tables are identical with Ptolemy's except that l/ Heroules and Libra have respectively 6 and 2 stars of the third mag: instead of 5 and 3; 2/ outside Libra there is an additional star of the 3rd and one of the 5th lacking, 3/ that Argo has 10 of the 3rd and 20 of the 4th instead of 11 and 19 respectively.

				، ور	لصر	ے	واد	ڪ	•		
		E	4 = 1	1707	E	1 14,	٢	C:	J. 1	2,	المائدة
	21	3	3	•	•	~		3	4	1	1
لر	L	1	>	3	ح	<u>a</u>	ے	•	1	_	·W
	لد	8	-15	8		ڪ	•	8		د	المعر
		*	7	3	د	•		4	-6	م [M.
	ســ	*	*	8	9	•	0	•	1	6	27
,	l	3	3	8	3	ط	*		*		Start
		*	¥	*	*		¥	8	1	3	الطالف
	4	4	3	1	ر	5	_	3	1	-	المغه
	كمدشتن	4	15	1	١	بط	_	1	*	ح	المراع
	J	•	45	3	*	8		*	18		احاك
		4	¥	8	3	ر ا	*	15	3	ط	الأب
	ر	*	8	8	1	,	•	76	3	-	الدا
	لرب	8	8	18	2	بو	د	•	1	1	تظرب
	ىد	18	4	4	9	L		*	4	-	الأبع
•	ر 	*	* **	10	م	•	*	8	*	*	وسطا
	*	1	ঠ	_	و	•	7	4	*	4.4	MICH
	l	16	-6	ব		12	4	3	4	h	-1
I	ور	-6	-6	4	Ī	1-	7	4	18		حادجلنور
	MIL		ت ا ، م		ے د	••	لما		١.	لميم	101

عبع مان المدور الحدود المدور المدور المدور والماري وال

163

ukher. All peoples, especially desert-dwellers, have given names to the stars in accordance STAR NAMES with resemblances which they suggest. Those which are best known in our day are names given to them by the Arabs, accordingly I shall mention those which are most current.

In Ursa minor at the tip of the tail there is a bright star of the third magnitude called the kid, judaly, (the pole star) the significance of which is great as it is regarded as occupying the place of the north pole; in our times there is no bright star nearer it. On account of this position it is of great service to any one directing himself to the qiblah [or for orientation,] because it does not sensibly alter its position.

On the fore part of the body are two bright stars of the second and third magnitude, al-farqadan, (the two calves) and between them and the tail a group of inconspicuous stars confronting them disposed in the form of a myrobalan, halflaif. Some people call it a fish, and others the mill-stone, fa's al-raha, (asiya P) on account of their belief that the pole is in the midst of the group, [and that these stars are revolving round it].

All of the stars of Ursa minor are sometimes called the smaller children of the bier, banat nash al-sughra, owing to the similarity of their disposition to stars of like name in Ursa major, banat nash al-kubra. On account of the closeness of the north pole to these banat, it is sometimes called the pole of the banat nash.

¹ diminutive of jadI.

² supply al-farqadan before kawakib.

³ banāt is generally interpreted as plural of bint, daughter, but Lane points out that when ibn, son, is applied to an inanimate object, its plural is also banāt.

مَية للاستران بعد في في المسادر منعيد والسِّما بدوليد ع وجمله مارة المنود الشاليد والجنوب والموسطه الف انناف عبشه ون مهابة البطم الاولخشع عشركوكباء بدالمات خسدواديون وبفاللَّالْث مابِلان عانيه وبعالا بعاد وخشه وسبع ف. 2 انكامِرُمائِباِكسَّبعِه عِسْرِه بِأَلْسُانِ مِنْعِبِعُ وَادْبعِ زُولِلْطَالِسَعَد والمعاسات والأوابة لمتدعوا يب بعدما لمدخل ولللدح فهايغ في عن الماسد اسما إخر كواجير الأم و كلسد الدوبون منهم نسبها اسباعل بب منهدا باما والمنهور عند اعلى اما الماء العرب وغزن عزاله في فعالل المعين على طرف دبسط عب برم الفرز المالم متوند لينى وبنوب ع القطب المند في ماما اور النب الدوبست عراية تعرفب القبلد لاندكلان ول فالمجتر ع بصحائد والوقدات مِرْ الْهُ رُدَالًا مِهُ وَالْمَالُ فَيْ مُعَدِّمِ الدَّب الاسغروبِ مُلْمِ ذَبْد وَمِنْ الْب خفي ذبج المي شكامل الحتىم يعينهم كدو بعينه فالرال جالاء عادم طيهاوتر حبح كواجب الدب الاسغر بنان بعث الصغري فاللهبيد المن مزالاب الاعترقيمي النع وأسب

163

The larger banāt al-na'sh of Ursa major are seven bright stars (called in Persian haft varang) four of which disposed in a quadrangle form the na'sh or bier while the other three on the tail are the banāt (or mourners). That on the tip of the tail, furthest away from the bier, is called al-qā'id, the one in the middle al-'anāq, close to which is a small star just within the limits of vision al-suhé, while that at the root of the tail is called al-jaun.

Below the banat na sh on the legs of the bear are a number of small stars in pairs which are called cafzat al-zibā', leaps of gazelles, jastan-i ahwan P, and are likened to their hoof-prints. In front of the bier is a semicircular group of stars named the tank, haud.

The four stars on the head of Draco are called 'awa'idh, (camele which have recently foaled) and sometimes the falling cross, al-galib el-waqi', and between them and the farqadan are two bright stars, al-'auhagan' and al-dhiban's bulls or wolves.

On the left foot of Cepheus there is a star called a shepherd, al-ra'l, another between the feet, his dog, and a number in the body, his sheep.

Outside Bootes there is a star opposite the banat called al-simak al-ramin, (the high spear-bearer Arcturus); his spear is formed by two stars from Heroules. It is called simak on account of its high altitude: In a line with it towards the south is another star large and bright, al-simak al-argal, (the high unarmed one), because there is no other star near it to serve as a weapon. (Spica virginis.) Arcturus is sometimes called the guardien of the northern heavens haris al-shimal.

Sters which are on the breast and arm of Hercules form the northern row, al-nasaq al-shāmī, while some on the forepart of the Serpent of Serpentarius make the southern row, al-nasaq al-yamanī. Between the two rows is the garden, al-rawdah.

l usually translated 'kid', but according to Tallgren "Las nombres de lus estrellas" p. 664 'annaq 'ambracing' (the little Suhá? ἐρωτύλος v. Boll, Sphaera p. 81) For legends regarding the two stars, cf. R.H. Allen, Star Names p. 446.
2 misspelt in MS. 5 for dhi'ban or dhu'ban.

المنا الما الما المناك فلب بنات نعش الما المعرف الأدبع والوانع على بدربع والمالبات مجالك الني على النب فالذي على فدوموالابعد عنالسنر وتبح العباب والذي عاوسط الذنب أمرالغ إف الم عددو سنبرجام المتخاص على في برهب والذي على الله بموندا لوك وتحذنات بعش علوا بالدب الاعبر حواكب سعاد مزد وحدتمي ج تفيزات الطب امنيه ها بالما وإخلافها و امام بنات نعش من حواجها أيب بندسف داره مترا لمبنى الابعدالي على النبزنسي الموابذه مسي صلب الداوح بهاوبراله وفون حوكان أن مبان الومنوالذي على والمفناه والسبرى ترالاع وعلم بنطبه وملعل السا والخارج بهوره الحدا وهونتر تمادي لينات بعن والساكر الماع و دعم وحان من من الجابي الما المحدوم على وبادابه بوالجوب الراحوم الماكر الإغرادم مسرد لمربغ ودعود سكون المالما بغف ابصا بجاد والسال والحواجب الني على ورا بالب وعب البرسي المنة السامي وأماالها فعن لبعل لنبع المعتم من المواء مهمااله مندأ الذيدود أالمسرالوافع لانجباحبه مفوصات مم

The bright star in Lyra, al-masr al-waqi, (Vega) called the falling or the sitting vulture, because its wings are folded, two small stars, which together with Vega resemble a trivet, uthfiyyah, dig-payah. Vega and the heart of Scorpius, qalb al-vaqrab, are called al-harraran, [dogs barking on account of the cold], [because they are so clearly visible in winter.]

The stars on the breast and wings of Cygnus are called the horsemen, al-fawaris, and the bright one on

the tail, the follower or pillion-rider, al-ridf.

A bright star on the chair of Cassiopela is known as al-keff al-khadib, or the henna-stained hand of thurslys, the Pleiades, the nebula of Perseus being the wrist: it is also called the camel's hump, sansa, by the Arabs who make a camel out of the stars of Cassiopela and others.

Capella, the large bright star on the shoulder of Auriga, is called al-'aiyuq, the smaller one lower down, al-'anz, the she-goat, and the two further down the goat's kids, al-jadian: it is on this account that

they call Capella the goat-herd, al- annaz.3

Altair, the bright star on the wing of Aquila, is called the flying vulture, al-nasr al-ta'ir, and the four stars (like a rhomb on the head) of the Dolphin are known as the flying cross, al-salib al-ta'ir.

The four great stars forming the body of Pegasus are called the bucket, al-dalw, and between them and the Fish there is the fox's den, baldat al-tha'lab. Now this fish is not Pisces but one which the Arabs picture to themselves out of some stars of Andharu-midha and others. Two of the stars of Triangulum are called the companions, al-anisain.

The Arabs do not ploture the constellations of the zodiac in the way described; there is no trace of them except in three cases. The first is Aries where the two stars on the horns are called nath and natih, which is an indication that they were thinking of a ram butting. The second is Scorpius which is conceived entirely in the Greek way. The third is Leo: but their lion is fashioned

¹ P. hazārān, AO huwārān; Al-harrārān, v. Lane under harra: also the cold Syrian months Kanun I & II, Dec. & Jan.

² P. buz, buzghālagān, buzvān and buzbān:
3 usually read 'ināz, she-goats or AO 'anāq, but see
Dozy and Tallgran p.675 - ma*āz is more usual than
'annāz, for a goat-herd.Qazwīnī (Ideler p.90) "they call
Capella and the kids 'ināz". In my copy of Q. 'itāq.

حود انع والانبد وبركاله إنج مع فل الع غرب المرارات والذب على بالرجاجه وسكن عائم الفوادس والفي على بمالله دف اندد دبيب والماالم الذي على بند ذات المصري مي المصف المنسب منصفيالزماد سباند برشادس عيمها وسمانساكف المنسب شنام المافدلار العرب ميسود وامزي واجب دات الدعر تنى غيرها فاقد ويتج المرالذي على منحب مميل المعند الجوق الزبع ألعزوا لأننا فاندل إرس لمذاسرا الجووتهال اوالذي على وذالع أب وخاج النسرالط اولارج لجد مبسوطان النافيز تترسلب الطابر والادبعد المبنى على زالفررا لإعظ من الداو ومنها وم المسك مل البعل والعرب تصور نعز بعن والم اندر ومبذا وغرما حوناغ المنصدالي عصوره البرح الماب عشر مسي انغ للك بمان لانتسان المسترق أسود العرب صق البروج الحاتي وإبوج عبدهم منهاأ والإومات مان مان مان سبه و الحامطاه ملطا دلل على عابه مندال الجل حدك برفوا العي غرب حكاء ف البوانون م سمعوا كالإرفالغوا مورد مزع بمصور إخر فعيدا السيطان ايعد وراسي النؤببن المتنع ذاعيد وبزية والاستعبيد وجهد

out of some five constellations, only the eyes, forehead, neck and shoulders, and the tail-tuft belong to Leo, while they make one fore-leg out of the heads of Cemini, the other out of Camis minor, the nose out of Camicer and the hind-legs of the two similes.

The Pleiades, thursiya, parvin^P, they set down as a head with two hands, one of which is the khadib which was mentioned in Cassiopeia, whose finger-tips, anamil, are stained with henna; if we proceed from these towards the Pleiades we find a series of stars which represent the wrist, the elbow, the shoulder, and the shoulder-joint, 'atiq.' The other hand is the kaff aliadhma' from stars in the head of Cetus; it is called ladhma', amputated, because the row of stars which extends to it from the Pleiades is shorter.

Al-dabaran is called faniq, a big male camel; round him are a number of young famales, qala'is, like the young of the old famales, nuq, while the two small stars, his dogs, are near each other in the narrow gap, daigah, between him and the Pleiades, (which brings misery and ill-luck).

They call the heads of Gemini the extended arm, dhirar al-mabsutah, of their lion, and the two stars of Canis minor, Procyon, al-shira al-shimiyyah, and its companion, mirzam, the contracted arm, dhirar al-maqbudah.

Stars in the body of Cetus are spoken of as ostriches na amat, 2 and cows, begar, while the large one in the tail together with that in the mouth of the Southern Fish, Fomalhaut, fam al-hut, are the two frogs difds an.

Orion is called jauza' instead of Al-jabbar, and his belt a string of pearls, nizam, or a row of maids, jawari; out of some of the stars of Eridanus' they make a chair for him, and of some from Lepus a throne. The large bright star (Sirius) in the mouth of Orion's dog, Canis major, is nemed al-shi'ra al-yamaniyyah, and the passer over, al-'abdr, for they relate that (both of

I That part of the shoulder on which ride' a clock or a shoulder-belt rests.

² shuturmurghan^P, 'camel-birds'; na'am, the species ostrich, ha'amah, a single ostrich phrei na'amit; it has another plural na'a'im. na'am, pasturing cattle including camels or camels alone, plural, ana'im. 3 PL has hawa' by mistake for nahr, PP, jul.

⁴ v. Pococke, Specimen, p. 136.

وعامله ودُفيتُده الضعين ذبَده السّاكان أفأه فاستولي فير مرخم منعور وج ونصبه اللرما كرام در ويد بالمختر وج ونصبه الرما كرام المراح والمراح والم والملها المنسوس كوكب امامه واذ الحذند منها عوالرواكان المعيم مالمرفن المنحب والمعاني مالحتوا جب المي بهرا والدالا رب المتعف الجؤمامين الرجب ذامق لمسمن المعام الأمار سلرح لهب وينت جعما الانهاا فتصر الحضيب ونهة الانران فنبغاً مشرها المحل الكيُّز وماحلة العِلمن بهابع عاد النو معلا أح عيان ان مُنازبان فالعنزج المسماه صيف وهي لخ بزالراً والدوان ويتوا رابح المؤمين واع للبسوط مدو حو عباال كلب المقدم وهما المنعرى السامة مع رزمها ذراع مالمتبوضه والبيعلي بدت مبطر لنعيامات والمغروالدب بالخندمع فالجوت الجنوب الصفدعان وسخ للبازجوراً وبطافه نظاماً وجوادى وبعن والمها المهرك أبد ويعن واحب الأنب عنده فالصل الاحبروم كلب لبعاد المعرى الماسد والعبور النماعة تالجره بم سعبل بنيد الشام منه نه في من عبساً وفي الله المعالمة المنافعة المن

165-164

the dog-stars are sisters of Canopus, subsil, and that) the greater dog-star crossed over the milky-way to the south with Canopus, while the lesser remained on the Syrian side and became blear-eyed, ghumaiss.

Among other stars of Canis major there are two known as the oath-takers and oath-breakers, mublifain and mubnithain, because any one who does not know Canopus well, mistakes these stars when they arise for Canopus and its mirzam, [and takes oath to this effect; when Canopus really appears he is perjured.] They are

known as the two stars.

In the neck of Hydra there is a star known as alfard, the solitary one; stars of Corvus form the Arab tent, khiba, and the throne of the simak; those of Crater, [a manger, ma'laf;] and those in the body of Hydra are the ribs, shardsif, and within them horses and foals khail wa afla. The stars of Centaurus and Lupus are known as bunches of grapes, shamarikh, while those of Corona australis are regarded as a cupola or as an ostrich's nest, udhiyy al-ma'am, that is the place where it lays its eggs.

With regard to other star-names we have not brought them forward, either because there is much disagreement about them or because we have not heard

them sufficiently distinctly.

164. Ye ma manazil al-qemer. As the sodies, the course of the sun in a year, is divided into twelve

MANSIONS OF moon among the fixed stars is divided into daily stations, the mansions of the moon. Of these there are twenty-seven

according to the Hindus and twenty-eight according to the Arabs. Just as the signs are called after the constellations, so the mansions are called after the fixed stars in which the moon is stationed for the night. They begin as in the case of the sun at the vernal equinox.

1. al-sharatain, (two signals), the first mansion, is marked by two bright stars on the horns, sardgan, of Aries; they are disposed in a north and south line, the apparent distance between them, about a fathom, being the same as that between the southern one and a third smaller star. Also called the butters, naths.

I The translator into Persian was unfamiliar with this word; he translates it the Chempion's head sar-i asif ai sar-i pahlawan (asif, a skilled swordsman), 2 misspelt. 5 read iftidal.

سلهاموعندالطلع وسواحا اعامعع فالمعلع فرداوحاب الغراب خباوع مزالهمك وحواجب البالميد ومات بدن المنهاع تراسب ومنه البلل الماوا فلاوم اوس السبع بسي الماريج والاحللاللنوب بيعومنه ومنار تماما حالفالم موضع سنع فعابر ذكك اساع لحداجب يرنوردها الاختلامم فبهكا اولانا لمنمعها نتيع عامنار للغمر انصطف البروج فسنت بالنيعيث وتنها منساوب سبج كُلْمِمِهُ ابْجًا وفَسَنَعَبُ مَسْبُوالْعُرْفِي كُلُومِ وَكَالْمُ كالبلد نزل منل وعدماع نرالم ندسيعه وعشرون عندالعرب تماندة عنسرون وسمن مالكواجب الماسد كماوم البروح مورا واول المادل م عندالا بنواالربيع المشرط بن مُماكوك ان مَعْرُسارُ بزاكشال والجنوب منباع والمهالم المنطريغ بسيرياع ومع الاجرامية الللنوب حوجب أأ والمسرطن ع فب المحلوالك مر نطاع @والمرلالا بذالبطبن للنصواب خفيه على بدمتك موالبذ الجمل فنريط شامسغة أبالعباس لمبطل لمؤت جوالمرل المالت الرما وميستد كولجب منصد شبهد بعنفود عب ومحسام لنوز

165-164

2. al-butain, three stars from the tail of Aries disposed in a triangle. Diminutive of bath, belly,

because smaller than betn al-hut, No. 28.

3. al-thursiys, parving, Blz sters from the shoulder of Taurus grouped like a bunch of grapes. Generally, and especially by poets, the number is supposed to be seven, but this is a mistake. Although the term naim is applicable to every star, thursiya alone is specially distinguished as 'al-naim'.

4. Al-dabaran is a large shining red star in the easterly eye of Taurus. The head of Taurus is shaped like a bowl with its mouth to the north, (while the mufflel of the bull (mouth and lips) are directed south.) P Aldebaran, 2 the 'follower' of the Pleiades is

also called tabi al-main. 5. Al-hag's is formed by three small stars from the head of Orion arranged like a trivet, so close together that they look like one. On this account

Ptolemy regarded them as a single nebula.

6. Al-han'a, two small sters from the feet of Gemini, the one smaller, the other somewhat brighter.

7. Al-dhire, the extended foreleg of the Arab lion, for the contracted one is formed by Procyon and its mirzem (a.mirzem is a small star, coupled to another bright one). Al-dhirar is formed by two bright sters from the heads of Gemini, distant from each other as much as the distance between Al-sharatain.

6. Al-nathrah, the nose of the lion, formed of two small stars of Cancer which are interpreted as the nostrils. Between them is a nebule which some call the lion's uvula, lahet, malazah, P, but the Greeks call the sters the two asses, himsrain and the nebula, the manger, ma laf, (Praesepe).

9. Al-tarf, the eyes of the lion; these are two bright stars, one from Leo, the other from outside it,

apparently about a cubit from each other.

l biniyash PL. PP has pish.

² and had! al-najm, the leader. tabir also occurs as diminutive tuweibl v. Philby, Arabia of the Websbis

p. 60. Ptolemy calls it λαμπαδίας 3 The measures rumb, dhira' and shibr, spear, cubit, spen, appear in P as nizah, arch, and bidast.

وبطزالع امواسع وامنه خاصدابها سبعدوم غيرمصبوف والنزما رجده اعسوس بابماليم ع والمنزل الرابع الابران موحوحب أحزيز على النورالت ومارال وزعل مدكاس في بمالسال ومرالاوان تلبغ النم ايازا كم مالمذل الخايس المفيد للشدو اجب سيغيان كالأافي رج على الرائج ادو كم الأنهام معرصا جعلها بطلبوس يحو ي أواجد بهابيام والمدل السادم الهنع دكو كاز احدهما صغير والاخرانور فللأ وهاعا إطلاقمن م والمذل السّابع الذناع بعنون فاع الالدعندالع سب وعليسوطد لان المعنبو مندعي المنع بالشأب معهر ذمها والمرذم كل حوكب يردوج مع اخرتر والأداع المي منزل الفرم عوجان فإن سُاء ان المنالمُ وطبن مُلطِي الرّاليومين أو والمزل المَامِ المُعَاي الف الاسدوموضع استفاده وهاكم كبالخعبان مرصوره السرطان عانغة الاستبنها لطنت إسرم علصد ذالمسرطات ونعائم تشالهاة الاسد والد كاللان دكرما بومانع دعوام الموماني بلكار زواليمان بنهما موالمعلث ﴿ والمه ل الناسع الط ف بعنه زع الاسد و محاد عبان عان مهم بالمطرسب مرداع وهما وصورالات والحادج عنها به

164

10. Al-jabhah, or jabhat al-asad, the lion's forehead, is formed by four bright stars, not in a straight line from north to south. The largest and brightest and most southerly is the heart of Leo, qalb al-asad, or al-malaki (Regulus).

ll. Al-zubrah, the mane of the Arab lion, formed by two stars from the hind-quarters of Leo, distant more than a cubit. Also known as al-kharātān.

12. Al-sarfah is a bright star at the tip of the tail of Leo, but according to the Arabs on the tail itself, (and is regarded by them and the astrologers as the scrotum. P) Al-dafirah (Coma Berenices) is the group of small stars like the Pleiades forming the tuft of hair, hulbah, at the tip of the tail.

13. Al-'awwa'; four stars running (from north to south) and curving at last like the letter lan; they are from the breast and wings of Virgo, and the Arabs speak of them as dogs barking behind the lion.

14. Al-simāk, the unarmed one of the two considered by the Arabs to be the hind legs of their lion, but according to the Greeks al-'ezal is an ear of corn, στάγυς, in the hand of Virgo which the translators have rendered by sunbulah, (Spice). It is sunbulah by which the sixth sign is so well-known. It occupies a similar position to that of al-dafirah (in its relation to Leo.)

15. Al-ghafr is formed by two small stars on the train, dhail, of Virgo, quite inconspicuous; the name is derived from their concealment.

16. Al-zubānā, the claws of the scorpion, two stars from the scales of Libra, which are at a spear's length² from each other.

17. Al-iklil or the crown, three bright sters from the forehead of Scorpius, arranged in a slightly curved line from north to south.

l as in PL¹ and Be². Kharājān in PL and PP. Kharāthān in AO and AO¹. v. Lane II p. 717.
² qīdi rumh.

والمرل العاسية الجهداي جهدا لمدوجي بعد كواسب أهرعل تعربح إيودمل فوسماه مرقل الاسدالملصى ٩ والمرل للأدي عبشه الأسن على المدعيدم وهما حد المنهما والطرابيج مزدراع ما على خرالسده مميان الم الله مال الم والمرك الماسة عشراله فد حواب تبريطي طرف ابدالا دم عند العرب على بدر والصفين الني عراب ميغاد مجمع وكأزماع طرف دنير ولذكك سوهاعل ومحسع اتفض ف الدنب عه والمذل المألت عشرالعوااذبعد حواجب على دالعذرا ولها منعطف كالام وتزع العرب الماطلات نبوي خلف الاسد م والمذل الإبع عنزالساك وهوالاعزل والسماح بزونزع العرب انعاسانى ولاسد فاماعندالبومابين فإن الإعزل علي عق العزراه فلا المنوالمرجم أس على من السنبلد الراسي المالي من البرج السادس الصفين النه كانبه والمرل كالمرعز العفظ كوكان فعان أمدم مشتون اغفادها على باللغدد اله والمرك السادس عشراأ بالمابضون فاالعقرب كوك أن باعدان مهاف الاغترار فيدرم وهما على عنى للبران ١ والمزل المكابع عن الاحليل لمذ حواجب نُعم على عوبر مع وضر

18. Al-qalb, i.e. qalb al-raqrab, the heart of Scorpius, Antares, is a red and trembling star which astrologers describe as having the nature of Mars; in front of it is another star, and behind it a third, the three being disposed in a curve.

19. Al-shaulah, the sting of Scorpius, which is turned forwards over the joints of the tail; two stars bright, but not large, separated by about a span from

each other.

20. Al-na'a'im, the ostriches, four bright stars from the bow, arrow and foreleg of the horse of Sagittarius forming a quadrangle. The Arabs compare the milky way to a river, and these stars to ostriches going to the river, na'am waridah al-nahr, while there are four others which they speak of as na'am sadirah, returning from watering.

21. Al-baldah, an area of the heavens behind Sagittarius, devoid of stars, and compared to a desert or to a gap (between the eyebrows). The stars which border it (on the west) from the tresses of Sagittarius are called al-qiladah, the necklace.

22. Sa'd al-dhabib, the sacrificer; here are two stars, not bright, disposed horizontally with more than a cubit between them; both are on the horn of Capricorn. Near them is a third star which the Arabs call a sheep about to be sacrificed.

25. Sard bular, the glutton, marked by two stars on the left hand of Aquarius, between them is a third

about to be devoured by the glutton.

24. Said al-suid, three stars in a row from north to south from the tail of Capricornus and the shoulder of Aquarius.

l According to Ideler p. 186, na am unlikely, probably originally na am, cattle; but Brehm, VI, 198, speaks of troups of Ostriches watering daily.

بن النبال والمنوب ومج بل مهد العِسقرب م. والمرل النامِزعير العلب اعد ظ الع غرب وهو حب أحرم في طرب نميد المخر في بعد الريح ويهم عود وبناخ عد اخره الوصل في الكلامقيس مه والمزل الماسع سر الشوله منبر العيفرب بغدخرذات دنبد منسول وحاحوك ان انعراب مُعَادُبان بِنهُمَا بِالْطَهِمِ وَادْ سُبِرُهُ وَالْمُرْلِ الْعِنْهِ وَالْمُرْلِ الْعِنْهِ وَالْمُرابِينَةُ عواجب على مع على فوران أي تهمدُ وذجل فرسس وسبهما العرب بنعام و زدت المفرد مي الجن شارب وعنده الربعيد اخرى عملنهام السافيه عن المركبة ما المرك الجادي العند وف المله ومي تعبد من الهما خلف ظهرالا ولاحوب مها ولذك ممت بالمفياده والعثي ودما خرت بحواب من والمان فعم جولم او موها العلاد مد والمرل المان العشوف سَعِد الذابح حد جانع برصان عرب من الجم مردياع ماعارب الجدى عَنْ وَعُمَا مَالْ دَعَت الْعِرْب باندشاه سيّعد الني بنعَها ٥٠ والمنزل المأأ والعِرُون سَعِلْ لِمعْ حوكبان على الحيف البرّي مَرساكب الما وببهماماك وهوالمبلوع والمنزل والعيشرون معدالمنجود للتحواكي ميعادم في يرضه بن المال والحوب مي في ف ف الدى ومنصب

الالم

164-165

25. Sa'd al-akhblyah is marked by four stars on the right hand of Aquarius; the outline of the group resembles a duck's foot; three of the stars form a triangle which conceals in its interior the fourth, the lucky one. According to the Arabs these are not the only fortunate stars, for there are many outside the mansions of the moon which are.

26 and 27. Al-fargh al-ewwal and al-thank or muqaddam and mu'akhkhar, are each marked by two stars, situated a spear's length from each other, and all from Pegasus. The Arabs compare the four stars to a bucket dalw, but the eleventh sign of the zodiac is so known; fargh really means the place for pouring out the water, but these are often interpreted as the

upper and lower handles, 'arquwatan."

28. Bath al-hut is marked by two bright stars from the head of indromeda, near to which is a group of small stars in a curved line, out of which the Arabs make a fish, and these stars are falling into the wide-open mouth of the fish, whence the name belly. Others call this mansion rishe, comparing the fish to a rope, so that the bucket in Pegasus should not lack a rope.

manazil. Al-thuraiyah, the Pleiades, is the most

HOW TO KNOW noticeable and the best known

THE MANSIONS of all the mansions of the moon;

it is therefore a convenient

starting point for their study; although any
other point which is familiar on the path of the
moon will serve. Proceeding from thuraiyah, however,
seek first Aldebaran a spear's length towards the east,

l plural of khibā' a tent, khiba'a, to conceal.

The crossed pieces of wood which prevent the leather bucket from collapsing.

ساجب المآ ، و مالمزل الخامِرُوالعِرُون عَجِلًا خبد ادمِة حوليب مع على بشاجب الماالمنى بَسْبُد برَجل لمِسْدَ فالاسطع والمبد عالما في خاوه ملمت المبود بن والما وعن الجدوم بين وعن إل العرب المدمة والمغرل المتارير والمعزون العزخ الأول هم والمغزان السابع والمعزون الفرخ النابذ وذبمامهامقلما وموخرا وكاواجر بنيما حوحبان فغان مساعوان بماسبه بمربع وجلهاعل زالفن والمحروبهم اناباالعرفوه العلياوالعرفوه المنف لحلاللع زب شبهت كواجب مذرلة المزبولع وم عُرْفِ الْجُرْحِ الْجِلَى عِنْرَهُ ولِلْزَلِ الْمَامِرُوالْعِرُونِ بِطِرْلِكُونَ وهو حجب برع دار السلاما لمف بولد من الحاجب صيعان منه على بن صون مصديم الدكوك المدكود بدبل ما والمعنا صغر البطن الني يفدم دحره عفب المشرطين منهم زيئري اللزل دسا تشبهامنة كلك الحواجب المنعوسة بالمعافية فالدلو المنحوره كبف الطريف للمعر فد من المناذل ع المران أمل العزاشه ما واطهم اعد الجهور طب وامنها اومزعة أوبعرف سواهاعلى عبى المرف عنى جدالله المراعلية والمراعلية والمراعل المراعلية والمراعل المراعل المراعل

165-166

a spear's length towards the east, and sharatan two spears' length towards the west, then halfway between sharatan and the Pleiades look out for butain. The distance between the other mansions is approximately the same as ascertained for these three, so that they can easily be recognized by this procedure. It will be necessary to incline slightly to the north or south so as to include all the stars mentioned.

166. M yu'na bitulu' al-manazil. The expression ascension of the mansions does not mean their rising above the horizon, which occurs once ASCENSION OF every day, but this ascension is like THE MANSIONS the condition of orientality, tashriq. which we considered in connection with the three superior planets. Because when the sun is near one of the fixed stars it conceals it by its radiance; the star rises by day and sets before the disappearance of the twilight. This condition is described as its ghaibah, time of invisibility in the west. This persists until the sun moves away somewhat, so that when the star rises before the sun, the pale light of the dawn is not sufficient to overcome it. The beginning of visibility in the east in the morning, this is the real ascension (heliacal rising) and is known as nau, as if the star were rising with difficulty. Just about the time we have described when the mansion has erisen, its nadIr, the fourteenth from it, sets. This madir is also called ragio, and its setting sugut. Between the ascension of two adjacent mansions there is an interval of approximately thirteen

The root of nau' pl. anwa' is na'a to rise with difficulty, but the word has come to mean the setting of a star in the morning twilight, while at the same time enother rises opposite to it in the east. The setting of a mansion is supposed to be more significant from a meteorological point of view than its rising, which perhaps explains the change in meaning of nau'.

مَه إلى المذرب فرب من عب و المسترف م المالكين ما المالكين ما المالكين المالكين المالكين المالكين المالكين المالكين المالكين المناب المناب المناب المناب المناب المناب المناب المناب المناب والمناب وا

ما يعنى بالوع المبارل والمورة والما الطلاع المدود لها المرتبي ما طلاع المدود لها المند في الاي والمرافع المدوا المباللة الميالي والما المندالية والمندالية والمندالية والمناه وال

165-168

days, not exactly, because of the difference in magnitude of the stars concerned and their divergence to the north or south.

The term anwa! is associated with the rains, because the times of their occurrence are related to the setting of the mensions in the morning in the west, while that of bawarih refers to the winds and is related to other times of rain on the ascent of a mansion escaping from beneath the rays in the morning.

What has been said with regard to rain and other atmospherical phenomena refers to Arabia, for these differ very much in places distant from each other, indeed, in places quite near if their situation with regard to heat, low-lying or elevated ground, alkaline desert (or bodies of water)P, differs.

167. Mā al-majarrah. The milky way, kahkashān, P
is a collection of countless fragments of the nature
of nebulous stars. They form a nearly
THE GALAXY complete great circle which passes between Gemini and Sagittarius, the stars
densely-packed in some places, more scattered in
others, the way sometimes narrow, sometimes broad, and
occasionally breaking up into three or four branches.
Aristotle considered that it is formed by an enormous
assemblage of stars screened by smoky vapours in front
of them, and compared it to haloes and nebulae.

order of succession of the signs of the zodiak and of the mansions of the moon is from one to SUCCESSION that which lies east of it, for example OF SIGNS from Aries to Taurus then to Gemini and then to Cancer; or in the case of the mansions from Sharatan to Butain, then to the Pleiades and then to Aldebaran. But if one proceeds from Aries to Pisces then to Aquarius and then to Capricorn, or from Sharatan to Bath al-hut then to Fargh al-mu'akhkhar and then to Fargh al-muqaddam,

لابالجفية للجيواجب الماذل است كلها منظة واحرة العطم والاعروضها متساوب فحمد واجره واسم الانوابطان على المطار وستب امغانهاال مفوط المنرل السامط فالمعرب بالعدوان والبوادح تطلف على المراح ومنب وغيراو فان المطراط طلوع المرك الطالع مزي المتعاج بالعنروان وَذِلَكُ بِهُ ارْمِيْرِالْعِرْبِ مِنْ لِجِلْ قات المطرّ وجوادِتُ الجهُّ تختلف إابغاع المبرع بالمختلف أيضاب المتداينه اذااختلفن لعساجها بجراً وسه الوغورونيد ما المجن عجموع نطاع كبن من الداكب السابيد وخلهاعلى عبط دابن علم بالمعترب تمربا بلذا والعنزوان عن به بعض المواضع و شخفت به اخرى و دفت في بعنها وعضت في بعض ا مساعف حمي الأن داشيب وراه السطوطالس ويسم والعار الاخاب الأجاب حين محتمع د فعال كايات الحالات الدواب فالموابانها مااكنوالي عبالنواب مقاضت من رج الالذي بلو بجوالمشرف الكبالمفح من المحال المؤد أم المرطان وفالمادل مِنْ الْمُرْاجِلِ الْمُعْلِينُ مُ الْمُرَاجُ الْوَرَافِ وَمُونُوالْ الْمُرْوحِ وَالْحَافَ الْمُوْجِ وَالْمُرْاجِ الْمُوالِمُ الْمُورِي وَدِهِ الْمُمَادُلُ وَالْمُعْ الْمُورِي وَدِهِ الْمُمَادُلُ وَالْمُعْ الْمُورِي وَدِهِ الْمُمَادُلُ وَالْمُعْلِقِي الْمُعْلِقِي وَدِهِ الْمُمَادُلُ وَالْمُعْلِقِي الْمُعْلِقِي وَلَا الْمُعْلِقِ الْمُعْلِقِي وَلَا الْمُعْلِقِي الْمُعْلِقِي وَلَا الْمُعْلِقِي الْمُعْلِقِي وَلَا الْمُعْلِقِي الْمُعْلِقِي وَلَا اللّهُ اللّهُ اللّهِ اللّهُ الللّهُ اللّهُ اللّهُ اللّهُ اللللللّهُ اللّهُ الللّهُ اللللّهُ الللّهُ اللّهُ الللللّهُ اللللّهُ

168-171

this reverse direction is described as contrary to succession. Now the proper order of succession is in accordance with the second or easterly movement, but when a planet is described as in advance of or behind another this refers to the first or westerly movement, contrary to the order of succession; so the planet in advance is towards the west and that behind further east.

wa al-janubiyyah. Six of the signs are northern, viz.

Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo
NORTHERN AND and Virgo, because the ecliptic
SOUTHERN SIGNS running through them is north of the
equinoctial; the six others are the
southern signs. With regard to the mansions, fourteen
of them are northern, namely those from Sharatan to
Simāk which fall within the northern signs, while the
fourteen from Ghafr to Baţn al-hūt are southern.

170. Mā al-falak al-mumaththal. The plane of the ecliptic cuts the spheres of all the planets, describing a circle in each concentric with the ec-PARECLIPTIC liptic. This is the falak al-mumaththal, assimilated orbit of the planet (the parecliptic of Nallino). It is called assimilated, because its centre, plane, and divisions are the same as those of the ecliptic, of which it is a counterpart.

171. Auj al-shams mā huwa. The auj or the sun is the highest point which it attains in its orbit: the circumstance that there is a highest APOGEE OF SUN point is explained by the fact that it does not travel on the circumference of its own mumaththal orbit, but rather on the circumference of another orbit in the same plane but with a different centre. This is its excentric orbit al-falak al-auj. The earth is inside this orbit, consequently there is one point where it is nearest to the earth, and another opposite to that, furthest from the earth. The latter is known as the auj in the Indian language on account of its height, and in Greek as afojlyun (apogee) on account of its distance from the

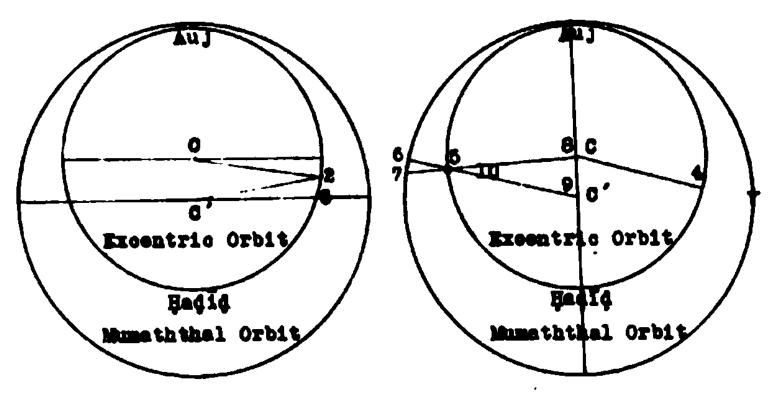
مُ العنع المعترم مم الموخر كان ذكك خلاف الموالي المروج ومعلم ما فكاك معمر بالم كدالماند السرفيد فاما المعدم والباح فالهما بعنوال الموسعد الاولى العربيد مالمت مم الديد احب مابي نه المعنوب وذكك خالف التوالى الموخمة بحوريجه المسروف فكك هوالنوالي مااليروج والمادك المثالد والجنوبيد البرعج المالبدستدوهي الجمل والنور وللمزا والسنطان مالاسد والشبله لانعظف اله وج فهاوافعه ع شال مُعدَّل المهاد والسند البافيد في الماذل في ما الماذل في ما أنبعه عشرتماليه وتع للمنفع فالمروج النماليه وكالمين للنطب الأخو النياك والذبع عشرالباف والجنوب ماالفلك المضل سطح منطعة البروج اذا فطع اكرالك احب السِّارَه جرت في فلعدالما وكاولين منها رَارِه مُوانِهِ للْمُطْعُنَةِ وَلَهُ لَكَ الْمُثَالِ وَعِبْ مَكُ الْحُرْمُ وَسُمَّ عِنْ الْ بفلك البزوج لاندمواني لذوج سطيد ففوار ن فسيماف المدياب وجمع اجواله لمانهما مرالس أبدأ وج الشمس ملعوالاج ازدح موضح بلغ النرب كاعد معاود لك العائم ل على عبط فلحه المنزل بل على عبط فلك أخر عوف مله ومرعزم خادج عن مراعزم والأرش في داخله فزالضوه زة

171-172

earth. It is the summit dhirwahl of this excentric orbit. The nearest point, on the other hand, is called in Greek afrijiyun (perigee) and, as the lowest point

of the orbit, is known as al-hadid. I

Necessarily there are two points opposite each other in this orbit where the distance from the earth is the mean of the greatest and least distances; 2 this is the burd al-ausay, the mid-distance, as may be seen from the annexed figure.



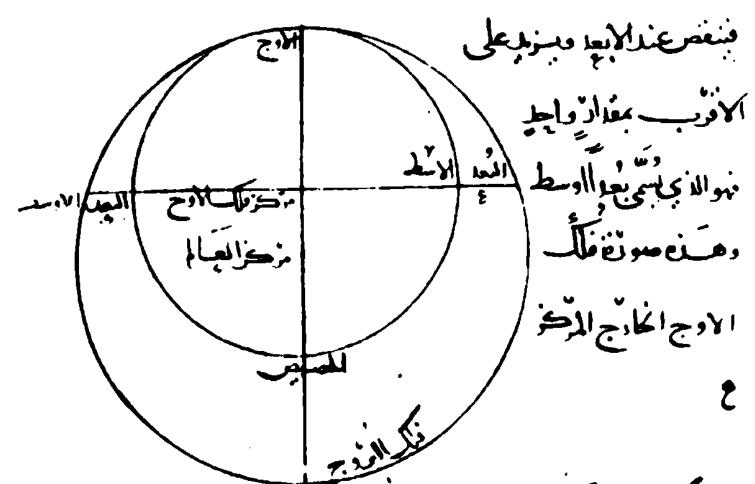
2. mid-distance. 3. mean rate of movement. 4. point on excentric opposite Y.5. sun: 6. its corrected position. 7. line C-5 produced. A-5. mean argument. 8. its angle. 9. angle of corrected argument. 6-7. equation of sun. 10. its angle.

172. Wasat al-shems ma huwa. The rate of movement of the sun varies, sometimes it is quicker and sometimes slower, but necessarily between MEAN MOVEMENT the quick and the slow, there is a mean rate ascertainable by measuring of Sun its progress in relation to time. This movement takes place on the circumference of the

l misspelt in MS.

² Those points of the excentric to which equal lines C-2, C'-2 proceed from the centre of the excentric the centre of the world.

ان نفضه منه نتون أو ب ما فيه المرح الانط في مرح العالم الذي في ما بلها بيد عنه ما فيه المراح و مع مشتقى العلم و حراك في ما بيد عنه ما بيد و مع دور و دور و داك الفاك الحالح المرح المسى المراب المعالم و مع دور و دور و داك الفاك الحالح المرح المسى الكلاح و الما المفطه الفريد و في منه المراب المناف و المعالمة الفريد و المناف و المعالمة الفريد و المناف و المعالمة الفريد المناف و المعالمة الفريد المناف و المعالمة الفريد المناف و المعالمة الفريد المناف و المناف و



وسط الشرم الموائز تعرب حرصان مخلف وقت على و منطى المعرب المولام الدخ كدو مطى من و مناور معد و المولام الدخ كدو مطى من و مناور مناور مناور المولام الدخ كدو مطرفال الموج المولام المواج الموج المواحد المواحد

178-175

excentric orbit, and that are thereof which extends from a point in the mumaththal orbit enswering to the beginning of Aries to the sun's position there is known as the mean movement of the sun wasa; al-shams. (4-5 in figure last page).

argument of the sun in its excentric orbit is its
distance from the apogee, and consequently
MEAN ARGUMENT if you subtract the distance between
OF SUN the apogee and the beginning of Aries
from the mean movement of the sun,
there remains the mean argument.

174. Tardīl al-shams mā huwa. If the sun is situated at the apogee or at the perigee, lines drawn to it from the centre of the world and that of the excentric orbit practically FOUNTION OF SUN coincide. That is not the case, however, at any other point of the orbit, for then the two lines meet at the sun but diverge so that the one reaches one joint of the mumaththal orbit, and the other another, the arc of the mumaththal between the two is the equation of the sun tardil al-shams. This is an approximate way of expressing the equation so as to get an idea of it, but a rore accurate way is dependent on the proposition of Geometry that angles at the centre of a circle are propartionate to the arcs opposite them. Therefore we generally employ the angles instead of the arcs, and as the progress of the sun on the circumference of the excentric croit is equal in equal times, those angles which subtend such stages of progress are also equal. It is therefore the same if we describe the mean motion of the sun as its distance on the excentric orbit from a point opposite the beginning of Aries, or as the angle at the centre of that orbit between a line going to Aries and another to the sun. Jimilarly the mean argument is described as the engle between a line going to the apogee from the centre of the excentric orbit and another to the sun, and the corrected argument hissah al-muqawwamah, as the angle at the centre of the world between a line to the apogee and one to the sun. The two arguments being thus understood, the difference is the equation of the sun, and its angle is that between lines from the two centres joining at the an.

175. Fo miqualr al-barakah fi kurat al-shams kam hiya. The sun by its mean movement travels every twenty four

التحويم

فالوس في المنظر الحاب لم الحل في العكر المثل إلى الدم المسمر عمر وسطها ما الحصد الوسطى المنتمس مي بعد الشمس في الكه الحارج المراز من خطر الاوج و إلداذ التي جد الاوج مراول الحل من وسط النه بخت على اورى حذره الوج و الحصد عد بل الشهر به مهو معلوم الما الشمس اد اكا التدعلى اورى منظمى الاوج والعالم متحد بن فلم يمن منها اختلاف وانها اذاكا من في عبر عدن الموضعين لمناف الحيط فل الحارب المنارج المن المراز المذكور بن الي جريما فا ختلافها الوج المعرب الموضعين الوج المعرب الحارب الما المنارج الما المناف ا



حرك السالوسطى الى توالى البروج فى البرم ملياة، ة نطحك

175-177

hours, fifty nine minutes, eight seconds, twenty thirds in the order of the succession of the signs. When it has traversed all of these and has arrived back at a starting point, 365 days, 5 hours and 47 minutes have elapsed. Such a period is a solar year. The apogee also moves in the same direction, one degree in every 66 solar years as modern observers have found, but this differs from the estimate of our predecessors in the matter.

The ratio of the distance between the centre of the world and that of the excentric orbit to the radius of the latter is as 2;60.

planets travel along the ecliptic, but deviate from it sometimes to the north, sometimes to the INCLINED south, because they revolve in planes which ORBITS are inclined thereto, just as the ecliptic is inclined to the equinoctial. Their orbits therefore are inclined orbits, which have different amounts of inclination, as well as different points of greatest inclination and of intersection with the ecliptic.

The centres of the mumaththal orbits and of the inclined orbits are identical, viz., the centre of the world.

177. Mā al-jauzahar. These orbits being inclined to the ecliptic as described, there are necessarily two opposite points of intersection, just as NODES OF in the case of the ecliptic and the THE PLANETS equinoctial. When these have to be distinguished from each other, the one from which the planet moves to the north is called the ascending node, ra's, and the other point of inter-

section where it moves to the south, dunb, the tail.

Although the nodes or points of intersection or passage of the planet from north to south on its inclined orbit are called majaz from the root, jaza, jawaza, the word jauzahar is not related: it refers to the moon where the nodes are of particular interest: it is an Arabic form of P. gaviz'har. "In the Man Yasht the moon is invoked by the epithet gaochithra, cow-faced." Haug, Sacred Language of the Parsees, P. 200. In the case of the moon the nodes are known as the head and tail of the dragon.

نَدُ الذّ وج عُلَمَة المناب وحب وسنة ف وما وحمس اعات الله الب عُمْرَ بَاعِد بَالْمَعْرِب ونَسْجِي الله وسند النّهُ ويَجْرِل اوجها اصاالله الب في اسنه وست بن من من الشريعة واجه بحث وجه والحوالي المواج وأما الله وما فهم في من والما صنافي والما ما بن مرحو العالم وبرير حز عَلَمُ الله وج الوج فهو مُوالله من باذا حان في مع مطو الكه الوج سنب إذر ما للقال الما بل

إلى المال جاماً والله وب إجامالات على المحالية المراح في منه والمحالية وعلى المحالة والمحالة المالية على المحالة والمحالة المالية المحالة المحالة والمحالة المالية المحالة المحالة المحالة المحالة والمحالة والمح

177-179

If used without any qualification these expressions refer to the moon; otherwise the planet must be specified. The nodes are also called 'uqdah, knot, (P. girih) and majaz, point of crossing so that ra's is called majaz al-shamal, or al-'uqdah al-shamaliyyah and the dunb, majaz al-janüb or al-'uqdah al-janübiyyah. Annexed is a diagram (although it is difficult to represent the inclination on a flat surface P)

M.mumaththal, I.inclined Orbits. C. Their common centre, AIB Northern half of inclined orbit. AB North and South Nodes.

A.Centre of world, B.ofdeferent, C.of epicycle, DE spogee and periges of deferent M. manufital Orbit.

178. Falak al-tadwir mā huwa. An epicycle, tadwir, is a small orbit which does not surround the earth, but is entirely outside it. The planet moves EPICYCLE on its circumference with the motion peculiar to it. 151.

cycle travels continuously in the direction of succession of the signs on the circumDEFERENT ference of an orbit called the deferent,
hamil, which is in the plane of the inclined orbit, but like the excentric, has a different centre from the centre of the world.

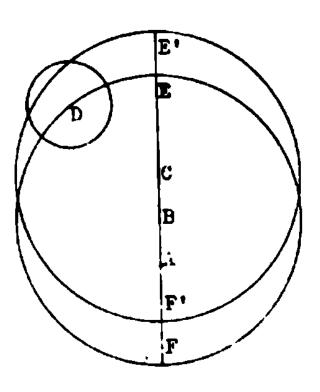
مَوالْ الرفي المناجع الأخرالذي إذا جان اخرمند عوالمنب ماذا استعللونع والزام والعب مطلع اكان للقر فامات ابرها فنسب الرالحواجب المحج لماه دتما أمخاله سجاذالناك العجفوالنالم عادللنوب للمنوب والعنده الجنوب وهدوه صورة كأل مَلَّ الْمُوبِهَاهُو عوملك صعيرعبر عبط بالارض كما لفلك المحامل و فلك عادح المركز عز حزالعالم سلجد سفح الفك لما بل يجلفا

180-181

centre of the epicycle traversed equal arcs of the deferent in equal times, then the mean THE EQUANT rate of the progress of the planet would

the EQUANT rate of the progress of the planet would be on the deferent, and the angles opposite these ares would also be equal; the angles of the ares, however, traversed by the centre of the

epicycle in equal times are not equal, but are so at a point as far from the centre of the deferent as that is from the centre of the world. This point is the centre of equal progress, the equant, and is the same for Venus and the three superior planets. All three points are in the same straight line. It is necessary to regard this point as the centre of an orbit like the deferent, and to calculate the progress_of the planet on its circumference from the position of the centre of the epicycle, which may be done by lines drawn to this point (without



drewing the orbit)P

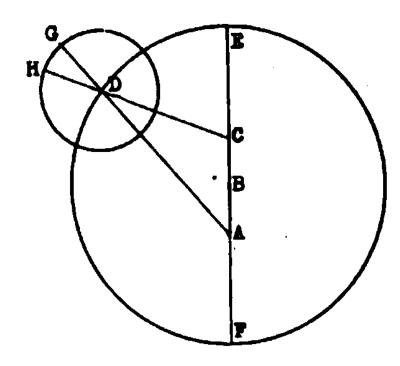
B C D, of deferent, equant and epicycle.
E F, Apogee and Perigee of deferent; E'F', of equant.

term dhirwah, summit, is used to indicate the apogee of the epicycle, just as auj is for APOGEE OF that of the excentric orbit; opposite EPICYCLE it is the perigee, hadid. But there must be distinguished the dhirwah almer'iyyah i.e. the summit as seen from the centre of the world, corresponding to the line drawn from the centre of the world through the centre of the epicycle to its upper part, and the dhirwah alwusta corresponding to a line from the centre of the equant in the manner indicated in the diagram on next page.

من حزالها وعلى والمناهد والمنا

الدرسة الدرجير والمعامساء الماركون من مرح والله المراب والمارك والمرك والمرك

182-183



- A, Centre of world. B, Centre of deferent.
- C, Centre of equant.
- D, Centre of epicycle. E, Apogee of deferent.
- F, Perigee of deferent.
- G, Apogee of epicycle from centre of world.
- H, from centre of equant.

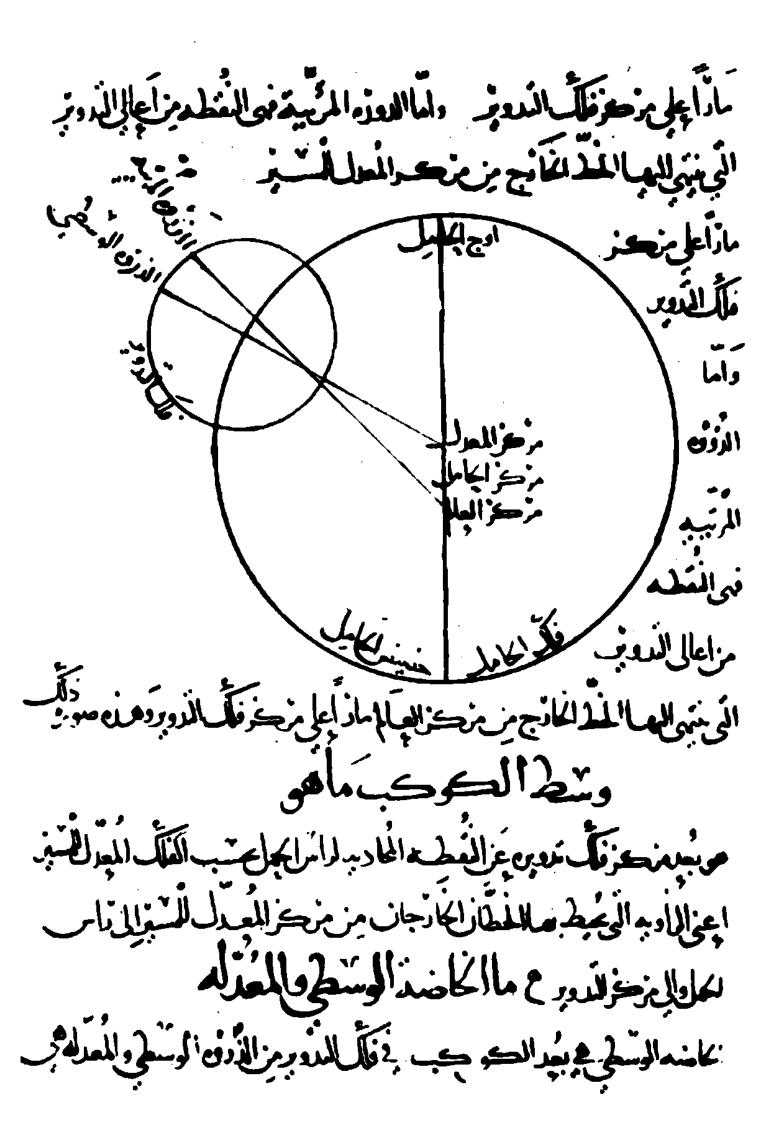
182. Wasat al-kawkab mā huwa. The mean rate of progress of a planet is the distance of the centre of the epicycle from a point on the equant MEAN RATE opposite the beginning of Aries. The OF PLANET measure of the distance is the angle at the centre of this orbit formed by a line to the beginning of Aries and another to the centre of the epicycle.

183. Mā al-khāssah al-wusta wa'l-mu'addalah. The distance of a planet on the orbit of the epicycle from the dhirwen el-wusté is known as the khāssah al-wustā, argumentum medium, mean anomaly, and that from TRUE ANOMALY the dhirwah al-mar'iyyah as the khāşşah al-mu'addalah, argumentum verum, true anomaly, while the difference between the two khassah is called the tardil al-khassah al-ulá, lequatio argumenti. The measure of the two last is the angle at the centre of the epicycle between the lines pro-

ceeding to the two dhirwen, equation of the centre.2

¹ In Al-Battani, hāşşah, portion, but as Nallino observes II, 329, for the most part other astronomers call this portion the proper motion, khāssah, of the planet.

² The motion in longitude of a planet is that of the centre of the epicycle on the deferent; its movement on the circumference of the epicycle is anomaly.

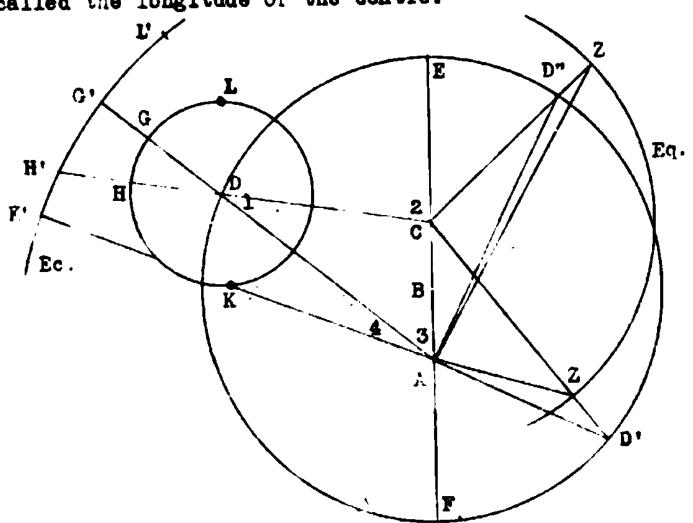


184

164. Mā al-ţūl al-ausaţ wa'l-mu'addal. Mean longitude is the size of the angle bounded by two lines, the

one proceeding from the centre of the equant to its apogee, and the CORRECTED LONGITUDE other to the centre of the epicycle. Corrected longitude, on

the other hand, is the size of the angle between lines, the one proceeding from the centre of the world to the apogee of the equant and the other to the centre of the epicycle. The difference between these two angles is the size of the angle formed at the centre of the epicycle by the two lines in question; sometimes it is called the longitude of the centre.



A. Centre of world, B. of deferent, C. of equant, D. of epicycle. E. apogee, F. periges of deferent. G. true, H. mean apogee of epicycle. K. planet. G'H'K', continued to ecliptic, Ec. G H, equation of centre, 1, the corresponding angle. G K, true, H K mean anomaly, 2, angle of mean, 3, of true longitude. 4, of position of planet in ecliptic. G K, equation of anomaly.

بين فبدع الدود والمرسد وفسل المناه وتعدم اللاود والمرسد وفسل المحل المعال ما المحول الموسط والمعال

أما المؤسط مند الناوم المي على ما المنطأن الحادجان من حرب المجدل المن الما وحده المعرف المراكد والما المعرف المراكد والمناطق المراكد والمراكد والمراكد والمراكد والمركز المركز ا

مَا فَعِدُ الْدُودِ وَدُمّا مِي الْدُولِ وَالْمُولِ وَلَيْهِ الْمُؤْلِ وَلَيْهِ الْمُؤْلِ وَلَيْهِ الْمُؤْلِ وَلَيْهِ الْمُؤْلِ وَلَيْهِ الْمُؤْلِ وَلَيْهِ وَالْمُؤْلِ وَلَيْهِ الْمُؤْلِ وَلَيْهِ الْمُؤْلِ وَلَيْهِ الْمُؤْلِقِ وَلَيْهِ وَلَيْهِ وَلَيْهِ وَلِي مُؤْلِقِهِ الْمُؤْلِقِ وَلَيْهِ وَلَيْهِ وَلَيْهِ وَلَيْهِ وَلَيْهِ وَلَيْهِ وَلَيْهِ وَلِي وَلِي الْمُؤْلِقِ وَلَيْهِ وَلِي وَلِي الْمُؤْلِقِ وَلِي وَلِي

184a-187

second correction of the argument, the equation of the anomaly, is the size of the angle at EQUATION OF the centre of the world, which is THE ANOMALY formed by lines proceeding themse to the centre of the epicycle and the planet respectively.

185. Mā taqwīm al-kawkub. This is the point of the mumaththal orbit which a line reaches drawn from the centre of the world through the TRUE POSITION body of the planet. This is its true OF PLANET position in which it is seen among the stars.

various or bits of the moon: - the mumaththal or parecliptic, the inclined orbit associated ORBITS OF with it, and the excentric or deferent THE MOON which carries the epicycle, on the circumference of which the moon itself revolves.

The two poles of the moon's inclined orbit are always turning in the direction contrary to MOTIONS OF the succession of the signs round the THE MOON poles of the mumaththal orbit; they thus move the ascending and descending nodes 3' every day in that direction.

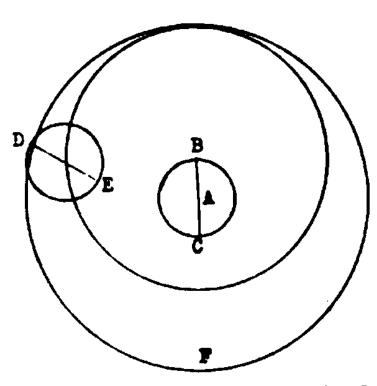
The moon itself revolves on the circumference of its epicycle; as soon as it begins to move towards the west from the summit thereof it travels contrary to succession every day 13° 14', while the centre of the epicycle turns in the order of succession on the circumference of the deferent every day 24° 23'; this is twice as much as the moon becomes distant from the sun in a day, and therefore the movement of the centre of the epicycle is spoken of as the 'double distance'.

Then the centre of the deferent is always turning in the contrary direction to succession of the signs; its apogee moves back 11° 9' every day,

Moreover the dhirwah al-mar'iyyah of the epicycle is always opposite a point, the distance of which from

ما نقوم الحدكب موالفل مرالعَلَ المسلادي بترالعاله ط اعانج من خوالع المالج مالحوج والك موصعدال يوى بي مِن مَلَد المزوج وعدم سناء وَالْد كعف اعلاك المعر لذُ فَلَكُ مِنْ لَهُ مَلِكُ مَا بِلَعْنَدُ وَمَلَكُ اوج بِعَلْفَلْكَ لَهُ وَبِهِ الْذِي الْوَرْحِ مِعْلِبَ كمغالم كان في كان مفاررها المادمكها فلمت المابل ممابره وانحول فبلح المسلل إطاف والالبروج ونفاار و الراس المراد و المراس المراس المراس المراس المراس المرسم وَ عَلَاكِما وَمِنْ مِعْدا لِدُون بِهِ المعرب إعلى المالية وج لمعد المعرب المعلى المعدد ءَ انبع دَفَابِقِ وَغِمَرًا لمُوحَ فَلَكَ الدُورِ عَلِي صِلْهِ اللَّهِ اللَّهِ اللَّهِ و- ؛ البهم الأبعدوعشرب وتبدوتلا وعشرون ذفيفعوداك مساد لسعف مابناع بدالفرع البومع الشراعى سلط بن بوهماولاً للر مرابع للشاءف وبتمرك مزحزا كامل باخلاف التوالي بنقل حدالسه فالبوم أجرعشر درجه وننع دفابن وكالدروم المرتبه من فالدوسر بجادي الدانعطدية ماعن خرالعالم بوجسس اعامل عاعلانها عِن مزكر العِالم ومنداد من اللعد الني وسن ومن المف الله عب مر

107-188



A, centre of universe and of inclined orbit, F. B, centre of deferent; BC, circle on which it moves. C, point opposite the apoges of the epicycle, D. DE, diameter of epicycle opposite C. GH, 122; HI, 51; GJ, 60.

			•	_
<u>G</u>	Η̈́	1		4

world towards the perigee of the deferent is the same as the distance between the centre of the deferent and the centre of the world.

This distance
is to the radius of
the deferent as $12\frac{1}{2}:60, \text{ while the}$ radius of the epicycle is 5\frac{1}{2}:60.

kawakib. All the planets are constantly revolving on the circumference of their epiTHESE CONDITIONS cycles; beginning from their in the PLANETS summits they travel towards the east in the direction of succession, and therefore in the opposite direction to the moon, which travels westward and contrary to succession from its summit.

The daily movement of the planets on their epicycles are as follows: - Saturn, 57', Jupiter, 54', Mars, 28', Venus, 57', Mercury, 3° 6'; while the eastward movement of the centres of the epicycles



فلبف هذه الإواليا والمعار الذو وعوالمن فل الدارة والمعار الدو وعوالمن فل الدارة والمعار الدو والمعار الدو والمعار الدو والمعار الدو والمعار الدو والمعار والمالية وا

188-189

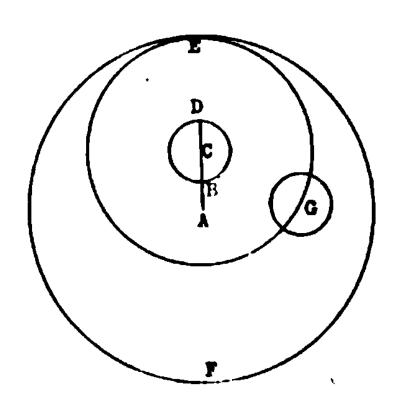
themselves in their mean movement relative to the centre of the equant is for Saturn daily 2', Jupiter, 5', Hars 31', Venus, as much as the sun, 59' and Hercury twice as much, viz:- 1°58'. Horeover, the distance of the centre of the equant from the centre of the world taking the radius of the deferent as 60, is for Saturn 6 3/4, Jupiter 5 1/2, Hars 12, Venus 2 1/12, and the centre of the deferent is halfway between these two points. Again in the same proportion the radius of the epicycle is for Saturn, 6 1/2, Jupiter, 11 1/2, Hars, 39 1/2, Venus, 43 1/6, Hercury, 22 1/2.

requires to be securately treated because the centre of its deferent always turns on the HOW MERCURY circumference of a small circle, whose radius is equal to the distance between the centre of the equant and the centre of the world. The centre of the equant is hulfway between the centre of the small circle and the centre of the world, and all three are in a straight line, so that the distance of the centre of the deferent

نوالمشرف وتواللبروج بالمرحدالوسطح المعتبن بمركز العنك المعدل للمزديزاً ما من وغزاً من ويرز خل بيك البوم دفيقال والمنوحمي دَفَائِقَ وَالمُنْعُ الْمِدِي لَلْمُرْدَفَقِهُ وَ الْمُدَافِي وَالْمُدِينَ وَالْمُدَافِينَ وَالْمُدَافِينَ وَالمُنْعُ الْمِدِينِ وَلَا مُنْفِقُونَ دَمُعُم ، وَعُطَّادُدمُ لَصْعِف جُوك والسَّرِد بِعدو عان حسور و فيفد فامامت وادخروج مزكز المعبدل المشبر فهاعن مزكرالعالم بالمف واذالدي صف قط زلام منوز جزو . نبور عن خلستد اجزاد خسده ادبعيز دفيد وبدالمنترى خسم إخراد نصف ، وبدالم لع الني عبث رخوا ، وفي المزمن جزوز وخر فابن ومركز الجامل علمنسف عذاالميد واما الساف أفطاد افلال مداويرها بمذاللف داذفهي فبزجل ستد اجزاوتسف والمشرى اجدي عشر خراونصف و بالديخ سعد وتلتوز خراونصف وفالمن تلته المبعور جراوع شرفابس. وفي عط الدّد النّبزوع شريخ أونصف فلبف بنفصاع فحادد عها مزدوله والمائع كبوالمعندب على الاصغب مزدنها مرحز المجدّ للسيرمع مزك العالم على طر منت منهم وموضع مزكر المعدللسير على من ما بمن حزالها من من وعرالداب المذكون ولذلك بجول

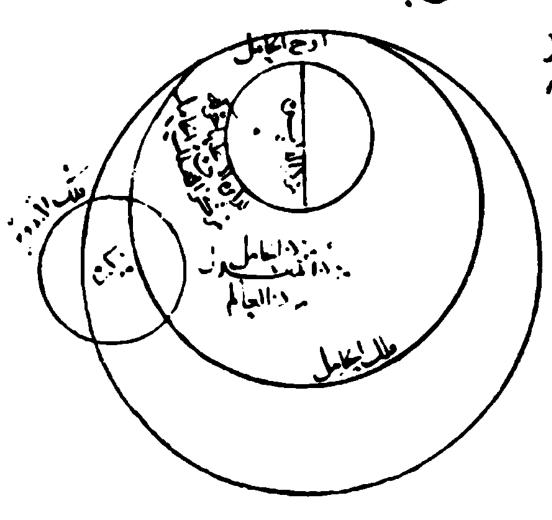
189

from the centre of the world is not uniform, the greatest distance being to the least as 9 1/2: 3 1/6. As the centre of the deferent turns on this circle, its apogee moves in the reverse direction to succession of the signs daily as much as the movement of the sun. 59'. From this it follows that the centre of Mercury's epicycle and that apogee meet twice every year, just as the moon's epicycle-centre and the apogee of its deferent meet twice a month. Also from the amount of the movement it becomes necessary that the epicyclecentres of liercury and Venus are always with the sun on the same diameter of the world, whence it follows that they are combust on the summits of their direct courses as well as on the lowest points of their retrograde courses. The superior planets are only combust when on the summits of their epicycles, because the centres of these move more slowly than the sun, remain behind it, and are only beside it when the planets heve arrived at the summits. The diagram shows the orbit of Mercury.



A. centre of universe. B of the c of the equant. small eircle on which the centre of the deferent travels. D the greatest distance of the centre of the deferent from the centre of the universe. E the deferent. F the inclined orbit. the epicycle. The Copyist's lettering must be neglected.

بزدن المام عن مرحظها البجادة المفالي المهانة والمناسع المندا والمناسع المناسع المناسع



في ذرّوه الكده بسرننظ مَّسنه مُونعافلًا لُ عُطاذ ع عُطاذ ع

190

190. Fa fī kam tatimm adwar hadhihi al-harakat. It has already been mentioned that the sun takes 3652 days all but the 1/111 part of a day REVOLUTION OF to traverse the whole zodiac. That is the solar year, and it is by it THE PLANETS that other complete revolutions are measured. The movements of the planets are more complex, being compounded of that on the circumference of the epicyole, and that on the deferent, accordingly there are two kinds of revolution to consider. As regards that on the epicycle the complete revolution in the case of Saturn occupies a solar year and twelve days; of Jupiter, a year, a month and three days; of Mars, two years, a month and eighteen days; of Venus, a year, seven months and five days; of liercury, three months and twenty-four days; and of the moon, twentyseven days, thirteen hours and eighteen minutes.

The revolution of the epicycle on the deferent, on the other hand, throughout the whole zodiac takes in the case of Saturn twenty-nine years, four months and eleven days; of Jupiter, eleven years, ten months and four days; of Mars, a year, ten months and seventeen days; of Venus and Mercury, each a solar year; and of the moon, twenty-seven days, seven hours and forty-three minutes. The nodes of the moon make a complete revolution in eighteen years, seven months and nine days,

نفي عربم أد والعن المؤلف والنان دوزالنر عن مراد والنفر عن مراد والنفر عن مراد والنفر عن مراد والنفر عن مراد والمناب وا جُزَامِن وَذَلَّ سَنَهُ اللَّي عِمِعِ إِذَ السَّنِي وَلَمَا سَابِرَ السَّبِانَ وَالأَل جريانما المسبطه سربان احماعلى فالنوبوالا خرعي عبط الجامِل فإن ادوانع إعلى طات الداويريم لنبل بسند تمسيد والتي عفر بوما بالغشرب وللشنعي بيتنعبه سنعوشه والمزيخ فسنبز فاشع المنع في المناف والنصن والناف المناف المرافية وخسنفالا ولعط الإدبة لمت الله والبعب عشروما والممرز في سبعدوَعش بي ما وملك عبد رساعد ومان ععر فبت والمادوان راحز ماورها حين وبالبروج كلما ما ما أوان على الم رعيزون مندوادبعداس وخمنع عنسريوما والمسترى فاحور عِنه سند وعشمُ عاشمُ وابعدابام والمُرْبِح بوسند وعشر النَّهُ ولسطاح إسر الأمسره وعط ادد فيسنه سبعنينوما دفن دو لجوزه سرّالعرف المرف المرف المن المرف المناه والمام

190-192

while each of the fixed stars and the apogees of the planets take according to the calculations of our ancestors thirty-six thousand years, but to those of our own time twenty-three thousand seven hundred and sixty years (viz. 1° in 66 years).

191. Fa mā harakat al-falak. Theon of Alexandria discussed the movement of the orbit which he derived from those masters of the horoscope, the TREPIDATION astrologers of Babylon of ancient times, [who were regarded by the people generally as sorcerers.] They were of OF SPHERE opinion that the orbit (the 8th sphere) moved eight degrees in the direction of the signs at the rate of one degree in 80 solar years, and then as much in the reverse direction; [so that multiplying 8 by 80 gives 640 years for the onward movement and 1280 for that and the return.]P When the movement is in the direction of the signs, iqual, that of all the stars and planets is accelerated, and in calculating their positions, it is necessary to edd this amount, while similarly, when in the opposite direction, idbar, all move more slowly and the amount of this movement must be deducted. Whether these statements are true or false it has not been possible for any observer to devote the time necessary for investigating them. 2

ecliptic of the inclined orbit of the moon is constant;

its maximum is 50 north and an equal

LATITUDE OF amount south. This is the greatest

THE MOON latitude of the moon; the epicycle is not affected thereby, because its plane is in the same plane as the inclined orbit. As the ascending and descending nodes move in the direction contrary to the signs, the greatest amount of latitude or indeed any latitude which may be determined is not at one point therein, as is the case with the declination of the sun, which is constant at every point of its course, its maximum declination being always at the first points of Capricorn and Cancer.

Wiedemann LXIV. 207.

2 Apparently Al-Biruni shares Al-Battani's view of the falsity of the trepidation theory.

ملحال بريز للحواجب المائده الحجان المتبان بهتب دجود الواط منى تعقل الناف شند والماعب مجود الجدين في لمك ويعترب ألف سنه وسبح مأبد وسنبن مناد والمحالفال عذاءاي ناوذالا يحذداني إلى جاب الطلسّات ومُ أَجِاب الجعام نِ ترماأمل إودكك ببغندون في العَلَكُ أن الأخريء معبلمال والحر البروح عابه المانجدح تم درمه اللخلاف الوالى وبحور من من المركم الحاد منها عابن مندشم من مناد الفيل رعب المحاجب المنع الى زارة مك للركم علما واذااد برابطات ماجيخ المنصاف المركم فالماسدف دلك اصطلانه فلمنها بعد للجدين الانساد ما بعبن مُنه على من ذلك فتعب عض العن المصلالل ناب المهل على عدار واجراعظ خسد اجرابح السلاد بشله الجوللوب وذلك عابدع ضرا لغن ولاما بزلفاك مدون بدماند بدسيطم الفلك وبسب انعف بد جوزمن منركان الحاف النوالي العظم عضه

193.

193. Fa Kaif Tarūd al-Kawākib al-ulwiyyah. of the three superior planets has an inclined orbit, the amount of the inclination of which is constant: their apogees LATITUDE OF THE SUPERIOR PLANETS are in the northern halves of the The plunes of the epiorbits. cycles, however, are not in the same plane as the inclined orbits, as is the case with the moon, but in one inclined thereto, in such a way that the perigee of the epicycle is always inclined in the same direction as the inclined orbit is from the ecliptic, that is to say, that if the place which the epicycle-centre occupies in the inclined orbit is north of the ecliptic, then the epicycle-perigee is also north, and if south, then This inclination of the epicycle is in the south. diameter which passes from the summit to the perigee. and this for purposes of definition is called the first diameter, while that diameter which is perpendicular to Now this second diameter is it is called the second. always parallel to the plane of the ecliptic. obvious that when the centre of the epicycle arrives at one of the nodes of the inclined orbit, the plane of the epicycle coincides with that of the ecliptic, and the first diameter comes into that plane; then when the centre of the epicycle passes beyond the node, the first diameter begins to incline in the opposite direction and arrives at the maximum inclination at a point midway between the two nodes, there where the extreme inclination of the inclined orbit is also situat-So it results from what we have said that the superior planets have two divergences from the ecliptic, one due to the inclined orbit called the first or mean, dependent on relation to points of the ecliptic. and a second, due to the epicycle and dependent on distance from the sun.

كَلَ مَالِكَ بِهِ البِلِعِلِي مِن الْإِواجِدِ والْحِلْمُ الْجُوالانساف النَّمَا لِهِ مِرْكُولُالًا لُ الملطه وفيت سلحح الملاك تداويرها وسلوح الأفلاك الملد معامولان ملئ سلم المدورة كالمهدين العبار سابل عن طع المنك المابل المساد به جنس الع وراجاع الهابل وجمع المابل فأك البروج اعزان ان الموضع الذي فيومز وكالمذورم اللابل المال أم الم أعر فك البوء و حال بالحسس الدورغ المابل بسأتاله انكان وسأغنوسا فباللادوه ادزع العك المابل ب نخط المابل من المابل من المابل المن المناه الفطز المان على دوسي مند ولمسراله علر الأقل والقطر الأخ الفام عابد ماسامعناالناب بسحن العامواذ بالسطح مكل الروج معيلوم انمرك مكلك ور اذاسَادُ إِلَيْهِ عِلْمُعَ وَبِي الْمَكُ المَالِلُ لِمِنْ عَلِي الْمُكَ المَالِلُ لِمِنْ عَلِي الْمُكَ المَالِلُ لِمِنْ عَلِي الْمُكَ المَالِلُ لِمِنْ عَلِي الْمُكَ المُلِلُ الْمُنْ عَلِي الْمُكَ الْمُلْكُ فِي الْمُلْكُ المُلِلُ الْمُنْ عَلِي الْمُلْكُ فِي الْمُلْكُ المُلِلُ الْمُنْ عَلِي الْمُنْ عَلَيْ الْمُلْكُ فِي الْمُلْكُ المُلِلُ الْمُنْ عَلِي الْمُنْ عَلَيْ الْمُلْكُ فِي الْمُلْكُ المُلِلُ الْمُنْ عَلِي الْمُنْ عَلَيْ الْمُلْكُ المُلْلُ الْمُنْ عَلَيْ الْمُلْكُ المُلْلُ الْمُنْ عَلَيْ اللَّهِ اللِّلُ الْمُنْ عَلَيْ اللَّهُ اللَّهِ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْ عَلَيْ اللَّهُ اللّهُ اللَّهُ اللّهُ اللللّهُ اللّهُ ا ومنا ذالفط الاول بسطح فلك النووج ماذاجها وزوات البدال إلااب كانم وبجونام مبله عندمنه صف مابزالع ف ويزوه ابسامه مع عابد المكل المابل في المالظ اللحاجب العِلوبيع صان أج ها مرح موالملاً الملافيتي الأواوسط محون عبب الموانبع مز فكك المؤوج والأخرس

194

the case of both of the inferior planets the inclination of the inclined orbit is not latitude of sonstant but moves from one extreme in LOWER PLANETS the north to a similar amount in the south, this movement occupying a solar year. This is called the latitude of the excentric orbit. Thus there occur in the epicycle two latitudes one dependent on the movement of the first diameter, called the latitude of the epicycle, and the other dependent on that of the second diameter, called the deflected latitude fard al-wareb or al-iltiwa.

With regard to the latitude of the excentric orbit, if the centre of the spicycle is situated in one of the nodes of the inclined orbit, the plane of the latter is coincident with that of the scliptic, while if it moves into one of the halves of the inclined orbit, that half begins to incline in the case of Venus to the north and of Mercury to the south, and reaches its extreme point with the arrival of the centre of the epicycle at half-way between the nodes, i.e. at the apogee and perigee.

with regard to the latitude of the epicycle dependent on the first diameter, when the centre of the epicycle is at the apogee its summit in the case of Venus begins to move towards the north, and of Mercury towards the south, while if it is at the perigee the converse is the case.

معنال المده مِ عَلِمُ مَانِها وبعون عِنْب العِدعِ للمُسْ ع لعقل اجدم النصن وعُطاه و فكل مابل غيرنان المبا ولعد يُدع كَرْعاً بِم لذفالمنال العامولة متلها والجنوب وتدرة بنهما بيص وسنويم سندية وساكا سلمند عرض المرحزم بعرض لحكوا جدمهما فالكندوبره نوعان العرم أحده امرحم فدكره العط رالاول بمرع واللدور والاء منجمة جنسعة العُطر النّاب وتسمّع ض الحينات وعرض الالنوا فاماع ف المائج المرحى مان مزحز الدوراذ احكان عيد موضع احدي عُند بالميل كان المال المنطبع العل المروج فاذا فادع اللجد نسوالمامل ابتداذك المضف مزللا بلتع كالأعب معوالسال ولعط ايد بوللبوس ونبلع غابنه عيد خلول مزحزالدو برمنصف مايزالي عدنب ودكك يجوب الماموضع اوجعا والماموضع حضيضه أوخيد في بصوران واعرض الندي مُكُرِّ الأول مانكان مرحى عند الأوج اجدت الدوره بذالأمس نجوالمال في عمل المنوب والصال وعم عِلم مسالاج اخذت الدورة في الزمس في فوالجنوب وكي في علما ورد في النمال ع

194-195

The deflected latitude dependent on the second diameter begins with the arrival of the centre of the epicycle at a node of the inclined orbit, when it moves into that half in which is the apogee of the excentric orbit, the eastern side inclines in the case of Venus to the north and of Mercury to the south, and the western side in the opposite direction. On the other hand if the centre of the epicycle moves from a node into that half in which is the perigee of the excentric orbit, the eastern side inclines in the case of Venus to the south and of Hercury to the north. The inclination continues to increase until the centre of the epicycle reaches the apogee or perigee of the excentric.

The latitude of the epicycle and the deflected latitude are continuous from beginning to end, and the result of our observations is that the centre of the epicycle of Venus is always to the north of the ecliptic, and that of Mercury to the south.

the apogees of the planets in the direction of succession of the signs makes it impossible APOGLES OF to specify their position except for a PLANETS definite date, although the movement is so slow that it takes 66 years to traverse one degree. At the present time, 420 A.H., I their situations in comparison with the results obtained by Nuhammad bin Jabir al-Battani are as follows:-

Sun in Gemini	240	32'
Saturn in Sagittarius	60	48'
Jupiter in Virgo	160	45'
Mars in Leo	80	331
Venus in Gemini	240	39'
Mercury in Libra	230	43.2

l There are two other paragraphs in wh. the date of this work is mentioned viz. 321 and 460.

2 The above figures correspond with those in AO', AB, AB', except that Saturn has 60.48' as has AO, corrected on margin to 6043' - Nallino I.239, who translates this peragraph from AP, points out that the difference from Al-Battani's list should be 20 15', which requirement is satisfied by the above except for Saturn and Venus which should be 240.29' (and is so in PP). The confusion of 3 and 8 > 2 and 20 and 30, has been referred to in 118.

والماع ضالالواالذ بالفط والثلب فانابذ له من عند بالمرح الدور أجري عُمد في المابل لكند اذا فارفع الالفيف الذي منداوج المادج أجد طرف المسترقي بالعسن بوالسال ويعطا يدنو للنوب والطب العنرنية المطاف ذكك واذا فأدف مرحوالد وبرالع والمضف الدي بر حسبس الحادج المرك إخرطر فرالمت وفي بل النمس محوللوس مد عيطا ودبنوانسال والإرال بزداد إلى أن لمغ عابته عند كلول مزحز الدوبر اعج الخادج المركز اوجنبضد فعرسا المذوير والالوامسا دلان الكندا مالانها ببغرض ماذحراان مجون مرك فلك مد وبرالزمسن الأفالهال عن كالبردج ومرحز مدويرعط آيد ابدأ وللوسيعند ح اوجان الكاجب إن عن مُرّحداله واللزوج مستخبال عبروان عماالالوقت عوددولي كالخرك المله فيكل مت وسننصنه درجه ولين فان واضعها فرماساالذي وادبع ما مؤرر لعن بجبّب وجود مع زجها والبناب المام المااوج الممتر والمؤسيل ماوج زُعلَ النوس وسمح ماوج المُسْنري النّبلد موجر وأوج المرخ فالاندح لح داوج المفت في دابحد اكلا واوج عطادد والميزان

مم عنها

196-197

196. Jauzaharāt al-Kawākib ain hiya. The nodes of the planets according to the observations of the western peoples (the Greeks of Rum P) move in NODES OF the direction of the signs at a rate THE PLANETS equal to that of the apogees and the fixed stars. This is due to the circumstance that the movement of the ecliptic orbit is towards the east as is that of all the orbits. The ascending node of Saturn, the distance of which from the apogee is 80°, is at the present time in 26° 43° of Aquarius, that of Jupiter, 70° from its apogee in 26° 43° of Scorpius.

Those of Mars, Venus and Mercury, each 90° from their apogees, are respectively in 8° 33' of Scorpius, 24° 29' of Virgo and 23° 43' of Capricorn. But the ideas of the Hindus [and Persians] as to this matter are that their movements are different from each other and contrary to succession like the nodes of the moon as to which there is no conflict; according to their ideas, in our time the ascending node of Saturn is at 23° 13' of Gemini, of Jupiter at 12° 1' of Cancer, of Mars at 21° 55' of Aries, of Venus at 29° 48' of Taurus, of Mercury at 21° 11' of Aries. In consequence of the rapid movement of the ascending node of the moon it is impossible to determine its exact place without calculation.

197. Ma al-buht. This is a Hindu word for the daily progress of a planet; they pronounce it bhukti. Our associates always apply it to the DAILY MOTION corrected rate, but the Hindus distinguish between the mean and corrected rates, (bhukti miyana and bhukti taqwim^P).

l PL, PP have bhutki for bhukti. Bhakti, faith, devotion; enjoyment ac. to Burgess, Sūrya Siddhānta I.27. 2 bhukti madhyama and sphuţa. India II, 195.

جوزمِ الكاحاب إن 245 مى المادام الغنرب منوكد المالنوالح بعدم المجرك الموان والتعوليب الماسد ووكك لارج ك مكالب المزوج بجوالمنزف ونعجم بع الأملاك فالماد الرجه نصرة بلفه بعيداء جد هرك بسعون ومانا المذكوة بة الدلوكوهم و د الرجوز هنرالمُنترى بعداوجه ع لا بي زمانا والعنف حوهم وزائر جوذم زالم توبيدا وجدص كالبجو فالسنبله كالمحطور الرجور منزع فارد نعله جدصر كالبحوك فالدي يحجم والماعن المندفي كنما عدم متلند والمحاف أوال البروج معحوش مجوده والغزالذي لمبخت لمفواجد وجي ومأسااماس جرزهب زجل المراحيح واسرج ومسرلك ووالبطان ما وزامرجوزم والمربع إلى المحلك أنه وزامر جوزم والزهن با المؤز كهمع وذاسر جوذه مرعطارد بالجلكاما والماداس جوزهن الغرفالذاس جركميها بمنع انعب مصعدبنرجياب ماللهت من لعظمه من برج بحب في كمع ناه مسبرالكواجب في البوم الواجد فاماا كمابنا فأنما بوقع وندع فالمنب والمغوم لبوم ففظ واما

197-199

We have already discussed the mean progress, 182, but it is impossible to determine the corrected rate, there being no definite limits in which to estimate it, for sometimes the movement is rapid and the buht high, and sometimes slow, and the buht low, and again it ceases entirely when there is no buht or retrogrades when the buht becomes a minus quantity.

198. Mā al-buht al-mu'addal. This is the difference between the daily progress of the sun and moon or of two planets moving in the same direction but at different DIFFERENCE BETWEEN rates. Whenever you desire to RATES OF TWO PLANETS know the time of meeting of two objects travelling in the same direction, one of which is quicker than the other, you cannot arrive at a solution without knowing this difference, because the changing distance between them is proportionate to it. The difference is also called hissat al-masir (argumentum motus) and by the Hindus bhuktyantara. I Sometimes in place of the foregoing it is necessary to employ the sum of the two rates of movement, when the planets are moving in opposite directions one of them being on the direct and the other on the retrograde path; this is called by the Hindus bhukti jog, combined rate - (but we have no special name for it.) P

applied to a planet at all points of its excentric orbit, such that when its distance from the authors, the planet stops and makes no progress in the zodiac. If the magam is less than six signs, it is called [the first magam, after which the planet becomes retrograde, but if more than six signs,] the second magam after which it enters on the direct path. Whenever either of these stations is known it is only necessary to subtract from 360° to find the other.

I India II 195.

2 The paragraph refers to Ptolemy's Tables, Almagest, Ek. XII.Cap.8. in which are given these distances at the various positions of the epicycle on the deferent. of. also Nallino II 138-9. The Dict. Sci. Terms p. 1228, says Maqam has two meanings 1. the place of the station on the epicycle (as here), and 2. the stoppage itself for which iquamh is preferable (as often in the Tafhim). Inne dropped in MS.

المنفائم فيسلون عزالات وبالمقوم وتدذعوا الاوسد عدك وسوب واماالمفوم بهوع وعرود سنرع الحوك مع مرا وسيخ لغرى فبنرائه بدورتما كان عبما لابعت لدونا جعا فيصور يعتمس لجعا مَا الْمُهِدُ الْمُعِدِلُ مُونِسُ لَعَابِنَ مُعَىٰ الْبُرْنِ اوالدُو كِبِرْفَ لِسَالِمُ معركبن جمير واجل جركبزع بمنسا وبنن وادون اجهاعها فاندبع رف بعسلط برجر كشها لمره وأجن الانحسول الباعر بنهاا والعاور وفرى المهد المعدل ابساجيته المستروحوما لهد معكمة الراي صلما بالهواب وربماا حبيج الاستعلام وعالم عبن بسمال بالمكرة وعد بدل سل مابهه أوذاك والحوكين اذالم بحرك الموجم عواجه بلكاز لعزهامت يفاو الاخرداجيا أما المفامات مع ادبرواعدادموم عدلك كوكب وفي كالموضع مز فلك جد اذاتك ما كاسه الحويب المعرله يكان جنية وافعامت بالأركادي فكك الروج جرك وفان اللف ما المرست مروج مُرَّم مفعاً ما ما أولان الوقوف ببرللاستقامه ومتح المجاح المقامين مرهلت بدومت يزخ بقلفام كأخرما المرباطات جي للفامات الآان بسي لا المحار

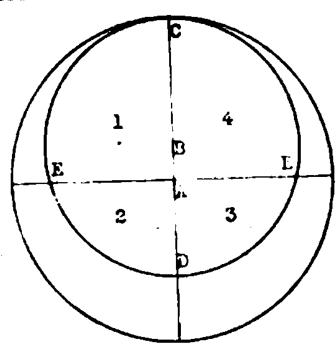
200-201

200. Ribatat. This is another name for these stopping-places but among our predecessors there were those who considered the above described conditions.

BANDS to be apparent not actual. As they knew that the movements of the planets were related to the movement of the sun, they imagined that the planets were suspended to the sun by connecting bands ribatat, which were sometimes slack so as to allow of movement when near the sun, and sometimes taut, when the planets were distant from the sun so as to prevent movement and cause retrogression. This is a foolish idea to which no attention should be paid, since there is no advantage to be derived nor results obtainable from it.

201. Nitagat. 2 Zones or sectors of the orbits are of two kinds, those of the deferent and those of the epicycle. The first are formed

SECTOR: OF THE ORBITS by two lines which divide the



A centre of universe. B of the deferent. C apogee and D perigee of deferent. E points of maximum equation and mean movement. 1-4 1st to 4th nitags of deferent.

orbit into four parts; one of these lines connects the apsides where the rate of movement 18 at its maximum inequality, being slowest at the apogee and quickest at the perigee: at these points there is no equation and the mean and corrected positions of the planet are equal. The other line is at right angles to this and passes through the centre of the world; at its ends the equation is at its naximum and the rate of movement the mean rate.

In addition to the original meaning of halters, ribations of fortified frontier stations, afterwards convents, in Morocco in which murabitun, Marabouts, lived, whence Almorevides. Occasionally also applied to lunar stations. Omenp. 271. 2 Nitaq means both ceinture and enceinte. See New p.62, who supposes this expression to be used for the first time by Ber-Hebraeus.

107

برفها بالمقبلدد وللمجتن معليقادم فالحواجب العامر بوطم أنشرفع بوداعها ماؤا يبسنرج للافتراب مما بستنغم سبع رسرف الباعد عنه امنف عندذكك وترجع وذكك واطلا لمعتاليه اذلاماين فببعلابهم ماالمط المطافات عطيع على عبراط عابد المَلَكُ الْحَادْجِ المرْحِرْ واللَّابِ فَي لَكُّ الْدُومِ عَامَا النَّوْعِ الأولْ عَارْ كلك الوج نيسم مبدان للفان اللذان تراجر ماعلى المخبض وغدط فب سِيمالعُ وبنه ب بهنعاالئه أجب وغلفالمسبة عكابدالمشلاف عندل عسم المطالان موالفا بم

على ماداً على ماداً على من العبالم وعدهم فيد مجون وضع العدبال عنظم

201

of these four nitags the first extends from the apoges in the order of succession to the point of maximum equation, the second as far as the perigee, the third from that point to that of maximum equation and the fourth to the apogee as in the figure.

As to the extent of these areas if regard be had to the centre of the deferent, then the first begins at the spaces, and the others at intervals of 90°: if on the other hand from the mid-distance, 171, which they cell the unequal centre, then the beginnings of the nitags are shown in the table.

Nitros	1:	st	2n	d	3re	5]	4 t	h
	O	'	0	•	0	•	0	1
Sun	•		91	59	180	. }	268	01
Saturn	•		96	31	180		263	29
Jupiter	•		95	15	·180	.	264	45
Lars	•		101	25	180	• .	258	35
Venus	•	\ .	91	59	180		268	01
Mercury			93	02	180		266	58
Mo o n			95	01	180		264	59

The second kind of nitaq is that which divides the epicyclel into four parts also in this case by

l Gaturn in MS. has 268 for 263.

Venus in MS. has 263 for 268.

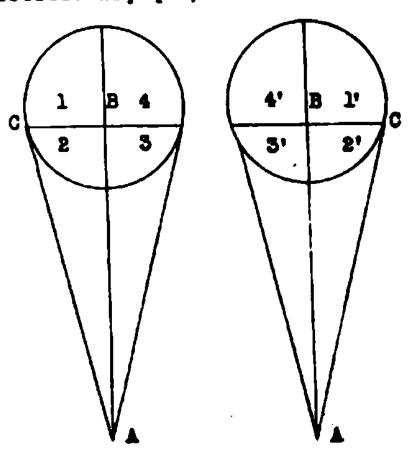
Mercury in MS. has 264.59 for 266.58.

The figures under the 2nd and 4th nitags should add to 360°.

والمنظم الموسط المعالم الموسط المعالم والمالية المنظم المنطب المنظم المنظم المنطب المنظم المنظم المنطب المنظم الم

								
ج	ازل	÷	اناد	<u>;</u>	ונו		الأنا	J. J.
دفان	درج	د فابق	درج	دفابق	درج	دفائن	درح	Y
1	دسج	が	وم	ک	صا	8	3	المتر
35	ر سے	* *	فع	X	صو	7	*	زجل
an	رسك	1	وم_	•	صد	*	4	المنتدى
له	رخ	•	وعـ	ڪه	فا	*	4	المريخ
7	د سمح	1	وب_	ک	صا	8	*	الأهرع
7.	رسو	8	وعــ		10	*	4	عطارد
ک	رسار	8	وهــ		صه	*	4	العنسر

three lines one of which passes from the centre of the deferent through the apsides of the epicycle, and two others from the same point which are tangents to the epicycle. The conditions as to equation and movement are the same at the apsides of the epicycle as in those of the deferent, and the place of contact is answ the point of maximum equation. These four sectors are therefore nitagat; the first being at the upper epsis,

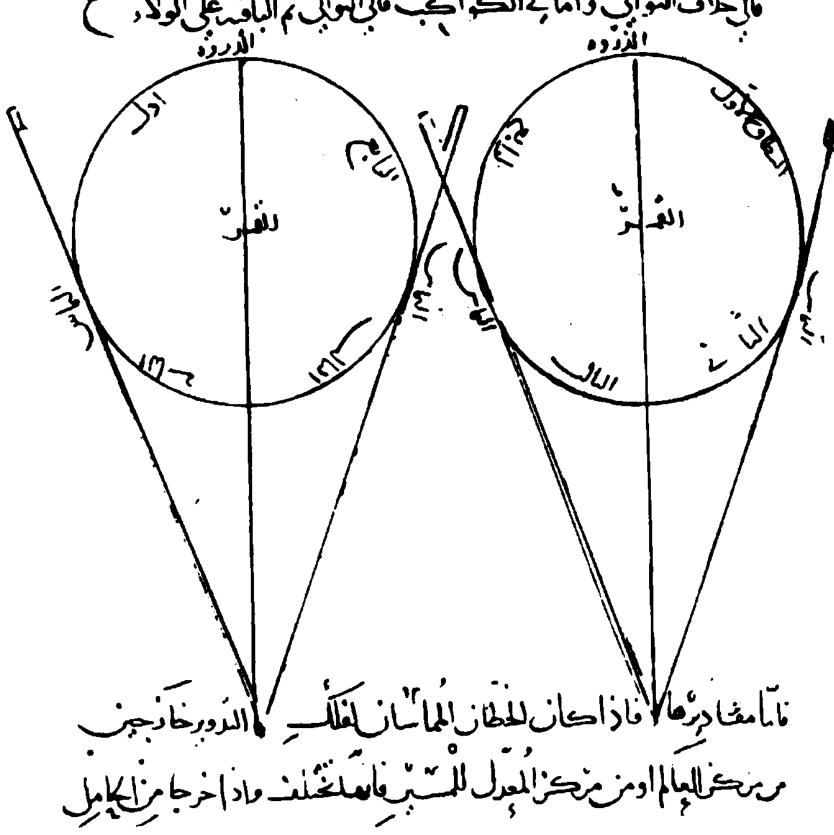


A centre of deferent. B of epicycle. 1-4 lat-4th nitage of epicycle of planets. 1'-4' lat-4th of moon.

C. Points reached by tengents from centre of deferent.

on the side of the direction of movement of the planets proper in the order of succession of the signs, and in that of the moon contrary thereto. The others follow in the order described for the deferent as represented in the figure. The extent of these zones if the tangents are drawn from the centre of the world or that of the equant are different in amount, but if drawn from the centre of the deferent

من ما المفلاط المن عمراً جعماعلى دون و وسند والمافيان اللها المعاد الموجام عن حرابها وعند الماس الفاري المحوز المجدب المداد الموجود المن المافيات بندي من الدود و به جود المن إما والعند فالحافات بندي من الدود و به جود المن إما والمان الموالي والمان المدود المناف على الولاد على الدود المناف المودد المناف المنا



201-202

they do not depart from the figures in the accompanying table. When these are compared with the argument of the planet it becomes obvious in which quadrant it is.

Nitaga		st	21	ıd	320		4th	
	0	7	0	•	0	•	0	•
Moon	•	•	105	09	180	•	256	51
Saturn	•	•	96	13	180		263	47
Jupiter	•	•	101	03	180		258	57
Mars	•	•	131	09	160	.	228	51
Venus	•		135	59	180		224	01
Mercury			112	90	180		247	58

202. Mā al-sā'id wa al-hābit. The expressions ascending and descending are used in various ways. (1)

A planet ascends in the north to the ASCENDING AND limit of its latitude, then it debegins to diminish. When it passes beyond the node and gets into the southern half of its inclined orbit, as its latitude increases, it descends in the south until it reaches its extreme point, after which the latitude begins to diminish as it ascends in the south.

(2) A second use is from the point of view of the earth, a planet being described as descending when in the first and second nitags, and ascending in the third and fourth. (3) Some referring to the mid-distance call it descending when in the second and third, and ascending when in the first and fourth sectors. (4) Again, a planet is said to be ascending when between the first point of Capricorn and the last of Gemini, and descending

¹ Note MS. has Moon 15.09 for 103.09.

لمنف على الجود للمفارخ المنك والمين المسطالها ع مون للرول

2	الزابه		اثات	i	ان	ياب	111	
رلمات	2,7	دکھت	ひりつ	ت.6 ₃	1:37	بهن	137	*
l	ربو	*		ط	+	8	*	المعننز
مر	ر چ	*	-	*	مو	*	*	زجمل
,	4.	*	7	λ.	افا	*	*	المنترك
ľ	رج	*	7	10	1 6	8	4	المرمخ
1	رڪر	*	ده	ند	de	*	4	النمسن
خ	رمر	8	وم		ديـــ	1	16	عطارد

مَا الْمَا يِلِوالْمَارِي

العود بالمالذ الخديمة في مراص المان على المنازع المال ألى عابة عرضه مادام عن في وداد به المال ألى عابة عرضه مادام عن في المناف للناب في المناف المناف

202-203

when between the first point of Cancer and the last of Sagittarius. (5) Finally when described from the point of view of the meridian as ascending when in the east and descending when in the west.

203. Mā al-ziyadah wa'l-nuqsan. Increase and Decrease are of two kinds, one with reference to places on the deferent and epicycle, and the other to situation relative to the hor-INCREASE AND 120n. Of the former there are various DECREASE sorts. 1. Increase of rate of movement, when the planet moves quicker than its mean rate; this is called zā'id fī'l-masīr; when slower, nadis fī'lmasir. 2. Increase in number. 1 The equations of the planets are set down in tables opposite numbers in two (vertical) rows, one of which continues to increase up to six signs, and the other continues to decrease from the twelfth sign.4 When you wish to introduce an argument number of a planet into these two rows with the object of ascertaining the equation, if it falls in the first row, it is called za'id fi'l-'adad, and in the second nagis fi'l- adad.

3. Increase in equation. If the equation is increased by the addition of the portion, hissah belonging to it, it is said to be zā'id fi'i-ta'dil, this will be in the lst and 3rd nitaqs, but if diminished in the others.

distances from the apogee or perigee; e.g. 180° 135 and 225 have the same equation. The first column corresponds to the 1st and 2nd nitags, the

Sprolemy's 3rd column contains the equations calculated as if the centre of the epicycle were on the equant; the 4th, the difference due to the fact that it is on the deferent; this difference has to be added in the 1st and 4th nitags, above the nodes of the two excentrics, and deducted in the 2nd and 3rd. See figure in 184: The angle D'AZ has to be added to the equation of the centre ADC above the node to obtain its position on the equant; D'AZ deducted below. See Manitius II 413

Raihanah must have found this kind of increase as well as 3 and 4 incomprehensible without further explanation. 2Tables of equations of planets, such as Ptolemy, Heyberg II 436; Ptolemy, Manitius II 261; Al-Battani, Mallino II 108.

3Common argument numbers of mean longitude.

When both are read down. P In A they are read up.

10 3600 The argument numbers are so arranged because the equation is the same for equal

السيود والمبوط بالقبارل الارض فالمحوجب بدورج فالمعاق الاول والماب مابط وبالناث والرابع صاعرا ومنهم ربيع لمذف لاول والمابع صاعرا مذالمًا في والمُلكُ عابط ووع الخموان بحون المنف الذي مزاول المدى الماخ الموذا فيسم صاعراً وبالضف المخرما مطاع ونوع اخر ابناه وانب نفايز فلك سف المار ولك نصف الإلي والمشرف مبتي ماعد فبوالغرب عابطاع ماالن ما والفصاف عذاللعي بفسم الهوعبن أجدها بسنب الموضع مزطل الاءج والندور والأخر سنب الموضع مزا لافئ والمنوع المة أيط وجره فيف الزمان بوالمسبر وهوازمت بر فالبه مائة من بن المسط مندما: اساقاط مندمه ماضر في السير ومنها الزبادة فالعدد وذكك انعباد باللحواجب موصوعه بجذى عدادب سطرز لدها بعط العابدت بروج والاخر وتفع للعام النع شررجا فاذاوقع مابع خالمهم لج السطرالاول سي الحوجب ذابوأ والجدد ووالأب نافسأمنه ومنهاالرباده فالنعد بلعهران بزداد تعديله زباده جصندالي بوخه مهاالمجد بلفتي عدي زابرا فإلبجد بل و ذكات المائ و النائد اللطافات ويحم العصائص بالمافين عامه الانان ب بحسّاب معوان وادعلبعر

205

- 4. Increase by calculation. This occurs when the equation of the anomaly has to be added to the true longitude of the centre to obtain the true position of the planet in the ecliptic; it is called za'id fl'l-hisab, if it has to be deducted, then nages fl'l-hisab. This increase occurs in the 3rd and 4th nitags of the deferent, and lst and 2nd of the epicycle.
- 5. There is also increase and decrease in luminosity and magnitude, zā'id fī'l-nur wa'l-uzm, due to nearness or distance from the earth. Some people refer to the increase as dependent on the constant approach to the earth from the apogee to the perigee of the epicycle, and the decrease, magis fl'l-nur, to the increasing distance as the planet moves from the perigee towards the apogee. Others speak of the increase as being from the perigee of the deferent as far as the mid-distance, and the decrease from that towards the apogee; that is to say, that the mean is at the mid-distance, decreases towards the apogee and increases towards the perigee. Consideration compels the view that position on the epicycle is chiefly responsible for the difference, but the custom of astronomers is to restrict it to the zones of the deferent. In the case of the moon, however it is the distance from the sun which counts, so from the lat to the middle of the month, they speak of it as being on the increase, while others use the expression zā'iā fi'l-nūr for the time when it is larger than half i.e. from the 7th to the 22nd of the month.
 - 6. The other kind of increase and decrease which is referred to the horizon is that the eastern quarter between the east horizon and the meridian, and the quarter opposite to it, its madir, are spoken of as in excess, because both day and night respectively are on the increase in these, and on the decrease in the remaining quarters.

I See Manitius II.414. The second correction of the argument (the equation of the anomaly, 185) has to be added to the true longitude of the centre of the epicycle to obtain the true position of the planet when it is in the 1st and 2nd nitags of the epicycle, deducted when in the 3rd and 4th - whatever the position on the deferent. G'K' + G' gives K'. G'L' - G' gives

الغيد باللغب ونبتوا إمآب الملساب واذا خصصنة مخاصسا فدوجتس بالناه. لمافي كلّ العبع والمطاف للآلت علاابع وَأَمَانِ فَكُلّ الدونِر فانطاف الخل مالناب منها النادم والسورة العنل كالأراب م الانس وذكر جبلابهم عندالادوه الللسبس نابرآ بالمون والبلائدلارال بغزب وتلاض مزل لمنبغرك إلاذه ناضأ فهما لاثد لإذال بزداد نباعداً عِن الدَّرْفَ جَعِلْ عِبْمُ الذَارِهِ مِعَاجِلَ حِبْقُ لِلْمِنْسِلُ لِالْعِيْدِينَ الْمُورِالْعِسَانِ بنماع لج بذكا وبالمعافكانوندان رائه الاوسط بسعورة البعد لاسط فاذالد تفع عند نعرم عان واذاا بحط عنه ذادم مران والعبار بوجب بل الحالمبن المتعمل والمراس المعلى والرالاان العاب المساعة فيبر انعسبغ فمالد مطافات الاوج وذبان فود الغر عبن عنع بعلك المدح واستخصب البيدي المغرض منهم بجهلة مزاجل المثرالي فت عرز المراونهم يزعهه نابوآ مئ المنتفي في معد معد والمالزبان بحتب الونيع مزالإف فإن النبع المسترفى الذي بني مك سف المهادّ وبزافى المشرَف والبُع الذي في المرجم الزابوان لا المهان والبران بما بعد نال إلى المناف المربع المناف المربع المناف المناف

204

204. Mā ayyam al-'ālam. World-days are those periods in which the planets with their apogees and their nodes take to make a complete revolution (without remainder) p; and indeed every WORLD-DAYS nation has endeavoured to elicit them with the object of keeping in mind the movements (and situations)P of the planets, in accordance with what their observations have taught them as to their movements, but the measure which is best known is that of the Hindu kalpa, the days of which are called kalpahargan and are known to us muslims as Sind-hind days, but improperly so, for in their language the word is Sadhand (Siddhanta), a name which is given to all their important astronomical works, and which means accuracy without crookedness. According to their books there are five Siddhanta, the first called after Suraj, (the sun), the second after Vashpasta, the third after Pulisa, the fourth after Rum, and the fifth after Baraham.

These days are called world-days because the Hindus believe that two kalpas constitute a nychthemeron of Beraham, i.e. nature,4 one being a day and the other a night. The beginning of such a day is when the planets set out from the first point of Aries, on a Sunday, and when this kalpa is finished, 5 the night kalpa comes on during which all things which were moving become quiescent, and so a night and day in the life of Baraham are completed. 6 His life is a hundred years.

The complete exposition of this question is a very long matter which we have dealt with in place. A tatte is annexed in which the number of revolutions of the planets in a kalpa are given according to Hindu notions, not according to our astronomical Side by side with these figures, are the data of those 'thousands' which Abu lingshar has recorded from Persian sources.

¹ So in PL; A, aharki; PP, har kih; India, I 368, each kalpa equal to 4,520,000,000 solar years

So in PL. A, Sindhad. PP. Hind u Sind. India I 155. 3 Surya, Vasishtha, Paulisa, Romaka, Brahma, 1.c.

⁴ India I 94. 5 When all are again in conjunction in 00 Aries.

⁵ India I 331. 360 times two kalpas making a year.

ماهني الابام المي سيامام العالم

مذااسم لابام تدور فيهاالسحاجب واوتجالنا وجونع رانهااده أنامه وتداستخرجها المخاف فيولح فلي الجركات بجب ماوجه مزح وكانعا بإنساده مقنه المشهون على العلم وبسون فالملاه بلغ تم عليا والمام حل امريجي بجلزابام حلب وببمونها اصحابنا ابام المندور مكوالمغتم ترماندوه وأسم مؤح على المستقيم المستقيم الذكابعوج ومكن السدماندات عنهم خمند نبئب اجدماال صورح والماك اللست والمألف اللاؤم والابع المل واعامر المرام والما تنب الممالعاً لم المعاعدهم نعناد مام الالطبيعية في العراب الدعواب وعبرها الملح عيرمن ولللجل ببم الأجد ومنلقن المده لبل ام ببرسخر المجرسات وبعلى اللانبغ م وهوملوسند وسننولل و موالم لدايم وعذااللب مهل مدفق الادوان وجله لحب ملع دون

204

Acco	rdine	to Hindu n	otions and	The Thousands of Line Thousands of
	_		15779164500001	1541493240 (days in world-
		to era of		year)
Yazdigird,	June	16 652 AD	720635 8 0631 5 2	1365598
Revolution	OI 8	sun.Years in		5
		a kalpa	43200000C	560000
5 and 1 and 2 am		14	400	(years in world-
Revolution			480	year)
**		BOOD.	57753300000	4812778
**		ts spugee	488105858	19365
		lts nodes	232311168	19360 12214
**		Baturn	146567298 ₄	TSST
"		ts apogee		
**		its nodes	584	20220
10		Jupiter	364226455	50352
Ħ		a pogee	855	
71	- - -	nodes	65	303400
न न		iars	2296828522	191402
***		apogee	292	
•		nodes	267	
11		Venus	7022389492	585199
17		apogee	653	
Ti Ti		nodes	893	
n		Mercury	17936998984	1494751
F		apog ee	332	
77		nodes	521	
#	of	fixed stars	120000	

1 v. India, II, 16.

2 The number of years multiplied by 365,258.

raragraph 205 to middle of 209 supplied from ff.36-38 AC.

³ A smaller world-year is that of 36000 years, derived from the assumption that the vernal equinox in consequence of precession is shifted through the whole zodiac in that period; the 'predecessors', 175, estimated a degree in 100 years, Hipparchua in 72, a sign in 2160, and the whole zodiac in 25920. The Vernal Equinox entered Aries about 2200 B.C.and Pisces about 100 B.C.Jeremias, Altorientalische Geisteskultur 1929, p. 242. He draws attention, r.303, to the similarity of the Indian and Babylonian world-years, and believes that these reached India from the Greeks and that the Greeks had them from Babylon through Berossus.

Has 14 by mistake. There is a lacuna in this MS.from

المنافرة ال			
المنافية المنافية المنافية المنافية المنافية المنافية المنافئة ال	الومعشو	رلفند	المرات
المنافية المنافية المنافية المنافية المنافية المنافية المنافئة ال	1-1-1-1-	184411448 0000	- الماليو
رجياً ١٩٠٥ (٢٧٧١) المارحية الماركة ا	1r4r891		
الرحم (۱۳۹۸ و ۱۹۸۹ و ۱۹۳۱ ا ۱۳۲۲ و ۱۳۳۲ و ۱	1 4 00 0	477.00000	ادوارالشب
ارحم ۱۹۲۱ه ۱۳۲۲ ۱۳۲۱ ۱۳۲۱ ۱۳۲۱ ۱۳۲۱ ۱۳۲۱ ۱۳۲۱ ۱			اوحها
جزهره ۱۳۲۲ ۱۳۲۴ ۱۳۲۴ ۱۳۲۴ ۱۳۲۴ ۱۳۲۴ ۱۳۲۴ ۱۳۲۴] [8 UV 8 LL *****	افن
رَضُ ١٩٢٧ ١٩٢٩ ١٩٢٩ ١٩٢٩ ١٩٤٩	19-48	4711 08,191	4-91
اوجه عا المنترى عا 8 المنترى عا 9 المنترى عا 1 المنترى ع			جزمره
جوزهن الم الا الا الا الا الا الا الا الا الا	1714	14-484V191	رخل
النازي و و و و و و و و و و و و و و و و و و و		146	اوجد
ا معدد المعدد ا		814	جوزهنى
جزهن ۱۱۹۲۱ ۲۲۱۲ ۱۱۳ ۱۱۳ ۱۱۳ ۱۱۳ ۱۱۳ ۱۱۳ ۱۱۳ ۱۱۳	7610	ry4rry488	المشترى
ارجه ۱۱۱۱ الاور الورد ا		199	اوحم
ارجه ۱۱۱۱ الاور الورد ا	1	41	جزمنره
الرهنو ۱۲۲ م ۱۳۹۲ الاها و الرهنو ۱۳۹۷ م ۱۳۹۲ الاها و الرجعا ۱۳۹۷ م ۱۳۹۷ الرهنو ۱۳۹۷ م ۱۳۹۷ م ۱۳۹۷ الوجود منواط ۱۳۹۳ م ۱۳۹۲ الوجود ۱۳۳۲ م ۱۳۹۳ الوجود ۱۳۳۲ الوجود ۱۳۳۲ الوجود ۱۳۳۲ الوجود ۱۳۳۳ الوجود ۱۳۳ الوجود ۱۳۳ الوجود ۱۳۳ الوجود ۱۳۳ الوجود ۱۳۳ الوجود ۱۳۳ ا	19/201	7114171911	المؤخ
الزهن ١٩١٦ ١٠٩٢ الزهن الاحتاا الحتاد المحتاد		111	اوجه
ادجه ۱۳۲ م۱۲۱ الاجها ۱۴۱۴ الاجها ۱۴۱۴ الاجها ۱۴۱۴ الاجها المجهد		740	جوزهنره
جوزمزها ۱۲۱۳ ۱۷۱۳ ۱۷۱۳ ۱۶۱۲ کفر ازد ۱۷۱۳ ۱۲۱۲ ۱۷۱۳ ۱۶۲۲ اوجه	9 18111	V-7771497	المصئره
ادَجه الا۱۳۲۱ ۱۷۱۳ ادَجه ا		481	ادجها
اوَجه ۲۳۲		715	جوزهرها
	1414181	117477111	عد ازد
		777	اوجه
		8 11	جي هـٽي.
الدائلانية مدورا			

بمود

205

diameter of the moon is known in terms of the radius of the earth; Ptolemy determined the by the size of differences of his point of view (parallax) the STAPE ikhtilat al-manzar. He also determined the diameter of the sun in the same ratio from eclipses in Book V of the Almagest. The ratios of the diameter of the planets and fixed stars to that of the sun is obvious to the eye. What these are is explained in the Book of the Manshürat and we have recorded them in the accompanying table, in accordance with the opinion and results of Ptolemy since no other has hitherto established itself with us.

Sun	1
Moon	1 (at mid-distance)
Saturn	1/18
Jupiter	1/12
Mars	1/20
Venus	1/10
Mercury	1/15
Stars 1st magnitude	1/20
" 2nd "	4/81
* 5rd *	5/109
" 4th "	1/24
w 5th "	2/55
* 6th *	1/36

l pp. zīrāki tā akmūn kasī-rā andar īn sukhun va jahd kardan nayāftīm va nah andīsha kashīdan. Because up to this time we have not found any other person working at this topic.

2 cf. Nallino, Al-Battānī I 289 and II, XXVI and delete nā in t \$\infty\$5.

فللعرف مفاد بركتمام العنواك الماانسر فنطره معلوم بالمنداران بونعت فعدالان في والمعند فعدالان في والمعند فعدالان في والمعند المنظرة لذبك فعلم الشرمعلوم بولاللف ولو فلا مخرجه بيج الكسوفات فالمفالة الحامسة من المبطوا ما افطاد الكوالبالمخبرة والنابت فنسبها القطر النسر في الكسوفات فالمعلمة فالرم و علما ذكرا و بالناف والناب في المنظمة الرم و علما ذكرا و بالناف والناب في المنظمة الرم و علم المنظمة الرم و علما ذكرا و بالناف والناب في المنظمة المناف المنظمة المناف المنظمة المناف المنظمة المنطقة ال

0.50.000	
تقديم أفطارها لمرفط النحر	استمالكوكب
واحس	النهس
عرباوجذ معام	القحر
ولحرمز عانبه عشد	زمن
ولمرمزاق عشر	المشترك
ولعينعشرين	المنظ.
واهرمزعشسره	الناح
ونعرمن معشر	عطار د
واحدين بن	العظر الحول مراتنوا
البخد المراضان	الثالة
خرمزمايم وسعه	اشان
واحراريه موعشريب	الواج
اتان حروب با	سنا
واحرمن منه وللنبن	البادس

206. Fa hal kulluha melumat lil qadr ka qutr al'ard. The distance of the sun and moon from the centre
of the earth in terms of the
DISTANCE AND SIZE earth's radius is also made clear
OF PLANETS in the fifth Book of the Majisti;
astronomers are agreed that the
furthest distance of any planet is the nearest of that
which is immediately above it, and thus the ratio between the nearest and furthest distances is known in
the case of each planet.

When one of these distances is known, all are known, as well as the distance of all stars from the earth in terms of the earth's radius, their diameters, and the ratio of their volumes to that of the earth. The annexed table contains the results of Ptolemy, of the accuracy of which we are assured.

	Nearest distance in terms of radius of earth, l	Diameter in terms of diam. earth, l	Volume in terms of volume of earth, 1
Moon	33 ,33'	171,44"	1',30"
Mercury	64,20'	21,09"	14"
Venus	169,46'	171,49#	1',34"
Sun	1161.45*	5,31'	167,20
Mars	1260,15'	1,081	1,27'
Jupiter	9169,14'	4,31'	95.141
Saturn	14881,29*	4,31'	92,081
Fixed star	s 20774.39°	• -	•
lst Magnit	ebus	4,441	106,03
2nd Magnit		4,401	101,53
3rd Magnit		4,201	101,22
4th Magnit		3,571	61,32
5th Magnit		3,25*	41,04'
6th Magnit		z,18 '	13,16'

¹ This paragraph is at the top of 37 .

<u> </u>	اللابها دانجيل	إسب الابعاداكسب	الرفوفة
ころがあ	اوظا واعلى المحالية	ابدر ابودها وطرازم	الكويد
دويسته واحرين	سبعاعشردابه	للدوللة أيوعب	17.
منت دارنعهٔ د ن الاماد	واراع وارعون تانية د قبعت مات ونسعون النيه سبحة علود فبعنه	اربورینه ن فرنسان مراب	عطرر
واربع أيند نانه	و اربعون المائية مسرس الله و المرد	د د سوه هسو هده و بند و ربعه می انبینه این ما ه و همد شدی می	تغر
مرة والمات	رُن <u>لِتُ وَ</u> رَفَيْلُ هِ مُسْتَرَةً وَاحْدُقُ	رخه موربع ريف	المراقب المراقب
ا عرائده المحد	وعال دقابق البع مستان	وخسة شرد فيغب	المريد
ودوہو، عدر دُوپی النا روستی النا ر	واحري لمول ذيقه	و سمه ب طعیب دا بعد خبر دنیف د اجر د کارو بر ده کف	ر چر ر
وغاردة بوق	المرتبلو ل دفية	و عدد الناوس ما ٧	
» / 3 / 1 A A	17700	بع دو موردها د سعه و دو ريانه	/

	Mearest dis- tance in para- sangs compared with radius of earth 1081, 19'21"	Diameter in Volume as com- parasange as pared with compared with volume of eart diameter of 166744242, earth 2163, 14'55" cubic 7',11" parasange.	
Moon	36395	639,28' 4168606	
Mercury	69416,4'25"	45,29' 19-962	
Venus	183656,2' 3"	642,29' 4555877,26	, •
Sun	1254658,7'11"	11936,03' 27901869897,42	, T
Mars	1363361	2452,07 241779151,30)*
Jupiter	9919445,1' 3"	9880,361 15879610019,29	•
Saturn	17914241,2:33*	9772,251 1536270286759)*
Fixed star	rs 22974594 ,06°		
lst Magni	tuđe	10241,13' 17683226908,17	7*
2nd Magni	tude	10096,57' 16946773170,57	7•
3rd Magni	tude	9375,45' 16902508059,46	9•
4th Magni	tude	8546,21 10254770908,31	7•
5th Magni	tude	7464,32° 6847630221,58	5•
6th Magni	tude	5697,34° 30458614944	9•

This figure which occurs in all the MSS. has apparently dropped an initial five, see 209, p. 121 where it is given as $5,305,498,589^{-4/5}$ parasangs. The copyist of A0 has alone noticed the mistake for he has here a note giving Misá b. Shākir's rule for volume of a sphere:-diam. $^2\times 5^{1/7}\times ^{1/6}$ diam. 2 4 stands in several MSS. in this place. Perhaps the initial figure in a volume calculated from 45.

			<u> </u>	_	
141 24 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14	14.4	و المحافظات	ر بر من الخار ما بر الحار ما بر الحار ما بر الحار ما بر الحار	10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 1	الغالب
۴_		<u>کے ج</u> 4 9	प्रम	4 6	عمطاده
4 8 7 1 1 4		174 44	14 5	44	الزعن
19014919		14 -4	1 494	17	المر
751VV91911 0		4 2 4 4	4144	اعوم	الموتاد
1970 1410041		1110	4 919 9	س عم ل	المندر
19 14 0 1 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4		7 2	الحالم ا	4	اخلر
جرامالحت	فراسنا	ارها	فراج أنط	7	اعظامالوا
144764			ا کوم م	al gh	الأدل
1474641	1V p (V •		8 0	7	الناني
14000	10124 A		1779 458	_	اثاث
10 p 3 p 6 1	V W		19,54	6	الالع
41,500	99		الم الم	3	ا ا ا
7,79	ام الموادا	<u> </u>	ارات الحمل	1	المادر

207-208.

can only be made by taking the earth as a unit, just as we use the cubit or other weights and SIZE OF THE measures. Now the figures for the earth EARTH are as follows:

Diameter 2163 1/5 parasangs
Circumference 6800
Surface 14712780 1/4 square *
Volume 166744242 1/5 cubic *

Consequently to determine the distance of a star from the earth in parasangs, all that is necessary is to multiply its nearest distance by the number of parasangs in the radius of the earth, while the comparative dimensions may be translated into parasangs by using the above figures, as set down in the table on the preceding page.

Similarly the dimensions of the ecliptic can be expressed in parasangs as in the subjoined

Table of Zodiac Girdle

Diameter 44964005 13/30 parasangs
Circumference 141315446 2/3 "
Length of a sign 11776287 21/80 "
Length of a degree 392542 9/10 "
Length of a minute 6542 23/60 "

208. Hal ikhtalaf fi miqdar al- ard. It is inevitable that there should be controversies regarding the dimensions of the earth for it is one DISPUTES AS TO of those matters which must be based SIZE OF EARTH on experiment at a distance and on reports on observations. All nations have recorded their observations in the measures employed in their own countries, e.g. the stadium of the Greeks and the jauzhan (yojana) of the Hindus. When therefore their books were translated into Arabic, and the real value of their units was unknown,

معلى المن المورد الان المنافرة المنافرة المنافرة المائة المراالكرة الكورد اللوسين المورد وملائة المنافرة المنا

مخرده مديد ويوام المهاب والمال المال	
٥٠٠ ١٩٢٨م وللن وجنود الحدى الم	وأمخده ولله المروج
- کاعم و ۱۱۰۱ کم ۱ می این	فرایخ د ر ۱ ه
١١٧٧٩٢٨ وحنروروعننسر	فرایخ ابترج بد
۲۹۲۹۴۲ رسفند وحسان	
م عم ١٩٤٥ و كلك ويضعف حسنسر	موليخ الرقبق وببه

قال خالف معدل للام للام الله من المائة أمرست على عبداتم الله خادوك والمحدد المعرف المائة المراب المراب المراب المراب المراب المرب ا

ويول

208-209

then the Caliph Ma'mun son of Harun al-Raschid commanded an investigation to be undertaken whew, I and with this object a number of the savants of that time, (such as Khalid Marrudi, 2 Bul-Buhturi3 the geometrician4 and All b. Isa the astrolabe-maker5) were ordered to proceed to the desert of Sinjar and take the matter in hand. They found the value of one degree of a great circle on the earth to be 56 and 2/3 miles, and multiplying this by 360 arrived at 20400 miles for the circumference of the earth. Each mile is a third of a parasang or 4000 black cubits; the trade cubit is well known in Traq, and is used in Baghdad for land-surveying; it measures 24 finger-breadths (isbar).6 I have investigated the matter in Hindustan by another method? and have found no discrepancy with the figures cited above.

possible to state the dimensions of the four elements in these terms? The earth with the DIMENSIONS OF mountains projecting from it like THE FOUR teeth is solid, and the water sur-ELEMENTS rounds it occupying the hollows, but these two elements form the one globe, whose dimensions have been above stated. Now when the radius of the earth is deducted from the distance of the moon at perigee, the remainder is the distance between the surface of the earth and the moon's ortit occupied by the air, viz. 35213 1/10 parasangs. When the

Suter, Abh. Gesch. Math. Wiss. X P 209., and Not. et Extr. VII P 94. The history of the determination of a degree of the meridian has been given by Nallino, Cosmos di Guido Cora, XI 1892. He concludes that the Arabic mile had 1973,2 m. corresponding to a cubit of 493.2 mm.

Sauvaire, Jour. Asiat. 1886 p. 479 seq. discusses the various cubits in use by the Arabs. Two of them seem to have been inherited from the Persians; the royal cubit of 32 digits (isba*) and the common, legal or commercial cubit of 24 digits. The last named dhirā altijārat is the equivalent of the Persian arsh-i saudā which may account for the Arabic name of black cubit: the story that it was taken from the arm of a black

ترائا و رزاد البعباعة الدوك مولاه جاعة مؤالها وقيد في يه سجان وجده حدة الدرجة الواحن مؤلام المستعدد في ميلان المالية والمسلمة المواحد الدرجة الواحن المراكة المناه وخير ميلان المالية والمالم والمالية والمناه والمن

209-210

measurement of the volume of the earth, viz. 5,305,498, 589 4/5 cubic parasangs is deducted from that of the sphere whose radius is the nearest distance of the moon from the centre of the earth, viz. 200,356,658,322,335 1/51 parasangs there remain 200,351,352,823,743 8/15 parasangs. This is the dimension of air and fire together, but it is impossible to determine the amount of these elements separately. Above the air in the moist vapours occur the various phenomena of wind, cloud, snow and rain, also thunder, lightning, thunderbolts, rainbows, baloes and the like. Above it likewise in the dry emoky vapours are the stars with tails and looks, shooting stars &c.

210. Kaif wad al-ma murch. The plane of the equinoctial cuts the earth at a circle called the equator khattu'l-istiwa into two parts, DISPOSITION northern and southern hemispheres. A OF LAND great circle drawn through the poles divides these into four quadrants, two

eunuch by Al-Rashid or Al-Ma'mun is not convincing. Probably the neo-babylonian cubit of 496 mm. (Jour. Asiat. XIII 1909 p. 98, 24 digits of 20,66 mm., the measure of six barley-corns) persisted in 'Iraq with slight modification and was employed for this survey.

Occasionally the digit was measured by grains set on edge instead of lying flat, in which case 192 were assigned to the cubit instead of 144 (Sauvaire p. 504).

The sawadī cubic used by Omar for surveying the black lands of 'Iraq (Sawad) is sometimes confused with the 'black' cubit, and is supposed to have been the royal cubit. Idrīsī (6th climate,9th sect.) gives the measurements of the Great Wall in sawadī cubits. According to Sedillot (Sci. Math. Arab. II 755) Al-Quemī reckoned 4000 cubits (al-mawwa?) to the mile.

² for Marwarrūdhi v. Dict. Géog. de la Perse p. 525. No names in Arabic version.

3 Bu'l-Buhturl 'All ibn al-Buhturi v. Suter.

4 Al-massāb, the surveyor.
5 "Alī b. "Isā - Asturlāb-Kun PL, Asturlābi PP.

Six English barlėў-corns average 21 mm.

7 Al-Biruni determined the height of a mountain in India, measured the angle of depression of the horizon from the top and calculated from them the radius of the earth. 1 These figures are written out in words in PL and AO' two hundred thousand thousand thousand thousand etc. in AO 200,356,658,322,333.

مايروثمانية وتسعين المف وخمس مايتر وتسعة وثمانين فريخاوا دبعد اخاصيخ منكبك التمالاد في وهو مايتا العنالف الف وثلما بروسة وخسين المت المت المت وسماية وغائبة وخسين المت المت وثلماية وأثن ومثرن إلف وثلما يروثلة وثلين فريخا وثلث فرسخ بعيما بتاالف الف الن الف وثلماية واحدوخمين الف انف الف وثلماية وأفي وخمين الذالذوثمان مايتروثكثه وعشرب المف وسبع مايتر وثكثة وادبين فالمكتح وثلث وخسين فرسخ وعي كحييمكان العراء والناد مشاونى اسفله عيدت مريخ إد اكمآء الرطب ما يعدث من الرياح وليما والمطاد والتلوج والبرح ثر المجود والمدات والبرق والمتواعق وقتى تزم والمالات واشباه ذلك وسفاعلاه يحدث مزغبا والارض لنخأ اليابس ايعدث من الكواكب دوات الذوايب والمذبذ والنهب المنتصة وامثا لذلك كيف مضع المعمون سطح معذل النها ديقطم كاد بنسنين على داين تسخط الاسواة فيكن احد نصيبها شماليًا والآخرجنييًا فاذا نوقمت داين عفلمة طي الارض مأن على فطب خط الاستواء فقست كرواس من ضفى الارمن بنصنين فانسمت ملها ارباعًا جنوبًا ن

210-211

northern and two southern. Those who have investigated the matter find that the dry land does not extend beyond one of the northern quadrants; this is therefore called the habitable quadrant rub ma mura. It is as it were an island surrounded by the sea. In this quarter which men are constantly traversing, they find seas, islands, mountains, rivers and deserts, also towns and villages, until towards the north pole a desolate tract is reached of excessive cold, where snows are heaped on snows.

211. Kaif wad al-babar min al-ma march. The sea which is found to the west of the dry land, on whose shores are Tangier and Spain, is called the surrounding sea, the Ocean of the DISPOSITION Greeks. Whoever ventures therein does OF SEA not go far from the coast, (on account of the roughness, darkness and tracklessness of the sea, but hugs the shore. P) Beyond the countries mentioned, the sea passes by the lands of the Slavs, and a northern section of it penetrates into the land until it approaches the country of the Bulghars who are Muslims. This is the Varangian Sea, and these Varangians are very virile people, and have their chief town, Balid, on the shore. Beyond them is the country of the Turks to the east; between Turkestan and the ocean to the north the country is unknown, full of desolate mountains; no one penetrates there.

From Tangiers southwards the Ocean passes by the country of the Western Negroes, and then turns to the left so as to get to the other side of the Mountains of the Moon, whence the Nile arises, (and there it reaches Sofala al-Zanj.) Ships do not enter this sea, if they do, they do not escape into safety.

^{1 208-10} are quoted by Wiedemann, Arch. Gesch. Naturw. u. Technik. III.255, while in his Beitrag XXVII he has translated and fully annotated the passages of geographical interest in 211-2, 214-5, 220, 236-9, 241. 2 The passage quoted by Nallino I. 170 from al-Kharaqi closely resembles this paragraph except that it is supplemented by the dimensions of the seas. 3 PL' Palid; Baland PP may be Poland - Muzhat al-Qulüb. Trans. p. 230 and 249 n: Not mentioned in A. merely "these are people on the shore".

وشاليان والمساح على وجدما المعينون بمالرتياوذ احد الربين الثالي مستربعام موكا اوسكنا تحرب بادن غيطها الما وحنا الربع فيند مشتل على ما يعرف ويسلك من إلهان والجزاب والجبال والانهادوالما المعهفة ترابلاك والعرى بينهماعلى أنرقد بغى منه غيقطب الثمال قطعترمعون مرافواط البرد وتراكرالت لمرح كيف وضع إلمحا ر م إلمعهون اما الحوالذي في مغرب المعن وعلى الحد المخالاذ طبغ والأنار فانربتي المحرالميط وتبميسه المونا نيون اوقيانوس وكالجروا فايسلك بالترب من سلطروه و يستد من من البلاد نوالثما له على اذاة ارض المتقالبة ويخرج منه خليج عظيم فح شمال المسقالبة ويميدالي قرب الارص بلغا والمسلين وبعرفونر يحرو دنك وم امه على الحلة تم يعف ورام عوالمشرق وبين ساحلهوبين احتى درض المخلط النطون مجسال محموله خربه غيم سلوكة واما امتداد المح المحيط العرب س ارضطخة غولكبؤب فانزيخف علىجؤد ارض ودان المغرب ورآء الحبال المعرف فترما لمتسرالت منها ينبع عيون نيد لمصره في كموكر غرولا ينوامنه مركب واما المح المعيط من حبة المشق ورآء قاصي وض

Following the ocean from the north to the east past the limits of the Chinese Empire (chin va machin) it is found to be trackless and dangerous, and no one goes there. At the southern extremity, however, there is a gulf which is the beginning of those seas called after the adjacent countries, of which the first is the Chinese sea and the next the Indian Ocean. From the latter there are gulfs penetrating into the land, forming as it were separate seas, like the Persian Gulf the eastern shore of which extends from Başra to Makran; opposite the latter is the port furdat A bargan Leaving Tuman and proceeding south the Arabian shore (shahr) is reached whence frankincense Kundru, luban comes, and then Aden. Thence two great gulfs project, one of these (the Red Sea) is well known at Quizum, and passes by the country of the Arabs, which is in fact an island between this sea and the Persian Gulf. As the Abyssinians are opposite Yemen, the sea is here called both the Sea of Yemen and the Abyssinian Sea, while near the Hijaz it is known as the sea of Qulzum. This is a city seated on the shore of the Sea where it ends towards Syria, so that the traveller must turn here leaving Syria behind and sailing along the coast of Egypt and the Beja territory.

The other gulf is that which begins at a point, Ras Berbera, opposite Aden and is called the Berbera Sea, and this great Sea goes as far as Sofala above referred to. No ship passes this point on account of the dangers of navigation; beyond is the Western Ocean (but the nature of the connection therewith is unknown.)

In the eastern part of this seal are mumerous idlands, first those of Zābij, Pal-zanj Aal-zanj then the DīvaP

first those of Zabij, al-zanj A al-zanj then the Divar Dibajat A and Qumair² groups, (small in size, some of them arising anew out of the water, others as a result of erosion, becoming invisible). P5 Then there are the islands

3 cf. India I. 233 and II. 106.

l of. India I.210. "The gold-islands Zabij are in the East, those of the Zanj in the West and the Diva and Qumair groups in the middle"- the association of the Qumair with the Diva group (Laceadises &e) points to the Comoro Islands and Madagascar - of. De Vic Pays des Zenj. Ferrand, Jour. Asiat. 1910 and Storbeck, Mitth. Orient. Seminar Berlin XVII, 1914. In these MSS. there is the usual confusion between Zanj, Zānij and Zābij. 2 AO' and AB' have Qushmīr.

مين فانرايطًا غيرسلوك وبشعب منه خلج بكون منه الحرالذى ابن ف كأرمنع بالارض الت عاذ برفيكون لذ للث اولاعوالمتين نترالهند ويخج منه خلجات عظام يتح كأواحد منهاعرًا على وتركم فارس والبسمة الذى على ثرقيبه تيمكزان مطلخهبه عياله فينه عمان فاخلجاوز بلغلادالتج إتخصلي مناكظ دمترك عدن فانشبت منه مناكظيان عظيمان احدهما المعروف بالتلزم ومع بيعطف فعيط بإرض العرب مني يبركجزب ولان الجدث مليه عد المن فانرسي ما واغااشني بالمتلزم لانها مدينة علىنتطعترف ارض الشام حيث يستدق وبيتد عيدة لسابرعى الماحل يحوادض المخد والخليج الاخرموا لمعروف بجالوب تميت معظم المحملك سفالم الزنج ولإيقاوذها مركب لماذكذاه منعظم الخاطئ فيه وتيسل بعدما يحرا وتبانوس العرب وفى عذا اليحر غ واحى المنترق جزا برالزنج ترجزا برالديمات ومير ترجزا برالزنج ومن اعلامها المعهفرسن ديب وبالمنتيز سنكلديب ومنهاعيج وعلبانواع الياذ ت وكلم منه اعلب المقاص القلى وسون ومنها على الكافود ترزع وسط المتسور مادم الستالية والروس عرب ببطى عند

of Zangistan^P al-zanj A,P and A maps al-zanij, large and celebrated islands like Serandib (Ceylon) known to the Hindus as Sangaldib. From it come various precious stones and diamonds. Then the island Kalah from which tin is obtained, and Sarbuza^P, SarIra A from which camphor comes, (and other islands from which cloves, sandal-wood, coconuts, ebony, barhank (Kanbar) coir.), rattans, aloe-wood and the like are obtained.^P)

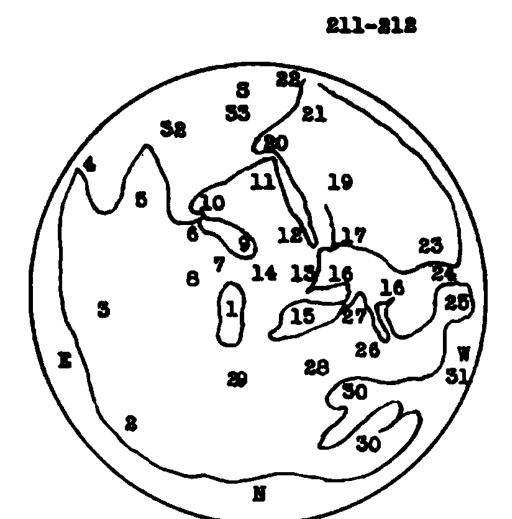
In the middle of the habitable land is another sea called Pontus by the Greeks in the country of the Slavs and Russians. Our people call it the Sea of Trebizond from the Greek port on its shore. Hence a great body of water proceeds which becomes narrower as it approaches Constantinople, and still narrower before it opensinto the Sea of Syria. On the southern shore of the Syrian Sea are the countries of Morocco and IfriqTyya (Tunisia) as far as Alexandria and Egypt, opposite these are Spain, the Roman Empire, Asia Minor and Antioch, while between them are the cities of Syria and Palestine. This sea constantly flows towards the ocean through a narrow place known as the Passage of Heroules and now better known as the 'zuqaq'. The sea contains several well-known islands such as Cyprus, Samos, Rhodes and Sicily.

Near Tabaristan there is another sea and the Capital town (bargah^P furdat, port A) of Gurgan. On the shore is a city Abiskun by which name also the sea is known. From this point the coast-line follows Tabaristan, Dailam and Shirvan, Derbend of the Khazars, the territory of the Alans, and arrives at the city of the Khazars where the river Itil (Volga) flows into the sea; thereafter passing the country (diyar, habitations A) of the Ghuzz it reaches Abiskun again. The sea is also known by the name of the adjacent countries, perhaps best after the Khazars; our ancestors knew it as the Sea of Gurgan, Ptolemy as the Hyrcanian Sea. It is not connected with any other sea.

The habitable land contains numerous lakes, bataih,

¹ Wiedemann quotes a parallel passage from the Mas udi Canon. Beitrage XXIX.

اليونانيين وبرف عندنا طرا بزنده كانها فرصنرعليه ويحرج منه خلجء على ورقسطنطيني والإيزال سفايق بقي يتع الجهالقام الذى ي جنوبية بلاد المغرب الى الاسكنددية ومسى وعظيما في المثال الط الاندلس والروم الى انطاكية وبعيما بلاد الشام وفلسطين ونيضب العالمعط عند الاندلسة منيق بذكرني الكبت بمعبرة عيم خلويع ف الان ما زَمَّا ق يجه مِد ما ف الى العرالميط وفيه من الجزاب المعروفة قدر وسا سرودودس وسقلية واشالها وبالعربب من طبهتا ن يحرفص حرجان طيسه مدينة ابسكون وبها يعمف تريميت الحطيرتناد وارض المذيلم وشروان وكأب الأبواب وماحية الان تمرك على صب نِعراتل البه مُرّد ياد الغربر الى ان يعود الى بكور وقدسى بأسم بتعتر ماذا ماولكن اشتهان عندلالخرد وعندالا والابحرطان فان بطلمين سيت يمحاد فانيا ولبس بتصل عرآخر فاما ساير المياه الجمعية في مواضع مريلارض فهى ستنقعات وبطايح



1. Caspian, 2.Turks. 5.China. 4.Java. 5.India. 6.Makran. 7.Persia. 8.Khurasan. 9.Persian Gulf. 10.0man. 11.Aden. 12.Qulzum. 15.Syria. 14.Iraq. 15.Pontus. 16.Mediterranean. 17.Alexandria. 18.Egypt. 19.Sudan. 20.Ras Berbera. 21.Mounts.of the Moon. 22.Sofela al-zanj. 23.Morocco. 24.Zuqaq. 25.Andalusia. 26.Rum. 27.Constantinople. 28. Slavs. 29.Khazars. 30.Baltic and Varangians. 51. Surrounding Ocean. 32.Dibācha Islands. 33. Islands of the Zanj Empire.

and sometimes they are called small seas, buhairat, like those of Apamea, Tiberias and the Dead Seal in Syria, and the Sea of Khwarizm (Aral) and Issiq-kul near Barsukhan. The above figure approximately represents what we have described.

212. Ain khatt al-istiwa' we make khawasahu. The equator passes from the east into the Chinese and Indian Oceans and through several EQUATOR AND ITS of the Islands there. After having CHARACTERISTICS traversed the boundaries of the

¹ Bahr Zughar, instead of Bahr Lit derived from the town Zoar or Lot's daughter. Barsukhan, v. Tarikh-i Rashidi 350n.



ورتما ستعیرات کی اسافامیه وطبر ترو دعر بارض الشام و کی خواد زم وایسکوله بالعرب من سعان و صن صون ما ذکرنا بالتقریب این خط الاستوا و ماخواصه الذیبندی من المشرق فی موالمتین والهندوی سعن الجزایر التی فیسه حتی اذا جاوز حدود الری استدهلی بوادی سودان المنهب الذی محلب منم الحذم و انتق لل المح المحیط فی المغرب فن کسکن المغرب الذی محلب منم الحذم و انتق لل المح المحیط فی المغرب فن کسکن

212-213

Zanjim arrives at the deserts of the Sudanese, who are engaged in the slave-trade, and thence passes into the Western Ocean. Those who dwell on the equator have their nights and days always of equal length, both north and south poles are equidistant on their horizon, and the parallels of latitude are perpendicular to the horizon, not inclining to either side. The sun crosses the equator twice a year, first when at the first point of Aries, and second when at the first point of Libra, on which occasions it passes to the north and south respectively. The equator is called khatt al-istima' and khatt al-i tidal on account of the complete equality of day and night. As for the opinion expressed by some people that the nature and constitution of the inhabitants is of even temperament, there is evidence to the contrary in the burnt-up condition of the people and their neighbours because they vary much in their complexion and their hair, and are not alike in their physical characteristics, although all of small stature. Who, indeed, could be of equal-tempered constitution in a place where the sun cooks the brains of the inhabitants from above, till it moves out of the zenith at those two periods which we call summer and winter, and brings about a little coolness and relief.

213. Kaif intiedb al-qamat ala wajh al-ard. Anyone who considers the question of the erect posture at one place neturally thinks that his posture is parellel to that of every-ERECT POSTURE ON SURFACE OF EARTH one on earth; and that the same is the case with the line of falling bodies. But whoever reflects on the matter at different places, and gives some consideration to the subject knows that the erect posture is in a line with the diameter of the globe, the head directed to heaven and the feet to the centre of the earth. (For this reason everyone grays to what is above him.P) But what is upright to him is not upright to others and may be quite inverted. If we consider the situation of the Chinese

¹ cf. Wiedemann, Arch. gesch. Natury. u. Tech. V. 56.

مذالخظ لرخيلف عليه الليل والنهار واستعاابدًا وحسان قطبا الككر على فقد فقات الملادات وسطوحها عليه ولمرتمل واجتادت التمسط مُت رأسه في السنة مرّبين عندكون النسب والملك والمنزان تم مالت عنه غوالتمال وغوالجؤب بمقلاد واحرومى خط الاستراء والاعتلال بسبب تساوى النها والليل فيه فقط فاما ما يستى الما وهام بعض لناسنه المرمعتد ل المزاج فباطل شهد غلامراحل احله ومن فرب منم لونا وشعل وحلمتا وعقلاواني يبتدل مزاج موضع تعنسلى لشراج مغة اعله بالمساسنه حتى اذاماله فالوقين الذيز بيرفها بالشتا والمتيف ترفعوا يسيروا واستراحوانبلا كبف انتصاب القامات على مبرالان من اقترف تترفلا علىما يشامن فى مستكنه فقط ظن الجامتوا دينروس اضاف الى تعول بالاحساسة ما من صايب التياس واعتبرا لحال المشاهد بما غاب عنه --المساكن عقق انها على قطار الكن وعلم أن الروس في جميع مواضع الأد غوالما العالية والامدام عوم كزما النافل عنى يدعى كراطع منهم الاستراء لله يكاس لغين ومتى قيس الحال بن اهل السين واعل

213-215

and the Spaniards who live on the two opposite margins of the habitable earth, the one on the east, the other on the west, (and we are watching the phases of an eclipse of the moon with them,?) we find that the soles of their feet are directly opposite each other. If one of those logicians who are accustomed to judge matters high and low by their own standards, not according to their actualities, were to picture to himself the situation with a ball made of wood or other material, whose centre is outside the centre of the world, and were to observe the conduct of an ant creeping on the under surface, he would feel faint in contemplating the condition which he calls falling off, but which we regard as leaping or flying.

214. Mā farā al-balad. The latitude of any town is its shortest distance from the equator in a northerly direction, because all towns are thus LATITUDE situated. Corresponding to it there is an OF TOWN are of a great circle, its meridian, between the zenith and the equinoctial. The elevation of the north pole is equal in all places to their latitude and therefore this is sometimes used instead of the latitude. The depression of the south pole, although it is also complementary is concealed from us, and we are not cognisant of it.

215. Mā tūl al-balad. Longitude on the other hand is the distance from the extremity of the dry land whether calculated on the equinoctial or LONGITUDE the equator, or on a parallel circle, of TOWN because these having comparable parts can be substituted for each other. In consequence of the fact that our astronomers have adopted the customs of the Greeks in this matter, and that the Greeks have selected the western extremity of the land, the longitude of towns is now calculated from that point. But there is some discrepancy as to this extremity for some people take it as the shore of the Western Ocean, while others adopt the Fortunate or

¹ Quoted by Wiedemann, Beiträge, LX p. 57 Bd. 52/53.

الاندار اللذين عسما على طرية المسمان كانت افلامهم متعابلة فان تسزر ما متحكم بإتى اعتقاد العلودا لتفلط يتيقتها منكن منايج مكن عاخارج عن مركز العالم ودبيب ذن على سفلها غشى ليه حوفاان يبقد سقوكما غن نميه طربابنا ماعرض البسلد موبعك الاقصر عزخط الاستواء عوالما للان البلان في عن الناحية وتحاديرمن النماء قرة طيمة بثيهة واقعة بن سمة الراس بن معدل الهادوياوم ادتناع المتلب التمالى فلذلك بعترعنه براغطاط للقطب الجنوى وانساوا وايضافا ترحفي لاينعرب ماطول السلدموبس عزافتي المسمان سواء اخذ في معدّل الهار اوخط الاستواء اواخذ في خط البلدن المواذى لهسما وذلك لان التشابر بنيما يقيم احدهما مقام الآخرولان ما يستغله من هذا المتناعة هوستنبط من آواء آليونا وم ابتداوا في طول من ورب نها بني المهان المتمومي المربية فا ق طول البلداذن عوبين عن المغرب الآات في عن المنها بتربينها خيلاف فأن بعضهم يبتدى بالطول من ساحل عرا وفيا نوس المنسوبي وبعضهم بيبدى من شخاب موعله في البحرفريًّا من مأى فريخ تسمّ حزا برالمتعادة

215-218

Eternal Islas - six1 islands situated 200 parasangs off the coast of West Africa. This is an unimportant matter as long as all longitudes are measured from one point, but in those cases, some of which have been measured from the one and some from the other point (or where two longitudes are given in the books for a place with a difference of 10°)A, people who have not the requisite knowledge and are not proficient in this science are unable to distinguish the one from the other.

216. Mā alladhi yusammī mābain al-tūlain. The difference of longitude between two places is arrived at by subtracting the smaller from DIFFERENCE OF the larger, the result is equal to TWO LONGITUDES the difference of time units between their meridiens, calculated either on the equinoctial or the parallel of either of them or some other parallel.

217. Mā alladhi yu'rid min ikhtilāf tūlai albaladain idha tasāwī 'ardāhumā. Should the latitude of two places be the same and the WHEN LATITUDE longitude different, there is only the difference of time LONGITUDE DIFFERENT between them, for sunrise and sunset do not occur at the same time, being earlier in the eastern place proportionally to the difference of longitude; the climate of both will be alike unless proximity to the sea, or mountains, or sandy desert, or a difference of level occur to account for a difference.

218. Ikhtiläf Tardal al-baladain idha tasäwi tülä
humä. If on the other hand two places agree in
longitude but differ in latitude,
when Longitude midday and midnight occur in
same same both simultaneously and all stars
LATITUDE DIFFERENT which have no declination rise
and set each at the same time as
does the sun during the equinoxes; when however the

See Blochet - Les sources orientales de la divine comédie - 1901.

l Canaries? Palmais some 400 miles from the coast. Al-Biruni does not distinguish between the Fortunate Islands (Islas of the Blast) jazā'ir al-sa'ādah and the Eternal Islands jazā'ir al-khālidāt.

وجزا بالخالدات وهئ فبال المغرب ورتبا يوجد لبسلد واحد فالكث نوعان سالطول بيهما عشرد رج فعتاج فى تمييز ذلك ألخطنر ودربته ما الذى يسمى من الطولين موفضلها بينطولى البلييزود سإدلمابين فكى نسغى نهاديهما مئ الازمان امّلت معدّل النهار واما في كل واحد من وادى الملدين اوغيرها ما لذى بعرض مزاختلاف طولى البلدين اذاتساوى عرضاها ليربيرض فيهرس ذلك غيل خلاف الطلوع والغروب مكون اق ل النَّمَا واللَّهِ ل في شرقيهما ومن الاحترطولا فبلهما في عبيما بمندارما برطوليدا امكا مكذلك نسف النهار واللبط على حذا العياس يفهما وكانجتله طبهاطباع الهواكل بعارض يرض لاحدها منحهنز اختلاف الوض من العاد اوا بحيال اوالرمال اوالغور او الخدوالاحكانا سوآء ما آلذى بيرض من اختلاف عرضى البلدين اذا نسأءى طولاها اتمانسف النهار اوالليل فانتريكون ككلهما فى وقت واحد وكذلك طلوع الشبى وغروبها اذ أكانت فى داس المحل والميزان وعلى شله بكون طلوع كل كوكب هوعلى مدق ل النهاد وغهر بنا مااذا لركن التمر

218-219

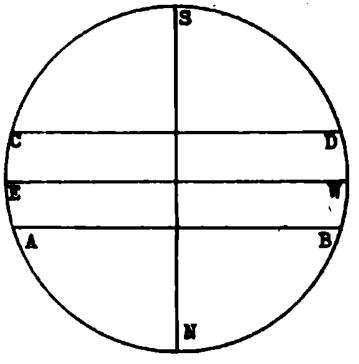
sun or planet leaves the equinoctial, if to the south, then the rising is earlier and the setting later in the place of lower latitude, and if to the north, then the reverse is the case. The smount of difference between rising and setting in the two places is different with each parallel of latitude, as are the length of day and night, the ortive amplitude, the meridian altitude, the shadow at noon and the number of stars of perpetual apparition and occultation. The place with the higher latitude is necessarily colder, unless some of the circumstances enumerated above intervene, as e.g. Gurgan which has a higher latitude than Rai, but has less air, and Chazni (Ghaznah A) which although on the same parallel as Baghdad is a cool place while the latter is hot.

219. Ikhtilar al-tulain wa'l-'ardain. If
latitude and longitude are both different, then
the natural characteristics of the
BOTH LATITUDE two places are compounded of the
AND LONGITUDE factors adverted to above. The
DIFFERENT rise and setting of any star
never occur at the same time,
unless at one of the two points where their horizons
are in contact with each other.

اوالكوك على نس معدر النهاد بل تعي عنه الى الجنوب فان طلوعه على المآ الملدين عرضابكون فبالطلى عدعلى اكثرجها عرصنا وغروسر على قلها عضابكون معد غروبرعن احتشماعضا وانكات المتمراوالكوكب خالباعن معدل النهادكان الامربعكوما ذكرنا اعني ان طلوعه على قل اللدن عضابكون بعدطلوعد على اكتهما عضا وغروسرعن اللهماعضا مبلغ وبرعن اكثماع فأوكا مكون لعبلو بعد في المثامندار منتضم تم عيد المناد الماد الواحد بعينه وليلد اذا كانا محلفين ويختلف سعترا لمشارق وارتفاع مضف النهاد وظله ونجتلف الكواك الإدنة المظهور والامدنة الخفاء وبكون اكترها عرضا ابرد حوآملا ان برض نينًا من الأوضاع فيهما حتى بسيرالجهان الاكترع فِنا من آلذى وعواعن معابها وكعزبرالمتي ودبندا دالحوم وعضاها متساديان ما آلذى يعرض من اختلاف الطولين والدرضين ما في بلدن يكون فيهاجيع ما ذكرنا من فع كالاختلاف مركبا منها منرد ولاستنق فيهما طلوع كوكب وغهوب كوكب الآا ذاكا ن على حدى النقطين اللتبن تيقاطع عليما افقاها فتط ماسعتر الملترف

220. Mā sa'at al-mashriq. At the equinoxes the sun rises and sets opposite the ends of the equinoctial line which we drew in the Indian Circle 131, but when it moves to the north, gum-ORTIVE AMPLITUDE rise and sunset occur at two points of the horizon north of the equator, the ends of a line parallel thereto. Every day this line becomes more distant from the equator until the sun enters the first point of Cancer, when the points of summer sunrise and sunset are known as mashrid we maghrib alsaif. The reverse cocurs when the sun moves south, and when it reaches the first point of Capricorn, the points of winter sunrise and sunset are called mashriq wa maghrib al-shita'. The arc between the point of rising of the sun on the horizon and the equator, the ortive amplitude, is called sa'at al-mashriq, and similarly sa'at al-maghrib is the arc between the point of setting and the equator, the occasive amplitude. In the case of places with latitude the amplitude is greater the higher the latitude. A diagram follows.

Above is the S. point, below the N. the vertical line joining them is the Meridian, khatt al-zawal. The line joining the E and W points, khatt al-i'tidel, has, right and left, the equinoctial sunset and sunrise points; the lines parallel to it above and below respectively the winter and summer points. The copyist makes the summer sun rise in the West and set in the E.



- E, W. Equinoctial Sunrise and Sunset points
- A, B. Summer, C.D. Winter Sunrise and Sunset points
- A. E. and C. E. Ortive Amplitude. B. W. and D. W. occasive do.

One folio is absent from this MS containing paragraphs 221-223: these are supplied from AO¹ ff 41 and 42.

التمراذا كانت وأس الحسه للوالميزان طلعت وغربت على معاذا خطالاعتدال ألنف كتا استخجناه بالذابن المندية فاذامالت الم الثمال كان طلوعها وغُرُبهَا على الدّات نقطين فالنسف الشمالي من الافق مماطرفا خط موان لخط الاعتدال ويزد ادان عنه سكاالى ان بق الشرك لأى المترطان متبئ بقطتا مطلعها ومغربها شرق العبيث ومغرب وكذلك اذامالت غوالجنوب كان طلوعها وغروبها على اذاء تقطين فصف الافق الجنوبي تزدادان عنخط الاعتدال سراالي ان بتهي لنسلط لاس الجدى فتتي نقطتا مطلعها ومغربها مشرق الشتآء ومعهر فسعد المشرق اذاعى مابين خط الاعتدال وبن مبسه فامّا فيخطّ الاستوآء فتكون بقداد الميدل اما في البلان ذوانالحم فانترسعة المشرق اوا لمعزب فيهاتن يدعلى المسلوكلها كان الهزف اكتر كان الاتساع اعظم

221. Kaif yaşülu al-nahar wa al-lail fi'l-bilad. The daily revolution of the sun takes place either on the equinoctial or on circles parallel thereto; all having the same pole, the LEGITH OF DAY AND NIGHT pole of the universe. When the horizon passes through the pole (it is only at the equator that this occurs) it outs these circles into two halves, that above the horizon being equal to that which is below. It is for this reason that at the equator day and night are equal. As soon as a place is away from the equator the north pole rises from the horizon proportionately to the latitude of the place. When the horizon passes beyond the pole, it is only the equinoctial that is out into two halves, both of them being great circles; it is on this account that day and night are equal all over the earth when the sun is in the first point of Aries or Libra, because the sun is then revolving in the equinoctial. But the horizon cuts the other circles unequally, the result being that larger parts of the northern circles ary above the horizon than below, and consequently when the sun is in the northern constellations the day is long and the night short. With regard to the southern circles the parts above the horizon are shorter than those below and consequently the day is short and the night long. If two circles be taken at equal distance from the equinoctial, the excess of the day or night in the one will be complementary to the deficiency in the other, i.e. that the night of the one will be equal to the day of the other.

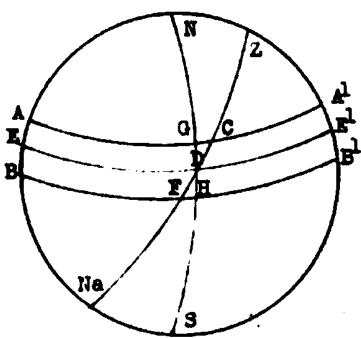
الشرك ورفعوللانهار اون معاد مواز كه وعطب مع مع المعلق المعلق المرا المعلق عليد دذ إلى عط الاستماضع معر لللفاز وما واراه مرالمداراة بعنبس فساوى مافوظ لافق منهاما فينه والذاك بسؤ كالملال الماسفاك المراء وادابع للمرخط الاستوامار له عرمية الناك وارتف الفظ بعدره فإجرالا فؤعلب والفط عبرمعدلانهاد بعمار لانمامعا دابرنان عظمنان والذكاب وكالبل الفاسة جبهالمس كندنز ورالنسراول والعاليات كانها فرور جبنية عصولا المار واماك بالدرات فانلاف يفطهاع فادبيض بلن ما فو الا فن من الما الما العطرة الحد و النهاليد ويفس اللك اماجنوبانها فان الكون عها فوف للافئ اصعر فلخته ولذك بعضرالهاد البريح الحذبة وبطولا للبل من كان بعد للملابر من عد دامكاد و لعظ د لعدمله النهك المعرف فاب النبانة والنعمات فيهاللهاد واحراون فافا فانهادواب

222-223

222. Mi qaus al-mahar wa fadlhu wa tardilhu. The arc of day is as much of the circle as is above the

horizon, and the are of night as much as is below. The comparison of this ITS EXCESS AND are to a bow is particularly appropriate when a place has latitude. Its length can be expressed in

degrees of the parallel of latitude of the place, or in hours, the equinoctial day being 180° or 12 hours. The difference of the length of days is the excess over or deficiency from this, and the 'tardilu 'l-nahar' the equation of the day is the half of the difference.



North and South Poles ZNa Zenith and Nadir Height of Pole ZN Semi-diurnal are of DE equinoctial KK-Semi-diurnal arc of CA Northern Parallel AA1 Semi-diurnal are of FB Southern Parallel BB1 CG, HF equation of day, the amount to be subtracted and added to make equal to the equinocial semi-diurnal arc. ortive amplitude DC

223. Mā al-kawākib al-abadiyyah al-zuhūr wa'lkhafā. If an imaginary circle be drawn round the north

STARS OF PERPETUAL APPARITION AND OCCULTATION

pole, the circumference of which touches the horizon, then all circles within that do not touch the horizon, and consequently all stars which revolve on these are

always visible, i.e. are sters of perpetual apparition and neither rise nor set. If they are not visible it is due to the brightness of the daylight, while darkness renders them visible. All the stars of the Great Bear are always visible throughout Transoxiana, e.g. while at Mecca and Aden the three stars of the tail rise and set. Similarly round the south pole there is a circle the nadir of the above, within which are stars of perpetual occultation for the above mentioned places. Canopus may be taken as an example which is never visible in Transoxiana, while for a part of the year it does appear above the horizon in Traq and some parts of Khurāsān.

اعن الهاد احدما يكون سارًا اللاحث المعالى و فضله و فضله و و فضله و و فضله و فضله

أن شرساعه او ما به و نما نون و ما نا ال و نما به هذه و أما عبر اللها رفاعه ضف هغالها و و هم نصورة و لا كالم على الكرا الم الله الله الله و المناهدة و الم

224-225

224. Hadha'l-ta'abbud fI'l-guhur wa'l-khafa haqiqi am lahu taghayyur. The distance of each of the fixed

IS THIS PERPETUITY REAL osliptic is the same and is never departed from, because the movement of the fixed

stars is with that pole, but their distance from the universal pole is not uniform. So it is possible that a star which has never been one of perpetual apparition or occultation, and has formerly risen and set may move eastwards into one of those two circles touching the horizon and there carry out its circular movements, while one that has been in perpetual apparition or occultation emerges from the circle on the other side, but such changes of position can only take place in immense lapses of time owing to the slowness of the movement of the stars. Indeed they cannot happen to every star, and the rule for that is this:- To decide whether a particular star which is permanently visible or invisible at a locality may sometime rise and set over it, deduct its latitude from 900 and compare the remainder with the difference between the latitude of the place and the obliquity of the ecliptic, if more, then it is possible; if less, the star will never alter its position with regard to that locality.

225. Mā al-irtifā" wa'l-inhitāt wa tamamahumā. If a great circle be imagined passing through the zenith and the sun or a star or any given ALTITUDE AND point in the heavens above the horizon. DEPRESSION it is perpendicular to the horizon and the altitude of the body is the are of that circle between it and the horizon. That portion of the same circle between the body and the zenith which is one of the poles of the horizon is called the complement of the altitude or zenith distance. If the body is below the horizon the arc between the two is named its depression inhitat or inkhifad, and that between the body and the nadir the complement of the depression.

من النابد في العلهود والحنا وحينتي ام لا تعني من اجل إن حركة الكاك الثابتة المزقير حول قطب ظلث الروج فان اجاد حاعنه لاتنير وأغايتني اجادها من تعلب الكلّ بمكن ان تعع في د اخل احدى الدايرة بن الما و المن الين ذكرنا بعدان لرمكن فيدخت برايد بترالطُعودا وإنحنا بعدان كانت تطلم وتعزب اوتحزج عن الدابرتين فتصبر لماطلوع وغروب بعد اله كان ظهى و ها البخفا و ها يتابد و لكن ذ لك يكون في المازمنية المتراخية ندّان مَدد مَلِكُ الْحَهَرُ ومَا مُؤن ذُ لِكُ انْ كُلُ كُوكِ بِعُلَا حَمَلٍ بِمُعَىٰ اَصْحَىٰ ۖ يغلهر ذاالتي عرضه من تسعين مكان ما بنى اكث من فصف لم ابين عرض البلد والمسالل عظم فأنهما عكن ان بعيدار طلع وخروس فيه فأن كان ما بتي تلى فأن أستاله عن ملا الحالة مستنع ما الارتفساع والانحطاط وتماما المشراوالكوكب اوالنعطة المغروضة من المغلث ايهاكان اذاا تنتى فوق الافي ثم ادبرعليه وإم عظيمة تم على قطب الافئ فإن ما يتم منها بينه وبين الافق هو ادتناع ذلك الني وبكون عودًا قا يُما وما بين ذلك ألتي وبين مت الرَّاس الذي مواسد قبلى لا في موعًام ذلك الارتفاع فان كان المني المغروم بحت الافن وفعلما ذكرنا فان ما بتع من ملك المدابرة بعينه وبين الا فق مق

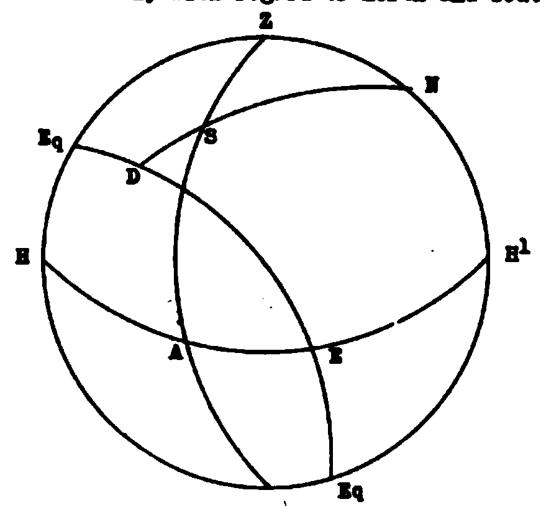
226-229

- 226. Ma al-irtifar al-ausat. The mean altitude is the arc of such a circle between the horizon and the equinoctial, and its complement that MEAN ALTITUDE between the equinoctial and the zenith.
- shadow. The style, shakhs, may be made of wood or other material sharpened at each end and driven GNOMON like a peg perpendicularly into the AND SHADOW ground. When the sun is out, the shadow of the style with its divisions is measured to see how they compare. The line joining the point of the style and the point of its shadow is called the diameter (hypothenuse) of the shadow.
- 228. Ajzā' al-miqyās kam hiya. If the style is divided into twelve equal parts these are named fingers, asābi', if into sixty, divisions, ajzā', DIVISIONS and if into seven, feet, aqdām (Some people OF GNOMON use 6 1/2 for the last).
- 229. Anwaral-azlal kam hiya. There are two kinds of shedow, the one cast on a horizontal, the other on a vertical surface, when e.g. the gnomon is KINDS OF fixed perpendicularly to a wall. The former SHADOW shedow is called mustawi (umbra recta), while the latter is named muntasib on account of being perpendicular to the ground, and markus because the point of the shedow is directed to the ground (umbra versa).

اغطاطه ومأبينه وبين سمته الرتبل ألذى عوفطب الافق الآخرمومًا م ذلك الاغطاط ما الارتعناع الاوسط عوما يتع من دا برة ادتغاع النبئ بين معذل النبادوبين الافئ وتامه مابين معذل النبادوست الراس س من الماين ما المقياس والظّل المتياس شخص من خشبه اوجوم آخرستوط دالراس كعيد المخوط بنصب كالوتد قايمًا على السطح الذى ينصب عليه واماا لظل فف ظل ذلك المنباس بدرطولر باجزابرحتى عيركم معنه فأما الخط الواصل بن طهف المتياس والطلّ فاتر يتم قطرالعلاً اجزاء المتياس كم مى اذاكانت النى عشمتنا ويترسميت اجزا واذا كانت سين ميت اجزاوا ذاكات سقة وبضف سميت القامًا وفيه فأ الاختلاف فان منهم من مسم المنتس المنتس المنا وبيراع الاظلال كم هى مى اثنان كالسما سي سيطًا وستويًا وذلكُ اذا نصب المتياس على مطح الافق بعدا لشويز والنصيح فان ظلم ينبسط على الادخ والنوع الآخريم ممكوكا ومنتعبًا وذلك آذا نصب المتياس على علم مراجر للتمكابط اوغدم والمتياس عليه كالوتد فان المأبنصب على الارض ديكون راسد الى اسفل فبسى لذلك معكوسك ما التمت

250

250. Ma al-sant. The point of intersection of a vertical circle of altitude of the sun or a star with the horizon is called sent (azimuthal point. If the distance of the sent from AZIMITHAL the equinoctial is taken, then the com-POINT plement of that is the distance from the meridian, (azimuth) and vice versa. If from the centre of the Indian Circle you draw a diameter through the middle of the shadow, that end of the diameter which is towards the sun or star is its semt, and that end of the diameter which is towards the point of the shadow is the madir of the samt, and the distance of both is equal, but in different directions, i.e. if the shadow points west the samt is east, if east, west, and similarly with regard to north and south.



Eq. Equinoctial. H H¹. Horizon. E its east point. N. North Pole. Z Zenith. HZH¹. Meridian. S. a ster. DS its declination, SN. complement of declination, A its 'samt', Azimuthal point, AE its distance from Equinoctial, AB complement thereof 'azimuth'. SZ. Zenith distance, AS. altitude.

¹ Chaucer 1.c. p. 31 'Senyth'.

ملغ دان المنعم من إلى وعبد المعبرهم الذااحادث على المعلى الم م الوسيون من مراوب بعده الماع في المعد المعد المعدد مدنف العادمام المهن وأماع خط نسف العادف ونعاه عخط المغدال نمام السمن واذااخرج على سطع الطاللة نوى حطي على سنف الده حى العنديد كالله على المنديد كالله كالله على السب ومعداد بعن ومعداد م عام الانفاع الوخظ انحان المعرب

بلنوب وبالهجيب من ومن منون وكالم على المان على المان على المان المان على المان المان على المان على المان المان على المان المان على المان على المان المان المان على المان المان على المان المان المان على المان المان على المان المان على المان المان على المان على المان الما

231-232

251. Ma dhalika fi nisf al-nahar. All great circles which pass through the zenith are called circles of altitude, 1 and the MERIDIAN ALTITUDE meridian is one of these distinguished by passing through AND SHADOW the zenith and the pole of the universe. When the altitude of the sun is taken in the meridian, it is the highest of all altitudes, and as the shadow corresponds to this, the meridian shadow is the shortest of all shadows of the day. The meridian intercepts the horizon at two points, north and south; these are the maridian sumit, but the distance of any point from these is not taken notice of.

252. Ilá kam yanqasimu azlāl nişf al-nahār wa irtifa hu. The extremity of a meridian shadow always points north in those places

DIVISIONS OF AND SHADOW

whose latitude is greater than the MERIDIAN ALTITUDE obliquity of the ecliptic, and the meridian altitude is south, its complement being the distance from

the zenith southwards to the sun. The meridian altitude of the sun is of three grades, 1. highest in summer, when the sun arrives at the first point of Cancer - the shadow is then at its shortest, 2. lowest in winter when the sun reaches Capricorn - the shadow then is longest - and 3. both altitude and shadow are intermediate between these two when the sun is at the first points of Aries and Libra; the shadow is then known as the equinoctial shadow, and the altitude is equal to the colatitude of the place.

In those places whose latitude is equal to the obliquity of the soliptic, the conditions are as we have described, except that the altitude at the first point of Cancer, which is equal to 900, is neither north nor south, and then there is no meridian shadow

In those cases where the latitude is less than the obliquity of the ecliptic the conditions of

¹ As distinguished from parallel of altitude.

انصدبه الانفاع شنب م وكان كانسف الهاذ اجداما وبن منها بلروز على بطي عبول المف انفاذ احال لأساع مندسم انعناع بصف المهاد والأالطل بكوزعب الانعاع فانطله بتعطل سيف المفاد وموعلي مطح الانوافس اطلال لينسر في ذكل البوم وكان د إن نصف الماد معاطع الافر على منر عض انهاك المن فانت نعيف الهادعواجري فأبن المعطف ولأبدك مغديعد عننيع الجحكرسنسكاظلال نصفالها نعاجد ذائر الطل فيسيف الهادبي والعاب الجالسال البلاد الى نفس لع وسها على موار المل الاعطموارساع نصف المهانبهام وحقر الخنوب اعجان عامد بدوري التمر عنه الله يح الجنوب وبسكون للمنه وفي النفاع اعظم فالصبف وطلد افد الالال وذكر إول المسرطاف أنفاع اصغر في السنبا وظلم المدال النهاد و ذكر المدى والمعلى الشدواسط وبهماس اوئمام غرض الما وطلدت طالع سنه المطل الإعتدال لأندوذ آف الازماع ببعوزع ودحول المفراول بملاوا وللبزات ماما اب دالى باوى عرصه المسلاعظ مان مادكر مابطر د فهاسه راعظ إرتفاعات وبطرالطلحسة فبكافيعهم وأماله لاداني غصعر رينهاع معد لالهاد مذاد المسل

252-255

altitude and shadow in winter and spring are of the nature already indicated, but the altitude at the first point of Cancer is in the north not in the south, and so when the sun begins to ascend towards the North and also to descend from the North, and when its declination is equal to the latitude of the place, it stands overhead and there is no shadow. When its declination increases beyond the latitude of the place, the sun passes from the zenith towards the north, the meridian altitude changes from south to north, and its complement is the distance of the sun from the zenith towards that quarter. At that time the meridian altitude decreases as it increased in the south and becomes less until the first point of Cancer is reached, then it begins to increase. When the altitude becomes north the point of the shadow is directed south. Therefore, those places are designated as 'of two shadows' because the point of the meridian shadow is sometimes directed north and sometimes south.

233. Mā al-irtifā' wa'l-zill alladhi lā samt
lihumā. That circle of altitude which passes through
the two points of intersection of the
PRIME equinoctial with the horizon is known as
VERTICAL the circle without semt, and also as the
circle of the beginning of the sumit
(prime vertical). When the sun is in this circle its
altitude and shadow are described as without samt,
because it is then over the equinoctial point and
there is consequently no interval between the samt
and the equinoctial point until the sun diverges
northwards.

المعظمان النفاع المسكوالاستواوما ببجماع لمعدم ابينا والماارنفاع السف ومص معقولله الفك الأنافي معلى المعالية ومعلى المعالية وموهم مداذاتساه يحبله اعزمن للإكتاست عفيطل فببالطل ضف المعاذنم اذا فاحبلا ع عرض الملوساد انتقاع مسف المهادم مع يدالمال و تلعد بيوعًا عن مثلاس فكالمهد الإدادان فاع نسيف المهاة كماكان داد في معد الجوب وكحند ساصل إغابه الترال ترطان تم اخا هناك بزاد واذاح عالله علع فالناك الطلق فالماد بوجد مباكره بحوالساك مع بحوالجؤب م اسال شنبولا لك من كالللاد دوات طلب لازيا ترالط ليسف المهار وجد بهام المال والحريج الجنوب عما الاتعاج والطلا والمخطط موفرب اسفاع مسف النمادو ذكك انع المعالا نفاع المان عجيف المع الافى مع معدل المهادنسي الدارم المي لاسمت لماوتم اساداب أول السون فاذاك المترس علبها كالدنعاع اموالا كلاست لذوظل كالكرب وزعل استعامه خط الاعتدال المهد عنده ما الأوجد للمرب عبي الااذ لحانه المال حالابوجه المين السمال ع خط الاعتدال الأمع مبله السمال ع ماطل لعصر مذائبه في الابه في الخرا والطه واول

234-236

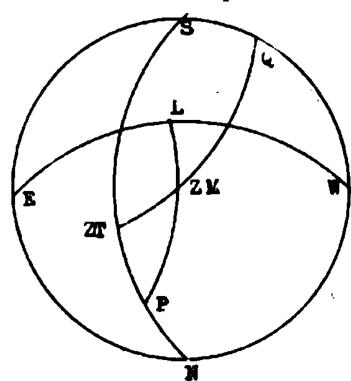
Imams is the length of shadow which determines the time of the end of the early afternoon SHADOW OF THE prayer zuhr, and the beginning of the rask prayer late afternoon prayer, asr, and its end. If the length of the meridian shadow is known, called fi'l-zawal, then the shadow is observed until it is twice as long; this is the beginning of the asr according to the Imams of the Hijaz, and is called, ziyadah al-mithl and is marked on the instruments, awwal al-vasr.

If the shadow is observed until it is twice as long, this is the time of the 'asr according to the Imams of 'Iraq, is called ziyadah al-mithlain, and is

marked on the instruments Ekhir al- asr.

corresponding to the qibla is that where the horizon is intersected by the circle passing through the zenith of the locality and that of liecca. Its distance from the squator or the meridian is the measure

which it is incumbent on any one at prayer to use in determining the situation of the cible.



ew. Equinoctial. ZM. Zenith of Mecca. ZT. of a town. SN. Meridian of Town. P. North Pole. Q. Samt of the Qibla. QS. Distance from the meridian of Town.

QW. from the equator.

ZML and P. Latitude and

Colatitude of Mecca.

ZTP. Colatitude of Town.

In a modern Arab daily calendar the times for prayer are marked thus: - e.g. March 21st, for fajr, dawn 4,19, for sharuq, sunrise, 6,01, for gharub, sunset, 6,07, for fasr, 3,30 and for Tsha, early night prayer, 7,37.

There is a lacuns in this MS. involving paragraph 236 which is supplied from 44v and 45r A01.

ا و ما ت البعر و اخره فا ذاع ف خلص ف المهار و بهموس في الدوال م م و ترس مرح يصب و طلع بذال العدر فهوا و لعت البعد ف ال

مرابع المسلون فل المناف المنا

236

236. Mā al-aqālīm. Members of this profession divide the habitable land into seven long strips from east to west parallel to the equator called 'climates'. The principle of the division 'CLIMATES' is that the middle points of contiguous strips differ from each other by half an hour in the length of the longest summer day. For the change in these conditions is dependent on latitude and is not affected by longitude which only causes differences in the beginning of day and night, a matter which is not obvious without consideration. In the central climate, the fourth, the longest day, is fourteen hours and a half, in the first thirteen and in the seventh, sixteen. In view of the fact that the books contain contradictory statements as to the latitudes of the climates, dependent on differences of opinion as to the obliquity of the ecliptic, different methods of subdivision determining sines, and the ability of the calculators to distinguish between truth and

falsehood, I have made calculations myself and recorded them in this table with the utmost accuracy.

		gest	Latit	ıde	rise Po	Summer Shadow		
The Climates.		nin.	0	•	0	•	dig.	
Equator	12	••	••	••	23	35	• •	••
Beginning of first				.		_		
climate	12	45	12	39	24	13	3 2	19
Middle	13		16	39	24	42	1	28
Beginning of second .	13	15.	20	27	25	17	••	39
Middle	13	30	24	13	26	••	N	16
Beginning of third	13	45	27	28	26	49		49
L'iddle	14	١	30	39	27	41	1	29
Beginning of fourth	14	15	33	37	28	44	2	27
Middle	14	30	36	21	29	48	2 3	43
	14	45	438	54	2	57	3	117
Beginning of fifth	15	I	41	14		9	3	49
Middle	15	15	43	23		25	4	19
Beginning of sixth	15	30	45	22		44	4	48
Middle	1	45	47	11		5	5	1:
Beginning of seventh	15	1 33		52		29	5	40
Middle	116	1::	48			_	l ŏ	
End of seventh	116	15	50	25	38	55	<u> </u>	تبل

In the minutes of shadow P 28 was skipped and an additional 15 introduced lower down. At has moved 2.19 into the equator line, and introduced an additional 4.19 to fill the gap. The first three shadows point south; jirm in AO and AOI for janub: MS has 8.17 and 49 for 5 cf. Wiedemann Beiträge, XXVII p. 11. Bar-Hebraeus lefines the length of the day at higher latitudes. New plant.

سئل المغرب على المنتواج الاستواج شكان تدن من عدر الما داسة والإولول الما المعاب عد ساعة الاستواج المنافع من العوري المنافع من العوري المنافع والمنافع والمنافع والمنافع والمنافع والمنافع والمنافع المنافع والمنافع والمنافع

الهاد الوراد العرب العر

237-238

237. Kā alladhī yu'rad fi'l-aqālīm wa hal ba'dhā 'amerch. Ptolemy considered that the limit of the habitable land is the Island of CHARACTERISTICS Thule (situated in the country of the Slavonians in the Varangian OF CLIMATES Sea.P) Its latitude is nearly the same as the complement of the obliquity of the ecliptic, viz. 66°. As for the people who live in the last part of the seventh climate as far north as the Island of Thule, they are more like savages than human beings and as regards the conditions of existence, are living in the extreme of misery. The further you penatrate to the north the more do the conditions described prevail. The points of the horizon at which the sun rises in summer and winter keep getting further apert until eventually they coincide with their sunset points at that latitude which corresponds with the complement of the obliquity of the ecliptic. Then the parallel of the beginning of Cancer is always visible, and the longest day is 24 hours [without night: that of the beginning of Capricorn is never visible and the longest night is 24 hours without day. There also the pole of the ecliptic passes over the zenith once every day, at which time the zodiac belt coincides with the horizon, (and nothing is seen of it until the pole passes away from the zenith,) when suddenly six constellations rise altogether. Here also is the beginning of those places where the shadow of a gnomon revolves round it uninterruptedly when the sun is at the first point of Cancer, and the further you penetrate to the north the number of circles in which this condition obtains is increased.)P

Beyond this point in addition to the parallel of 00 Cancer, other parallels become visible, BEYOND 660 and, as long as the sun is there, day persists, and the longest day instead of being one of 24 hours, lasts for several days, and increases in length until it becomes a month or months. In the south, the parallels round about 00 of Capricorn are invisible, and when the sun is there, the longest night in the north becomes first days and then months in length, in proportion as you penetrate further north.

¹ Line dropped in MS.

ما الذي يعرض المذاب وها الم وها يعلم الذي الم الم الم وها يعلم الماليان فندوع وطلبو ترائة بوجد افسا عافي جزن وكى وعضها بغاؤب الم المبلكا عظره وهو النف بب سعوستون وأولي ولا أم الذب في بزا فرالا فلم المستابع الربال الفاج الوجر أله بمنه الان في عبر عاد وعلى منتل ولا والمالا والمنابع المرب عنوا واخلاف مطالع المروح و و العاد المعان المناب و بنتح مشر والمناب المنابع و بعرض في اللوضع ان مُر وطب فلك المربع و برا المربع الموضع ان مُر و على المربع المربع المربع و مربع الموضع المربع و مربع المال و بنت منطق المربع و مربع المال و بنتاب و ج و مربع الموضع مند و الملال المدينة و الملا المنابع و ج و مربع الموضع مند و الملاك المدينة و الموضع مند و الملاك المدينة و المربع المال المنابع و مربع الموضع مند و الملا المنابع و المنابع و و مربع الموضع مند و الملاك الدسينية و المدينة الموضع مند و الملاك المدينة و المدينة و المدينة الموضع مند و الملاك المدينة الموضع مند و الملاك المدينة الموضع مند و الملاك المدينة الموضع مند و المدينة الموضع مند و الملاك المدينة الموضع مند و الملاك المدينة المربع المعان على المدينة الموضع مند و الملاك المدينة الموضع مند و الملاك المدينة الموضع مند و المدينة الموضع مند و الملاك المدينة الموضع مند و المدينة الموضع مند و المدينة الموضع مند و الملاك المدينة الموضع مند و المدينة الموضع مند و المدينة الموضع مند و المدينة الموسطة و المدينة الموسطة و المدينة و المدين

فا الذي بعض في الموضع الما و الما و الما و الما و المنظم المنظم و الما المنظم و الما المنظم و المنظم

238-239

In such places at certain times the rising of the signs takes place contrary to the order of succession as e.g. Taurus, Aries, Pisces, Aquarius. And just as at the equator the circles of declination are perpendicular to the horizon (for that reason the orbit here is spoken of as the erect sphere falak mustaqim or kurah muntasibah, [guy rāst], so in places possessing latitude these parallels become inclined to the horizon, and the revolution of the heavens is then oblique like a shoulder belt, hemā'il.

The highest latitude is when the pole is overhead, and the equinoctial is on the horizon, the parallels of north declinations are all visible [and coincide with the mugantaras of altitude], those of the south are invisible [and coincide with the mugantaras of depression] and the movement of the heavens overhead is like that of a millstone. As soon as the sun moves north from the equinoctial it becomes visible; while when it moves south it disappears. So the period [during which the sun traverses the zodiac and] which we call a year is like a single nychthemeron, day lasting for six months and a night for the remainder of the year.

239. Qubbat al-ard. A central point of longitude between East and West of the habitable world is called the cupola of the earth qubbat al-ard. Sometimes it is described as lacking 'ard. CUPOLA OF THE EARTH latitude, because it is on the equator. We do not know whether this is an expression of opinion of the Persians, or others, at least the Greek books do not mention it. The Hindus however say that it is a high place named Lanka, the home of (devils (shayāţin) and peris), and that under the North Pole there is a mountain called Miru, the abode of angels. On the line joining Lanka and Miru is the city Auzin (Ujjain) in the Melwe Kingdom, the fortress Ruhitak (Rohtak), the plain of Tanishar (Thaneshwar) and (the district of the Jaman (Jumma) where are) the snow-clad mountains which separate India from Turkestan.

I Jagmini, Zeits. Deut. Morgenl. Gesell. ILVII, p. 204.
2 India I 316.

³ v. Sedillot, Materiaux II. 651 seq.

الاطول للبوم الحالايام والمتهوز يحسب الإبعال بجوالسال وبعرض فيوا المضع فيهنكادفات انتظلع البروج على عين الممااع فالمؤدم الجملم الموس م الدلود عالله ادات النصب على خط الاستواف ولا لكف أستنها وي منتسبدتم مالب عجافا فالكبرازج ان العروض حي يمرح و د الفلك فيها جابليا مان فلم العرض ببحول الفطب السمال علمت الماسرون وفي معدل المهانة منطف أعلى الأوالدادات الشالب سطعاطا من صال وللنوشوب ودورً الفيكُرر جاوي وأدامت الشيظ البرعضية ل المات انتظام أمال ومادامت حنوببة كالتخفية فسأوف المتندهنال بوما واحدامها ستاسمر النرب نعاذا والبافيلاع مافتة الانص بعنهامنهف الطول بزالمشرف المغرب ودباك انبرسف بعدم العرس فبعون على خليرا النشنوا وبست الجفوالامرفها واندرا بالعنرس عبرهم فأرب خنب البونابون خالبرع ذكرها فالمالك فبزعون انصال عنع ممتر المشاحين وانت القطب الشالي بالميموندمير وعومست تغزا لما بوعد ومبط للظالواصل بهام بداون في ملحه مالوا وفليد دوه بك ورب بابر

240

240. Fahal qismat al-ard bighayr al-aqalim. Other methods of subdividing the land exist besides that of the seven climates. A tale is told

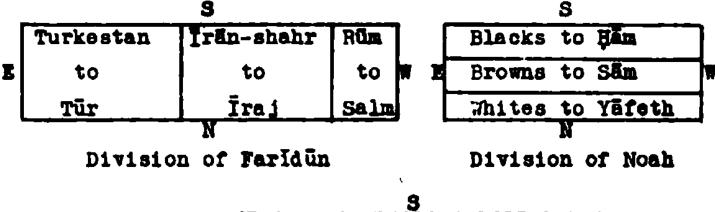
OTHER DIVISIONS of Afridum, one of the kings

jababirah of the Persians, that he divided the world into three portions between his three sons. The Eastern part including Turkestan and China he gave at his death to Tür, the Western containing Rum to Salm, and the Central part embracing the Iranian countries (Iranshahr) to Iraj. This is a division by longitude.

Then there is that of the Prophet Noah (on whom be peace) which is by latitude, but also into three parts. At his death he gave the South where the Blacks are to Ham, and the North where the Whites live to Yafeth, and

the Central part the abode of the Browns to Sam.

The Greeks also, have a threefold division, different from the foregoing. In the first place they divide the world into two through Egypt, the Eastern part being spoken of in a general way as Asia, while that towards the West and the Mediterranean is divided into two, Libya to the South including the black and brown inhabitants and Europe³ to the North with white and red inhabitants. In view of the fact that Asia is many times larger than the two Western divisions, they separated Traq, Fars and Khurasan from it under the name of Asia Minor, the rest being Asia Major. These methods of division are represented below.



Division of the Greeks.

ASIA Libya

Libya

Europe

3 Auragi.

¹ APL TOj. PP TOgh.

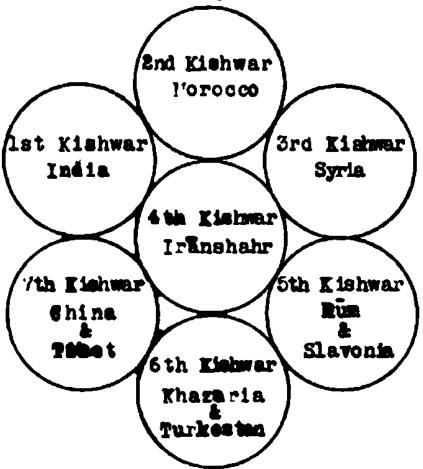
² Aisiyyā AO. Ansiyā MS. Absiyā PP.

نَسُب إلا وَبَدُ وَن مِنْ بِهِ الْمُرْمِضَةُ مُلَّةُ بِالْعَلَوْلِ بِن مِنْ الْلَدُ وَفِي الْعَلَمِهِ الْمُرْفِيةُ الْمَدْ وَفِيهَ الْمُرْوَقِهِ الْمُرْوِمِ الْمُنْدُ وَفِيهَ الْمُرْوِمِ الْمُنْدُ وَفِيهَ الْمُرْوِمِ الْمُرْفِيةُ الْمُرْوِمِ الْمُرْفِقِيمِ الْمُرْفِقِيمِ اللَّهُ وَالْكُنْدُ عَلَى اللَّمُ وَالْكُنْدُ عَلَى اللَّهُ وَالْكُنْدُ وَعَلَى الْمُرْفِقِيمِ اللَّهُ وَالْكُنْدُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَعَلَيْدُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَيْدُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَيْدُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَى الْمُرْفِقِيمِ اللَّهُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَيْدُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَيْدُ وَعَلَى اللَّهُ وَعَلَيْلُولُولُ وَفَعِيمِ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَعَلَى الْمُرْدُ وَعَلَى الْمُرْدُ وَعِلَى الْمُرْدُولُ الْمُ اللَّهُ وَعِنْ الْمُحْدِدُ الْمُعْلِقِ وَاللَّهُ وَعِلَى الْمُرْدُ وَعِلَى الْمُرْدُولُ الْمُؤْلِقُ وَاللَّهُ وَالْمُولُولُ وَالْمُ الْمُؤْمِلُ اللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَالْمُؤْمُ وَالْمُؤْمُ وَاللَّهُ وَالْمُلِلِي الْمُؤْمُ وَاللَّهُ وَالْمُؤْمُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ وَالْمُؤْمُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ وَالْمُؤْمُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ وَالْمُؤْمُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ وَالْمُؤْمُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ الْمُؤْمُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ الْمُلْعُلِقُولُ الْمُلْعِلِي اللْمُولِ الْمُؤْمُ اللَّهُ الْمُلْمُ اللِمُ اللْمُ

النكر لنوج ينا	: معبوب ابوان شهدر لابر ج	عُ الرَّوْمِ لَمُسْلِمُ
عذلله	الشهال المناهال	فمذبوح
<u>الحام</u>		الد، دان
دك		المنتمس
لِمافت	المشمال	البينان
المُيا الحَبِي ،	انجنب ا	الم
	المراب المالية	ا: اه ر پ
	الرل بوج الخام الحام الحام المرك بوج الخام الحام الحام الحام الحام الحام المرك المر	المال

240

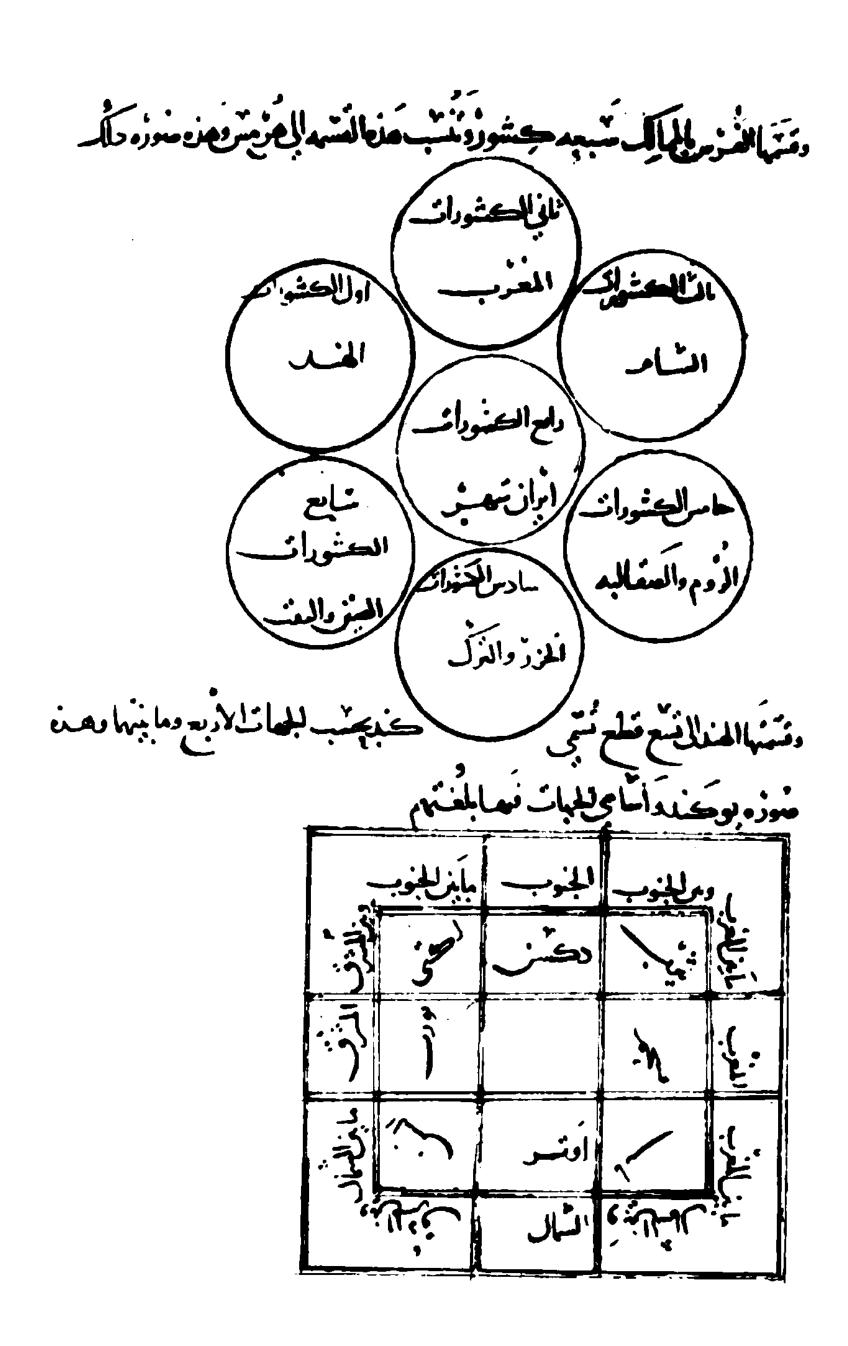
The Persians divided the world by the kingdoms into seven regions (kishwarat) and attributed this division to Hermes. It is represented in the following figure.



The Hindus divide the world into nine portions called nukand (navakhanda) to eight of which they give names in their own language corresponding to the points of the compass, while the ninth is the central part as represented in the figure.

	B	S	S]
S	agniya	Dakshiņs	Nairrita	٦
E	Pürva	Madhya- deáa Centre of Empire	Pashchim	
	Ishana	Uttara	Vāya va	W
I	I	И		╛

I India I 290. These names really mean North South &c.; the Khanda are represented in India I, 296.



241

241. MR fi'l-aquit min al-biled. Since the latitudes of the beginning and end of each climate are given in the table in 256, it is easy to know in CITIES IN which climate a city is situated if its THE CLIMATES latitude is known. But the latitudes of such cities as are recorded in books are very inaccurate. We have hitherto not had the opportunity of getting accurate results, except to a certain extent, accordingly the following list of the cities situated in the various climates is only approximate, but certainly nearer to the truth than has hitherto been published.

We have stated that, following the equator from the east where it begins in the sea to the south of China, it passes through the Zanjl Islands (Zāvah) known as the land of gold, then moves between the two islands Kalah and Sarīra (Sarbazah) to the south of the Island of Sarandib (Ceylon), and through the Dibajat Islands (Dīva) to the north of the Zanj people, their islands, coasts and low-lying grounds, passing thence north of the Mountains of the Moons to end in the Western Ocean.

The first climate begins with the east of the Chinese Empire, traverses the Chinese Sea, and contains those cities which are its ports, and where are the rivers on which the merchants' boats ascend into the interior like Khānjū and Khānqu. The Island of Sarandib belongs here, and of the Yemen country everything that is south of San'a', like Dhofar, Eadramaul and 'Aden; then in Africa it includes Dongola, a city of the Nubians, and Ghānah of the Western Sudanese, after which the Western Ocean is reached.

The second climate begins with some of the cities of China, traverses Hindustan north of the Qamrun Mountains and contains Kanauj, Baranasi, and Ujjain. and several of those cities which are on the sea-coast like Thanah, Jimur and Sindan (Sahjan), also cities of I But in other MSS. Zabij. P has quite clearly Zavah (Java 2 Malay Peninsula. 5 Sumatra. 4 Maldive Isl. 7 P has here 5 Zanūj. P. Zangiyān. o like Zanzibar. Sofala al-Zanj which is far south of the Equator. B Or White Mountains, quar, instead of qamar, referring to the snow-eapped Ruwenzori, Kenya and Kilimanjaro. See Storbeck, l.c. p. 19 and Sedillot, Mem. II. 752. 9 These names suggest Hang-chow and Hang-kow; the latter might be Khanfu the port of Hang-chow. Bevic, Livre des Merveilles de l'Inde, 1885, p. 215 - Mallino, however, thinks both refer to Canton (Khwang-chowfu,) and Hong-Kong, Atti Lincei 1894 II. 45.

ما في الماليم الله اذاكان عرض للسبارماً فعد منسا عضافك كالعلبم وعرض لخم المبعث موقع ذكك الملامز العلم وعروش العلوان فل فالمنب بعده علم واب ولم يهرانا اللال المعيم وللكمنها فاذا مصنابلان فالمنزابما الغربدون لينبن على مارعى بدن ان الاجيم عاعده في المنت منعول الخط المنتوابيدي مرجوب الص السن المح ويرعل بالمخ المصيد الاصرف عرف مابر حربرة كادوش ويخادعلى بوب خرب سريد بعيرار الديجان وسلالغ نوج والموارالموط وسعاله وسلاحالا مرخى بلم البح المحيط الغنب واما الأقلم الأولى المندب ويمنسن انطاله برقيم على إزاءاه ومحكاما المحضه السغز مِن المِحْ مُنْ لَجَاء أو خَامَةُ او فِيعِرِ خِينَ سَنِيلِ وَما سَانَ مُوبِاً مِنْ الْمِن من عاملطنا وجفره ف عدن وفعد منفله مدندالنوبد وعاندمر مُن ودان لمزب مُ مُنهُ إلى إلى المبط ع وَاماً الأَفلِم النَّالِي عُ مالة ما حام فلاد الصب بي الصل المساعر سال جال عامرون عليه بدالم واوجبزو بعين عاعلى الساجل ماند ، حسفود مست إن مع ملاد السن المصون ودبس تمسلغ عان فيحو وبمعرم النطالع في عن الترا والمامد من وسرا

Sind like Mansurah and Daibal; thereafter Tumman and the Arab districts of Hajar, Nejrān, Yemāma, Mahra, Sabā Tabālah, Al-Ţālf, Jiddah, Mecca and Madinah Yathrib. Then the Abyssinian Kingdom and the country of the Bajah, the cities of Aswān and Qus, Al-Sa'ld al-ā'll, and south of the cities of Ifriqiyya (Tunisia) and Morocco before arriving at the Western Ocean.

The third climate begins in the east of China and includes the Capital of the Empire: then comes the centre of the Indian Empire with Tanishar and Qandahār and the cities of Sind, Mültän, Tahāma, land Karūr; then the mountains of the Afghans, on to Zābulistān, Walistan Sijistān, Kirman, Fārs, Işfahān, Al-Ahwaz, Al-Başra, Al-Kūfa, and 'Irāq and the cities of Mesopotamia, Syria and Palestine, Bait al-maqdis, and Qulzum, Al-Tih and Egypt, Alexandria, and the cities of Barqa and N. Africa the tribes of the Berbers and so by Tāhart and Sūs to Tangier and the Western Ocean.

The fourth climate begins with China and Tibet, within these, continues across the mountains of Kashmir, Balür (Bolor) Wakhan, and Bādakhshān towards Kabūl and Ghūr, Herāt, Balkh, Tokhāristān, Merv, Qūhistān, Nishābūr, Qūmis, Jurjān (Gurgān) Tabaristān, Rai, Qumm, Hamadān, Mausul, Adarbaijan, (Adharbādgān) Manbij, Tarsus, Harrān, the Passes (of the Christians) and Antioch, the Islands of Cyprus, Rhodes and Sicily, ending at the straits separating Andalucia from Morocco called zuqāq.

The fifth climate begins with the country of the Eastern Turks, and the territories of Gog and Magog, Yājūj and Mājūj, with the surrounding wall, passes the mountains of the Turks with their well-known tribes,

l Several MSS have nihāyat.

² P. MSS have Zawalistan (according to Vullers a colloquial form). Wälistän or Wälishtän absent in PL but Wältisän in PP, perhaps a fragment of the coll. form.

5 MS has shäpur for Al-Sha'm.

⁴ Jerusalem, MS has muqaddis.

⁵ Near Suez.

⁶ Misspelt in MS. Khitar, Northern China, from the Khitam nation which ruled over it in the 10th and 11th centuries, the Cathay of mediaeval Europe, still used in Russian and Turki for China.

⁷ South of the middle Oxus, v. Marquart, Eran-Shahr.

⁸ Kühisten P.

⁹ The great wall of China was attributed to Alexander, wa sadd-1 Sikandar anjast PL'.

وبالدوالطابف وجن ومحدوم ديثر بريد وملحد ليلبندوادنس الميدواسوان فوسروالسعب للإعلى جنوب بلاد المعرب يجي بنهل العرالحد واماالاعلم المالث ماندنديمن شنف انزلي بن فيدما وواسط ملح والمندوب ماستروف في الدوم المناف المولمان الم معزوروجال الافعاندلل ذالمنان المنان المنان وعارس ماسعهان الامواز والبصن والتعوفد والعراق فلاد الجن والسابور وفلسط وبن المفار والفيلزم والبندوا ومرصر والسكادر وبلاد وفدواف بغيد وماماللرسرفا ملاحن فانرالم فرالم فرسر في المراب وما حوت والسوشر والاحتفد بعنى الالمراطيط والماالافلم الزابع مالد بنديم المراله والسا ونساى للخصابهنما مزالة ن برعل جبال عشهر وللوزو وَجان و مخشان وكالموالغور فعيراه وطيؤ وطهارسنان ومرو وقهسنان ونيسا بورونوس وبرجان وطبرسان والري فموهدان والموصل وادر بعان منبر وكمرسوس

241-242

and arrives at Kashghar, Balasaghun, 1 Thasht, 2 Forghana Isbijab, 3 Al-Shash, Ushrushna, Semargand, Bukhara, Khwarizm, and the Sea of the Khazars (known also as Abiakun)P[the Caspian] and passes Bab al-abuab (Derbend of the linazars)P, Barda's, MaiyafarqIn,5 Armenia, the Passes into Asia Minor, the cities there, then crosses over Rumiya the Great, the country of the Galicians and the cities of Andalus to end in the enciroling Ocean.

The sixth climate begins among the dwellingplaces of the Eastern Turks with the Qay and Qun, the Khirkhiz and Kamak and Taghazghaze towards the Turcoman country and Farab, the city of the Khazars (Itil)9 to the north of their Sea and the Alans 10 [and As]P who occupy the country between that sea and the Sea of Trebizond which leads to Constantinople, Burjan, I France and Northern Spain where it ends in the Western Ocean.

The seventh climate contains little habitable land; however in the east there are forests and mountains which shelter groups of Turks in a miserable condition, then the Bashkhirt mountains are reached and the boundaries of the Chuzz and Pechenegs, the two cities of Suwarl2 and Bulghar, Russia, Slavonia, Bulghariya and Maj'ar, 13 and finally the Western Ocean. Beyond this climate there are few people living, except groups like the Ansu, the Varangians, 14 the Bardah and the like.

242. Mā metāli" al-buruj wa daraj al-suwā. The daraj al-suwa are the equal degrees into which the ecliptic is divided, each sign having CO-ASCENSIONS thirty degrees. Since the ecliptic is related to a pole different from that of the first movement, the degrees of the signs as they ascend do not correspond to the divisions of the equinoctial, and so in the case of each sign the arc of the

¹ See the long and interesting note, Tarikh-i Rashidi p.561. 2 There is a Khasht on the frontier of Ferghana, Lands East. Caliphate p. 485.

³ Sipjāb or Sipījāb P Sipenjāb in Shahnāmah. Modern Sairem near Chimchend.

⁴ Chach P. Old Tashkend.

⁵ Now Farkin near Diyarbekr, Martyropolis.

⁶ v. Lopès, Trois faits de phonetique historique Arab-Mispanique; Internat. Orien. Congr. 1905 p. 245. PP has Jaliqiyah for Galicia, as in Idrisi, Rome 1592, Sheet 32

الهَ عَاسَعُمْ وملاسماعون وكاست. وفرعاند وانستعاب والساس والمروسند وكنرفيد وبخاداوخداد دمو محروا لمزوالي البسالا والبدو بردعه ومباعا وفبر وارمبندود دوب الرومو لادم وعلى لادوميد المصرى بروعلى المر الملالفتدوبلاذ الأولن ينتى لإاليم الميطع والما الأفلم الساوش فاندبيندي مرتساح توك المشوف مزعاي وفون وخير وكحك البغرغ وانسل لرسعاب وقانب للدالخ دوشل برم واللاف السرر برعا المحر وبزنج بطسوا بزنزه وبمرعلى الفسط فللمنسد وادض ركبان وخدوشال لالمدلس وبسكان المربع وأماا لافلم السابع فسرف عمان الماموج المنزف غياض جال ماوي البهاوزف مزالكرك كالمستند جنبن بمعلج ال بالمخرِّ وَجِود المُحاكِمة بلدى مواروبلغاد والروس والصف البدواللغرب وبنهى الماليخ المحيط وفلبل وداهذا الأمليم زالأم مثلان وأوراكب وبرده المنالم مامطالع المزوج ودرج السوإع المادنج النوا فهيالبي تبتي منطقته البزوج بافتيام متساه برويحته حكاوح مفالبلنز والأللطئ معلوط على عبر منطب للمرتبع الأولاط والمروج ودرج السوانك وكالم المنطبع المرابع كالمرابع كالمرا

242

equinoctial which rises with it is different from that which rises with another sign. [Similarly the degrees of the signs as they set do not correspond with the divisions of the equinoctial.] At the equator the ascensions being vertical are said to occur in the erect sphere, and there the ascensions of sets of four signs ere equal if the signs are equidistant north or south of the equinoctial points. Thus Aries and Pisces which are at the same distance from the vernal equinox as Libra and Virgo from the autumnal, have all equal ascensions. The same is true of Taurus and Aquarius and Leo and Scorpius, as well as of the four other signs. Again the descensions of these signs are equal to their ascensions. But these facts are only true at the equator; as soon as a place has latitude the signs equidistant from the equinoxes have still equal ascensions, this is true of Aries and Pisces, and of Libra and Virgo, but these groups are no longer equal to each other. If however the ascension of a sign be added to that of its nadir, the result is equal to the sum of their ascensions at the equator. Moreover the descension of any sign is equal to the ascension of its nadir. The table shows the ascensions of the signs at the equator and in the middle of each of the seven climates.

8 Kirchiz, Kimāk end Tughuzghuz (Toqquz-Oghuz) (MS has initial B for T) PP has Kīmāk, all three neighbours.

11 The Bulghars on the Danube were also called Burjan, Encycl. Islam I 806.

12 Suwar and Bulghar were two large cities of the Bulghars on the Volga south of Kazan.

⁷ Qay occurs in a list of Turkish tribes; Browne Vol. Orient. Stud. p. 407. Kien-Kun? Czaplicka, Turks of Central Asia. p. 66.

⁹ Near Astrakhan. .
10 P Alan, MS Allan both without fain. MS has al-sarir?
between the Casp'an and Black Seas. The Alans and Ms
are represented by the Ossetes.

¹³ A has Bulghariya alone, PL Maj'ar alone PP both Bulghariya and Maj'ar. Bulgaria lies south of the 44th parallel and is therefore largely in the 6th climate, while a large part of Hungary is in the 7th. Hungary is generally spelt Majār without 'ain.

¹⁴ The spelling of these names is so varied that it is impossible to identify them except the Varangians.

مندخ الزج الاخرفطالخ البزوج اودنجات السوا المفرومندما بطلع معما مزارما معدل المعاذفاما في خط الاستوافات المرمطالع فلك المستنفيرطال الح المنسبد وبنساوي مطالع كالنع فربروج بنساوي ببدكال مغاءنفط والإعدالية المعترج بكاشل لحل الموت والمواد المسلد فانعطالها منساويد وحذلك مطالع النوز والالووالع ترب والاس ومطالع الانعد البآفيد متساوير وفي خطالاستعلمطالع ك أرجمع مغاربه فاما المواضع دوات العدوض فانعطالع كالمحارج ففط منساوي العدع نفط ع بعينها منفطى الاعدال معوضاً و مثل طلاح الجمل للجؤف فالما أستا ويتروك وكالك مطالع المبران المتنبله وأن اوى مطالع الجلط الجلط وابنا فانطالع كم برج ومطالع البزح السابع مند وعوالط فراذ اجع انشا ويجوع مطالعه الفالك المستنفير بكون معارب كطابع خطبه و بالمساللاول مطالع البنووج بالفلك المستعنم و أوساط الأماليم المنبع

242-245

	Aries and Pisces		Aquarius and Taurus		Capri- corn and Gemini		Sagit- tarius and Cancer		Beorpius and Leo		Libra and Virgo	
Climates	0	•	0	•	0	•	0	•	0	•	0	1
Equator	87	53	29	54	32	13	32	13	29	54	27	53
Middle of First		20	27	4	31	6	3 3	26	32	44	31	20
Becond	35	37	25	38	30	3 0	34	2	34	10	33	3
Third	<u>80</u>	53	24	12	29	55	34	38	35	3 6	34	47
Fourth	19	21	22	53	29	17	<u>55</u>	7	35	88	36	25
Fifth	17	32	21	20	28	39	35	55	38	31	38	6
S1xth	15	55	19	52	27	58	36	34	39	57	39	44
Seventh	14	20	18	23	27	17	37	15	41	25	41	20

243. Mā darajah al-kawkab wa darajah mamarrhu wa tulu'hu wa ghurdbhu: If a star has no latitude, the degree of the ecliptic on which it 'DECREE' OF is situated rises, sets and passes A STAR the meridian with it. But if it has latitude, its degree is that point of the ecliptic which is intersected

I epoch according to New p. 153 and Delambre II 575, but not Ptolemy's $\pi \alpha \chi \gamma$.

N. N.	イルグ	۲,	ジャ	\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	الذ	Ź,	7	**	1	٧		7.
دياون	5-2-5	دماو	5	707	E	دلال	いい	ري ال	5	تفلئ	7.	(i)
×	4	٧	4	t	>	×	ノ	٧.	Z	×	4	خظائنوا
4	1	٦	V	3	Y	>	7	7	4	4	y	بشطالطالك
~	٦	✓	×	1	>			く	\$	4	9.	وسطالناب
1	Y	*	V	Y	>	*	A S		y	*	9	الناك
3	3	x	4	>	4	,	Z	7	9	8	3	الرابع
7	र्	1	4	Y	4	4	L	8	9	6	7	الخاسيب
¥	À	,	Y	K	>	く	3		Y	۲.	7	النادئ
9	4	70	4	*	>	,	3	*	2	12	7	الأابح

مَا دَرْجِهِ الحوب وَدُرْجَهُ مِنْ وطله عِدُومِ وَالْمُومِ وَالْمُ عِدُومِ الْمُرْوِحِ الْمُرْوِحِ الْمُرْوِحِ الْمُورِعِ الْمُرْوِحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُومِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُومِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُومِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرَامِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُومِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُلِمُ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْوحِ الْمُرْمِ الْمُرْمِ الْمُ

245

by its circle of latitude, i.e. the great circle passing through the star and the poles of the ecliptic. If the latitude is north, the star rises before its degree, and sets later, while if south, it rises later and sets earlier. So it is plain that the degree which rises with a star is different from its 'epoch', and must be distinguished as the degree of its rising, and similarly, that which sets with it as the degree of its setting. If the degree of the star with latitude should be on a solstice, the arrival of the star at the meridian will coincide with that of its degree, whether its latitude be north or south. If the degree of a star, not on a solstice, is on the ascending half of the ecliptic, 377, from the beginning of Capricorn to the end of Gemini, and its latitude is north, the star arrives at the meridian before its degree, if its latitude is south, after its degree. On the other hand if its degree is in the descending half from the beginning of Cancer to the end of Sagittarius, and its latitude is north, it arrives at the meridian after its degree, if south before. So it is plain that the arrival of a star at the meridian according to the above-mentioned conditions takes place with a degree other than its own, and that is known as the degree of passage, mamerr. The condition at the meridian under the earth is the same as that above it, the degree of passage being the same in each case.

I Cf. Jagmini. Zeit. deut. morg. gesell. XLVII, p. 268. Both A and P MSS have 'after' instead of 'before' and V.V. in this passage. Correct in Nau, 1.c. p. 153.

مِي الْجَهُمَةِ الْمِهِ الدَّانِ عِرضِهِ إِعِنَ الْعِطْبِدِ الْمُنْ عَلِيهُ وَعِلْيَ طَبِ اللَّهِ مِ واذاكانع مسسالها طلع مرطوع درجندوغ بعدع وياء دارا كانع سفحو بدطلع بعرطلوع درجندوع ب فباع و ما ، وطاه ان الدرجد المي نطلع مع طوع الحوجب ذب العرض تصون عبر درجد مم الني ترجه طاوعدوك الديج اليع رب مع عوب الدوك عَى نَجِهِ عُرُوبِهِ وَ فَامَا اذَا فَسَطَ السَّاوِ وَلَهِ فَكَ سَفَ الْمَادَ كَانَ فِي إِجارَب المفليروا فأهم وكهجدو لم يفع بنها اختلاف سوأ كانع ضدشالاً او حانجونبآوان انتخات درج بم عبراج بالمفليز مانع وشداذا حان شابيا ودرحه في المن الساعد الذي هوراول للوي اللخ الجوزا وابوسه السابعدد تعندوان الكاكد دخند والسف الهابط وافاة قبل وافاة درجته وانجان عند خوبا حان لأمز العصير اعنى ذاك دُوجه به البضف الساعدوا فخاك نسف العادم لموافاة درجته وفي للنعف الماسل بعدهاومعيلومان والمادوسط السائك نعدد وبخدعين درجتم فكك مي الخي مُن مع مع على المن العد العد المد والمل في فك نصف الله لله الأوتسى موالمنكوز فألك سف المعاد بعبده

244-247

244. Mā al-dā'ir min al-falak. When you know how many hours of the day have pessed, then if they are equal hours 135 multiply by fifteen, and are of REVOLUTION if Hindu gharis 137 by six, and if 'crooked' (unequal) hours by the number of degrees of the equinoctial contained in one-twelfth of the arc of day, the result is called the dā'ir or are of revolution of the orbit, or the number of degrees (azmān) of the equinoctial which have risen from sunrise till that time. The same procedure must be followed with the number of night hours elapsed, only if these are crooked hours they must be multiplied by the number of degrees in 1/12 of the arc of night, or which is the same thing, by those of the nadir of the day.

245. Na al-talir. That portion of the zodiac which arises on the eastern horizon at any particular time is called the sign of the ascendant or ASCENDANT horoscope, 2 and the particular degree thereof, the degree of the ascendant.

246. Ma al-buyut. If starting from the degree of the ascendant the zodiac belt be divided into twelve unequal parts, the first of these THE TWELVE HOUSES' is known as the first 'house' the second in the order of succession of the signs as the second, and so on to the twelfth which comes back to the ascendant. The degrees of any house are identical with those of the seventh from it. This process is called the equalization or adjustment of the houses.

247. Mā al-autād wa mā'ilīhā wa'l-zawā'il. Those houses which are situated on the east and west horizons and on the meridian above and below ANGLES SUCCEDENT the earth, are called the four angles or cardines or pivots (autād): the first of these is the ascendant, the second, the fourth house, also called the earth-pivot

I See fig. after 390.

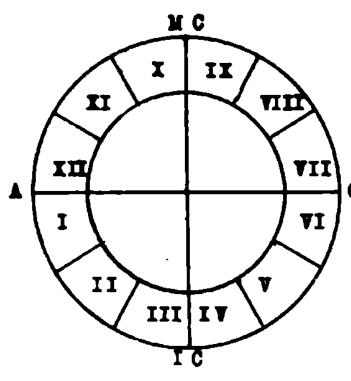
² mpg, the degree ascending - Garnett Class. Rev. 1899. Horoscope later used for a figure of the heavens at a nativity. Figs. on pp. 150, 190, 191.

The houses are twelve equal parts of the visible heavens divided by great circles passing through twelve equal divisions of the prime vertical, 223: as the ecliptic is not in the same plane they are unequal divisions of it.

ماالدابر مزلل اذكغ ف مامنوالها ذع ضرب اب كانكالماعات مستوبه فحمسة عشروان كأت ساعان عوجوفي اخالساعات نعاد المفن في في مسدس فوس في الما وازكات كمزى وهي فابق الإمام فعصد اجتمع مزجمع ذكك العاز معه مادادمزادمان معدل المهانس فطلب الشرل وفت المفروض فانكان الماضي اللبلكان الأنشاماً هُذَ الْمُ النَّ النَّالِينَ وَاللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّ لبلالنه وع الحلط يزد ذجها وكلك نعف سُدس فوس لطها فجنه الدائن مَا الطالِع مه ما وافالغوللز في ضطفيد المدو فالمرح مرح الطلاح والانجدد مندودل بعوف مفرفض البيوت نطعه الزوج نقس بالمج بشرفته أعبر منساويد بندى عند درجه الطالع على الكروج فبص المتهالاول مهاالطالع والمابدالالا بفعشر وننشاوى درجاحك بن و درجان سابعد وبمى ستخ اج ذكك منه برالب ت كما الاوكادومالمها والزوابل ماولم الطالع واللَّا بِذُومُ اللَّابِعِ وَبُعِمُ السَّاوَلَدُ الأَنْسِ والمَّالْ وَمُدَلَّمَ البَّرِيمِ

247-250

(Imum medium coelum) I.C., the third the seventh or occident angle and the fourth the tenth house or 'medium coelum' M.C. Those houses which fellow the angles in the



A. the Ascendant is at the 15t degree, cusp, of the first house.

order of succession of the signs are said to be 'mi'ill al-autad'(succedent), they are the 2nd,5th,8th and 11th, and those are ready by the diurnal movement to occupy the cardinal positions. Those which are adjacent to the angles in the contrary direction viz. the 3rd.6th. 9th and 12th houses are called Zawë'il, (cadent), because they have already been in the cardinal positions. Some people use the expression 'Saqit' for zā'il, but I prefer not to do so, as that has another meaning (inconjunct) and ambiguity is apt to arise.

248. Mā al-autād al-qā'imah wa ghairhā. The cardo of N.C. is the tenth house, if its degree, cusp, should be in the tenth sign from the horoscope the ANGLES ERECT cardines are called qā'im, erect; if in the llth, succedent, and if in the 9th cadent.

249. Mā tahwīl al-sinīn. A solar year is the period during which the sun makes a complete circuit of the ecliptic, and by universal consent of ANNIVERSARY authorities the solar year is completed by the return to the first point of Aries. A year of life (the anniversary of birth) is completed by the return of the sun to the position it was in when the birth took place. Similarly with the beginnings of other affairs: the ascendant of the time determined by the Sun's return is the ascendant of the anniversary tapul.

250. Ma al-qiranat. Conjunction occurs between two or more planets when they meet at one point within the length of a sign. The conjunction of CONJUNCTIONS Saturn and Jupiter which occurs once every 20 years is the qiran par excellence

أبساوند العادب الأام و والمالي و مراه المالية والعالم والمالية وال

250-251

'mutlaq' and is known as a lesser conjunction. If this be studied in relation to the mean rate of progress of the planets, 2 it will be found that the next conjunction will take place in the 9th sign from that in which it last occurred, and thus the situations of consecutive conjunctions proceed in the same triplicity for 12 times, after which conjunction occurs in another triplicity. For example, if the first conjunction takes place in Aries, the second will be in Sagittarius, the third in Leo and the fourth in Aries. After the twelfth conjunction has taken place which occurs in Leo, the next meeting occurs in the triplicity of Taurus, the first in Taurus, the second in Capricorn, the third in Virgo, and so on for 12 times. The change from triplicity to triplicity takes place in 240 years and is known as the middle conjunction or transfer of the passage to the new group of signs (intigal al-mamarr), while the tahwil (249) of the year in which it takes place is called the tabwil of the transfer. As there are four triplicities, viz. those of Aries, Taurus, Gemini and Cancer, it takes 960 years for Saturn and Jupiter to get back to conjunction in Aries, and this is called the great conjunction. Astrologers also make use of the conjunction which occurs between Saturn and Mars, but only in one sign viz. Cancer; this takes place every 30 years?

The expression transit (mamarr) in relation to conjunctions is not used unconditionally with transit in regard to the superior and inferior conjunctions planets, because if it were so, no inferior could be said to pass over a superior one, since its orbit is inferior, as e.g. the passage of the moon over Mercury or Saturn is absurd and impossible. However as it is constantly said that the moon passes over Mercury or the Sun over Saturn, the meaning is that regard must be had separately to their positions in relation to the mid-distance on the

l Cf. Chron. p. 91 on the connection between length of life and these conjunctions.

2 Jupiter moves 30° in a year, Saturn 12°; therefore when Saturn has traversed 8 signs from a starting point Jupiter has made a complete circuit + 8 signs. See 190. The explanation is that in 20 years Saturn traverses 2½° more than 8 signs of the zodiac, which in 240 years amounts to a complete sign. Cf. fig. 375.

عنزن من وأجع وبر الفنوان المعنواذ العنوفاله المعنوات حانالك الرح الماسع منالك فم وهنه البروج ندون على لله ونبغت مان مهاا فيعشرس مم من من من النه العيران الله من النه العالل المالية العرب المالك العالل المالية العرب المالك العالل المالية العرب المالية المالية العرب المالية المال عان فإلى والماب فالنوش والمالث الأسد والمابع فالمحل من وج من المناف وعلى المناف بهال البيكون الماج عشر إلا المديم بسعلال المُلنَةِ النُّورُ فِ الْفِرْ الْهِ لَا اللَّهِ لَا اللَّهِ النَّورُ والنَّا بِعِلْلِهِ عِالمُالنَّ النَّالِي وبتعذع والانفلاف ابتع ادنع بزسنده بمغ فزانااه شط وانفال المسويول النندالي عوفها بحواللم ومعلوم الكلياب ادبع اولماملة لكك اخعا سلالتنطاف استونا المكاحكها بالافتران في الماستون الملافران و الناسة منا المكاركة المناسقة الماستون المكاركة المناسقة الم علد اللول الجمل وكل في مام وسين من من ومرالف اللاعظم ومراجل اساوان رُطِ المرتع في معيز ومن دون بن وموالسوطان في ما المن الذي سنع إع العامان ع برَ مِن اللَّه الله والسَّف لما طلاول في الله والسَّف لم الله والله والسَّف لم الله والله والسَّف لم الله والله أغرفك أعلاكا أمرسن لأفان موفعط ارد فسلاع عبى الى رجل سنبراه بمنبع والمابوم وف مراك وعب وفائع الم فاسوضع بهما

251-252

deferent and on the epicycle. If both planets were at their mid-distance on the deferent, or on the same path on the epicycle, the one would not pass the other but if one were in the first or fourth quadrant (nitaq) of its orbit, it would pass over that which was in the 2nd or 3rd quadrant, although the orbit of the latter were above that of the former. If both were in the same quadrant, e.g. the first, that which is furthest from the mid-distance, would pass over the other which is nearest to the mid-distance. And if both were in the 3rd quadrant the one nearest to the mid-distance would pass over the other which was furthest from it. You have to imagine that both are in the one orbit, and then judge by the distance from the earth. But the knowledge of all this is a separate science.

252. Mā al-ijtimā" wa'l-istiqbāl. The conjunction of the sun and the moon takes place at the end of the month; it is called in the conjunction AND Almagest ittisāl, the degree and OPPOSITION OF MOON minute of the sign in which it occurs being called the juz' al-ijtimā", and the ascendant of that time the tall'al-ijtimā". This conjunction takes place when the moon is under the rays of the sun and is therefore invisible; it is on this account called in Arabic sirār and muhāq. Opposition, istiqbāl, occurs when the

moon is in the seventh sign from the sun, and the degrees and minutes of both are equal. This is the time of full moon, intilä, and, badr called so on account of its haste to rise at sunset, and the ascendant of this time is tali al-istiqual. The juz al-istiqual is generally understood to be the exact degree in which the moon is, but astrologers are in the habit of taking it from moon or sun, whichever is above ground.

منالع والاوسط فالمك الاوج على ويفاك الدوبرعلى فاذاحاما معافيعديهما الاوشطين سنوبا بالطريفده لممراجها فوفالاخرفاب كانابها والطافلال والرابع محادا فوقالي بجوز فالطافر الماف وانحانطه أسفل فطحه فانحاما معاف اجرولج والمكار والاول فالذبي بيون أبع وعنع بن المؤسط مللان فوف المرب وأمرا المعبى الاوسط فت انها منومان فلك واجدِ مجاعٌ منسان الع دغ الاض لعبد ف دلك عَلَمْ مَدْ في ماللاحماء والاستنفال الاجماع موافران المشروالغر فالمساروني المبطحان الأوالز الدي المساد دلك برسم والاجماع وطالع وفشعوطالع المجماع وبدور ومطالموالدوا بسبة القرعة منعاع المعتروني ويؤه المله مسواد الاستنز أدالغر فرما وبحاما كانجان نوزه والمالات فبال فهواذ اكانالغز بالبرح السابع من برج سم واجراوهمافهامنساه بإنصبم انسالالامت لاالغز فبدنو تراويبرالغ وزأالهامد ومبادرته بالطلوع عندالغ وب وطالع ومدمع طالع المستعبال فأماح وفكاز بجب والمباسر إن جن الذي فبد الفراح المنعمون عاجزوند مخ البرالذي يحد وفتنذ فوق الأنس واكاللغراو كالمش

YCan

253-254

253. Mā al-nīmburīn. When the moon is in the fourth sign from the sum, and their degrees are the same, this is the first quarter, and takes HALF-MOON place approximately on the 7th night of the month; when in the 10th sign, about the 22nd night, this is the second quarter. These are called by the Persians 'nīm purīn', half-full, because the moon appears to be cut in two. The degrees of the ascendants at these quarters are noted just as they are at conjunction and opposition.

254. Mā al-fāsīsāt. The phases of the moon are due to its various distances from the sun. As these effect changes in the atmosphere and also MOON'S crises of diseases, astrologers study them PHASES from the angles of an octagon from the position of the moon at the beginning of the disease by intervals of a sign and a helf, viz. at 45°, 90°, 135°, 180°, 225°, 270°, 315° and 360°. The phases of the moon are as follows: - conjunction and opposition, 12 degrees each side thereof, every 45 degrees and both quarters, so that the result is, taken in the order of succession of the signs, 0, 12°, 45°, 90°, 135°, 168°, 180°, 192°, 225°, 270°, 315°, and 348°.

I from \$\phi a; \cap \text{here fashIshEt, PL\$, tasishE, AB\$ ta'sIsEt, as has Chron. text p. 540, line 22, translated 'foundations' p. 542 line 15 and 447 n. as if from assass. For the same distances from the sun, Wilson has Athazer: this can be explained from Albohazen Haly VIII. 29 Basilea, 1571, where it is stated that the athazir, al-tasyIrEt (apheses for obtaining forecasts as to rain &c) must be made at these phases. Also p. 578, atezic.

ماالمبميزير موحوز الغري المرح المابع من مرح المشري الدرجاما وبوالمزمع الأول وذكك واللبلة المسابع مالعت بب من المها والتحاف الفن والذح العاشن من حالت مس من ل دجانها و وكل للف وسب في الله المانيد والعثرة زم المنفرجه أبع السابد وبشما بالعارسيد بمبن عازر بهذالفر مهار وسف جموالاي وفكالدمقطع بسف فسنضج لما الجزواطالع حمائت غرج الاجماع والاستقبال ماالعاسبسان ماجاد الغرالفرع المترسعا عده المجون وعون الهامواضع المعابر عالمع كالجفط المان وزواما المن اعظلاب الماخ ومرج مع العروابدا المرض على فالمل أرح و تصف بدون وكذا مدا من فلد المنا دكه وع ۴ شبه ۴ منسر والعاسيسان للاخون مِزل فيرحى المجلع والاستقبال والمنتلعثره وزجه فيلط إحدمهما وتعكن فضرواديعبز درجه فيل الما وبعن والرسع اللاول اللب فاذال والمتباول عَانَ لَا * مَدَ * مَدَ * مَدَ * وَلَمْ * فَنْ * فَنْ اللَّهُ * فَلْ اللَّهُ * فَلْ اللَّهُ * فَلْ اللَّهُ وَلَا اللَّهُ وَلَا اللَّهُ وَلَا اللَّهُ وَلَّهُ اللَّهُ وَلَا اللَّهُ وَلَّهُ اللَّهُ وَلَّهُ اللَّهُ وَلَّهُ اللَّهُ وَلَا اللَّهُ وَلَّهُ اللَّهُ وَلَا اللَّهُ وَلَّهُ اللَّهُ وَلَا اللَّهُ وَلَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ وَلَا اللَّهُ وَلَّهُ اللَّهُ وَلَّهُ اللَّهُ وَلَا اللَّهُ وَلَا اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ وَلَا اللَّهُ وَلَا اللَّهُ اللَّهُ وَلَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ وَلَّهُ اللَّهُ وَلَا اللَّهُ اللّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ الللّهُ اللّهُ اللّهُ اللّهُ اللّهُ اللّهُ ال مندا وعن اسمام سمع كسوف العرماهو مرابات المرابع المعرواجه والمعابع المرابع المرابع المرابع المرابع المرابع المربع المربع

255-257.

255. Kusuf al-qamar mā huwa. As the earth is a solid opaque body which vision cannot penetrate, the radiance of the sun falls upon one surface of it and the other is in shadow, just like ECLIPSE a solid body between a lamp and the wall on OF MOON which it is shining. Further as the earth is round its shadow is also round, and falls on the zodiac belt opposite the sun. Now when the moon at the time of opposition has no latitude either to north or south its face is necessarily within the circle of the earth's shadow, the earth intervening between it and the sun. The radiance which always reaches it from the sun is therefore cut off from it, its luminosity ceases, and it is said to be eclipsed. When however at the time of opposition the moon diverges from the ecliptic if only to a small extent the eclipse is proportionally partial, and if to a large extent does not occur at all.

The latitude of the moon is dependent on its distance from its ascending and descending nodes; EFFECT should it be at one of these when in OF NODES opposition or be as near it as less than 12°, there would either be no or very little divergence from the ecliptic. Its nearness therefore thereto at the time of opposition brings all or a part of it into shadow and therefore the moon is not eclipsed unless the nodes are near the sun.

may be partial or total, if the latter, it may continue for some time (delayed captivity, KINDS OF makth) or as soon as it has become entirely dark, it may again begin to appear.

وللابندج حلاف وعقالتنس علمنال ملنتاب منطلال المجتام المستند ادا وسط بزالسرح وبزالمطان التعجيم على المعاول الانضيء فطله امستدير وعلى طف والنوح وافع فمق المدالم في لم بن للمر فن المستقال عرض الجناد ضروره على أبن الطلق وسط الأس مندوب المنس وقطيت ودها عند فروى على فرعد عدى المنسا وانحاله عرض حان الكنوف وعدمذ بمنبع فاللزام والذب فبمزالات انعض المنهجون عنب بعن مزال الواللب فاذاحان عافي مون السفال الغرساً مند بأعل المناعدة عنده ورجع كالمانعين العرض فلبلد فغريب منطقد الروح وف الاستقبال مبطاعاته المستقبال مبطاعاته المبطاعات المستقبال مبطاعاته المستقبال مبطاعاته المستقبال مبطاعاته المستقبال مبطاعاته المستقبال مبطاعاته المستقبال مبطاعاته المبطاعات المب للمركسة وأالااد اكالزان الذب فرسام المنت كرانواع كسوف الفرا عكسوف الفرالمان بحوز المجرمه والماان المجرن ف كالحرمد والذي بدعون في وكلم، الماان بجونان مظ على المومرة ما و وامان لاب الذمك وليخاب المعلم بعض معمام المنوندمز الفرجهد سبرو اللخسوف ب رجه طلكان على منطف البروج مساوير لح ديدالم وموبون

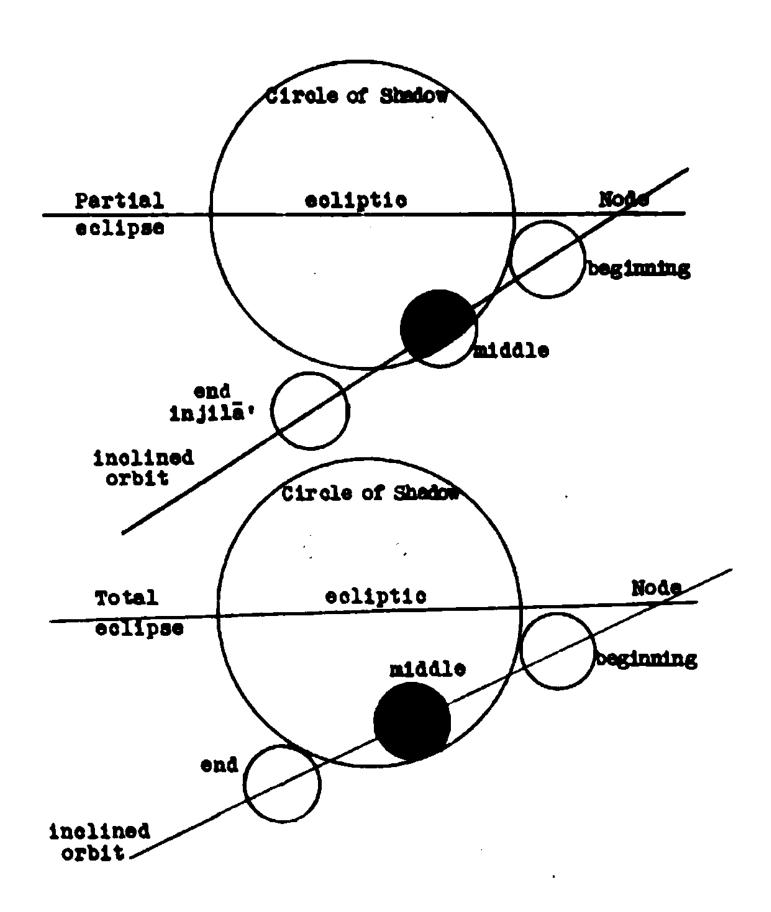
258-259

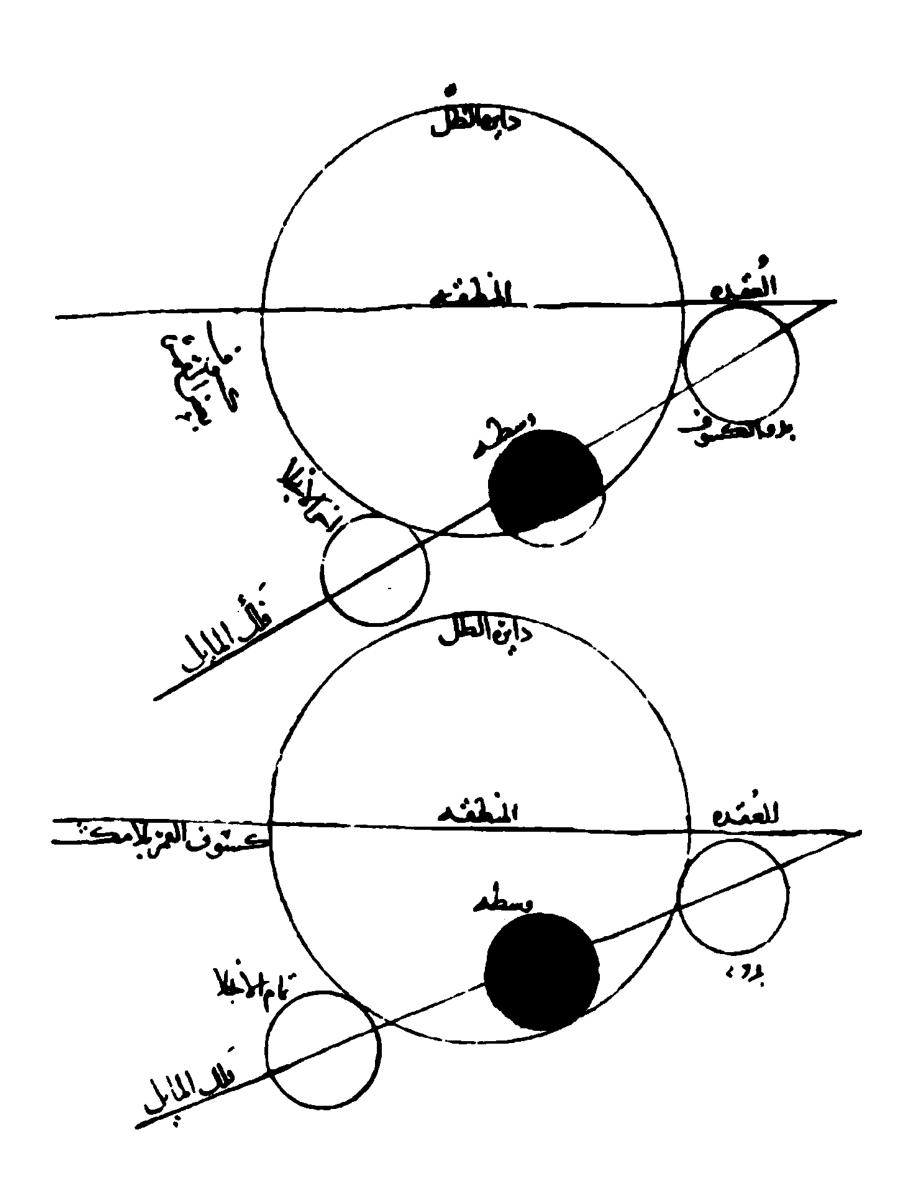
so the earth's shadow on the collectic is the same as the movement of the sun, but that of the EEGINNING moon is quicker. The moon therefore at of ECLIPSE the full continues to move through that shadow, first coming in contact with it by its eastern margin. The beginning of an eclipse is therefore from the east, either absolutely or with slight declination to north or south. Anyone who remembers this will know that the end of the eclipse will be on the western margin, the beginning of the luminosity again on the eastern, and the completion thereof uncovering, injits on the western margin.

259. Kem augit kusif al-qamar. If the eclipse is partial, three periods may be distinguished, the beginning, when a notch appears on the PERIODS OF margin of the moon, the middle, when ECLIPSE the darkness has reached its maximum (the exact time of opposition), and the end, when the moon has become entirely full again. If it is a total eclipse five stages may be noted, the beginning, the complete obliteration of its light, the middle of the delay, the end thereof, with the beginning of the illumination, and finally the escape from the shadow. The accompanying figure will help to make the matter intelligible.

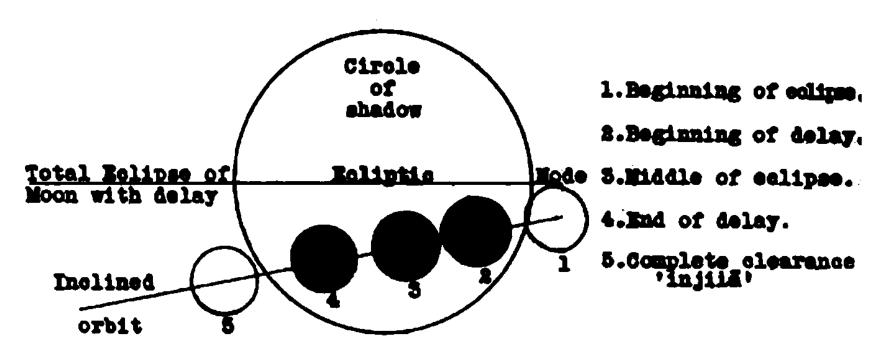
المن المل النك تستند ومعلوم ان اول ما بسل خالف اللطل م جرفدالسنسية فدوالمستوف فيساذن بجون فلجد المشرف كالملاف أيخف عِن المنتف فللكن الشال اوالمؤب ومن مورها علان علم الحسوف في الفريب في عالمع وبد وبك عالم علام المجد المنزف مرام الملام المعدب ع كراوفات في الغيز اذا لمَبِ الْصَنوف مِعْ الدم مُم المعسوف مان الهُ ملت العُات ادلماروالكسوف مطهونًا لأسلام فور البند ، ماليان وسط التعنوف وبلوغ الطلدعا بدمف إنها وذكل جفيفد فف الاستغبال والمال عام المعلاونبس ذ واذا كان المحسن، من خاله خرافنان الطابدوالكنوف ع واللاب كام الحسوف وأنسلاخ النورع الدر ومواول رمان المصد والدلك وسط الكية ف وهو ايضا وسط زمان المحت ف والرابع أخرالم عن وأول المنبلا من وأنكام تفاع الأبلاوه وعدن المناج دويعبن على ورداك ع

258-259





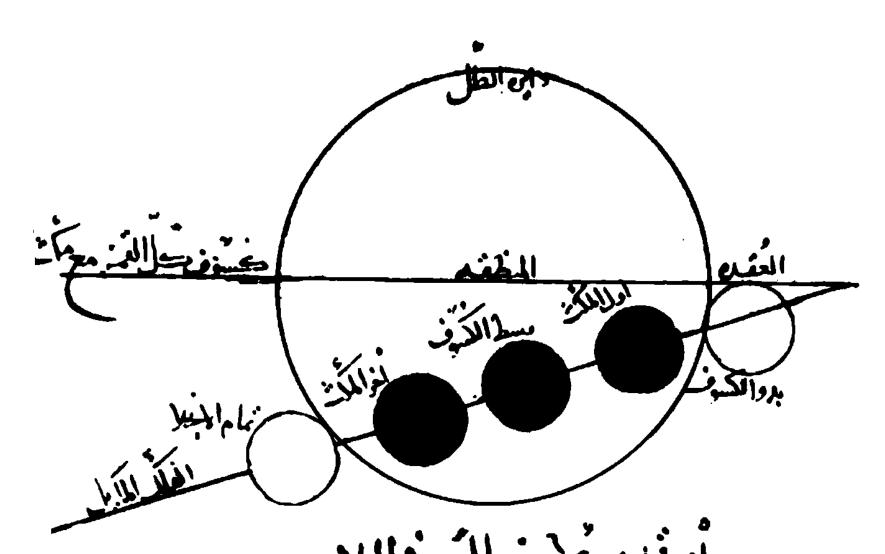
260-261



260. Hal yakhtalif kusuf al-qamar fī'l-bilād. The events of an eclipse have nothing to do with the body of the moon, consequently to all APPEARANCE AT observers its condition is in the DIFFERENT PLACES same state at the same time.

However, since the hours of the night which have elapsed till the eclipse occurs in different regions on account of the different time of the moon's rising in these, the hours during which it is eclipsed are less in one region and more in another, and the eclipse is visible in one place and not in another because the beginning of the night in different places is not the same except accidentally.

of the (Arabic) month appears in the morning as a slender crescent to the west of the sun and ECLIPSE then exhibits the same form in the evening OF SUN at the beginning of the next month E. of the sun. When however the new moon appears to the east of the sun it is obvious that it has passed by the sun. Should this passage have taken place in a position between the sun and our vision, the sun would be partly or entirely concealed from us. Consequently that blackness which we observe in an eclipse of the sun is due to the body of the moon which conceals the sun from us.



262-263

262. Fahal takhtalif dhalika fi'l-bilad. Eclipses of the sun also offer different aspects at different localities, firstly, due to the APPEARANCE AT same reasons as have already DIFFERENT PLACES been referred to in the case of the moon, (time of sunrise) and secondly, due to the point of view of the observer. (parallax) for the moon which conceals is near to us then the sun which is concealed distant. The phenomenon of the eclipse has nothing to do with the nature of the sun, but is solely due to our vision of it. Moreover the passage occurs everywhere at the. same time, but is observed at different localities at different times, and the amount of the eclipse observed at one locality is different from that at other localities, in one case the eclipsed area is two thirds, in another a half, in a third complete, and in a fourth there is no eclipse at all.

263. Mā ikhtilāf al-manzar. This is the observation of an object at the same time from different places involving different points of view.

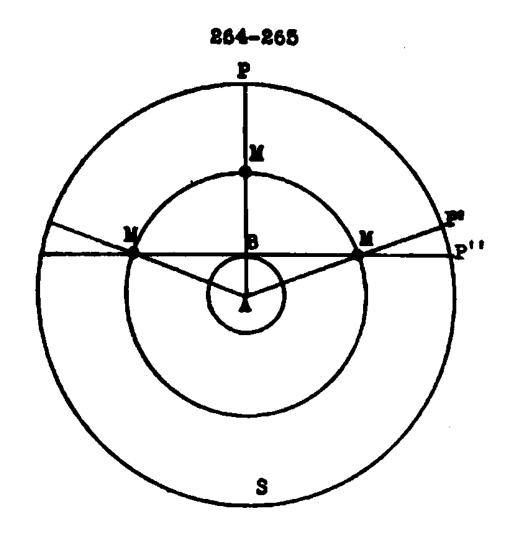
PARALIAXIS Calculations as to eclipses of the sun are made from the centre of the earth.

There is therefore only one point on the surface of the earth where the calculated conjunction will be identical with the observed conjunction. At any other point there will be a difference of time, the observation being either before or behind the calculated period.

Similarly it depends on the place of observation whether the eclipse will be total or partial or not visible. The accompanying illustration will make this easy to understand.

نوب المفترص عنم الفرالت أرام عن المعوبة ومن المعرف في المنظف في المنظف في المنظف المنظف في المنظف المنظف المنطب المنظف المنطب المنظف المنطب المنظف المنطب المنطب المنظف المنطب ا

المنظم المطرالية موروب الني بند وق واجه موضعين المنظر المنظم المنظر المنظم المنظر المن



A centre of earth. B its surface.

M Moon on its orbit.

S orbit of sun.

P Position of moon from both centre and surface of earth.

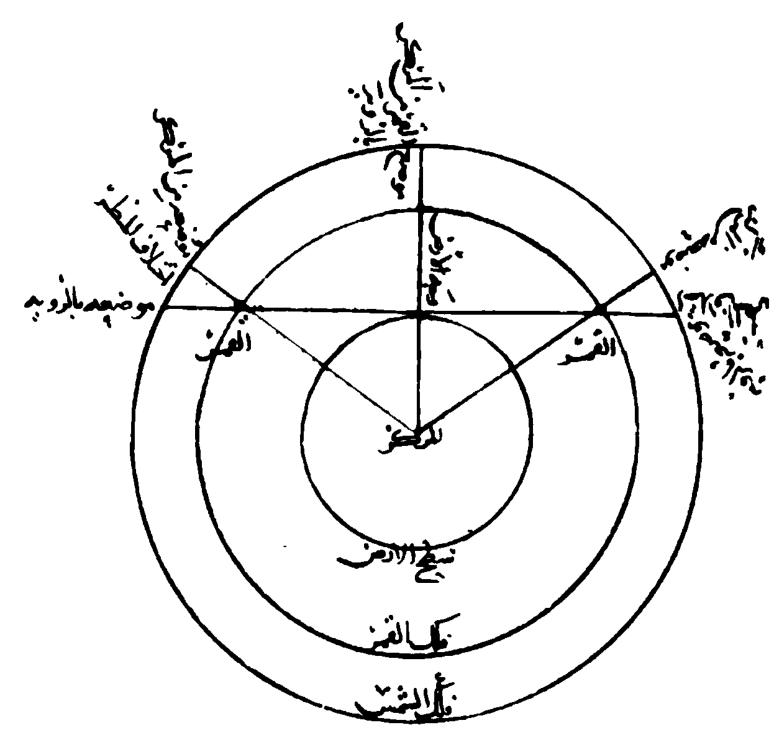
P' Position from centre.

P* Position from surface.

264. Kam augāt kusūf al-shams. Eclipses of the sun exhibit three periods, for as there is no delay, only the beginning, middle and end are PERIODS OF distinguished. ECLIPSE

265. Famin syyati jihut yakun baduhu. Owing to the moon's being cause of the eclipse and to its more rapid.

movement it overtakes the sun from the BEGINNING west so the eclipse always begins with OF ECLIPSE the contact of the moon from this quarter, contrary to what was said of eclipses of the moon, and ends by the complete clearance on the east, but there is always a slight declination from these two points of the compass.



عُم افغان كَسُون المُمْرِفَ و وَسَطَمُ وَالْمُمْرِفِ وَ وَسَطَمُ وَالْمُمْرِفِ وَ وَسَطَمُ وَالْمَالِيلَا فَمُوالْمُو وَسَلِيمِ وَالْمُعُونِ وَ وَسَلَمْ وَالْمَالِيلَا فَمُوالْمُو وَسِّمِ وَالْمُعُونِ وَالْمُو وَالْمُو وَسَلِيمِ وَالْمُو وَالْمُو وَسَلِيمِ وَالْمُو وَالْمُؤْمِ وَالْمُؤْ

266-267

wa'l-qamar yumarr tabtha. That there should be an eclipse of the sun it is necessary that CONDITIONS the moon should have no latitude at OF ECLIPSE conjunction, or so little that it comes between the sun and our vision. It is consequently restricted to the times when one of the two nodes is near, because when distant the moon cannot conceal the sun being either further north or south. The condition is the same at opposition in the case of eclipses of the moon.

267. Hel ya rid lighair al-naiyirain kusuf. Occultations of the planets and of a number of the fixed stars are occasioned by the passage of the moon, the ECLIPSES OUTSIDE SUN AND MOON? phenomena beginning on the east side and ending on the west. (You have to consider that these originate with the moon, that they occur frequently and are generally unnoticed.]P Further, planets occultate each other or a fixed star, or two planets and a fixed star may all appear as one to the observer. Of course the sun conceals these by its brilliance whether it covers them or no, but it is not affected by them in such a way that any portion of it is concealed.

268. <u>Mā al-avyām al-wustā al-mu'addalah</u>. If the sun had no eastward movement and simply continued revolving in virtue of the first MEAN DAY movement.

اعناف المشرق الغرب المعرج منهاع المترافع بما المعدم عرض لفزاه فلتدجى وسلام الك فابن استرط فالأجاء كونالوامراوالاب بغربه مطلعا عبرعبد لبسل عرض الفرعل فصوما مان البعد بزلة ابعد ملع كاجماع عظم معدارع القروذ العزالوشط الموجب لمسترالمتس محوالسمال والجنوب وحذاكر إلحار فالاستقال وازالغ والمنكشف بذدا بمآلا والدبيل الغرض عزدان الطل ملعض لغير للبريك سوف الفريكسف المسواحب المنيق وبعس المابتداد اوب مرون مهاجب ما منجع للشرق تميطه ومندمن جعفر المعزب كأماغرح مندو مالت ما مرى ذلك والمتعولجب المني ابضا بكسف بعضها بعنوب فيسف بعيرالما بدر خي بي إلى واجدوالم من من عاماله عام والمرف م بزللن في و واما يجد عبابوزب النمر فيرى معافلام مالابام الوسطى المعنى المعالم المناب أدرعا المزعد المراب المناب المراب المناب المراب المناب المراب ا

268-269

it would regain any great circle from which it set out. after having passed the 3600 (units of time) of the equinoctial. The sun however during that period moves east at its own rate of progress and only regains the circle from which it set out, whether horizon or meridian, after having traversed the 360° of the equinootial plus the amount of its movement in the contrary direction. 175. The rate of this is not uniform, being sometimes quick and sometimes slow, and in consequence of its varied character the sun does not pass all circles at uniform times. But it passes the east horizon in accordance with the ascension of the locality, the western in accordance with the descension of the locality and the meridian in accordance with the ascension in the erect sphere, for this circle everywhere on account of its passing through the poles of the universe has the equator as its horizon. So it is obvious that the true solar day is that time during which 560° have been passed according to the Sun's observed rate of progress, and that mean day is that time during which 3600 have been passed by the daily mean movement of the sun.

CHRONOLOGY 2

269. Mā al-shahr. The month is of two kinds. natural and conventional, the latter as agreed on between people. The natural month is that period of time required by the moon, situated at a particular distance from the sun east or west, to travel until it reaches the same distance. As the shape of the illuminated part of the moon corresponds to its distance from the sun, the month is that period during which the moon gains the same shape, and the same side of the sun, and has not a third time shown the same outline. People customarily speak of one of these phases as the new moon, because it is the beginning of that series of figures, and there is no other similar to it in shape and position. The period is 29 1/2 days and a small fraction; as it is impossible to deal with a month containing half a

^{1 59&#}x27;8". According to Jagmini the amount of time necessary to traverse its own diameter. Ref. p. 148.

2 Paragraphs 269-323 may be regarded as an abstract of pp. 199-334 Chron.

عِيدداب مَالْإِعادَه اللهاء من دوزان مُعدل المادعله مذلك المنابد وسنون ذماما ولعظ المنظم المنت المند والمابي في في للدونه على الدونه الما والمناف الدونه المناف المناف الدونه المناف المنا تبود الممر الممر المفارقه اسواحات المغراد عان فك سف الفاد واللسال عبرهماالابعدد وران كمناسه مسؤن زماما ورماحه ماسادته ليب مماوا برواما على المرعدوالم ودلك المت لامرعل مع الدواوع أدمندمتساويره المايمز على فؤالمترف مطلع الله وعلى فؤللعب بمعارير وعلى الس سن الهاد والله ل بالع العَلَ المُستنبع لأنعَل سن الهاد بعضل ونبع منه ممتام اجدافاف خط الاستواللرور على بعن المسلون انبع انه دال البوع المعال مودو دان طمنابد وسنبن زمامامع معالم سنهاه اللبوم الوسط محوب معدان دوت لمأرد ستوت زماما بع معالع مبيها الخراساون وسط المنمر لموع مالكسنه والشهد المالميعي المادر الإج عاما الطبع فهوعود العمز منالتم الحيب الول عقلة جهرواجن مرجع بخالمشن والمعزب ولحف استكال المؤنه جرم الفرنكون اسبد لابعاد غ المتروق خرت العاده منها والملال النكالم اللانكال وني مال وني ما المنافي المناف مسف برم ورمان على حين ولحظ من المن على المن على المن على وا

269-270

day the sum of two days, 59 days, is divided into periods of 50 and 29 days. This determination is based on the mean progress of the sun and moon or by their corrected rates of movement, for it agrees with the determination of the months by the visibility of the new moon, whether there be a succession of two or three months greater or less than the average or no. The conventional or technical month, however, is the twelfth part of a natural year as near as possible.

270. Fama al-sanah al-tabi'iyyah wa ghayrha. The natural year is defined as that period of time during which the four seasons (hot NATURAL AND and cold seasons, harvest and seed-OTHER YEARS time) are completed once. It is measured by the return of the sun to a particular point of the soliptic from which it set out: it is therefore called a solar year. Its extent is 365 days and a fraction of less than a quarter of a day as we have found, but more than a quarter according to our predecessors. The natural year being as described, its months, the twelve equal parts into which it is divided, are the solar or conventional months not the natural ones. On the other hand the conventional year is composed of twelve natural months, its length being 354 days and 11/30 the of a day; such a year is styled lunar.

مجلدالمتم نسعد وخسون ومااجدها مام اللبزيهما والاخراض سعدو عشروب بوما ودَلَكَ عِبْ سَيْرِ الْبُرِينُ لِاسط الموسط المسلمة فاما المستوالمقوم فالمهمو اذاامت علله مروبد الهلال عباماان موالا شهرب ولله مامدوسوالحالك الضدا والمالسة الاسطلاع فيه الجو من المعتبر السندالطسعيداد مافانهاع فاالسنة الطبيعة وعبرهاع السندالطبيعية فبي عبان عمد تشتم لعلى و للروالبود والموث والمسّراوينوك من عن النفر في من من من المرا المرام و منها إليها والألك نسب عزه السندالالمس فالمامندارها فهوللم إروخم مدوستون ماه كتروسفس عن الموم يحتب وجدد ماسبا وزير علبه عبد عبد وجدالا المن المن الحن المسند الطبيعة وشهرها الذي هون ف ف الما وسها اصطلاح عبرطبيح الاصطلاحد فهى أناعث زشه زاه فيسالله الطبع فنم مرم ومقدادها المنابده ادبعدوهمون بوماه فرب مرخس وم وساسماعني المعطرخوا وكبي نت بعلى المحسور في المنب و في المنب و مام المالات النب المراب الموم في الموم في المراب ا

271

271. Fa kaif tustu'mil hadha al-kusur fi'l-sinin. In the case of the solar year the fraction of a day above referred to is ignored for four LRAP-YEAR years until a complete day results, which is then incorporated into a year of 366 days. This is the custom of the Greeks, Romans, Syrians and Copts of Egypt since the time of Augustus Caesar, 1 King of Rum, and this leap-year is styled in Greek (the royal year) and the regulator (al-miqyas) and in Syriac kabishna, which when turned into Arabic becomes kabisah, i.e. filled in. The Persians influenced by the Magian religion, which forbids the intercalation of a day in the year, abandon the quarter days until a whole month is arrived at in 120 years. This is then incorporated as a thirteenth month in the year, the name of one month being used twice. This year is called 'bihtarak', but after the destruction of their dominion and religion this bibtarak has not been used. Before the time of Augustus the Egyptians allowed these quarter days to accumulate until they made a whole year in 1460 years and then deducted a year from the date, because it comes to the same thing if you deduct one year or if you add one and then reckon two years as one.

As regards the lunar year, out of the fractions of 11/30ths of a day, a complete day is arrived at in the third year, which has then 355 days, similarly in the sixth and so on, till after 30 years, and the intercalation of 11 days, the fraction has disappeared. These years of 355 days are called Arabic kabisah years, not because they are in general use in Arabia, but because the authors of astronomical tables, in which they are necessary, calculate by them.

I Chron: 33/89 refers to the fact that the Julian Intercalation was not regularly introduced till the 6th year of the reign of Augustus.

malik al-sanah for Sanah al-malik? Not in P. 3 au li qiyas P. Not in Chron. I have not found any other expression in Greek for leap-year except Bicerrov eros.

⁴ bhīrk P. and AO¹, of Chron. p. 54. bhīzk AO cf. 274 for their method of disposing of the 5 days in excess of their 12 months of 30 days each.

فبلخ بالسند حي مسعرا بإمهامكم أبدوستدو تستبن بوما و حلك فعالله ما نه ف والأوم والمترمانية نعقطمض فهاف اعتسطس فيسرما أسالره موتسمال السنداو المعباس طلحوما بنرو كيستامالك والبدوم معسر بجبسد لدا الماع الموم شعبس فهادماً ما ما وما الغرس فلم عزلم من في المحوسيد عبر المهند بوم وإجد ف الوخره المن المان تم من مع م وعسر و ا سدينه فالمهجنه والمستدخ تسبوسه وماملنع شريب وفهاالم والمدمها ونمي بك السند عب أروز اهل كل من و دوال ملي وحوال بام فاما نعيط قبال يهلن فكانوا بزهون الربع ال الجمع مندامام سندنامه ذلك فالف وارتبعابه وسنبر شندف كانوا سنعطون مزجله سيتهرسندواجه فسنوا نعِلَ لله عرب السند فعدت السندان اجع واما في سند العرفان يزخراليوم وسُديد بم ب السند المالت يومب بوي السند لماير وغس خمين بدما وبتح اسبائى تم منه و مَن الجنر البوم وسُدند المستانف في السند المسادسيه وم اخ و د و د الله الله الله الله المعسر موما عند مام لمن م وتنم كألسنون عبار العرب الأنم استعله ما أوبسنع لها ولحاها العالم المرائم استعله ما أوبسنع لها ولحاها الاعان عمام المرائع الذاب ما على سنول العرب ع

272

272. Fama al-nesi. The word nesi. means intercal-. ating or postponing, and is used in connection with the fact that the lunar year finishes about INTERCALATION ll days before the solar, and consequently the Arabic months change through all the seasons in about 33 years, any month you name occurring in any season or part of a season. The Jews are commanded by the torah (the Mosaic law) to keep both sun and moon natural; this they did by arranging a leap-year containing an additional month made up by accumulating (for 3 or 2 years) the difference between lunar and solar years, so that the year returned to its proper position after having been too far in ad-Vance; their leap-year is called in Hebrew Tibbur i.e. pregnant, because they compare that 13th month which is added to the year to the fruit which a pregnant woman bears in her womb.

The Jews were neighbours of the Arabs in Yathrib the city of the Prophet. Now the Arabs not only wanted their pilgrimage to occur in the proper month (dhu'lhijjat) but also that it should be fixed at the pleasantest time of the year, so that they might set out and find travelling and commerce easy. They acquired the Jewish method of intercalation not in any learned way, but in one suited to the people generally. It was communicated to the public by the voice of the qalammas or intercalator, a hereditary office (before the new moon, and, the calculation of the period when it was desirable to intercalate the kabisah having been carefully attended to, announcement would be made from the pulpit that such and such a month would be postponed. P) Supposing that were a sacred month, e.g. Muharram, the intercalator would say "I postpone Muharram and make this month free from obligations" so there would be two Muharrams in the year, the first free from restrictions and from war, while the second (in reality Safar) would be observed as the real Muharram. This practice was adhered to till Islam put an end to it in the 9th year of the Hijra, known as the year of the Farewell Pilgrimage, when the Prophet (on whom be peace) bade farewell to the world and to his own people.1

¹ Chron. p. 73.

فاالنسي مغالني الناخبر وذكك أنسند الفرشفة مسندالتمتر اجعز بوما النفس فكأ تدورته والعنب فيضول السنمان تربين المندوطين سندوابما سهروش مهافاة بوجد وابهسال بدوايجونيع منذوقالم الهود فالنورب باشتيل المتون والمتنز للطبعين عافاضطه الحصبر المستندم المعتم من المحتم من المرتب المرابعة وسوا كم المستدع وزاً مع بالعِبرُ مُسْمَوْن لِلْبِلِهِ بَمْ سَبِهِ الشَّهِ الدُّ الدِللَّ الدِّيمِ فَي المسْنع عِمْ اللَّهُ ا الزايره فيبطنها وتزباره مكن الشهريج دالسندالي وضيها بعيدات تقدرن مفركانالهورجاوراالعرب فيغرب مدبن السول فاناد العرب ازميك جمرة اخسب وفت والسنة وأسهلهاللسودد والجان ولابزول عنصائد معلا الحبش والعود بطريق طبل لمق بالمنبن وجع لواذك الينو متنمولات نواذنو اذكر مراس المع فكال بفال لم وسات المحم وسلم الألانم اذاذه الجنم صاذا لاول محللا والله فاعتم مالل بطل الاسلام ذكل في منع في الوداع جم سندسيدللح و وكان استعليه والغروسي المرمع الأرادس حَلَّلُ و والجرانبون المع و فن الصّابخ و مبغل الوشبين ع البعول فكالله الما الموضوع المع المع و في المع المع و في المع و المع و المع و المع و المع و في المع و المع الج لاعقى اعبم بند م والمالك فالمربكورون ارتهم م بيلكاب

272-273

Whoever desires to associate lunar months with solar years cannot dispense with the kabīsah; the Harranians of Harran and of Baghdad, known as Sabians, who are a remnant of the Greek pagans, also employ it, although we are insufficiently acquainted with their methods and opinions.

The Hindus also duplicate any month when necessary to complete the reckoning, calling the year in question malmasa, which means a year with a month to be discarded. This word is, however, replaced in the literary language by adhimasa.

272a. Ismā' al-hind lilayyām al-sab'ah. This paragraph, present in the Arabic versions and in PL', is absent in PL and PP. These Hindu names HINDU NAMES for the days of the week are names of DAYS OF WEEK planets followed by war or bara (day in composition). See India, I, 213.

Ādit Wār	Som	Mangal wär	Budh wār	Brihaspat wär	Shukr war	Sanīchar wār
Sun	1.00u	l'ars	leroury	Jupi ter	Venus	Saturn
I	II	III	IA	٧	al-jum'ah	al-sabt

273. Fa kaif asmā' shuhur al-umam. To explain in detail the various characteristics of the months among the different nations would take too long; NAMES OF I have accordingly constructed the THE MONTHS following tables which will make their names clear and easily comparable.

l See Nallino. Vol. Orient. Studies, Browne, p. 388. Not to be confused with the real Sabians ! andeans, of Southern Mesopotamia, Sabi'a, pl. Subat, Sabi'una; for an excellent description of the present day Subbi see E.S. Stevens, By Tigris and Euphrates, 1923, pp. 204-219, and not to be confused with the Sabeans, the ancient inhabitants of Saba', Sheba, in Yemen.

2 PL and PP have nagibat for baglyat.

It happens once in three years when two lunations occur in one solar month.

⁴ Mal is the pellet, fatīl, of dirt which is rolled between the palms and thrown away; mas is month.
5 Adhi, super- in composition.

مَارِّفِهِ النِّهِ فَكَانُدُ النَّهُ المَّرْالِمُ فَرَّا الْعَبِهِ الْعَبِهِ الْمُعْرِفِ الْمُعْرِفِ الْمُعْرِ مَارِّفِهِ النِّهِ فَكَانُدُ النَّهِ الْمُعْرِفِ وَإِمَّا الْمُعْمِ الْعَبِهِ الْمُعْرِفُ الْمُعْمِ الْمُعْرَفِ الْمُعْمِ الْمُعْرِفِ الْمُعْرِفُ الْمُعْرِفِ الْمُعْرِفِ الْمُعْرِفِ الْمُعْرِفِ الْمُعْرِفِ الْمُعْرِفُ الْمُعْرِفِ الْمُعْرِفِ الْمُعْرِفُ الْمُعْرِفُ الْمُعْرِفِ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِي الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْرِفِقُ الْمُعْلِقُ الْمُعِلِقُ الْمُعْمِلِقُ الْمُعْمِلِقُ الْمُعْمِلِقُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْلِقُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعِلِقُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلِي الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعْمِلُ اللْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمُ الْمُعْمِلِي الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُ

سنخ وار	ٽڪر وار	ونب وار	مرم وار	مڪل وار	سومـ وار	ارت ر ار
			~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~	4.5		
	· ¥.	1 3 3 - X-				

	Arabic Months		Pre-Islamic	 -	Jewish	<u> </u>	Hindu months			٢
		0.1	NO STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PA	_	Months	_	•	2	Conten	2
	1101	2 9		,		_		2 (23440	3 (
	are lunar.	Io	د	H	atso tunit or		s are also	10	HOUTUR	OI
	Usual order, De	Days	also luner Devs	2	Usual order Days	_	the days.	Days	are solar	7
	arrem		an ir	0	TishrI 30	<u>5</u>	Chai tra	30	H	31
					arbeswan 2	Ä	Balsakh	န	<u> </u>	8
	н	8	Kharwen 30		ເນ	5	5¢h	ક્ષ		3
	Rabl' II 2		ď		Ibath	A	Asherb	S		31
	Jumade I 3		Kanin 30		Shebat 30	ឆ	Shravan	္ဌ	Shubet	28
	f II	_		-	der	角	Bhadra	န	Ldhar	31
	Rajab		•	_	Isan	7.4	Asq.	န္ပ	NISAn	S
	En .	_			yyar	<u> </u>	Kartik	8	Ayyer	3
		_	11āt11 30		Iwan	1.08 1.08	Maree	8	Haziran	S R
	nd.				amuaz	Pas	15	စ္ပ	Tammuz	31
_	1 qidab	_	net.		۵	3	Magh	8	¥0	31
	This same		Burak 29		Ilul 29	집	Phalgun	S	Aylül	8
	They work entire		They practised		The month	The	te repeated		Shubat is	
	>		L		Which is re-			78-	the Kabisah	_ _
	T		Judging when		peated in the	8 1	stores the		month and	
	intercalate and		necessary by		Jewish leap	d1	difference be	-	has 29 days	-
	have 354 days		the position		ear is th	<u>5</u>	tween lunar		every four	_
	he year		of the moon.	_	month Ader	end	id solar year	Irs	years.	
	40		They were ig-	·	(We-adar)	18	Ø		ı	
	anī rea		nt o	_		B	ad himfas of.			
	e min e	_	caloulation.			<u>ਦ</u>	Chron. p. 371	<u> </u>		
	nasi and 254					_	1			_
•										

273

2nd column: - Chron. p. 71-2 has suwen for wangen, zabbe, 'Adil, Nefig or Nefil, Huwe' and Rannah for Warannah.

3rd column: - India I. 217 has older forms.

166

<u> </u>		******								4
	مهور		شهون		س ئور الدد		سهور	į	شهود العرب	
	المرابق		وفي	_	رغ	_	العرب دارارا		فيادسلام	
100	ونجي ا	8	فرزس	3	منيد	4			ومخزيه	7
1	سمسيدا	ردار	دابامها	2	باوتلا	T'S	فمربيا	15		9
· L			لعنا	K	للنو	7.	اسا	4.	المعدير	1
Y	١٧٩١	J	حبر	J	تثرى	J	مُويَمُر	7	المفتوم	1
J	مرزم النكاب	J	بيناح	25	هرسوز	ڪ	ماحر	ڪ	مفنر	•
Y	ڪاور	J	حرت	J	حيلو	J	حواب	J	رسعالاول	k
V	ڪابون الشاعد	J	الشاذ	26	لمنت	25	وسانا	25	أبيع الأخر	د
ع	ساط	J	شرابر	J	سفط	J	ھىر	J	باديلاول	٠
Y	لذار	J	يهادور	15	ادر	25	مبا	کے	بادياحي	9
J	نبٽان	J	اسؤح	J	ببن	7	امر	J	رُجِب	ز
У	امارد	J	خازك	25	ابر	25	Jsk	25	المعان	3
	بزنان	7	بهجو	٦	سيون	J	مائ	J	رمضال	7
Y	مئوز	L	يوش	25	يمئن	2	وعل	کے	شوال	<u>.</u>
Y	آب	Ţ	ماىھ	J	اوب	J	ورس	J	ذوالعين	یا
J	المول	し	مالخ	مكل	ابلا	4	وڪ	25	نواچه	
	خرالكت		1		العر				بسنع يزوره	
	متباط سپر		مبالكي		5,4		فالطوا		الملالدلا تشعانها	
l	سنزبع		المراجعة الم		العبور		نروبر الاعلم		سور المنه	
	وعزول		الملياب		4	.5	اد الم محوريا		وعوداتامها	
	بوما				ادازان	;	برور		446.88	

من النسيء

200	3		ran montus
are solar Days	ere solar Days	are solar Days	are solar Days
Vanwarius 51	Tath	Farwardin mah	Nuserd
rids	FEGIT 30	ArdIbahisht 50	Khur jan 30
v)		Khurdadh mah 30	
Afrilias 50	Kada 30		Bisyfik 30
Marus	Tudi 30	Murdadh mah 30	handa
Yanfus 30	Makir 30	Shahrlwar mah 30	Muzhnah Ida 30
Tulfue 31	uth	Mibr med	
Avghus tus 31	h	Aben men 30	Aban 1
birus	kdn	Kdher meh	J'ugh
brius	āūnī	Del man	rűgb
rus	•	はない	
	ahsurī	dan dan	Khashum 30
February has 29	The five extra	The Kabisah by turns	The five following
Lego	s form	in these months. The	(lewand)
1ke Shubat	month a	Ve 'sto	•
beginnin	0	mustarigan in excess	Kabisah in one of the
the year 18	are oa]	of 360 are now in-	12 months.
Н		serted after Aban.	
-	(enaronéva:)	Schram says until	
		herea	
		f year bu	
•		Truni wrote in 388 yad	
A	2 - 20 7 3	PORT PORT A TANK	TAL AND AND A SANT

End column: - v. Ch. p. 59. In nos. 2,9,10,11 the f represents p. Both AO and AOI have the modernized names interpolated: -Túth (Ighmans), Babah, Hatúr, Kiyak, Tuba, Amshfr, Barmahat, Barmudha, Bashans, Baunah, Abib, Misrá, See Lans, Manners & Custums Mod. Esth column: - Follows Persian Custom, the beginning of the year is the 6th of Farwardin viz. Khurdadh. v. Chron. p. 56.

AO¹ has also p. 65 a marginal note on the Armenian months. These are solar and the year has 365 1/4 days. Each month, has 30 days except the last which has 35, and in a special year 36.

I. Nafserti (Nauruz); 2. Huri; 3. Sahmi; 4. Dari; 5. Kaghus; 6. Arāns; 7. Pahiki; 8. Arīk; 9.
Zakhānī; 10. Māridi; 11. Mārkās; 12. Harūr of. Encycl. Brit. VI. 316 and Schram, Chron.

Leipz, 1908 p. 175.

Tafeln

عدداناته	شهوز المنتفد و سط شهه		شمتيه	عدالأمد	ومي مبليد	×	ممتيد	العاد
					<u></u>		بحادبوس	
					استنسادها والمستدا		مزارس	
ل	سن	J	حردادماه	J	اموب	צ	ماربلوت	7-
C.	ب	J	نبسو ماه	J	ڪاوي	ل	اوْلموٽ	3
ر	أساحدا	J	مرداد ماه	J	حلوشا	L	مابوت	٥
	معما	J	سمريز ماه	J	ماڪير	ل	مو نبو ت	9
	وعنات	J	ممزماه	J	المون	X	تولموش	;
	としり	J	المانهاه	J	نبوت	Z	اغنلوس	2
J	وو ع	J	اذزماد	J	واحون	ل	المهرب	٦.
ل	مثابيع	ل	دی ماه	ل	فاوية	7	اعترجوس	1
ل	رشد	ك	بعمي ماه	ل	افعی	ل	والمربوس	ابا
	خشرم		اسفدارمزاه	<u>ل</u>	مهسورک	<u> </u>	دوفله ي	<u>ب.</u>
	المرسر اللواجه		المصندل	•	للمسد للولجو	1	شهرالكبتد	
	في خراسند		المالية		في العراسية أكد الدعم ال	 } 	مراربوس معشاط ا	
	والعلام جماء السهد		المسترا	1	وسماء مسا	•	لبوالا	
	النّا سد		معراناهاه		شهر ثلاث عنز ا		النفخك	

274

274. Ay hadhihi al-shuhur tattafiq awa'ilha. The Jewish and Arabian months are equal, and there is no

WHICH MONTHS CORRESPOND
AS TO BEGINNINGS

difference between them except for one day occasionally on account of religious considerations among the Jews.

But the same name would not be applicable to these months, because the Jews intercalate and the Moslems do not. Similarly the Hindu months are of the same nature as those of the Moslems and Jews and their beginnings nearer to the latter as they reckon from the time of conjunction of the moon. The Hindu and Jewish months also correspond for two or three years until ad, himses is made, when they become different, after which they again correspond for two or three years until the next ad, himses. So the months of the Hindus do not coincide with those of the Arabs, while they do from time to time with those of the Jews, but not invariably on account of the intercalation being carried out in different years.

On the other hand the Syrian and Greek months do correspond both as to number of days and name for name, only the beginning of the year is different, the Greeks

taking from Kanun II.

The beginning of the Egyptian year coincides with the Persian month Dai, and from this point the months correspond till the end of Iban when a difference comes in due to the fact that the Persians then make their intercalation of five days (not as belonging to that month as some people think) and the Egyptians at the end of the year. The last Persian Kabisah, bihtarak, cocurred in the month Iban, and the five supplementary days - called andargahan - lawahiq A are inserted after Iban, as an indication of the month which was last duplicated as bihtarak.

The beginning of the year and the first month of the Soghdians (who are Magians of Transoxania) is on the sixth of the Persian FarwardIn, from which point onward the two calendars progress regularly to the end

of the year.

l p omits Aban. 2 Fills lacuna in Chron. p. 55.

أجهل المنهو أسفو أوليلها الماشه و داليه د فانعا توافق فالمف درسهو ذالعن والمخالف اوابلها الإبوم فيعن الحوال المسباب في علم ولكفالائلام فحالاسا عاساعبرم وسهون الهودم وسدوة وكالكشه ذالمندمع شهه والعزب والأزال منعدماه ابلهاالاها عجسوب من اجناع البرن بهورالمن والادم شهورالهموود بالخلف شهرلسب حبسر الجدى لفنز فبن تم بعود الله الله ع والمالسة والمستطابور فالعامط بعدالله و الروم والأبخلف شيمها عبرمب والسندفان الروم بجبله ندكانه زالخر ٥٠ واماالة بيذ مان واستهم توافي الديماه مِن فيه والعنوس مُ مُطابع السُّور الماخ المانعاه وتعلف فبماجره فستب اختلاف موسيج اللواج ومفا ولمستر جلدابان ما و ساندالع الع المدوانا في موضوعه بعين لاز لحر جابرالع أس كانوابنيه بهابع يكل شهر لدنو بمالي بند واما بنو التغدف الما يزالبه والسادب فزوزدناه تم يستمز منيدالي اخترهاع هلينعب مفاربستهول ليهور الشدعدم فأالالاستنال ايانه موق الي بجوز فها كالواحين مرحشون فحسلبو الصبر كالحد

275-276

275. Hal yataghayyar maqadir shuhur al-yahud. The Jewish year is of two kinds ordinary bashita i.s. basIt and leap ('ibbûr i.e. Kabisah). and each of these has again three LENGTH OF JEWISH MONTHS varieties; 1/ hasarin (haserah) or deficient, 353 days, in which Marheswan and Kisliw have only 29 days, 2/ shalamin, (Shelemah) complete or rather redundant 355 days in which both months have 30 days, and 3/ kasdaran (Kesidrah) or intermediate, 354 days, where they are as in the table, Marheswan being deficient and Kisliw complete. The variation of these two months is necessitated by the fact that the first day of the year must not be on a Sunday, Wednesday or Friday. No other month departs from the number set down.

276. Fakaif yuwafiq shuhur al-hind shuhur alqamer. The Hindus have days of different lengths 1/ suryamana or the solar day, 1.6. CORRESPONDENCE 1/360th part of a solar year, 2/ chandramana, or the lunar OF HINDU AND day (tithi) i.e. the 1/360th LUNAR MONTHS part of a lunar year, 3/ nakshatramana, measured by the mansions of the moon, i.e. the time spent in each of the 27 mansions, and 4/ sabamana (savanamana) the time between two sunrises. This is the generally recognized day, the people's day. To any one who knows about solar and lunar years it will be obvious that the solar day is longer than that between two sunrises and the lunar shorter.

What has been said above with regard to the length of a lunar month means 29½ days as determined by sunrises, but with regard to Hindu months of 30 days, as in the table each of these is the 30th part of the interval between two mean conjunctions.

منها أنبده عِشْرُون وما ٩ والناجذ شلابم اي معدولو من زايوليكان المنزوج للموعون فبمك والمدين المفرز المذعور في المألم في الم والمال كتعدا فالمحتلا على ألما وعلى لمرسى مان فهاع الوميع الذي للوول المض بلوه مام وهدن المزمزجه وانتم الإبجودون ان بحوزا والسنهم وواجوولانو وادبعا ولأبوم جمجد فاسك والمهون فانمالا مغبر عرجالماع فكف وافق منه والهناسة والغزواجد فهاملة زيهما المندب بنجله البوم على مقادر فنهاس البوم التمتي مغياة بجزم خطف إروس بخدا من سنوالمشروم المدرمان ومالبه مالغزي ومح المعناه جرم فلنابدوس بخرام سندالغ ومنها بكسزان ومن فطع القرننكا واجديز ضاذلها أستبعدوالجشرون ومهاسا رمان فعوالبوالطلوعب واللنبان بدفيع لوم اللبوم المتنزير على الطاوي والليوم العزي فيعرف الطلوع بالذي دكوما من مؤراد المهز الغري المدنسيد وعشرون بوما ونصف وهوالابام الطلوعيد والدي دحرماه بالمرول هوالإمام العرب لانها جزومن للنمابن الجناء بالأوسط في المنهو إسابي المندلمراسا بالامام ومدبع نعزبوالأبزغم عندم الملابحه وكألك

277

277. Hal li ayyan al-shuhur asami. The Hindus have names for each day, and the guardians of these are the Celestial beings, daiva, who are their NAMES OF angels. Similarly the Soghdians and DAYS OF MONTH Khwarismians and the like have names for each day of the month but these are not very well known, and become rapidly altered by frequent copying. Philologists have succeeded in tracing an Arabic name for each of the thirty days of the Arabic month, but these are not known to the desert Arabs, they are not current, it is an effort to remember them and indifference with regard to them is obvious. Among the peoples of the earth the use of names for the days of the week is general, and differences tend to disappear, but the Persians do not use this method; they have a

separate name for each day, and they regard these names

accompanying table.

as those of God and the angels." They are set down in the

Names of the days of the Persian months. 11. Khur. 21. Rām 1. Ahunawadh) l. Hurmuz 2. Fahman 12. Mah 22. Badh 2. Unitervach) 3. Astendarih 3 3. Ardībahisht 13. Tir 23. Dai-ba-4. Shahrīwar . dIn 14. Jush 24. DIn 5. Isfandarmadh 15. Dai-baashatra) 5. Vahisht) 6. Khurdadh mihr 25. Ard 7. Murdadh 16. Mihr 26. Ashtādh 8. Dai-ba-17. Srūsh 27. Agman ādhar 18. Rashn 38. Zamyadh 9. Idhar 19. Farwardin 29. Mirasiand 30. Anīrān. 10. Aban 20. Bahram

Read lam for thumma.

The first seven are devoted to Ahuramazda and the six Archangels, Ameshaspentas, and the remaining 25 to Angels, among which the names of the Sun, Moon, Mercury (11,12,13) and Mithra (16) may be recognized.—These are worshipped in the Yashta which correspond to the names of the days - (Haug. p. 194 seq.) The names of the five supplementary days given above may be traced in the five Gathas (1.c. 142 seq.)

- 1. Ahunavaiti -
- 2. Ushtavaiti
- 3. Spentamainyu
- 5. Vohukhshathra -
- 5. Vahistoisti

Nos. 4 and 5 transposed in the Tafhim.

sharif mahmoud

المنظلة مع المرام واسالم ولحده البت بمشون وبيري في ادها بالذي مرا المنظلة والمائد من المنظلة والمائد وعرف أما والمنظم المائد المنظم المائد وعرف أمال وعرف أمال وعرف أمال والمنظم المائد وعرف أمال وعرف أمال والمنظم و

كلساالمشترفع	العلا	د. الاسام	العاد	الاسامي.	العيد	الإيامي	العدد
المسود	1	زامر .				عومود	
•						بعن	ب
اسود		دسواب					.2
	•	د ن.	ڪ	حوس		تهون	د
اسمدد		رادد	ڪ	دمهر	*	استندادمذ	8
	6	استاد	2	مهسن	امر	خرداد	9
	2					مرداد	
		راماد	3	ازننی	3	مادز	2
***			وسققسوا		_	ادز	
		المان	J	يعثرام	دع	المات	<u>ک</u>

278. Kaif suniy ha'ula'i al-umam. From what has been said above in regard to months, intercalation and leap year it is clear that there are two kinds of year, solar and lunar, and YEARS OF that of the latter there are two THE NATIONS varieties, the first, simple, formed of 12 months such as the Moslems and Turks and orientals use, each having as a mean 354 days, but occasionally 353 and 355, this excess and deficiency being outside the control of man. The second, that where intercalation is practised, and 13 months result as is the case with the Hindus and the Jews as well as the Greeks in ancient_times and the pre-Islamic Arabs (and Kafirs)P. On the other hand the solar year has 565 days and a fraction which is nearly a quarter; it is employed by the Greeks, Syrians, Egyptians, Persians and Soghdians, but these differ as to their method of dealing with the fraction.

well-established at which something has taken place, knowledge of which has reached and been parts diffused among the people, such as the formation of a new religion or sect, or some occurrence in a state which, like a great battle or a devastating hurricane, has arrested attention to such an extent that it is taken as an artificial point of departure from which to reckon years, months or days, so that whenever it is desired, the amount of time which has since elapsed can be known, or the relative dates of events fixed whether before or after.

which separate recurrent events, like the 35 years required by any lunar month, a Muharram in the beginning of spring, for instance, to regain its former position in the

كف سوهولا الامهمذاطا مناعد ، وحرسونه وفكوالمنع السجانروج لكانالسنة اماقم والماشسية والغرس المامسيطه التي ينشف البسيعله المسلمون الأكر واكمشرقوف ومغرائف الاوسط للما المواديع وتحبسون بوما و دما بنعوط و خمسور موما حسد وخمس بغرغ بر تمدين سعلم لذاك والماسنوة لمنعشر شراوالإن سعلهام المند والمهودوالكرك والمترفون البرنان فالغرم والعرب فحابالمله والمالسنه النسيدفان ابأمهاملما بروخندوسة نبوما وكسريوم فيارب الربوستها الأومروالسرمابيون المبط والفرس والسغدو الملبخلفون مزاه لعرف المسترالمذكوت وطريق للافد بهاحافرمناما المواتخ النازع وفت بالزمان منهود فد طن فيدماا سُنَعُرُدُ وعن فرامد إوام منطق ملذ اوجروت دولد اوجرب عظبم اوطوفان ببدوانناله بسيغ كألاف الخف الزمان كالمداو وسعاد بعدالسون والمهور والمام منه الحوف مغروض يعليه مفادر المدد وحسرما بن على الذه ما تعزل المنها ما الاحوال الأواز عينه ن معادم العدد بعود فيها المرما الي المربعيند شاللة والله بندائي بعرد فيها المنه و المائي بعد وفيها المنه و المائي بعد المائي بعد والمائي بعد المائي المائي بعد المائي المائي المائي بعد المائي المائ sharif mahmoud

280-280a

seasons of the year, or the 30 lunar years required by Saturn to make a complete tour of the ecliptic, or the time required for disposing of the fractions of a day which occur in every year.

Again when the number of years in an era becomes high, cycles are used like knots in a resary (such as decades and centuries) together with the remaining units.

280a. Mā tawārīkh al-umam. The Mussulman era [Al-Hijra] dates from the year [16 July 622 A.D.] when the Prophet (God be gracious to him and give ERAS OF him peace) removed, hājara, from Mecca THE NATIONS to Medina: its years are all lunar. That of the people of the Book is the Greek

one known as the era of Alexander, although it is from the beginning of the year when Seleucus was appointed King of Antioch [1 Sept. 311 B.C.]. Christians employ in it Syrian or Greek years, while the Jews use their own luner years with the necessary intercalations, and the Harranians, who call themselves Sabians have oustoms similar to the Jews. Other eras are known to the people of the Book such as the creation of Adam (on whom be peace), and the deluge of Noah (on whom be peace), the drowning of Pharach (may the curse of God be upon him -) P the erection by Solomon (on whom be peace) of the temple in Jerusalem, and the destruction of that temple by Nebuchadrezzar (Bukhtinaşşar), but there are controversies about these, consequently it has been agreed that the era of Alexander is most satisfactory by reason of the fewer difficulties attending it, and the smaller number of years involved.

During the ignorance the Arabs reckoned from celebrated battles among themselves, and before the Hijra, the year of the Elephant when the Abyssinians coming from Yamen to destroy the Karba were routed and in which the Prophet (the blessing of God be upon him) was born.

The Persians have been accustomed to date from the beginning of the reign of their reigning king, and on his death to use that of his successor. At the time their empire was destroyed they were dating from Yazdigird bin Shahryar, ibn Khusra Parviz the last of the Khusraws, the years being without intercalation [and bihtarak.] The majority of the Magians date from his murder 20 years after his accession.

I The Harranians were entitled as Gnostics to call themselves Sabians, Pedersen, Browne, Vol. Orient. Stud. p. 381.

Murdered at Merv. A.D. 651. Era of the Zoroastrians; of. Chron. p. 138. The Parsees date from his accession 16th Ame 652.

وماللان تندقه الع فهابود زبل فك الزوج ال كاند وتعلى المعدد المابع ملابامها مشنوالوادم الخاص تناسيعل مالادواد ليسعون لماكالينود ومابغ مهاحكالباد مأتوات كالمتمان خالسلبن كالسنالج معداللدند، معوعلى المنزالغرب المنطعه + وما دنغ المالل عاب عوانع البوابون فالسندالي فردمها شواوقر كالساطا حبد الكل وانكا بهرف بالمستخدد والما المسادي فبسنجلونه المون الون اول الروم والماللهود بنت بجلوم بسنهم الغن المنتوب وعلى تنالوا بوالمبرو بزالياب ولأمالك أوادع اخوطافادم م مطرمان وع وعف فرعف با سبها للبحاد عزب عندسراباه الاانم وبهاوا بنهم لمونط لكب سنجاد ماخلاف بنهم فبروهوا فلعدد المغي أديع الاستعداد وسعات البعرب في الماسع بودخونا بإماله عابع المسهور وبنهم وقباللبن حانا وبغم بعيام الغيالذ بأعاك الدب المسدالوادد فرالم لفزب المصب وفدولا المنعلاله عليدم وتعاله لفادير عضانوا ابام دعلتم بونيون بابام الملك العبابم فيهم فأداماً فالنحاه بابام مِن عام بعين وبعدد في اب دولهم و دخو المبنوالي لل مها برد جرد ب مهراد بن عرب اروب وموانو ملوكمون عدوف سنتم عرم عوس

sharif mahmoud

280a-281

The Egyptians on the other hand date from Bukhtinassar the First (Nabonassar), a practice which Ptolemy followed in the Almagest in determining the mean motions of the planets, while in regard to the fixed stars he dated from Antoninus the then King of Greece. At the present time, however, the modern Egyptians who intercalate along with Rome date from Augustus the first of the Emperors. In astronomical books the era of Dicoletian is always found. He was the last of the pagan Emperors of Rome; after him they became Christians.

Among the Hindus many eras are in use, some old, some new. The best known and most current of them is shekekalar which means the era of Shaka, that man who became victorious and all-powerful at that time, and tyrannized over the people; when they killed him they made this era from the year of their delivery from him.

Necessarily every nation has one or more eras; they are only of two kinds, either knowledge of them has reached us or not. However this is a long story, and has been dealt with more conveniently in another place.

281. Fahal yurlam mabain hadhihi al-tawarikh. In comparing two eras, if the words year and month are used, it is necessary to remember that these terms do not necessarily mean the same HOW TO COMPARE period; there is however no ambiguity THESE ERAS with days, and so in the accompanying table in 'mimber' form the number of days in each era till the succeeding one is set down, and these numbers are added together so as to show the entire number of days in any era till the beginning of any other deen to the Persian era. This table is extremely accourate and very useful to any one who wishes to translate from one era to another, if he associates the data with years and months in the manner which is necessary.

The Era of Diocletian [beginning 29 Aug. 284 A.D.] was adopted by the Copts as the Era of the Martyrs - shuhada! - although his edict of persecution was not issued till 303 A.D. of. Chaine, Chronologie p. 14. 2 The time (Kāl) of the Shakas (Seythians) who accompanied the Parthian invader, Nahapana, who reigned from 78 to 125 A.D. The Era much used by Astronomera, begins in 78 A.D.

واحتاليس وزخون سلاك زدجود وموبيد ملحد بعبشرب سند والمسكة العن ما مذفير لل بما رخوا بعشن المادل وبعل بعلى بالطلوس في عيساب ولمنكئ أوسالا السحاجب وفيالسوليب المابئة يستعلل تع انطباس مك الدم بذونماند واما الجنوب منه الانصيب وزالت بن عاله ومفادعهم بمفتطرك العباص بوجدبة حثب للجؤم اديخ وفلطبا وترماك الأوم وهو أندك عنهم مسربعاه ملحوء والمند دوادح كبن بعينها ماريد وبعينها جربيدوالمشعون فابنتم شكاره فت سيع متعانعذا منعلباً فارخوابقله والمعالدان لحظامة مادنيااو تواذعوه لماأميلات للبنااب اوها واماات لواساك بديدل نعد منها ما فرانيها ، فعل علماً برقع الواريخ ع الددالي فبااذ اعبرعنا بالمسنون المنهور استعاماً الانالسنوالسهور عنابا ملذاذع كالإم كالكزفها علمالالكام ستعصد لجير المتنب فالوادع معصب مابزل بالتواديخ مرالامام فيجدول المنبرة البي المنتزك لمعلط بمزعلى على المعدوما انفعه وكالسند المعال سقواج الموادع بعد

282

of the various peoples are different, so the special days which

they observe as feasts or fasts are also practise and practise various customs transmitted from their fathers or belonging.

to their religion or sect. In the latter they are looking forward to future rewards in accordance with the commands of the holy law which explains the virtues of such days, or else, on account of events evoking anguish and grief which by common consent are held to have occurred on these dates, keep strict fast therein.

Of such special days another kind is characteristic of Christians who on these pray in the churches to their saints and martyrs, and desire to approach them for intercession.

As the year is divided into seasons, if it is a stable year the festivals fall naturally into these at a definite time of the year, but if it begins

(Nabonașșar)	
--------------	--

Bukhtinaşşar in sach year 365 days	Greek year from Tishr! I	Augustus Roman year from	Antoninus Roman year	Diceletien	A.H. Lunar	
159101	365 days 1/4	Kānun II	from	Roman Year from	Year from	yazdigird ¹
262195 322824	103092 163725	365 days 1/4 60651	355 days 1/4	Kānūn II	Muharram	Persian
376516	217415	114325	55692	365 days 1/4 125286	containing 354 11/50	Year containing
499802 50 3425	340701 344324	237609 2412 32	176978 180 6 01	126909	3623	365 days

I This is the lower half of the table in Chron. p. 133, with the omission of the Era Diluvii, Era Philipii and the Era Murtadidi. The uppermost figures indicate the number of days in each Era until the beginning of the next; the vertical columns, the addition thereto of the lengths of subsequent Eras, while the lowest row shows the number of days from the beginning of each Era until that of Tazdigird.

The accepted dates for the beginnings of the Bras in this table are:-

1448275 p. 19 Number of days ac 26 Feb. 747 B.C. 1. Nabonasser 27 to Schrem p. MINII 35 from 4718 B.C. the 1607709 * 1 Sep. 511 B.C. 2. Alexander 1711241 " 27 B.C. 14 Peb. 5. Augustus 1771518 " 36 date to which he 25 Feb. 138 A.D. 4. Antoninus 1825030 " 39 has carried back 29 Aug. 284, A.D. 5. Diocletian 1948440 " the Julian 46 16 Jul. 629 A.D. 6. Hijra 1952065 " 11 reckoning. 16 Jun. 632 A.D. 7. Yazdigird

Deducting the first day of each Era from that of the succeeding one we have the lengths of the Eras in days.

	a/o to above	a/c to TafhIn	e/o to Chron.
1. Nabonaşşar	159436	159101	159101
2. Alexander	103532	105092	104794
	60277	60631	58805
3. Augustus	53512	55698	55643
4. Antoninus	125410	125286	121459
5. Dicoletian	3623	3623	5625
6. Hijra	503790	505485	503425

وبعط أنعيب شهورما المام مجلومه فنها اعباد بنرج نبها ويطهرون أكزب وبرينون برسوم منهومه لماامآموز وتعريزال لافي والماماخ فأمر المندع والجلده مغاسبام برغب والنواب المامزاوا مرشرعبدامات عضبابلها وأمآرز انثا ولهور بوجند عوند بنوسلها أداماذكادبك والسادي بنعزوز تغدا ويتزبون بم وسلل مَن ألايام من صول السند بحرّبط كألّب المستدفي فسهامان كاشاه كالمستدفي في المسول الالالم larack Lablah 4 M 1424 17 17 17 17 8-49- 1.1 44 14 11 14-18 1404814 1 - 1707 [-0 Vol] + 1710 [1 41- 1-41-1 11-4-1 1-4-1 1-4-14 BOTELS

sometimes later and sometimes earlier with regard to the seasons as is the case with the Jewish and Hindu years,

then the feasts change also.

Those people who have a stable year have also festivities of another kind, namely those in connection with agriculture, viticulture, planting and sowing, harvest and breeding, also with the atmospheric signs such as heat, cold winds &c which form a normal series in such a year. Those communities have similar festivals whose year is movable, for an earlier or later beginning is not such as to make an appreciable difference.

283. Mā al-fish fī a'yād al-yahūd. Of the Jewish festivals Passover, fish (for pesakh), 2 is the 15th day of Wisan, and is that day on which the JEWISH Children of Israel fled out of Egypt, were PASSOVER delivered from bondage, and made sacrifice as they were commanded. It is the first of the seven days of unleavened bread during which it is not permitted to the Jews to eat or to keep in the house leavened bread. On the last of the seven days Pharaoh was drowned in Bahr Suf3 the Sea of Quizum, and that day is known as al-kass.

284. Ma al- ansarah. The sixth day of the month of SIwan is called vishrat from their assembling together, rassara, rassereth, and is one of the CONGREGATION Jewish pilgrimages: it coincides with the ripening of the crops.

285. Mā al-kibbūr. Kippūr is the tenth day of Tishrīn, it is sometimes on this account called 'āshūrā' ('āssūr). The word kippūr in ATONEMENT Hebrew means expiation of sins or atonement; fasting is obligatory on this day and non-compliance is punishable by death. The fast lasts for 25 hours beginning (half an hour)P before sunset on the 9th and ending half an hour after sunset on the 10th when fast is broken. Kippūr must not fall on Sunday, Tuesday or Friday.

I Chron. p. 268 seq.

² MS has fasth by mistake and P sin for sad.

³ Cf. Nall. I. 177. PP has sdb, PL suwais. 4 As in AO; Kabas AO¹; al-makas, Chron. p. 275 and 452; rakas, PP. absent PL.

⁵ cf. the 'ashura of Muharram, 301.

بهالسناهان مائد أبتد ببت وعن مجهادان المسند مسطري بالفدع من والناخ لخري كسي المهد والمندا صفرت الايام بحسب المطابا والذبن نوهم لمبتدايا ماخرجيله فائت المريرج والبذر والعرس وللجساد واللعاح والمنال وعالم والرد والراح وتسارا المعبية الموالي بحونطاما ب المنداعة الوجود وهابساك الكلائن بنبط وبسنوهمان ليعرمه مالا خوالما خطه زلائي مااع الاستر في اعباد البهود الموه الكاس عنس من في الله والموه الذي فرح فيد المنوابل من منهما أبري علموام العبودية وفريوا القرابن حاسل لمرومواول سبع الم متراله طير الإبر دام فهاا كالحيرولا استعد في الربل فليوم البوم الاحرمهاع وعورع بجرسوف وهوالمنازم ويعف كالليوم بالمصس ماالعيم اليوم السادس سونة عسرما مستومال المعاء وموج يزخوج المهود لاذراك الغلار ما الحيثبور موالبوم العاشم تشرى ولمذارعا سم العاشون الأنوب ممذاالبوم فقط عوالذى فرع إليهود مومدوالف اعلى المرفع المعو مخسد وعشر في المعد بنبدانها فلغ وب المتن البائع وبمنم

a shady place: this, the feast of the Tabernacles
(Sukkoth), lasts for seven days beginreast of ning on the 15th of Tishri, during which
the Jews are commanded to live under the
shadow of booths constructed of reeds,
willow and clive branches, and are forbidden to live under
a roof, in order to commemorate the cloud which the Lord
commanded to shade them in the desert of Al-Tih.

287. Mā 'arābā. The last day of the foregoing feast is called (in Hebrew) 'ārāb, which means a willow (A. khilāf, P. bīd); it is the 21st day of WILLOW Tishrī and is also a day of pilgrimage.

288. Mā al-tabarrīk. Tabarrik, the feast of
Benediction, occurs two days after
BENEDICTION Faraba.2

289. Mā al-hanukkah. The feast of Hanukkah or Dedication lasts for eight days beginning from the 25th of Kislew. On the first night they light one DEDICATION lamp at the door of the house, on the second two, and so on, till the eighth when they light eight lamps. This is to commemorate the fact that a certain king oppressed them, and deprived brides of their virginity before they went in to their husbands. Then there were eight brothers who had a sister who was asked in marriage, the youngest brother from a sense of honour dressed himself as a woman, went in to the king, killed him and by his action purified Jerusalem.

290. Ma al-buri. Purim which occurs on the fourteenth day of Adhar and is also called the feast of Megilla, derives its name from the casting of lots. Its PURIM origin is as follows: Haimun wazīr of Ahashwīrus or Kisra was badly disposed to the Jews then captive in Babylon, and plotted to extirpate them. The order however recoiled upon himself, he was killed on this day and orugified. The Jews therefore on this day (Baimun sur (feast)P) hang and burn him in effigy, expressing their joy. l 'araba means a desert plain, and is translated bride in PR 2 Chron. the day after. 3 The root means dedication, not purification (tanzif). Really to commemorate the re-dedication of the Temple by Judas Maccabaeus after its pollution by Antiochus Epiphanes who had set up a pagan altar there. Also Festival of Lights. 4 And fifteenth and the Fast of Eather on the 15th. 5 The Megillah or 'roll' of Esther which is read at this time.

مني اعدبود عروبها والمعاش ولأبجونان مع المعبور يوم المبداون بوم الكنااوب وم المعيد ما المط لمع في نمسلي يسبعد المما ولما تكامري شنوم فضري بمعكما إعساد ببلسون فباعت اطلال المغصان مزلطلاف والعسب والزنبون فدامروا بازلاست نوافها غنسا فالمالعراعة للم انت المعرف البئير مما يعدوا بالنستين عبن الملبف ومواخر عبدالمطال الجذ الجآدي والعنزون ونخضري وهوابضاج لمرما المبريك صوعدمنن الاتم يزال بحسمو بعدي المابوبر مالك حك موعدة المامل النطهذ وعناب والمالح لمالكات والعشرون عصيلوا بسنوون فهاعل ابه المددوده والإلمالالم لم راجاً واحده في الله الناب ما أنبز ب عناكل إلى م فالمعند المنية سنرج وذكك مكادلهم زاصن انبد اخوه فلكمغلب عليها بفدع عندانه ونطن بندالم والكوري بكافتراع مالفال وحوالبوم الرابع عشن أخاد الذي نهلوه بعشان ميغرف ابسابع بالحلما بمعلامت بملاحب من وراحتور راعظر على تُعَدِّلَةِ بِذَلَالِهِ مِنْ مُسلِب مِلْمَالِهِ فِي لِي الْمِلْ مِنْ الْمِلْ مِنْ الْمُرْفِينَ الْمُرْفِقِ اللَّهِ الْمُرْفِقِ اللَّهِ الللَّهِ اللَّلَّ اللَّهِ الللَّهِ الللَّهِ اللَّهِ اللَّهِ الللَّهِ اللَّهِ اللَّهِ الللَّهِ اللَّهِ اللَّهِ الللَّهِ الللَّهِ اللَّهِ الللَّاللَّهِ الللَّهِ اللَّهِ الللَّهِ الللَّهِ الللَّهِ الللَّهِ الللَّهِ الللللَّالِي اللللَّهِ الللللَّ الللَّهِ الللللَّ الللَّهِ

- . In the other months there are supererogatory fasts, occasioned by new grievous trials, on which mourning and abstention from food are incumbent on them.
- 291. Min a yad al-nasari ma al-mīlad. Of the Christian festivals! Milad is the night of the birth of visd bin Maryam (on Him be blessings and peace) AO which occurred on the 25th of Kanun I at a CHRISTMAS village called Nasirah al-jalil near Jerusalem which is Bait al-maqdis. People were in the habit of calling him Ishur al-nasari, whence the Christians are called masara.
- 292. Mā al-dinh. Dinh is the 6th day of Kanun II on which day Yahyer bin Zakariya baptized Jesus the son of Mary i.e. immersed him in the river Jordan. John was accustomed to baptize people to un-EPIPHANY burden them of their sins, and was therefore known as Yuhana marmadan, John the Baptist. The baptismel water ma al-ma mudiyyah is that with which Christians ohristen their children and converts from other religions. When Jesus issued from the Jordan the Holy Spirit descended upon Him in the form of a dove.
- 293. MB Saum ninuwi. The fast of Nineveh is called from the Syrian town of that name, which is also the town of the prophet Jonah (May God bless him). The name Jonah is a Greek one; 4 according to the FAST OF NINEVEH Christians he spent three days and three nights in a fish's belly, and this is regarded as a sign that Jesus would remain three days and three nights under the earth. This fast lasts for three days and precedes the great fast by three weeks beginning on a Monday.
- 294. Mā al-seum al-kabīr. The great fast of the Christians lasts for seven weeks; it always begins on a Monday and ends on a Saturday, but Saturdays and Sundays are excluded from the fast with the exception of the last Saturday. In this fast no meat or other animal product is eaten. The following are the conditions determining the time of Lent. It must not begin before the 2nd of Shubat, nor later than the 8th of I Chron. p. 282 seq.
- 2 Ishur is an Aramaic form of Ted.
- 3 Yahya and Yubana are Arabic and Syriac forms for John. 4 An etymology suggested by the resemblance of Yunah to yunan.

5 MS has ummihi ! for hut.

وللهودع شهودهم سبام نواطل بالماجدوت امون يخزندا وكجت الامناع عِ الله المجرِّماع العباد المضادي المبلاد) مولله والمعبرة بزمزم علبالسلم وحولكامش الهنز وزين فانوتلاول وسائت الولاد بغرب تمى المرو للللطالعرب مزاع دسماه موسب المدسر ويسال عمير مرم ما مزاله باسوع السادي بكن المستدع ف قومد بالنساني مما أكريخ ٢ مواليومالسادى مريحانون الاخروب كالمعيى زيركما بعبتي مزم ويعرالادز اىغىد وكانعدالما تركي الاوناد عنه ولف بنكر وجامعدان ماالمعن وهالنيم بهااطفال المادى والمنم من سابر الادمان للخرج عِسى الما الصلت بدروح الفرس عله بخرامد ماصوم ببنوي بنوي مرابانام وم فرب بونسل المنى المنطب معوسوبان وعده المدعث في بطنام لمنامام هاذاد بمعت عبتي بطن للانعل فبالمنابام مدوم بنوى ولمندابام بف والعوم الجينطنات بعادلمابو الأنبن ماالموم الحبع ببهون من مستمل على سبعداسا بيع مزالهام ديكون لهابوم النبزلد إواخرها يوم سنتى ماسبوبا واجا دم الابحوز منوبها ماخلا المن للضرو لابناولون وَ الْحَالَةُ مَا سِنْسَلُوا لِجُبُوانُ وَمِنْ شَمْكُوانَ كَا يُعَدُّمُ اللَّهِ مِ اللَّهُ فِي سَلِيدٍ

Idher, and the generally accepted way of calculating it is that it begins on the Monday nearest to the conjunction of the moon in Shubit as long as that is not before the 2nd. If it is, that conjunction losses its validity, the next conjunction after is adopted, and whichever Monday is nearest to it is the first day of the fast.

295. Mā al-she anin we ma yatlühu. The last Sunday of the great fast is called sha anin, meaning praise; on that day Jesus (on Him be peace) entered Jerusalem on a she-ass, the foal of the ase ran after it, and the people kept shouting Hosanna. PALM-SUNDAY [He entered the temple] ordered the performance of the lawful rites, forbad reprehensible practices2 and rebuked the priests and seribes, (who assailed Him so that) He consealed Himself. On the Wednesday He washed the feet of His apostles, who were His friends and disciples as a sign of humility, and on Thursday celebrated Passover with (His sacrament ofP) bread and wine, and announced to them His approaching death. Then on the eve of Friday (Thursday night) He ascended the mountain, and one of His disciples, a Jew (who was a religious leader, pointed Him out, and P) delivered Him to the Jews, who seized Him and tortured Him all night. In accordance with their representations, He was crucified at midday on Friday. This Friday is called the Friday of the Crucifizion. He was then buried and remeined in the tomb during Saturday (which is called the Glad Tidings of the Dead from the Messich) and rose on Sunday at dawn. This Sunday is the end of the Christian fast.

296. Mā al-ābad al-badīth. New Sunday is the first Sunday after the fast; on the previous Sundays during the fast, people were occupied therewith, but on this Sunday utensils, household DOMINICA II: ALBIS furniture and clothes are renewed, and deeds and contracts are dated therefrom.

297. Mā al-sullāq. Ascension day is Thursday the 42nd day (4Qth Chron. 41stP) from the breaking of the fast. On this day the Messiah ascended into heaven from among His disciples, and ASCENSION DAY promised them he would send them the paraclete (faraqlit); this is the Holy Spirit.

I From a marginal note in PL. "Another way of calculating it is from Zpiphany, the sixth day of Kanun II; on whichever day be chandlin ruz bud (ordinal 'um' added to chand, as to digar in 517) of the Arabia month this falls, subtract the number from 32 and count on as many days from the beginning of Shubāţ. If this arrives at a Monday, it is the beginning of the fast, if not, then it is the Monday next thereafter. If the latter should be after the 8th of Adher, then the Monday before the day arrived at will be the first day of the fast." The day of the Arabic month gives the phase of the moon from which the conjunction of Shubat (February) is calculcated. The method can be used to determine Haster; e.g. Jon. 6,1933 - Ramadan 9,1351. 32-9 - Feby. 23 a Thursday; the following Monday, 27th is the beginning of the Eastern fast, March 1 (Ash Wednesday) of the Western Church. Counting on 46 days we have in March, 30, in April, 16 days making Easter 1933 April 16th. The phrase is a Qur'anio one, III, 109. 3 Lacuna in Chron. p. 304. A marginal note of the Copyist of AO (a

3 Lacuna in Chron. p. 304. A marginal note of the Copyist of AO (a Copt) reads, "The washing of the feet took place in the afternoon of Thursday; He then celebrated the Passover, but was seized on the night of Friday (Thursday night) in a garden near Jerusalem and was not tortured then but was accurged and crucified on Friday."

ولأبلخ عزاله مالأم عزاد ادملع فسلم فالمعترى المصابدوهوا بالمنسن اقب الأمان لإالجماع السكان بساط بعدان لانعس السد فانتقدم بطل عتباد بذكك الاجتماع وكبيل علاجتهاع النجيبل ببحور ادب الامام البدعوم واصبهم فامآ السعان وغابلوه مراخروم الجدد اظهومم المعبرونفسير والسبيع وفيد خرعبتي معالم بن المفررن إجب المان بيه الجينها والماريج بيور بروام المعروف س عزالم حسن مادت المصند والإجبان علم ماحتى عسل أجل مجابد للوادير يوم الاربعاد اسعادان والمربالم والمروبع المهم فسدتم خرج للدالميد اليالج المتع يديعه دااجدا يعاره الحالهو دفيسنواعله وعليه طولالس صلبوه برعهم سف بعاد الجمعدو تسجمع والصلبوت وقبر المصف بوم المستدليمي ساده للوبد بالمسمع مرح مزالف وصعديوم الاجدوه وطر السادب ما الحساطوب مَواول إجربيد الفطر الألكجاد في منتفي لع في السوم وفيد بجدد ونكلاك والأمات واللباس ومنذ ماخدون يح عدد المعاملات والنسالان وموبوم لبليزالاب ماكاد بعبز مزاله الى السباو و عدم مأرسال الفرقليط المهم و معود وح الفرس ع

298. M8 al-bantIcostI. Pentecost is Sunday the fiftieth day from the breaking of the fast; the word is derived from the Greek for fifty. On this day the Holy Spirit descended on the disciples of Jesus, fortified them, (Pl has "they acquired strength from His radiance, va as nor-1 0 niru giriftend") and conferred upon them the gift of tomes, after which each set out to that country where his language was used, so as to summon the people to the Messiah.

200. ME saum al-salihin. The Past of the Apostles also lasts for seven weeks. The seliptine are prophets anblys, and the faith of the Christians in the Messiah is such that it is necessary that His missionaries scattered PAST OF THE throughout the world should be [prophets]. APOSTLES

500. Ma al-mashush. This is one of the impudent statements made by people ignorant about the Christians to the effect that Michigh is a night when men and women meet together MISHUSH to seek Jesus, when promisouous intercourse takes place as chance determines in the dark. 5 We take refuge in God from offending enyone whether friend or foe, and especially the sect of the Christians, whose disposition, in spite of their false doctrine, is eminently distinguished by modesty (read siyEnet), uprightness and kindness to all.

They have many other separate fasts and commemorations of their saints, devotees and martyrs, which are distinguished by

their names.

501. Fame lilmuslimin fi shuhurhum. As regards special days in the Muslim months, the tenth of Muharram is called Eshura; it was appointed as a fast in the first year of the Hijra but was afterwards abrogated by the MUSLIM PASTS setting apart of the month of Ramadan. It remains, AND FRASTS however, a very advantageous day for voluntary religious acts, and then it coincides with the date of the murder of Huseyn bin 'All, so that the Shi'ites of Baghdad mourn for him on that day.

The fifteenth night of Sharban is much esteemed; it is known as the night of exemption, baret, and I think that baret in this

case means delivery from the fire.

In Remadan is the night of power, quer, mentioned in the Qur'an [the majesty of which is apparent from the Qur'an]P (NOVII: 1-3). It is said that it must be sought among the last ten days, and indeed among the odd days of these ten; the opinion of the majority is in favour of the 27th.

I It begins ten days after Pentecost. The Feast which terminates is is celebrated in Egypt on 5th EbTb, July 11, June 29 0.S.

Z anbiya' dropped. 3 ya tahāra jūna. Lane p 2890. Bar Hebraeus quotes from enother unt specified work of Al-Biruni a similar story of promisouous intersourse associated with a religious rite (which the Persians call Mishush) in the case of one of the peculiar sects of Mesopotamia (Chron. Eccles, I, 219; Hoffmann, Abhand. für die Ende d. Morgenlandes, VII, 125, seq. end see Encycl. Islam under Shabak and Sarliya). Lailet al-mashush is trenslated "the night of the apy" in Chron. p. 510, but the word ecoording to Juynboll, Marasid al-ittila. V,544 is probably from ashah, liouse, Ma'shush. The date of the feast is uncertain, Chron. prefers autumn, but that of the Crucifixion is also mentioned. Possibly the featis a vestige of a pagen Syrian festival of death and resurrection. 4 Cf. Jewish fast 285.

مَا الْبُطْبِ مُنْ عَجِي وَهِم الْجِولِ لَمِنْ مِنْ الْفَطْرُ واسْمَدُ بِالْوَ. مَبْرُسْنَى من للنست بن عبد ثولت دوح العُدس على الكلمان وابدتهم والمخلفات المستنهم ومرّ خاواجد النبعد لفند للدعوة الإلمنيع ماصعهم السلعين م مراساتبعد النابع والمتلجبون م الأنبياد ذكك اعتفارم فالمتبع توجب ان بحون يسلم الدين انسنزواب والانف للدعم م ما الما منوش مذامز بحطات المتعها علمهم العالبلذ بمنع فيعادجالهم ونشاع لطلب عبتي تأبيها دجون عبف الفن فإلطلام وبعد والعرمز المخرب على فد المسادى في بمعلى الد اعتنادهم موبلوخ الفابه بفالمساعدوالاماندوالسف عدعلالصافة ولمم مبام كيرجا ودكارن ابهاجارم وزمادم وشهدابهمع وفعطواجد باسم فاللسكمين بنمواهم اماب الجرم فاسم البوم العاشرمنه عاشورا وفد فرض ومدفى السند الاول من بي الجرى تم نسخ بصوم شهر دمسا و بغ عاشور نفلا كبرالفسابل ما مغ فبرمف الكنبر برعلى فساد ما ما للنبعد بغداد ولبلما كاميرع شن من عبان بنايد و نبي للدالداه واطن ببها راه عجبه مرالهاذ وفيسه ومسالل بلدالفرة المدعن والغران وهوالعد الكنبر وفراق وادع ومل السابع والعِدّ في والبوم الأولي بين ال عبد الفطر بلاع لمنه مده السيدم

The first of Shawell is the feast of fast-breaking on which day it is forbidden to fast; but there is a reward for enyone who has fasted throughout Ramadan if he also fasts for the next six days.

The first ten days of Dhu al-hijjah are the days of the harm, the secred territory of Recoa; the eighth is called tarwiyah because on that day the pilgrims have their thirst quenched; the minth, varefah, as the pilgrims are then "standing" on Mt. Arafat during the Great Pilgrimage, while the tenth is the feast of the killing of the sheep which the pilgrims sacrifice, "Id al-adha." On this day and three days thereafter fasting is forbidden and festival raiment is donned to calebrate the close of the ceremonies, idbar al-salat. (Three days after the sacrifice of the sheep are called the days of flesh-drying, tashriq, and these are counted days on which, with sighs, the takbir is said after every prayer.) There are controversies as to this among the authorities, to describe the nature of which is difficult and here out of place.

There are also in the Arabic months certain days agreed on to commemorate the birth, death or marder of great people. These are sometimes neglected, or observed with seal among numbers of particular sects.

302. Fama al-Newrols min rusum al-furs. Among the oustoms of the Persians is the observance of Newrols; of it is the first day of the month FerwardIn, and is called 'new' being the PERSIAN first day of the New Year. For five days thereafter NEW YEAR there is feasting and the sixth is called Great Newral, because the Khusraws in those five days were accustomed to deliver judgments on the requirements of their retinument and the people generally, while on the sixth they received their

relations and the nobility.

The Persians are convinced that the first Nawruz was the first day of all time, and assert that the sphere began to revolve on that day

and derives its name from it, as is the case with other days whose names are the same as those of the months in which they are. This is a feast day, and it is reported that on this day Arish shot an arrow with reference to a tree's dominion should extend as far as the shot. It is said that the arrow went from the mountains of Tabaristan to the highlands of

Tokháristán.

l vid al-saghir or Ramadan Bairam.

2 A recent pilgrim thought it was your al-tarwin (repose).

Hāji Khan with the Pilgrims to Mecca 1905 p. 175. Cf. Burton,

Pilgrimage, II, 289, and Snouck Hurgronje, Het Mekkanische

Feest, p. 84.
3 'Id al-kabir or Qurbin Bairam,
4 The first of these is called your al-qurr, day of repose,
Hurgronje, l.c.p.114. MS is defective here.

⁵ Burton II, 219 and 291. Hurgronje p. 113. 6 Newyear's day was the time of the vernal equinox, the sixth being then the time of the entry of the sun into Aries: the astronomical New Year. There are various accounts of the observances of Nawruz, Richardson, Dissertation, p. 156; also Al-Kisrawi, trans. Nariman, Armaghān Nawruz.

⁷ Ahlhum, ahl al-sahm. P. Khassagan.
8 Coincided with the summer solstics: also known as abrīzgan.

للإم الحيب مسيمله النواب اذاساً مهامن صام رمنان والبشر الاقل مزدي الجدم والمرص فيالإمام بوم المروب السؤا كاح ونها فالتعم ابوم عرفد مالوقوف في عن الج الأحد والبوم المياً شري والجد عبدالا جو والمعا المبدودات الكيب والمرص الونبع ذكك وفهده المهود المامن فهاموالد الإجلداوعائهم اومبئلم اوعردك مزللوادت وليعظ مستعلىها د فالكورونم فنهور للعن وشموالهم الاقلع فزورد فاه علمذا مج بوماً حيداللانه عن للول الموم عمابين مراكا إم المنتصلاً العياد وسادتها النبزوزالم بزلال كاسر كأوابق وترالابام الحسد جوابح الماس تمجلنة والليوم باعلم مبعض ون المنوروز الاوللانداول جم مل المالك بم النك بنبالسنان ما النجازع مَوفِيْ بِهِمَاهُ مَالَتْ عَنْ وَالْمُ بَرِّمُوافِرُ لِكُم مِنْهِ وَعَصَالُكُ لِهِم بِإِفْرَاتُهُ اللهُ مَا مَ مَنْهُ نَى فَنُوعِهِ وَفِي الْمُ عَلَا وَمِ أَنْ مُنْ مُنْهُ مِنْهُ مِنْهِ مِسْلَطُهُ مِوجِهِ الْمُنْ الْمُ مالطهسرحان الهوالماديرع فرماه واسدمه وبنزعوا مالكم واسدمه وبنزعوا منافر وما مند وما المنابع والمست المعروف السكارة وما

304. ME al-mihrjan. Mihrajan is the 16th day of the month Mihr: on this day Affidum obtained victory over Mivaresp the magician, who is known as Dahhak (Kobak) and imprison-MIHRGAN ed him in Mt. Damavand. The following days are also feast days as was the case with Newros, the sixth being Great Mihrgan which is also known as Ram2-ros.

John are called Parvardagen (nourishing) because the Magians on these days set out food and drink for the spirits parvardagen, of the dead, which it is said is all taken and consumed. Since five days are intercalated after Khan, called andargen, some people thought that these are the five parvardagen, and controversy arose about it, a momentous affair in their sect, so to make sure both sets of five days are celebrated, the first being the 25th of Iban man, and the last, the last of the 'stolen' days, and thus the whole of the Parvardagen lasts for ten days.

the Khusraws was the beginning of spring. On the first day of the month, as a kind of somedy (read naqqal)

MOUNTING THE [P.fEl oman], a beardless man used to arrive seated on an ass, a crow grasped in one hand and a fan in the other, with which he keeps fanning himself, thus bidding good-bye to the winter, while he asks for contributions from the people. In our day they have kept up this custom in Shirax. With regard to the tribute levied whatever has been collected from morning till midday is handed over to the governor, while that from midday till afternoon prayers is retained by himself. If thereafter he is found, he is beaten by the people and ill-treated.

307. Ma bahmanjah. Bahmanjana is the Bahman (2nd) day of the month Bahman. On this day they eat white radishes with pure milk, on account of the fact that it BAHMANJANA strengthens the memory. In Khurssan they make a feast by putting all kinds of edible grains in a pot with the flesh of all permitted animals, and indeed everything available at that seas a and in that district in the way of [animals], P vegetables and Earden herbs.

¹ Dibswand Dict. Geog. Pers. 224. 2 The Autumnal equinox Ram, 21st v. 277.

⁵ Fills lacuna in Chron. p. 211. 4 p. Bar-nishastan Kūsah or Kusak nishīn. Lacuna in Chron. p. 211. See Richardson's Dictionary under min for a more detailed

account or his Dissertation p. 159.
5 As he has also a scourge and a paint-pot the crow must have been difficult to manage. P. has Kuläghl badast girifta perhaps reminiscent of Kulagh be destash paride. 'The 'bird' has flown into his hand', meaning he has got money for nothing.
5 bahman al-abyad. Centaured sp. or the flowers mixed with sipand, harmals "rue for remembrance".

بهره مزازام اعباد حاحات بعدالمؤدوذ وبكهن أدشها المزجان الاعبريه ذام ذونها غرف ما الفترو تدجان هلايام المنشد الاخين منايانيه وتفسين ننيد الذوح لالطير سينجو منه الطبعه والسرب الادواح منواع وبزعورانهاما بدفت ذي بماملا كانعب المانماه خسدذابيه تيرف بالأرد صاه عيلل بعينهم إنما الفرود دحان ما وقع سفلان وكان كل بهم فالجوسيد ماحدو البطلي المستبر اخباطا وجعال الشاديت العِترب المانعة اول إلفنه و ذرجان واخرها المستدفد مساد النزوددبان عشن ابام ما تكوب الحوسيح م مُدكاناد ماه فيام المعاير اول البيع فكان في اول بوم من الفناك وبح المعجادة ابغر على أب وموغر وجدوبودع السناوس بمر بالل وبعل مي نمانابسيناذ على منوبيد يوديماللالعامل المنهم عن مستون يزلغوادال الطر للنربية الملهم لد مان جربع بذكر سنع و تلب ما . كام المعالية عوبه مجر من عدداه وبوسط فبرالهم الابن بالبزل كالرسط للمندو فغراسات بمُام دَبِو، عَلَيْنِ ذِبْرِ كُلِبِ مَا وَ مِنْ الْمُنْ عُلِبِ مَا وَ مِنْ الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مِا الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مَا الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مَا الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مُا الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مِنْ الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مُا الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مِنْ الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مُا الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مُا الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مُا الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مُا الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مُلِمِنُ الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مُلْ الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مُلْ الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مُلِمِنْ عُلِبُ مُلْ الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مُلْ الْمُنْ عُلِبُ مُلْ الْمُنْ عُلِبُ عُلِبُ اللَّهُ عُلِبُ عُلِبُ اللَّهُ عُلِبُ اللَّهُ عُلِمُ اللَّهُ عُلِيلًا عُلِبُ اللَّهُ عُلِمُ اللَّهُ عُلِمُ اللَّهُ عُلِمِ اللَّهُ عُلِمُ اللَّهُ عُلِمُ اللَّهُ عُلِمُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْكُ عَلِيلُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُمِ عَلَيْكُ عَلِيكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلِيكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عِلْمُ عَلِيكُ عَلَيْكُ عِلْ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلِيكُ عَلَيْكُ عِلْكُ عِلْمُ عَلِيكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عَلَيْكُ عِلْمُ عَلِيكُ عَلَيْكُ عِلْكُ عِلْمُ عَلِيكُ عَلَيْكُ عِلْمُ عِلَيْكُ عِلْمُ عَلِيكُ عِلْمُ عَلِيكُ عِلْمُ عِلَيْكُ عِلْمُ عِلَيْكُ عِلْمُ عِلَيْكُمُ عِلَيْكُ عِلَيْكُمُ عِلَيْكُ عِلْمُ عَلِيكُ عِلْمُ عِلَيْكُ عِلَيْكُ عِلْمُ عَلِيكُ عِلْمُ عِلْمُ عَلِيكُ عِلْمُ عَلِيكُ عِلْمُ عِلْمُ عِلَيْكُ عِلَي عَلِيكُ عِلْمُ عَلِيكُ عِلْمُ عِلَيْكُمُ عِلَي عَلِيكُ عَلِيكُ عَلِيكُ عَلِيكُ عِلَيْكُمُ عِلَي عَلِيكُ عِلْمُ عِلْمُ عَلِيكُ عِلِ sharif mahmoud

306-310

508. ME al-sadaq. Sadah (the Persian form) is the Iben day of the month of Bahman, i.e. the tenth and on the night between the 10th and 11th they light fires [with walnute and almonds,] drink, (play and enjoy themselves)? round about them, and some drive in animals to be burnt. The name is derived from sad, a hundred seeing that it is fifty days and fifty nights to Nawrus: they also say that on this day the first father's completed his tale of a hundred children. But the origin of lighting and keeping up the fires is that Bivarasp conscripted two men every day from his dominions in order that their brains should be placed on the two wounds on his shoulders. He had a verir called Armanik (Azma'Il), Pa a benevolent man who, of each two, concealed one alive in Demayand, When Afridun seized him and reprosched him, Azmā'll said "the extent of my power was, that I always saved one from being killed, and all of them are behind the mountain." So a faithful follower was sent to examine this claim, and Armi'Il sent shead an order to each person to light a fire on his roof, because it was night and he wished that the large number of them should be evident. This was therefore reported to Afridum who set the prisoner free, plaged him on a golden throne, and gave him the name of Magnughan 7 (i.e. Mughmughan Chief of the Magiane). Five days before Sadah a day is called Bar-Sadah or New Sadah, but we have no definite information about it.

309. Mi kithat ruger al-ragerib. On the fifth day of Isfandermadh, the writing of papers to ward off the stings of scorpions takes place. The papers are attached to SCORPION the doors of houses in the evening. This is not an CHARMS original Persian custom but has been introduced anew by the common people. It is also a day, mardgiren, on which wives have authority over their husbands and claim the satisfaction of their wishes and extravagant demands (iqtirahet).

310. M al-kuhanbarat. There are various divisions of the days of the year at the beginning of each of which five days are known as the Kuhanbars. In each of SKASONS OF CREATION these Zaradusht conceived that God Almighty created one species, such as the heavens, water, land, animals, plants and man, so that the oreation of the world was completed in six days. 7

l dhawat al-adhan wa'l-lubub.

² Birds with inflammable material attached to their feet, so that fires should be widely spread. Vullers II 240 also Chron. p. 213.

⁵ Kaylmarth, the first of the mythological Kings of Persia, mI'at dropped.

⁴ Irmail, Shahnamah.

⁵ P. sin.
6 The word muzhd giran Chron. p. 216 229 or muzdgiran emphasizes
the resultant present-giving while mard giran of the Tafhim
account refers to the mastery of the women. (energ. V of
salat) tatasallatanna, Richardson 1.c. 160.
7 Cahanbara, Vullers & Haug. p. 192. Hyde, Relig. Veter.
Persarum Cap. 19 & 20. Jackson. Iranische Religion p. 676.

هوالمان دونه حواليات رميز بمزماه فيللنالي فيدم الليوم لهادي عبر توفع البراز وبشرب جولما متبطونالل وافللبوالات فاما تتب تتبعه فهوان فاللزرز خنون نعاداً وخُنون للهِ وفِلان بديم مِن ولد الإد الاول نفر وأما سبب ابعار المنزان في خلاف بيودس ومرعل كالكالك معلى ويطف لداوى بدماعها سعلم مندر وكان وذبن ادما بهك عبرند بست في اجدهما وبرسله الحدث وحز فعن عليد افرمدون ويخدف كانفراء عابرام كالخاب المكالب المعتولين وجلعنه خلالنب منبه مجد اجد شائد المشاهد ماادِع صَبَى مُنولد المهر مامر عمر فع البران فون سطوجم لبعرف اللبل يترتهم فسنعو وع دكل عند فريدون واعتف والمند على وردهب وساه مصمعان اى بتراجي وقاللدف عسفرابام وم بتم زيدات وسيبينان والجيئل والمجافية ومالمندر فالحالع فالأب لبرمومزية والغرسوله استجدات الجوام فبعضون وفاعا تلس على الداب بالطما اللساعه وهوخام راسف الدمزماء وكات الفرين مرددين ادكات السائنة لطور على واجما وتطالهم سنهوانن ع ماالكهنباز أن علمنا الإبام الديد فخاف مباول فالمنار مهاخندابام فالحهباران دع درادنت ان في كاواجد مهاطراه معالي

- 311. Famā al-jamrāt fi shuhūr al-rūm. With regard to special days in the Greek months, the name Jamrah is given to certain days at the end of winter when spring JAMRAHS approaches; they say that in these days the interior of the earth becomes warm and vapours issue from it. These jamrahs are on the 7th, 14th and 21st of Shubāt, and the Arabs say that on these days meteors fall from the stars of the mansions of the moon.
- 312. Ayyam al-"ajuz mm hiya. The days of the old woman ("ajuz) are seven days beginning on the 26th Shubat.

 They are not free from ice, cold and winds DAYS OF THE nor of extreme changes in the weather, and OLD WOMAN are consequently called the cold days of the old woman. These are the unlucky days in which the people of "Id perished in a storm, only one old woman surviving and continually mourning for them. Arabs however say that the word is not "ajuz but "ajuz, as it were the hinder part of the winter.
- 313. Famā 'ajūz qalam. These days are also known as the 'ajūz-i qalam. Ya'qūb al-Kindī has written a book on these days and says that the reason of ADJUSTED DATE the change in the atmosphere is the arrival of the sun at 90° from its apogee, the place where the equation changes from plus to minus. Since the apogee moves, Abdullah bin 'Alī al-Hāsib, better known as Abdullah Qalam, made these days to accord with the position of the apogee in our time, not in Ptolemy's. Therefore the days became known as 'ajūz-i qalam.
- of Tammuz and lasts for seven days. The Greeks say that Orion's dog, the Southern Dog-star, is due to
- DOG-DAYS rise at this time; the heat becomes

 I The Coal days. Chron. p. 243. The first jamrah falls
 into the air, the second into water, the third on the earth.
 These jamrahs and the succeeding cold spell are recorded
 on the same days in a Persian Calendar for 609 (Jelal.)
 1099 A.H., 1687-8 A.D. reproduced and translated by M.F.
 Beck 1695. Jamrah he. translates "Solennitas" as if it
 referred to the stone-throwing at Mina (Snouck-Hurgronye
 1.0. 105-6. Burton II. 203. Lane 453), and the cold spell
 "dies (vetulae) frigoris adultae hyemis". In an Arabic
 Calendar for 1349/1931 the Jamrahs are postponed to
 Feb. 20, 27 and March 6, and the cold and stormy spell
 (al-husum v. Dozy) lasts from March 10-17.
 2 Chron. p. 245.

وسنداام فالبكرات فيسنورالوم ولام فباخ البشناء اطلال البعر بعون انسبها مفالمن فتخرج منع المفاديين الاهل سبومه من الط وقدفاك الجرب لانهاابام وسنومد لمفوط حواسب مزينا فليالفزع المام المجنوز مأجى مشبيدابا الماالت ادر والعشرون مناط ولابخلوا مزوج ونباج وتعنبون للج فلناجون المجوز فقد فالف هنه الابار عيلن الناكك العبيل بهاء معاد بالنع البنيم بنبت منهعور ولمذاخكا وفال أمجاب اللغد المالم الغزيان فعزالت ايان فاعجون فلمنع لببغوب العندي بطفاام العوزن الوعول بد عجياوع المترحنية تربح اوجما وهوضع تغبر البدبل الزاره اوالمسان دوج مجركاجولعد المرزع للاستالم وف بمداه فالمالم العوز الأفت الذى بنبط المنتري به المحمول والمادون ومان المهدر وسنت المجود والمنادون ومان المالال المعالمة والمالال المحمود والمحمود والمالال المعالمة والمالال المحمود والمحمود والموالم والمامر سوم الملاع حل المجاد وموالم والمائر والمائر ومراسل حك المجاد وموالم والمائر والمائر ومراسل حك المجاد وموالم والمائر والمائر ومراسل والمائد والمائر والمائر

excessive, and the name is said to be derived from buhran a crisis or a decision made, because the authorities try to gain information as to the state of the weather in the winter months from that on these decisive days. The first day of bahur is an indication of what TishrIn I will be like, the second, of TishrIn II and so on, so that if there is fog or rain or wind on any of these days, the corresponding months will have the same. Especially in Egypt do they accept prognostics from these days as to whether crops will thrive or not.

315. Fahal lighayr ha'ula' shai'min dhalika. All nations and settled communities celebrate other days by holding feasts and fairs at well-known OTHER SIMILAR points, but it is difficult to know about them all individually; those we do know about we have dealt with in a more suitable place.

316. Fahal limajūz al-sughd ayyām kadhalika. The Magians of Soghdia also have their feasts and festivals of a religious nature called aghams, SOGHDIAN FEASTS but the necessary knowledge with regard to them has not reached us.

The people of Bukhārā call the first and second Soghdian months by corresponding names. In these they hold bazars, among which are the first and second mākhīzaj, at which we are told stolen articles are sold, great confusion prevails and no returns are made. The first of these is the 13th day of the third month Misan, and the second the 15th of the fourth month Basāk. The fair of Tawawis, a large and populous town, lasts for seven days from the 15th of Mazhikhandā the sixth month, while that of Shar, also the name of a town, lasts for ten days from the 15th of Masāfūgh the tenth month.

Chron. p. 260. MS has zur for zurur.

Makhiraj Chron. Makhirah P.
5 12th Nisanaj. 12th Basakanaj Chron. 221, text 234.

⁴ P. Char, Chron. p. 425.
5 Chron. text p. 235, 7, has Masafugh in it there is a
feast from the 5th to the 10th and then the Muslims have
a fair at Shargh for 7 days. Trans. has Marsafugh.

وذك ومت صبم للمواسم المشنق الجوان الج لمجتولان المجار الجادب سور منه الجوال الموارف منون المتناوالبوم الاول منهاد بران من والأب وللنشر زالاب وحذكك الإخما فابك فيحط ومرغم اومطراو رخ بيون السمة وابنافانه وخاصد مسرستندو منواليوالمالاوزه ومابزكواسهاومالابزكاع فهللغبر فيولاسني فكال لت واجدين الام واعلل بلاد اسمال ذكك مزاعبادٍ مَا تُتُوافَعًام فِي مواميع ولكن استفراذاك يسبب وماجسل بهافنداود عياه فيجواضح لانستنفل بهالاهالليؤ ساع فهالجهوس السعدابام كذلك لنم فيسودم أعباد ملب تسماعات وكم بجسالاعلما بجب والانتخار البئوزسيور المتعد كالمول والماب أمها المعنب وتعبون معااسوافا فنهاما خبزح الاول ما خبزج اللاب وذكر لماانة بباع مهاالمنزق فان وببنجل فعلط للفالطولا بحوربها رَجه ع فالاول مِز هَذ برجوالبوم المَّالْ عِسْسُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّا الللَّهُ اللَّا اللَّهُ اللَّا اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللّ مهاهوالبوم المألئ عيشن المثهر الرابع وعوسات ومنهاسوف الطواوبر وه في بعنابعًا م المامِيّ عشر من المنه المنادِر معوم يعدل سبعداما ه فيها سؤق المسترع وهى فرب مع المف اللسف يزاله والمعاشروه وستا فوع عناا

317~319

Soghdian expression, although the Soghdians use it, but a Tokhāra one, and the Tokhārians regard it as AUTUMN à sign of change of the weather towards cold. There is a special autumn feast for the upper classes which is on the 18th of Shahriwar, and one for the common people on the 2nd of Mihr. Both of them celebrate the beginning of the use of the wine-press (and the treading of the grapes).

318. Mā ayyam majūs Khwarizm. The Magians of Khwarizm agree with those of Soghdia as to the traditions of their months, and the names of these are not different except to a DAYS OF MAGIANS dialectal extent. Some of the days OF KHWARIZM of the Khwarizmian months are well: known; their New Year is called Nausarji; argha-suan is the first of their third month and the sixth of Khurdad. In our time this argha-suan is regarded by them as indicating the time for sowing sesame, and the subsequent operations. Ajghar, which means fire-lighting, is the 16th of the fourth month on which day they kindle a big fire at night after the fashion of the Sadah, and drink (wine sikip) round about it. From this day they calculate the proper times for cultivation, gathering in and pressing the grapes and the like. Faghburiyaho is the first day of their sixth month and on it is the expedition of the Shah to the frontiers. There are also Chir-ruz which is the Persian Ram-ruz and Nimkhab the 16th? of the tenth month, which in our times is in the middle of winter.

When the Persians neglected intercalation their months came on earlier; Nauruz arrived became of the ripening of the corn, and the payment of the taxes before the marketing of the corn. The agriculturists of the rural

I Khizan AO.

2 Name by which Tokharistan in the upper basin of the Oxus was known to Hsuen Tsang. Tokhariyya A corrected in margin of AO to Bukhariyya.

³ Cf. Chron. trans. 207, text 222.

4 Misspelt. Chron. p. 223, text 235 Nausarchi. (off.

⁵ arījā-sūān Chron. Text 236. arījahās chūzān dress will be put 6 Faghrubah Chron. trans. p. 224. Faghirīyyah A. Chron. text p. 236. Faghburnah P

Chron. text p. 236. Faghburnah P 7 21st Chron.

فإجران قبلاة لبرمزية مالنغد والكنجلو واعام للطار معلمغم الموامال ودغران كاصده مواليه مالمام عيرمن مرمه ورماه وجران العامدي البوم النابذ مرصرماه وجماعدان عانماالابدافي العسرم ماأبام يجو سرحه أوارم م والنهود بع النع دلا يختلف بهابالماي الإنقدر الاخلاف واللعرولاه لحواذرم بالشهرهم المامعية وفدوبتموا ببرو زهم باوساوري ومن كل الابام ارغاسوان موالبوم الولم المنف والمال من مورم وبعوز الموم الماديس خرد ادماه وفي رما ساصر وعلال رع والمشروم المنجد ومنه المعجاد أي المبد صوالبوم المسادم عبر مزال من الرابع من الما من الما من الما من الما من الما المنافعة الما من الما المنافعة الما المنافعة الما المنافعة الما المنافعة الما المنافعة الما المنافعة المنا مِن مُورْم وفِر بالليل ولان الدان على بدالسدف وبنه ورعلها أبعوا الأبام لاوقات الزراعه والفطف والعصروا شالما معسريد وهوالبوم الول مِن السَّهُ وَالسَّا دَسْمِ نِي مُومِ وَكُال فِي مِنْ جِ السَّاه اللَّغُورُومَ مِهَا حدودور وهوزام دون للعنوس ومنها سحب مهالبوم الساديرع بنرمز المهوالعابنه مِن مُورِع، مَوفَى ماننا وسط الشِّالم الله المعنى صلى بوالسهو لمالم العزتر كبيت بمنفقف المنهور وسبن المؤدور ادراك العلات وسانا فساح مَ اللِّهِ الدوور مِن وَاصْرِدُ لَلْ بِمَا فِرَ اللَّهُ وَادْعِنْم المنوكِل عَلَى المورود

districts became much distressed, and the authorities were in difficulty. So Mutawakkil resolved to postpone Nauruz to a later date, so that it might be easier for the peasantry: but his purpose was not fulfilled for he was assainated (247 A.H.) before it was carried out, and it was reserved for Murtadid to do so, who was determined to effect it. Nauruz was transferred to the 11th Haziran, and the various Persian months with their contained festivals which follow Nauruz were also transferred; they intercalated five supplementary days in the same way as the Syrians, and Murtadid added a sixth day in that year.

320. Famā ayyām al-Khwārizmshāhiyyah. Similar changes were effected in Khwarizm (in 348 A.H. 959 A.D.)

by Ahmad bin Muhammad bin 'Iraq bin KHWĀRIZMSHĀH'S Mansūr Khwārizmshāh's who was desirous calendar that the number of days which it was usual to count in relation to agriculture and the vintage should start from a fixed point, so that differences as to seed-time which occurred among the peasantry should not arise. So he altered the Khwārizmian months so as to agree with the Syrian ones and made Nāūsārjī* (their Naurūz) the 2nd of Nīsān. (3rd, Chron.)

always based on the Persian months on account of the ease and beauty of the arrangement. They are called 'taqwim' because everything set opposite each day may be depended on for

Similar calendars, constructed in Kashmīr for the Hindu year, are used throughout the districts of Hindustan; they are written on rolls of the thin bark of tūz and are called 'tithi-pattri' or books of lunar days, but they were not durable and the calculations were approximate not accurate.

with regard to the calendars in use in our country you must know that the first column to the right of the table contains the days of the week in abjad letters, so that A means Sunday, B Monday, Z Saturday and then the

I Chron. p. 37/32.

² Chron. p. 36.
3 Abu-3a'Id Ahmad. Chron. p. 229. He was the father of the last prince of this dynasty, Abu 'Abdallah bin Mubammad, whom Ma'mun attacked and made prisoner in 385/995, annexing then Khwarizm.

⁴ Chron. p. 229/241 Nadsarzī P.

ببالكوروزجادي عبريرراك فاخترم فالعلم فمأ بحز للجيسله عن ستار المهور العاد سيده ما فيها كرالا م فاذ المنز المسرما مون فيهكاك ستقدا لمستناف المام المخالات فالمام المخالات شأهيرا البب وبماشير باجحيناه غ المعسى المنعد بع بع المعصور بعالم شآه مقد ببات المعواد لافعات الزرع وليساد على المعان فعلله فوللوادي البشهور المنه بإنون بعلاوسادري معوفد ورهم الموم الماب يزينبان ع ماللمضمور فيتراكست دفترالت معرل لابام السندالعارس لمامه ايزاله ولد وجنزالف ومرنس المناعو بآلان البسامونوع باذا كالم مومقوم معج وبعل للامح مستبل نعالم ندوعال الملام في طوامر ب فودوزمى مزى ايدفرالم القرولصندلا بسمن خالع اجب الاسبابدنا والعرب دون الجيني معولًا فاما المستعلف بلاذ ما فع للوعل المؤلم عن اللاطر برابام الأسبوع بجروف أبجل اعنى الكالف مني بالمديوم الاجد ما آباعلامد لأعلامدالسب تميجودال لالفعلم السبع مبحون المدول الماجد المالم النهز العرب مبدى الالف وشي المحصفة المحاف المائم بعدد اللالف وفي المدول المائم بعدد الله المعانى المائم بعدد ا

321

week having been concluded back to A again. The second column contains the days of the Arabic months from the lat to the 29th, if the month is short, and to the 50th if complete; this is followed by the lat of the next month. In the third column are the days of the Greek months from 1-50 or 51, and in the case of Shubā; 28 or 29. The fourth column has the numbers of the days of the Persian month the name of which is written above, from 1-50 and in the case of Aban 55, while the names of these days are recorded in column five.

Next come the names of the seven planets, and in each column under these are three rows, that to the right indicating the signs of the zodiec from 0-11 in abjad letters (Theing Aries, | Taurus etc.), that to the left, degrees and that in the middle, These three rows opposite a day indicate minutes. the position of the planet at midday for the locality for which the calendar is constructed, and the amount of movement in degrees and minutes from day to day. If increase in these is continuous in the direction of the signs then the movement is direct, if there is decrease, it is retrograde, while if there is neither increase nor decrease the planet is stationary either in the direct or retrograde course. Further there is a column for the ascending node of the moon (ra's), one for hours and minutes of the length of day, and a third for the altitude of the sun at midday. Sometimes a

sharif mahmoud

المالأذ على فعده مندى منالف وتبتها لم للفالمانع مانعانته كالم لله وفللدول الكاميران الإمالة وللفاذى تمبلوه حوادل السولجب السبع وفي على والمنه المنسطور إير وابسروا وسطفا البرا بوح وفاصا بالمالها مزاجل ملابح بهااحثن بأفاذاذادعلها برح يج سأدت المعنسر سفط وعادا الامرالة المى مج علامد المل م البعلم المنوز كالاصطلابح ملاعدمها اكترمز كط فاذا مت كسملا من كالهادار منال سطر المروح برجا واحد وكالمسر للافابز ولأبعربها احترمز فنط ماذا تمت سنن سفطت من حايفا وادنفيف النظر الدنج واجره فبسون عموع مَن السطود التكممومونيع المصوحب لمنعف نعاذ حكك البوم بد البلد المجول لذاعبي اسادم الدنج والدفابن فالمزح الذي وبرعان زابد بوما وصوالدوابي البزج فح دجارة وحقابت منوست معبم المسبر وانفاف في والجع وال لم برايد ولانناض فهومقيم للجوع اوالاستفامه وبتلوا حراول المحواجب السبع عدول الرام في موضع عدبوماً فنوما على برماللكواجب وبال حرولار لحرما اسأعات المهان سنتمل على مطرير أحوها للسياعات والماجد لدما بفها والأخر لانفاع المقرصف لهائك وبمنع الموى للمربل وبالدنع المنفياع وبمنع ال

321

column is provided for the latitude of the moon but this is of little use and as such is discarded. Whatever else is included in the calendar is provided for the people generally who regulate their work by the position of the moon in the signs, and its conjunction with the planets.

On the margin of the calendar to the right are placed the months of the various nations, their festivals, the conjunctions and oppositions of the sun and moon and the sign and degrees thereof where these occur, the time of day or night, and the ascendants at such times, the last being very useful for eliciting weather probabilities. Again the time is shown of the sun's entry into the various signs, and the ascendants at such times, except in the case of Aries where the ascendant is the ascendant of the year, and the calendar is adjusted from this point, the entry of the Sun into Aries.

They also show at the beginning of the calendar by a diagram how to equate the twelve houses, the position of the planets therein and the resultant prognostics for the whole year. Before this theme are given the dates of the Prophets (on them be peace) and the dates of distinguished kings, because an intellectual pleasure is found in such things. Some people include pictures of the new moons which occur in the Persian year showing how each is going to appear when first seen whether erect or recumbent, also its relation to the point of sunset, so as to be of assistance to the observer looking for the new moon. Many other things are added for the most part useless. If however there is an eclipse of the sun or moon in the course of the year, this is indicated at the end of the calendar, because an eclipse is indicative of so many

بوجد بني في في الله احتر من بعن الأاب الدمان وربا حان ممارول لعنف الفراح سطرير الدرج والما بدالا فابق موفل الف ابده سيقطع مزان عيدا ومابع وكأسنوام عابي مومابط لدالبوم فرالاعل وبخاد لدم الامورج حوزالم فالبروج واساله بالعواجب والماماع اسبدالنفوم بهوسه الأم وأبابهم وأجبيا دمم واجماعات المشرول فمر واستقبا لانعيا ابزة ككون مزلجزا البروج ومنيج زمزل إلونهاد وطالع ذكك الوف فانذكك ميزغو إعرابساط المحوعلي وبكون الأوبكون المااومات دحول منالع والمتراول فكأرج بطالع ذك الرح سوي إكل مان طالعدامي طالع المسند وبرببت ويومع في ولا النعوير في فن من موى فيها البوت الانت عشروالمع المسبعد وسارما عاج البدفاستبلط اجوال المنذوتف ومرتواذيخ الابنباعل المسلم وتواديخ مشاهب الملوك ما ذله له معنى المبعدة ولألك ورما بعل مناكص والمعلم في المالمان الديس وكبفت كالحرمها فيلانصاب والأسلقا عندرو بند وكسفيرونيه عزع خب المفرة اجدى جمنى السمال والجنوب لبست بال وألم علي الماال تم لمخزيه استبااخرا محترما فنول لاعاج البها وانصان المستعشق البرزاولا برمااد عن حسوفات فان وضعما الخالف والتعين فاند

disagreesble things that it is undesirable to have it at the beginning of the calendar.

In the case of an sclipes the date is given, the emount of night or day which will have elapsed till the beginning. Middle and end of the sclipse, the extent of delay if there is any, the amount if not total in 1/18ths of the disseter of sun or moon and the colour of the collpse whether usual.

And now we add by way of an example a portion of a Persian month so as to facilitate the resuling of the

Calendar

Maridian Altitude Sours Mosad- of 136 Sun. Day Bode. Mercury 40°18' 11.25 20°18' 4°36' 2 46°28' 11.20 20°16' 4°36' 2 46°28' 11.18 20°13' 6°21' 4	76 mas 26 0 42°	2. 4						The Colorest			
3031.	25025	†	Jupiter	r Setare Roon		San	Month Month	Month	ari.	,	정불
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	27036	1,044 230 9	.6 %	\$0.3E.	.906	14084	906. 17°54" Barred	-4	19	# 7	-
1209.	ŧ	10. 10. 10. 10.	. 11 o 12 o	#0# M	2029: 230gr 18064.	3 4		•		*	•
11 14 900101 1 7048*	.01 ₀ 68	8018 - 82 ₀ 18.	*20°19*	\$026		19081	TOPE. 19084. Arethebish	a	•	3 . 4	. •
4	3 1	70 S	13°34'	23 pt		4	FORD SEC S. DO DA SHARISHER	•	,		
49°64* 11.14 20° 9° 9°21°	1,38	63 ₀ 53 .99 ₀ 8	.63,53	.1302	60 48 y	99013	2021. 6046721°56° Is tantiand	•	•	t , 1	•
47022° 11.12 80° 5° 10°54°	\$ 4	3010.	.7C.02	2018. H	\$3 ₀ 13	£1054	2019 - 21 - 22 E 2024 Enstella	•	3	•	

sendant of the conjunction of the moon is 306' of Aquarius, the hour, Friday & 6m. and the degree ton. 2301' of Libra.

1 we are asked as to the general monditions on Tuesday the 28th of Remadia, we look in the selumn of the week for a 3 {Tuesday} which serresponds to the 28th of lemaniful in the Lyabis solumn.

1 this we see that it coincides with the 7th of the Syrian and Greek months. If the name is

The made of conjunction Suppose of the days of the found

في إلا لله المرابي عرب في منطق المنطقة والمنوع وبلك المنطقة والمنطقة والمن

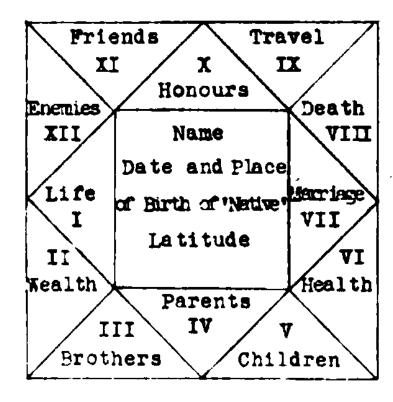
الإرب ع	الشعب النامن المنافق المانعان الولد توم المانعان الوزي المنافق	الانت المالان منتفرز المالان عوداللان مالانون عوداللان مالانون
1 2 2	عند دهر المعالم	ا عدو د
2 2 +	FLE FFT LAMP TO 12	ج که ر ج آردید
م المركب	عادونه و الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ا	و ع م و فرادو

وَلِحُولِهِ عِلَامِ اللَّالَالِمُ الْمُلِينِ الْمِسْوِنِ مِنْهِ رَبِيمانِ والمطلوب سَارِدِ المطلوب سَارِدِ الم اجوالد فطلنا في جواللاسّامِع علام اللّه وجرف جم على مطلمان جون الله جند وللا المالات عرضة ومنان حرف طلباحكم المالية بما الله المعرفة والمناجع ما الله الم

321

written above as in this case we at once know that it is Tishrin I, if not we turn to a table of Greek months and find that TishrIn I is written opposite it. We also find in the Persian column that it corresponds to the 3rd day, Ardibahisht of the month Aban, which name is written above the table. If we wish to learn the date according to the era of Alexander, we find it on the margin of TishrIn I, of the Hijra beside Muharram and of Yazdigird beside Nauruz the 1st of FarwardIn, on the condition that Tishrin and Muharram are already past; if not it will be necessary to deduct a year, the result is the date required, viz. Tuesday 25th Ramadan 4201 A.H., 7th Tishrin I, 1341 Alex. and Ardibahisht, 3rd of Aban, 398 Yazd. [7th Oct. 1029 A.D.]

Then we look at the position of the planets and find the sun at midday at the locality for which the calendar is made is in 19054' of Libra.



A common form for a figure of the heavens at a nativity, in which the degrees of the cusps and the situations of the planets are inscribed. The chief properties of the houses are here indicated, 461. Another form on next page which shows the inequality of the houses in relation to the ecliptic.

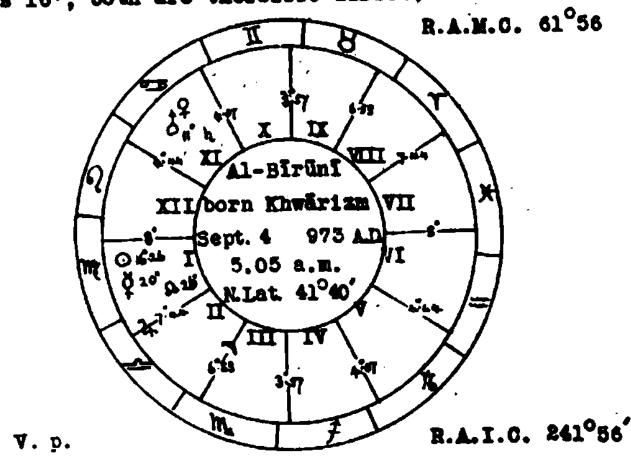
l As remarked Pers. Cat. B.M. II. 452. PLl has 425 but this is by error due to the preceding bist u panjum ramadan: the words from 1341 - Aban. [PL and PP agree with A.] are omitted; otherwise the calendar is the same with some inaccuracies.

برجده للإهم فجرف ف بومب نعوالم المعمر شيرمن سهود م عازل مدمن وبا على البعل المسافية من المرك من وفياة مان المكون المعكورا زجيلبة مذالبلول من فريخ وف أمني في المنابذ الم وكالله باقبالد بوسا في جدول إلم الف زير ج منوالبوم المالف مزلانهاه واسمد معنوب عناراله فبعدوام الموم اددبهنت معنوب غدج فيجرول اساامام الفنزش مالأدما الساديح وجوما الذي للسحة وعند فسترم الاول بط لِلاَسْبِهِ حَمَا بَعُمَادُ فِي الْجِنْ مَقِيلِ عِنْ الْجُنْ مُعَلِي مِنْ الْجُمْ فَالْنَحِ مُلِّكُ مِدْ مِرْدِ عِنْ النورُورْ بِدَ اول فودد دريكاه على وبطدان وني تربز الاول الحجرم فباللوم المعلى فان إجوما واجدهما في ذلك المقوم احدما الماريخ مزالك المغم معد البوم المبطى نفس مندواجن فبحون أذبه فبوع اللا المبطى الخافي المكاتس والمعنسة وزمن معررمسان سندعشر برواربع وابه للجع والبو والسابع مرنسون الاول سنه الف وملماب واجدي ماديع وللاسكار ووزاد دست الدابان ماه سندان تعبز ولمايد لزدء د م مطرالمواضع الحواجب الحبروللانس وجرما بنهاد أبومنا في مطر البروج ف وفي عطر الدرجان مبط وَ فِه الدَّعَانِي مَلَ مُعْلَى اللَّهُ مِنْ المُعْمِلُ المُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ الْمُعْمِلُ المُعْمِلُ المُعْمِلِ المُعْمِلُ المُعْمِلِ المُعْمِلِ المُعْمِلُ المُعْمِلُ المُعْمِلُ المُعْمِلُ المُعْمِلُ المُعْمِلِ المُعْمِلِ المُعْمِلُ المُعْمِلُ المُعْمِلُ المُعْمِلُ المُعْمِلِ المُعِمِلِ المُعْمِلِ المُعْمِلِ المُعْمِلِ المُعْمِلِ المُعْمِلِ الم

. 321-328

the moon in 7024', of Virgo, Saturn in 2026' of Gemini, Jupiter in 25019' of Gemini, Mars in 2018' of Cencer, Venus in 29010' of Virgo, Mercury 6021' of Libra, and ras in 20013' of Virgo. The length of the day is 11h. 16m. and the altitude of the sun at midday 48029', and so the conditions at midday have been arrived at.

sun and moon are direct in their movements, there being no retrograde phase, and DIRECT AND similarly the ascending node has no RETROGRADE direct course, but it is necessary in the case of the other planets to distinguish between direct and retrograde movements. In the case of Saturn, if we look at the day after that discussed, we find that it shows three minutes less, we know therefore that it is on the retrograde path. The same days show in the case of Jupiter an increase of 5', and of Mars 16', both are therefore direct, as is Venus



I MS has 50 for 5.

والمذان فرستهد عشرد وادبع وخسود في معطي فاللف الرالع و سب درجان ملبجه وعشر فرد فيف مرال سنبله ورجارة و درجارة والبعيب وكفيه ويللج ذا والمنشرى فيمك وعيش ويحج ومنع وعير ومعدم المرزاد المربح وتجن فكانعش وفيقه مزلل مطاف مالزهن فيتهد وعشرز وزجه وعشرذ فابن الكنباء فبعط الدويت درجات واجرب مجش في فيعدود الرالج ذعن في عرز وربع والمدعش وفي مراكس لله معداد شلعات عذالبوم احدع شرشاعه وكانعش دفيفده والموضويد فيجداول المساعات وعابرادهاع الشرفينيوسف المهاتماهوموسوع ب حاول الأنفاعات ومنابدواد يعبر خزاوسع وعثر بردفيد فليصل باللطاب لنمف الهائلذا البوم كبف بيع ف مستنفيها وواجعها إماد الشر والفرنب استعبان عزال الم المكورك فلانجوع بالمترعا مكولك المار فلااستفامه بي حضاه الما بختل الدوالحواب الخند فيسطر العرضع ذطرفي غدبوم االذى فيسناه فخالم الفخين انفس مزيوضيد في بومنا بُلاندة فإن الله عنون وأجه في الماجدة والمن والمعرفة الله م المنافقة والمنافقة والمناف

322-325

which increases by 1°14'. Her direct course is rendered more evident by the fact that she moves into Libra on the following day. Mercury is also direct and increases by 1°28'. A glance at the hour column shows that there is a decrease of two minutes per day, and that the day is shorter than the night. The altitude at midday is also seen to decrease from day to day.

323. Fakaif yu'raf maudi" al-kawkab liwaqt mafrud ghayr nist al-nahar. The following example will show how the position of a planet at any particular time may be CALCULATION POSITION found as long as its position STAR AT OTHER TIMES at midday is known. Suppose that 7h. 40m. of the day hours have passed, this being Tuesday; we divide the day hours into two equal parts, viz. 5h. 39m. the difference is 2h. lm. Neglecting the minute we can say that two hours after midday have passed by the time mentioned, because the number of hours up to midday is less, if it were greater, these two hours would belong to the forencon. Now two hours is the 12th of a complete day, and we employ this to the motion of the sun, which we know progresses to in 24 hours, therefore, a 12th of 10 being 5', this is added to the known position of the sun giving 19059 of Libra for its position after the lapse

نماأذن متمان وحكرك الزمي فالماني دنيه فالبوري سرد بنداوار مزنك لعابير شنقله بزالم تنبله اللايزان عن خلسم الاستفامه مَعِث الدابسامُ مُسَعَمِ لا مَا مُرِودُ وَجِودُ مَا نَصِيبُ وَبِي عَبِيدُ مَا الْعِنْدِ مَا مَنِه لِللَّهِ السَّابَاتُ مُسَن فِالْعِيدِ وَمِعْتِينَ إِلَهَانَ فِي الْمُسْأَنِ عُومِع ذَكَّر انسر مَ إلله الاندَ انسَ مِن النَّي عِنْ رَسَّاعد وحال انفلوسف الهادُ مُلدُ ١ الناقس للبوفت المنفلاب المستوجرح بجهنع فمومنع الحوك لوف معروض ينمف غبالوف المعلى السبع تسلعات وللخ شاعه ماضبدين وسافنت فادلا شاعات المعاز منصورت مها حرساعات وسبع وللبري فيعد وللندسل ما بنه وبذلك إعار المعطاء منطون إعبن فبند وابده لمخالع مدلعمد فبنؤ ساعان وعلانبد من في الماذ الخاك الوف المناعات نصف الماذ المرالغ بطي لوكأن اكتما كالمك مامان السكيمان والابر مزالوف مَ بِأَحَدُ بَهِ عِنَا وَعُوما بِسِبْنُ مَن الله الدّ النِّسْفِ المَانَعُ وَذَلَّكُ دُرَّجِهِ المد وسف سُرسها خررها بن ورد ملط موجع المقرّ للنو الهادّ في المع مُنع عيشه

525

of 7h. 40m. of the day hours. If the time were two hours before midday the sun would be in 19045 of Libra, and its position that of 5h. 40m. after sunrise.

An example can also be taken from the moon. Suppose 2h. 20m. of the night hours have elapsed on Wednesday, then we add the hours back to Tuesday midday, making 8 hours, the 3rd of 24. Now the progress of the moon is 14°59' per day, and the 3rd of that 4°53', which has to be added to the position of the moon making 12°17' of Virgo for its position at the time stated.

The same process can be adopted with any planet which is direct in its movement, and any other item in the table which increases or diminishes. We take for example Saturn as an instance of a planet retrograding; its rate of progress is 5' and consequently 1' in 8 hours, but as its movement is contrary to the direction of the signs, this minute has to be deducted from the position at midday, therefore 2° 25' of Gemini at two hours of the night of Wednesday.

So must one proceed by adding or subtracting with all the items of the table.

درجه وتذبح وتخشيف كفيفد مزللي والصومون بعبالتبع ساعات والمح كتاعد ماخيد مزالهاد ولوسكآب الوقت فيله فالمانب اعتيز لفسناعنه المستطاب من بيع المشرط بنها المنهم عثروت وتسعواً بعين دُفِي والليوان وذلك موسع للثميرليك ساعات والمخ شاجه مانسر مزالها ذن نعبز للاالعالغز ببع الدف آعين وتك ماسيدم للبالبعاة زبعلها شاعان سيف الهاد المكاح بسبزا لجلدنان أعات وللاسيد بيعنسف خاذ الكاومجون تاعك الموم لمبلئر لمأام كاخذ بمت الغرميسون المعدع شرده وتتع ولمن كبعد وللمالديع وتجان ولاث وختون كبيد مزالت بلدوموموجع الفرز الماعن فاضببن وللدالابعا وبخلي ذاالفها يمطوه لسكاك وسيستعبم ملحلها تبراجي جدوله ولابنانس واماالكاجب الراجب فليكر المال فيهذا الوف لرجك بمتعث لماشذ فإيق لمها دقيق وماجره سبرما فالهاب تتأعات الى بنسف المهاذ وبزالوف لحزيج لي المع بسير للإخلاف نوالي البروح فبنفره الدفيقه مزموضع زجالسف الهادفيس وودخبر وختروع بسذرن وللو فأوفك مونع وطلة إغبز طام تبريز للوالانعا وعلمذاالفباس عبل أرماناص فيجولوه بترابدح

THE ASTROLARS

324-325

324. Ma al asturlab. The astrolabelis an instrument of the Greeks; Its name Asturlabun i.e. mirror of the

Stars, Hamzah of Isfahān derived from THE ASTROLARE the Persian as if it were sitara-yāb (star-finder). By its aid it is possible easily and accurately to know the time, and how much of. the day or night has passed, as well as other things too

many to enumerate.

The instrument has a back, belly and various separable parts, which are held together by a pivot in the centre. Various figures and lines are on the instrument, each of which has a technical name for purposes of distinction.

325. Mā ardā al-asturlāb. The astrolabe is round except for the projection of the 'kursi' in which there is a hole for the swivel, 5 'ilaqah and PARTS OF THE ring balgah. In the centre of the astrolabe is a hole in which the pivot ASTROLABE turns; the latter holds the various parts together with the aid of a pin, the 'horse'. On the back there is a rule, the "idadah, which turns on the pivot; itsends are sharp points, muri, and towards the centre from each end there projects a quadrangular piece (libnah, hadaf an archer's butt) with small holes

serving as sights.

The face of the astrolabe, the other side of the back, is surrounded by a raised ledge, the hujrah, fitting accurately within which is a perforated plate, the rankabūt (spider's web), shabaka or rete. Part of this plate is a complete circle on which are inscribed the twelve signs of the zodiac; beside Capricorn a sharp 1 For two English works on the Astrolabe, of. Chaucer's Conclusions on the Astrolabe 1391 ed. Skeat, Early English Text Society 1812 and W.H. Morley, Description of a Planisphere Astrolabe, constructed for Shah Husayn in 1712 A.D. London 1856. 2 Misspelt in MS.

3 P has awizah; Morley p. 8 uses filaqah for the cord or strap from which the ring is suspended, and Turwah for the brass swivel between the ring and the

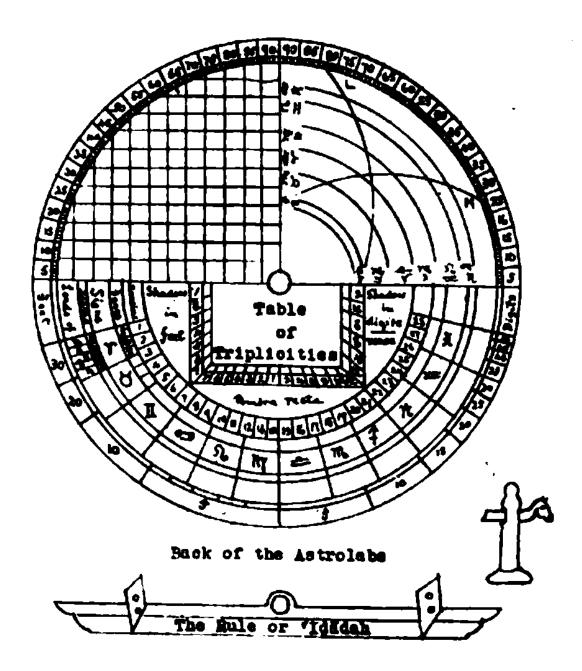
kursī.

ما الاصطركاب موآله للي ابون بها اصطرابون اي مأو النوم ولم فالخرج له عن السهاد مرافع المرسد الذبت الدبت و به ف آلا لذبح الاو عات و بنه ف الماني من المفاد و المباد المباد و بنه ف الماني من المباد و بنه ف الملا من و المنافع من و المنافع من و المباد و بنه و المنافع من و المباد و المباد و بنه و المنافع من المباد و بنه و المباد و

الاستطراب بيطاند مدود فانامند مونج في وفاد بري مرسبان بنواد مهاالو الأه والجلق وفي مرك الاستطراب مع بدو بها قطب باطارة من منها المراب منه بدو بها قطب باطارة من بنواق مو بالما والمحلف بالمراب القطب ما يستحالة وعبالهم قطع مطولة كالسطن مده و بالعقال مربع الفاعنان عربي الما المناب الم

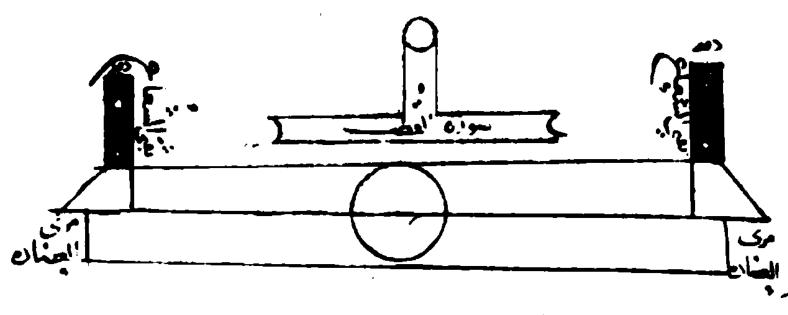
325

point the 'muri', projects from the circle and continually rests on the hujrah when the rete is turned on the pivot. Within and without the modice circle are sharp triangular pieces attached to the meshes of the rete with the names of fixed stars engraved on them - star-pointers. When the horse is removed from the pivot, the rete and the discs underneath it come apart; the latter are constructed for different latitudes, 'climates', both surfaces of each disc being used.

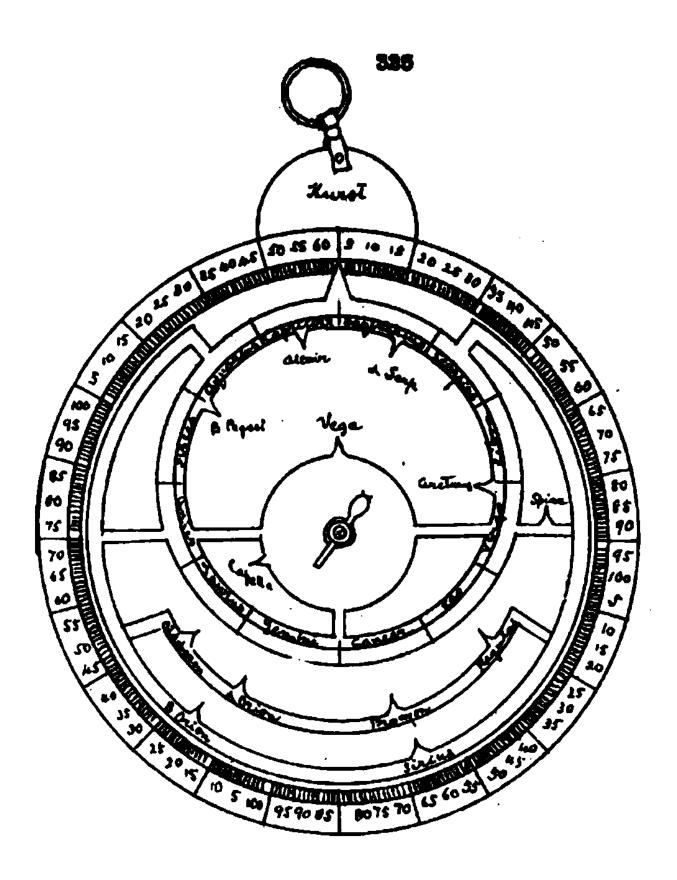


In the larger astrolabes the back is not only used for measuring altitude and shadow, but affords space for a great deal of astrological information. The signs are there with their faces, terms and their lords, the Maneions of the Moon, the parallelogram of two shadows with a table of triplicities in the interior; sines, cosines in the upper left quadrant, and in the right, the parallels of the signs, the meridian altitude of the sun at various latitudes, e.g. L, and its altitude at various places, when it crosses the azimuth of Mecoa, e.g. M. When the right is fitted to the back by the pivot and shoured by the horse on the other side, the pointers ride on the bujrah, indicating altitude and shadow.

نهاذباه صفي في مرا الاطلاف من غير صفيه برفاد الدير العندوب إلى المري ما الله في وجول المفط الحراف به في خادجه من صفاع شبعه الملك معتوب علما أساي المحول المائية وتريح بك مربات المحول واذا اخرج الفرس إلى لمب الماؤلات ومائم ميز الصفيع المجدد المؤلد الأفالم ويمروض الملاد حاوجه ليحل الموال الموق الصفيع وسحول لي وبدول خطره ها مستومه على المرب وسني الما الأحار وغير والمعالم والمروف والمعالم والمرافع والمرافع والموالم والمرافع والموالم المرافع والمرافع والموالم المرافع والمائم والموالم المرافع والموالم والموالم المرافع والموالم المرافع والمرافع والموالم والموالم والموالم المرافع والموالم والموالم المرافع والموالم والم

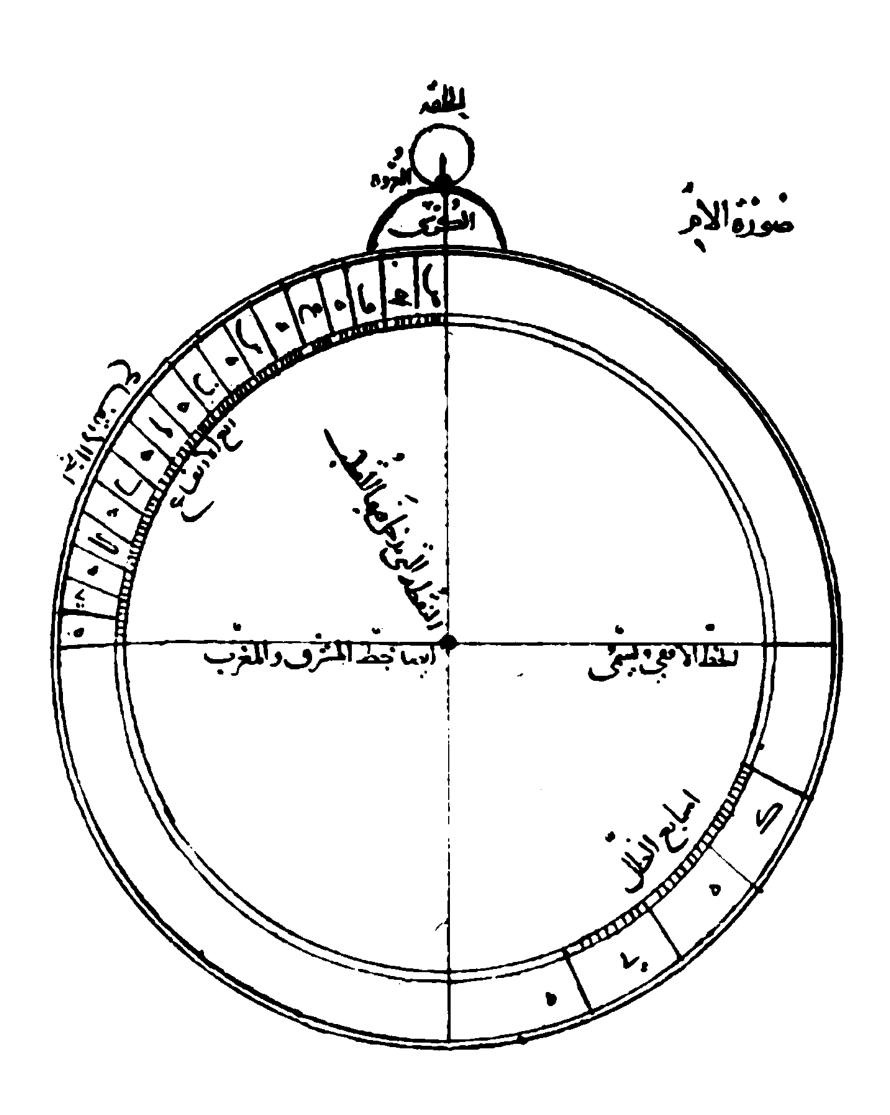


مورة العضاك

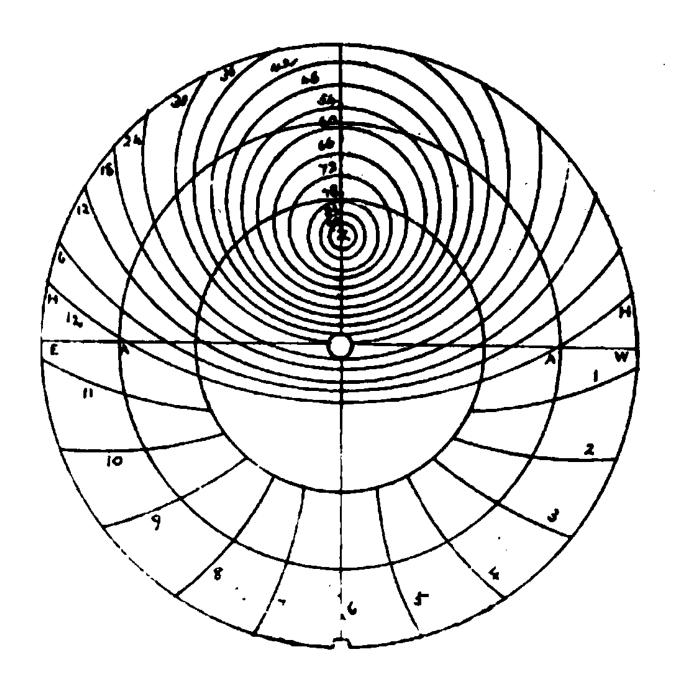


The figure on the opposite page does not represent the fumm, but a simple form of the back showing the quadrant of altitude and quadrant of shadow.

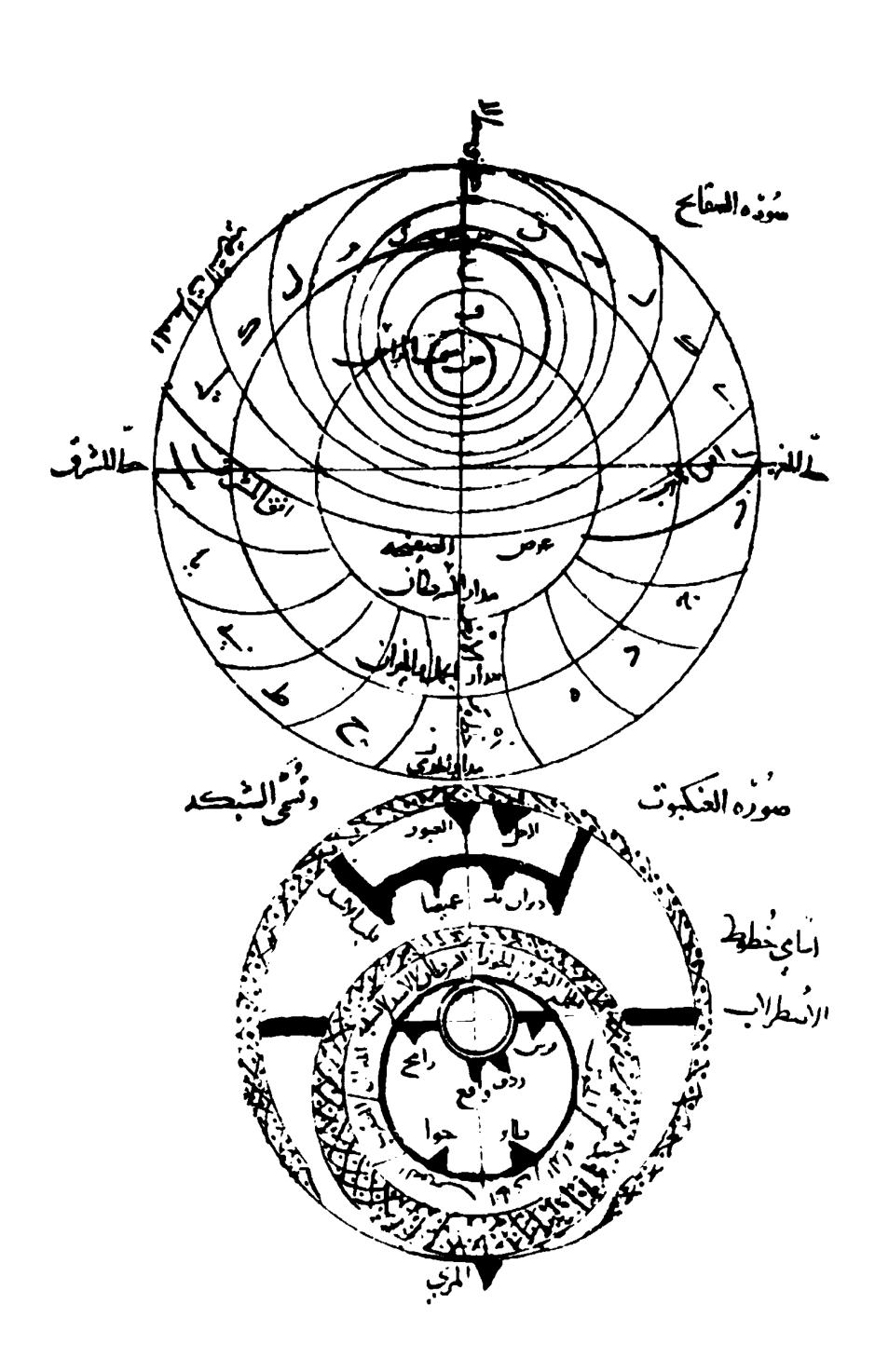
The above shows a simple form of Tankabut or rete from PL without underlying discs, fitting snugly into the Tumm bounded by the hujrah which is graduated to 360° grouped in 15s=equal hours, and in this case shown with the kursi, Turwah and halqah attached. The rete can be rotated, its pointer traversing the degrees of the hujrah. There are shown 5 star-pointers within and 6 without the zodiac circle. When the horse is withdrawn from the pivot the rete and underlying discs can be removed from the time Cf. figure overleaf, at its right the title of next paragraph.



325



A disc prepared for a certain latitude. The three great circles are from without, Tropic of Capricorn, Equinoctial, Tropic of Cancer, EW, East and West Line, HH, Horizon intersecting it and the equinoctial at A. The upper part of the vertical line is the Line of Midheaven. Above and parallel to HH are mugantares in 6s ending at Z the zenith. Below are the lines of the unequal hours from 1-12. A projection in the furm fits into notches at the bottom of the discs and keeps them in place.



326

326. Mā asāmī khuţūţ al-aşturlāb. If the astrolabe be held with the back towards one and the kursi uppermost, the line which runs horizontally LINES ON THE from left to right is the horizon or East and West line. The upper left ASTROLAND quadrant is the quadrant of altitude, and its margin is divided into ninety equal divisions, grouped in fives or tens, beginning at the horizon line and ending at the middle of the kursi. These degrees of altitude are numbered in 'abjad' letters. The opposite quadrant, the quadrant of shadow, is divided into digits of shadow beginning with a point diametrically opposite the middle of the kursi. There is no definite limit for these digits except what is brought about by the division lines becoming increasingly close as they recede from that point. (The artist in P. has, incorrectly, divided the quadrant of shadow in the same way as the

quadrant of altitude.)

On each of the discs under the rete (which are accommodated in the belly or mother of the astrolabe) are engraved three concentric circles, the largest and outermost of which is named the Tropic of Capricorn, the smallest and innermost, the Tropic of Cancer and the middle one, the Circle of Aries and Libra or the equinoctial. Each disc is divided into four quadrants by two diameters, the East and West line and a second which intersects it at right angles, and is divided at the centre into an upper part towards the kursI - the midday line, and a lower, the midnight line, respectively known as the line of mid-heaven and that of the pivot of earth. The horizon is that are of a circle which passes through the intersections of the Circle of Aries with the East and West line; above it and similar to it are the 'muqantaras' or parallels of altitude, divided into East and West halves, by the meridian,

I This is also the case in AO and AO1, but AO has an inserted leaf pp. 196-7 where it is divided at 45° (12 fingers) into umbra recta 1-12 and umbra versa 12-1. Usually in Persian Astrolabes the umbra recta is carried to 50 fingers on one quadrant (fig.44) and 30 feet on the other, umbra versa being only indicated in the central "square of 2 shadows".

الماعل خلن وفالسين فكألب وسعرته العوف فانفلن المجاوم بريك لإ شاكك والنوابز بتخضج للانتفاع معمقتوم بتبيئ فتاه اجاالانفاع نشديهن عنوللطالاني ومنتهر المجاداه نصيف المصرشى خسائها حروف لللصعر الهامعنى يؤنها والمبع المقابل فاالربع بسمى وبع الطل فتم باصابع الطل براة مزع بدالقط والارك مريسي المصرى وأسكافه غفي ودالاند مصرحت بجزعس المسانع سب المراط المضابو ولماع البنجوت مقدح ماه وامام إعلى المساع مان كالمان المن عالم المن على المن المان المناب المن المنابعة عجهدا ذللبي والعابط المتعدي مدان المسترطان مالوشط مراز بها والملاليزان وبمفطران كربيان السفعه ارباعا اجرم اللبغ مزير يحط المشرو والمعزب بنفسل بالزد فبحوزل ونصفيده وكالابت خط المشة ف والاخرالايم خط المغرب والعظر الباب فيفسل بالافوف يحوز الفطعدالي الم التُعُرِسُي مندُخط وسط الساويني الصاخط نصف الليل واما الافن فإذًا القوس للم بمرعلى فعاطع معاد المحلم حسط المنوف المنوف وما فافد من القوس للمرفع المنوف وما فافد من المناد الم

326-327

as is the horizon. The smallest mugantare is that at the zenith marked > 90°. There are also the lines of the unequal or temporal hours below the horizon passing between the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn, and numbered from 1-12.

327, Famā al-asturlāb al-tāmm wa'l-nisf wa
ghayruhum. A complete astrolabe is one that has
ninety muqantaras numbered
COMPLETE AND PARTIAL in abjad letters 1 to 90
ASTROLAGES from horizon to zenith.
If the instrument is too
small to contain all these, then only every
second mugantara (half-size) or third, or sixth,
or tenth is marked (but not fifth although this

second mugantara (half-size) or third, or sixth, or tenth is marked (but not fifth although this form should be made). In the smaller astrolates the divisions of the zodiac are similarly treated. The expressions large and small refer to the number of divisions and the dexterity or otherwise of the artist.

I Morley p. 8 mentions Khumsī as one of the forms made.

فاند سنرق ومامقر مفالغوالمعنب عند فانشف فالفنطر التوليك وأعا عَلَمْ عَبِ فَلَ الْعَادُ فَدُ يَرِ لَا لَكُونَ مَا اللَّهُ ومَعْطَلُ اللَّهُ وَكُلُّ منه كافئ ما في في في الابت الوالم في والمن الإبراق المنه ينكوط الكشاعات للجوجد المخجة كافئ فبابز علاي للدى المسرطان مصو بهالعداد يزول بالمنعبر فاالاصطرلاب المام والمضف ف المامت منطرانا لمنطوط ومزعند للمخ لإثمث الألرث يبزونه اعداده اللحنوب الجل من الماح من جعة المشرف المترب مبدير الداجيع الموال المربع فاذا تسرمفداذ الاسطة لاب عن فداذ المام فلمبع عُلَانْهِ عِلْلُمُ مُلْ مَا مِنْ النَّهِ عِلَا مُنْ اللَّهِ مِنْ اللَّهُ مِنْ اللَّهُ مِنْ اللَّهُ الللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ الللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ مندخس والببزوما دت الإعداد المصنوب مجاع لاعداد واج الموالم ونغ الاسكالاب بسفاوان التغرم فكأرجب مفط وليومل واعادا مُفَاضَلُهُ ثَلِثُ لَذَ وَنَجُ بِلِنَا إِي مُنظِلِمُ ثَلْ الْمُتَّعِبِ وعِلْهُ ذَالْمِ الْرَاكِ لَ المذ المران الفريم للدرج البروج فادن بمبعن الاساي مع علم

328

328. Mā al-aşturlābāt al-mukhālifah lihadhīhi alsifāt. There are also astrolabes of different models from that described without unneces-

ASTROLARES OF sary detail, which is a northern as distinguished from a southern instrument. In the latter Cancer occupies

the place which Capricorn holds in the northern instrument, and is opposite to Capricorn, as is the case with the other signs which in their new positions are still opposite their former opponents. The disc bearing parallels of altitude is characterized by the fact that the ends of the horizon are and of a few of the mugantaras are directed downwards with their convexities towards the kursi, while the others are in the same

position as in the northern instrument.

Several variaties of these two forms are distinguished, like the 'asi' whose muqantaras are like myrtle leaves in shape, the 'mutabbal' which is drum-shaped, and the 'musratan'. There is also the 'mubattakh' called so because the mugantaras and the zodiac circle are flattened into an elliptical form like a melon. Again some instruments have additional discs, such as the tablet of horizons (saffhat al-affiqiyya) and that of 'matrahu'lshurar (place to which the rays are projected - aspects) and that engraved with azimuth circles passing through the zenith, lines of the equal and unequal hours, of the rising of the dawn and the descent of the twilight. Again on the back of the astrolabe lines of the sines, 1 of the shadow of the azimuths and of the midday and afternoon prayers are often indicated. When necessary the rule, divided into two halves, is also lettered, the crocked hour lines, the numbered divisions of sines and ares being marked on it. But there is no end to this chapter.

l janub for juyub PL. 2 The altitude of the sun at various places when it passes over the azimuth of the qibla. PL and PP have zilli silm for zill-i sumut.

السلطلاب ومحنى ولطف كف السابح ومناح ما الاصطركا با الخالف لمن الصفات دلا مريد للب بنقر أولافتين أجره اشال عموالذى ومناه سادماعبر فابع بالاحتفابد ويجاله تدالل المنطون بسون الرالي والمسرطان الويع الذي معباور المرايات ومنج الترطان سأوالبروج فعالمها واما فبالسبغد ببسكوف فباللخ فيجز للفطرات الماسنا ويتيبها عوالمنت بني بين للمنطف علم معافى السلام وحب من مادر للمسترك واع سالاسي والمطباط للتولن ومندسنف تحميطنا مفط وأنه وسنطف فأوجد لبشر متنديوه لاحنها كالبطيخ مزطية ودباكات الملف يزجعة الزبادان عصبير مطرح المنعلوه الصفيعة الأفاقيمة ماعط في السف الح مزد والرالمون للجنب يبطيت المامو من خلوا الساعات المستوبر مع المجوجه ومرز للوع الغزمج النن وعلظم من خطوط الجوب وظلالمت منطوط الطهزوالعسترميض فرأ لجلبسان المنسنسالطول المساه عزقد وماعلها مِنْ لَهُ الْمُحْجِدِهِ الْمُنْ الْمُلِوبِ الْمُخْواعِدَا وَالْمُوالِمُ اللَّهِ الْمُنَاالِابِ فَاللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهِ الْمُحْونُ عَلَيْهُمُ اللَّهِ اللَّهِ الْمُحْونُ عَلَيْهُمُ اللَّهِ اللَّهُ اللَّهِ اللَّهُ الللَّهُ الللَّهُ اللَّا اللَّهُ اللللَّالِي اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللّ

329-331

astrolabe sometimes has the terms or limits of the planets, the faces and triplicities enplanets, the faces and triplicities enplanets, the planets, while these are generally indicated by the Greek marks h Saturn, (+ Jupiter, & Mars, © Sun, & Venus, Meroury, & Moon. 1) The Hindus, however, use the initials of their names for them.

order to take the altitude of the sun with the astrolabe, suspend it firmly on a finger of HOW TO TAKE the right hand, the face towards the ALTITUDE OF SUN sun, then move the rule until the shadow of the one libna nearest the pass through both upper and lower sights, then note the degree of altitude indicated by the point of the rule, and whether it is E. or W. i.e. before or after midday.

al-akhir. When the altitude of the sun has been taken and it is desired to know the and it is desired to know the length of the shadow of a gnomon (shakhs) at that time, note how many fingers of shadow correspond to the altitude in question, then

									بجوالك والمستوالة والمناط
PL	۲.	乏	†	*	<u></u>	Y	J		
AO	N	N	•	*	2	¥	8		
AO ¹		Ħ	•		7	¥	J		
AP	N	Y	1	8	-	\ \ \ \	ب		
PP	7	7	 	本		T			
	工	` ~		from	Abu	Masha:	r De	magn.	conjunct.
	10	, (.				_		
AL	1	, 1	6. 4	平	不	Ŧ		•	

Wiedemann has reproduced those of AO¹, Byzantin. Zeitsch. III p. 145.

زمائ بالمسدود السعواجه وكجوعها وسلما بما وبسؤ للوضح عنايات اساى المحاصب مكامزتم بادغام فحلوم مقدات عرت بن أماللسنلية على أيل المنتع اللي في السيكل الزميرة الم عظائد لا للفن ال مكن بعقام لحق لحو حب أول بزن المربغة كيف بوخد الانفاء كالمتطالا متنعبل لنشر على المسلم والب بينك نعلما بحوزي من والأوال مبع الأساع ببزالت في خطؤ الأسط والب بحك مادد العنادال فرف الماسف لحق عَبِم ظُلُالْكِر وله الْي لَالْمُرْعِلِالْمُ ولللهُ عَلَا لَهُ وَلَا مُوسِعُ السَّعِلْج منالف والبطباعل لمتسلك على وآفاذ العوزك فأزك العياده على نبها والم تجركها والمطر لالتنطيسالي تزعل بزاالانفاع إن فيطوف عدد الحساب من الذي وقت على المسلمة ما المنطقة الذكك ما من للط والمنظرة منحار ابكد مواجز الدنفاع المترون فيذواعف اقتض فبرام غرب وذكف اناقبل النعال شرف وبعده غرب معرفه الطوالانفاع احلامه الاخ مُواخِفُ للانعاع وأددت طَالِهُ صُوحِبِدفانطرال مي المندن المراب مي المندن المرابع الماري المرابع المرابع المطلق المراج المطلق المراج المطلق المراجع ومع مرابع المطلق المراجمة الماري المراجع ومع مرابع المطلق المراجعة المراجع ومع مرابع المطلق المراجعة المرابع المطلق المراجعة المرابع المراجعة ا

351-532

the length of the shadow is to the height of the gnomen as the number of fingers is to twelve. Conversely, if the length of the shadow be known and the number of fingers corresponding in accordance with above proportion, then the altitude can be determined by placing the lower end of the rule on the number of fingers in question.

332. Ma'rifah al-täli' min irtifa' al-shams. To determine the ascendant from the altitude, select the disc constructed for the TO KNOW ASCENDANT place of observation (or as nearly as possible) place it FROM ALTITUDE uppermost and fit the rete over it, then find and mark the mugantara, East or West, which has the same number as the altitude (if the astrolabe is not complete its position must be Thereafter ascertain from a calendar estimated). the exact place of the sun at that time, and mark that point on the corresponding sign of the zodiac on the rete (this may have to be estimated if the Then rotate the rete astrolabe is not complete).

المتعرف عددما حماع فدن الأنفاء فاحان سطاع إينه فِحَلَّ الْعُفَ الْمُدَادُ الذي مِرْ لِمُولِ ذَكِلُ الشِّسْ الْمُعَيْسِ وَمَعْقَاتُ طِل المنسط الاس عرف حرابه عوم اددت انساع المسرف بدوسه مرك المسنان مرتبع الظليل مالع وكالمسابع النوج تعامالم المارخ المرابي البساد الاعلى على عروفه مزاج االانساع فليان فهواد نفاع المرزع الوف الابقت بدط المنت مغرض الطالح مزاله عاكمة اعل الاسطة لاب الوجعك واجعل واجعل والعفي الذي عرضد اماموا فن لعضطك واماافرب المدمرس ابرالع ومث في في المعلج طام ا تخاطب فالمفنطرات مفنطن بسنونع وهاسالنعاع المشترالذي مبكرات كانتزنيا فغ المنطرات المنزفير وانصانغ سبآ فغ المنطرات العزبدعم علما ولاشك فصودمالذا كالكثطرلاب مامآفاذ لأجعز علعام الاعدة للانفاع بعبنه في فنطرار ولي مدوق بابن مفطر بري المنلولمه فبركان لاسفاع للسال كانعتر ورجده تذرّ ونجوز الانفاع فها بن عظم المربع حصل ولوعظ باب لح

The translation of paragraph 352 has been condensed by the omission of the examples of estimation given in the text, if the Astrolabe is not complete. The altitude of the sun is e.g. 20°, and the 20th mugantara has to be found. If the Astrolabe is a suds, it lies between the 18th and the 24th mugantaras, and consequently a third of the distance between these beyond the 18th line. If it is a thulth, it lies between the 18th and the 21st lines, two thirds of the distance between these beyond the 18th and the 21st lines, two thirds of the distance between these beyond the 18th line.

When the position of the sun has been learned from a calendar, this must be marked on the corresponding sign and degree on the zodiac ring, and this mark placed over the mugantara determined. The ascending sign and its degree will now be found at the East Horizon. If the East Horizon does not correspond exactly to one of the divisions of the sign, the degree of the Ascendant must be estimated from its position between two of these divisions.

This method of estimation must be adopted in all similar cases; it would be tedious to have to repeat the explanation in each case.

بنعنظرت وككعرع ومقطع لمهادز اراى العين علمماك فاند وبنعمقنط عشرفان كالتفرلاب شلأملا بفالانفلع الذي يبا بهابن منظرة لح كأوبن ومذاالانفلود زجنزه المأمابز للفظرن فاخذ الخ للسافه مزعب وتعاجب انهافا فدموضع مفطس عنزر مُنفف موضع الممر عزدفتر السند لوفتيذ وتطلد درجابها من طفت في البزوج في المخصوت في المرج الذي هي والطبي الأسطرلاب ناماً والم من و را المنظر الخطوط الى فقر بالله و استلام و المنظر المنظر ما علنا وطلب الانعاع ببالفيط وترفاذا حبلناعل رجد المشطلعلها علامه تروضع اعاعلي منطئ النفاعهالي المحاجل الإجعندم المنزق طرا ماوا عاء من طفد البروج فهو البسوج الطالح وبرجا ندمان مأبعن البيور وفنالمشرف معاجل لمطوط العاتيد للبزج لمصان ببضلبنها يخرفنا عدد المطالاول وهوالذي إلا أرابرج اوب وجفط اوم جزيامابرك الالباق النرف صموم خلاما بالمطب والمعلى بعطاه بسوات

332-354

until the degree in question is over the mugantara already marked, and examine what sign and what degree thereof coincides with the eastern horizon; this is the ascendant.

353. Keif yu'raf al-madi' min al-nahar. When the degree of the ascendant has been placed on the east horizon, see what division of HOW MUCH OF the hujra the pointer beside Capri-DAY ELAPSED corn indicates, then move the rete from west to east (past the midheaven line in the direction opposite to the succession of the signs) until the degree of the sun comes to the east horizon, and then note where the pointer is on the hujra. The difference gives the number of divisions between sunrise and the time the altitude was taken, known as the da'ir of the sun (8 244), and as fifteen divisions are equal to one hour, and one division to four minutes, the result gives the length of the day that has passed in equal hours and minutes.

shams min qibal al-madi' min al-nabar. Given the number of hours of the ALTITUDE FROM FOREGOING to find the altitude of the sun and the ascendant. Place the degree of the sun on the east

الاسطرلاب تندر فيري وعد للظ المأل مهوادلها باسع شروه المجنوا وبخرزاءا بزللط الاول وبزالا ومنعلن الدار مايزللظ واللب الحزالذي بنهاهوست درجات ببحور لمها درجين دراعلى الماسمون للجنوط عشرون عالانهان الطالعدون بذين برج لبلخت معتطا بعلفا سانم ذكل يزجيم الإواب مان عرروكم مطول مبل كف يعرف للماضى زالنها قد احان للطالع بدنه المومنو عاعلاف ولمنزف فانطر المالي عهو ما ترابل بالمع المعين المجرم فيها على وفعد علامد مُادرُ المنصون مع حوسال للاف توال البروح اعنى المعن الوسط المااللة فخرفافح رجوالم والجعل على المخالف المرب مزالجن فجدم للعبالمه الاهبال فإحكان فيوماد لذمزان انعد للهائم للهنطاع البنتن إليه فت فباس للازنعاء فلعينالك آخسع زماً الثاعدة ما الأبم خمسة بسنر غنلك لنمان اربح د عابق تاعد فالجمع مزد كأب فوما ضي الغائن اعد

334-336

horizon, and note the division of the hujra on which the rete point rests, then rotate it to the west for the number of divisions corresponding to the number of hours elapsed. Then see what degree of a sign is at the east horizon, this will be the ascendant, and observe on which mugantara, west or east, the degree of the sun is, its number gives that of the altitude.

355. Fakaif turaf al-sarat al-muwajjah. How to know the unequal hours. When the ascendant is placed on the east horizon, look where the TEMPORAL HOURS nadir of the degree of the sun is among the unequal hour lines below the horizon, the nadir will be so many degrees of the seventh sign from it and will mark the hour in question. As we know which it is we are not concerned with how much of it has elapsed.

356. Fakaif tu raf hadhihi al-ashyā' min sā al-lail. How to ascertain the foregoing - the ascendant etc. from the hours of the night.

ASCENDANT &C FROM Since the altitude of the sun NIGHT-HOURS cannot be taken, if you know by observation how many hours of the night have passed, convert these into divisions of the hujra, then place the nadir of the degree of the sun on the east horizon (for the nadir is used by night instead of the degree of the sun by day) then rotate

I (chandumP) v. b.178 n.

ختمه فرما ما والمحسور الساعه لمعلى وعلى المواجد والماجع مرف الإنهافي والعابد عمر المرافع والمابر على والمابر المحتمد والمحتم والمحتمد وال

وضيفة ومدالمقطئ من خرف الساعات المعوجه

اذا مَعَانَ الْمِالِمِ مُوسُوعِمًا عَلَى فَاللَّهُ وَفَاظُرُ الصَّا الْمُطُوطُهُ وَدُمْ الْمُعْلُوطُهُ الْمُطُوطُهُ مِنْ جِما بِمُلْ الْمُطُوطُهُ مِنْ جِما بِمُلْ الْمُطُوطُهُ مِنْ الْمُنْ الْمُعْلُوطُهُ الْمُطُوطُهُ مِنْ الْمُنْ الْمُعْلُوطُهُ الْمُعْلُولِهُ الْمُعْلُولِهُ الْمُعْلُولِهُ الْمُعْلِمُ اللَّهُ اللَّهِ اللَّهُ الللَّهُ اللَّا اللَّهُ اللّ

فلبف بعرف منه الاستبام رساعات الليل

المالنفاع المشرفانة باللوموم لعبته عان إعبات مباعات مدرسدت فر المان المطرد ومدالت على المرفع المنطرة

336-558

the point on the hajra to the division calculated and look at the east horizon, the sign there is the sign of the ascendant, and the degree of the sun is at the unequal hour.

To take the altitude of a fixed star, suspend the astrolabe in the right hand, turn ALTITUDE OF the particular star-pointer towards FIXED STARS the star in question till it is sighted, then note the degree of altitude marked by the rule, and note whether it is east or west by its relation to the midday line.

ascendant from the foregoing, place the tip of the star-pointer on the mugantara ASCENDANT FROM corresponding to the altitude, ALTITUDE OF THESE east or west as the case may be, then look at the east horizon, where will be found the sign and degree of the ascendant, and at the degree of the sun, which will point to the actual unequal hour.

باللسائين مفسام د تبعط لتمسر بالعدان وعدم تعوفع المرى الحروبا بنامام عك مزلها بعادم العصبوب الحان بلغ للري حبث إنسى لعدد العل المافؤالم وعافاه مزللطف معوالطالع بدرجاتد الحدجه الممراز وفجب اعات المعوده والمتاعات المعوجد المعامز للبلع فكف وجانف المالك المأبن افسانه اكوكابكون العنكوت شاوات مله وعلوالا المراا بمسك سنك المعيلا في الملا عالم و الانساع منى عانظه من العم العصاده مجطها واست مطريف ودعب منقب اللبند النفاح يتمنو كذوبه دكك المحوجب مزجلي بمنخ اللبنين فاذاداب فانطرال مرجابسا وعلى وقعرزل االانفاء ذلك المعوي فاع فاع ف عرحط نصف الهاناهو سريع عامعن ٩ العمشة منعمري ذلك العوجب وحوداسد الجدد بالانفاع الذي وحرث لفية المفتطبرات المرفسان كانلانف عشرقباء فالمفتطرات الغرسب انصانع ببأمانطرال في المنظر المنطر المنطر المنطر المنطر المنطر المنطر المنطر في المنظمة من المنطقة عن المنظمة المنطقة المنظمة المنطقة المنظمة المنظ

339-340

from the foregoing how much of the night has passed, note the position of the point of HOW MUCH OF the rete when the degree of the NIGHT ELAPSED ascendant is on the east horizon, then rotate the rete inversely till the nadir of the degree of the sun is on the east horizon, note how many divisions of the hujra it has traversed, and translate into hours.

ghurubhu. To find the time of rising and setting of a star whether by night or TIME OF RISING AND day, place its pointer on the SETTING OF STAR east horizon and see if the degree of the sun is above the horizon among the mugantaras, if it is, it rises by day. Then note where the rete-point is on the hujra and rotate it backwards till the degree of the sun reaches the east horizon. Translate the amount of movement into hours; these are the hours of the day which have passed before the star rises.

If the degree of the sun is below the horizon among the unequal hours, then the star rises at night. Note the position of the point of the rete and rotate it backwards till the nadir of the degree of the sun is on the east horizon, and translate the divisions traversed into hours, which are those of the night which have passed before the rising of the

مرالت المعرب المعرب العارب المعرب الم المجم واللبل ذاحك والطلام موضوعاً على المؤالم أن فبالطع فع المريم للجم على مناد بالمنطق معيد سآغرالميان بودنية المسرافق المشدق مانطر يحريم كالمرى الحق محمونا فإنعاجه لمساءات معمانعتم فف بعف وفيطلوع الحوك وع وبمز للإلوالهار منع داسه الجدد على فالمنف ع انظل درجه المنت فانتحات موف الأرمن إجبز المفالمرات فانطاع ذلك السوكب بكونهادا أفعلم خبياعلى فع المريم الجي مادر العنصوت مبسى آخي افي رايمة افؤالمرف فأتخر للمري لجزا الجره فوالااب وفاجع لمدت اعات وعلاصب منالهاذاله فنطاوع المعوجب وانحاند ببالنزنخ الانخ فه بزالسَّاعِاتُ مَانِطُ لُوعَ ذَكُلُ السَحِيبُ سِعَونَ لِلْأَعْدِ لَمْ عَلَى وَعَالَمِي مزالجيء ادنالعنصبوت معصوساخع الفردخ المترافي المستن في المحالم المركب والعابع المستاعات وج الما منه ير البلالطوع المتوسب فالدبئ لأكرع ء ماستعان المغرب

340-341

star. If the time of setting is wanted, use the west horizon instead of the east and proceed as before.

341. Kaif taswiyah lil-buyut al-ithne-ashar. To equalize the twelve houses, place the degree of the ascendant on the east horizon, ADJUSTMENT OF the point of the ecliptic on the THE HOUSES west horizon is the cusp of the seventh house. Then look at the meridian, what has arrived there is the sign and cusp of the 10th house. M.C. - If what you find is also the 10th sign from the ascendant, the angles are erect. When they are succeedent, the point indicated on the astrolabe will be in the 11th sign from the ascendant; although it must be written down as the cusp of the 10th house. E.g. if the cusp is in Aquarius, the house will be formed of Aquarius and so many degrees of Pisces, while if the cusp is in the 9th sign, the angles are cadent, and the house is formed of Aquarius and so many degrees of If Aquarius alone occupies the Capricornus. tenth house, then Leo is in the fourth, if Aquarius and Pisces, then Leo and Virgo, and if Aquarius and Capricornus then Leo and Cancer. This relation applies to the rest of the houses; so if you know one house, you know its nadir.

To determine the cusps of the other houses, turn the rete inversely so that the degree of the ascendant

بدلان المسترول شلع الجالع لواد عن العبن عنى بالك اجوال عمه م صعرد رحد الطالع على في واف سطير حالفوالغرب وعيد عد المسكايم الطر الخطرضف المفادفا وافاهمز يرج ودرط تدفع وسط الساللعدد بكون إلعنوره عاشر برح الطالع فان كانط مجدت أبعنا عاشرالطالع فاحتب كرجاند معيدفان الافتاد فالمدومن كانت مابلد كانعاخرج بالأسطرالاب موالرح الجلاع بنسرفادان الجنبذ لوسطالها بالعاسن وكاند المالالوم اد دفع الموجود مع درجاند بسع ف الولوم الحوف كنى درجه واذ اكات الموما وزابله كانعاخج بالانتط زلاب ملاج اكتابيع فابدا مالعدد وفاللالوم الجبي عدى زجدود دخات الرابع نعول مساوبملانطان العاب روك لككلي ومفالمه والابراج تحون نطابراع فاذا كاللياب الماله وكانالا بوالا لمعان كاللهاب الالومزل في كالالبح الأسول

341-342

comes under the horizon, and is placed on the line indicating the beginning of the eleventh unequal hour. -1.e. through two temporal hours - 1/5 of the semi-nooturnal arc of the ascendant then look at the meridian line to see what sign is there and what degree; it will be the cusp of the minth house and its degree, the nadir of which is the ousp of the third. Then move the rete through two unequal hours so that the degree of the ascendant rests on the beginning of the ninth hour, the sign and degree at the meridien will be those of the eighth house, their madir those of the second. Then turn the rete so that the madir of the degree of the ascendant rests on the first line of the third hour under the west horizon, the sign and degree of the eleventh house will be at the meridian: their nadirs those of the fifth: then turn the rate to the right so that the madir of the degree of the ascendant rests on the first line of the fifth hour, the sign and degree of the twelfth house will be at the meridian: its nadir is the sixth. Thus all the houses will be equalized. [Figs..on pp. 150, 190, 191.]

342. Kaif yu raf al-tali min watad akhir. To determine the degree of the ascendant if another cardo is known, if the known degree ASCENDANT FROM is the western one, place it on the ANOTHER ANGLE west horizon, if M.C. on the meridian towards the kursi, if I.C. on the meridian below the horizon, and in each case look at the east horizon for the result.

¹ Libros del saber II, 274. As to another method of Al-Biruni's, see Sedillot, Materiaux II, 509.

الكف الافق العنص المعن ويجسل على خطراول الملادع شرفا مطر عندذكك الخطر فسف المهاد فاواطاه مزالج وجوالورج فنوقرح المبت الماسيج ودنها فه منطبع برح المآلث ودنجائد ثما وزمائد معصوساً خي ضبط درجه الطالح سأع بنصوب بهسل على وللساعدا لأسعده وخوا ماوافاخط يسف الهانهورج البيد المامرود وبصور بطب مح المناف ودرجه مهم نط بردرجه الطالع على ط اول المساعدالمالة بت افع للغرب مبحون على خط مصف المهادرة الميث اكادي عبرودية وبكون فلمرة برح المين الخارس ورخند فالزالب كبوت من اوما بوالمنخ بخط مطبرد دجفرا لطالع فيمسبر علحط اول التاعدا كاسه فبوافح فم نصف المهانبرخ البنب إلى بالمسترود رجوون كالبق سُدّاه بمنعف الطالعمن فلراخر ع انصانالعلوم ونوالغادب فضيج دريت وتدوسط النّمان عب المخط وسط المانجوال وسي وأن الأرض منه عما على خط عند الماني أنظري جهد ذلك العاواي المشرق فهورج الطلح ود ودم مع فدي ضع ومَسْ افع الان عاول بن ساحة والملح الماسع الماسع

343-344

343. Marrifah rard nahr wa masafah ralati-ard yuhawilu baina misahatih wa baina al-masih ha'il.

PIECE OF GROUND

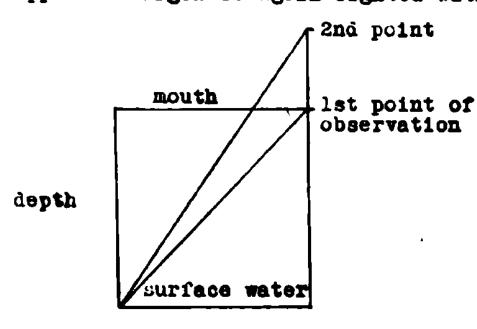
To find the breadth of a WIDTH OF A RIVER OR river or a piece of ground the other extremity of which it is impossible to reach so as to

measure it in the usual way, stand on the bank, hang the astrolabe on the right hand and move the rule till you sight the other bank; then turn round without changing your position and without altering the rule

eye of observer width of river equal distance

look through both sights for a mark which you can recognise and measure the distance between your position and the mark, the breadth of the river is the same. The same method can be used for a piece of land.

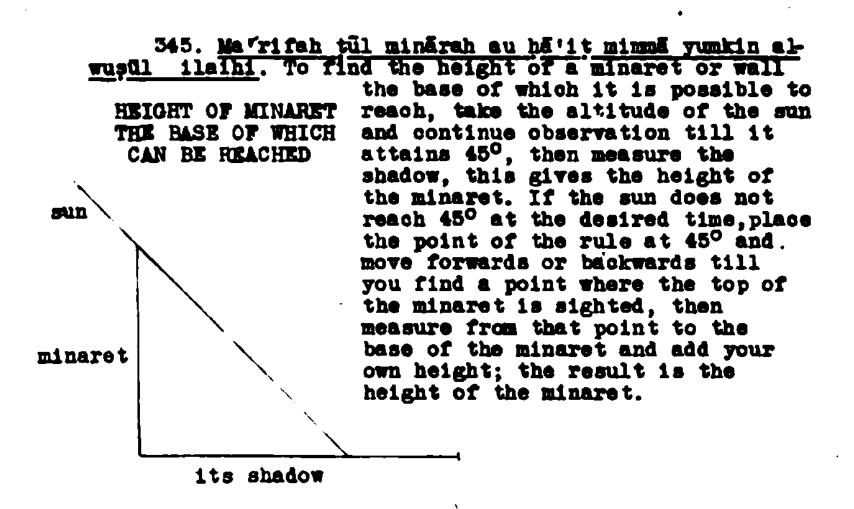
344. Marrifah rumq al-bir. To find the depth of a well, stand on the margin with the astrolabe in the left hand, the quadrant of DEPTH OF WELL altitude towards you, and move the rule till the opposite margin of the water or the bottom is seen through both sights. Then note the number of fingers in the quadrant of shadow to which the rule points, place its tip at one finger less, and go straight up higher until the opposite margin is again sighted without



نف على المرف المرف المرف المرف المرف المراج وي عبر المرف ال

344-345

Measure the distance between the two points of observation, and multiply by the number of fingers of shadow noted. The result is the depth of the well, while that distance multiplied by twelve gives the diameter of the well.



For an alternative method of. Alfonso, Libros del Saber II, 287. AO p. 215 leaves out a line between 12th and 15th which requires shifting the 'idada to a finger more, before rising to the 2nd position and sighting anew, AO¹ also. The procedure is the same as in \$ 346.

الفيزطرف للاالذي فابتراولا من عبران عبوالبساده عن منهم اللاب والديم المراب والمنهم الله والمراب والمراب والمراب المربط فالمتمع فعوا ذرع عنوا لم والمالة والمالة والمالة والمراب المربط فالمناب المربط المالة والمنابع المربط المالة والمنابع المربط المنابع عن المربط المنابع المربط المنابع المنابع

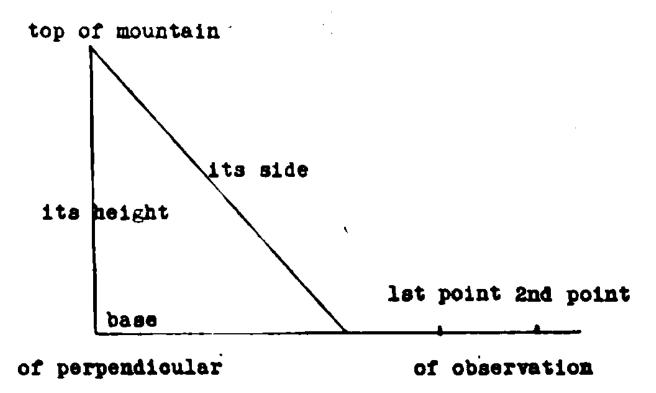
مجدده طول منان المجابد ما يكالمول المبان المنان المعالمة على المان المعادة المنان المعادة المنان المعادة المنان المنان المنان المناز والمنان وال

346

546. Ma'rifah tul minarah au ha'it la yumkin al-wuşül ilaihi. To find the height of a minaret,

HEIGHT OF MINARET BASE OF WHICH INACCESSIBLE column or mountain the base of which it is impossible to reach, stand where you are and move the rule until you see the top of the object through both

sights just as you take the altitude of a star, then note the number of fingers in the quadrant of shadow to which it points and move forwards or backwards (according as the ground is most level), if forward place the rule-point at one finger less, if backward at one finger more, and walk till the top is again visible through both sights. The distance between the two points of observation multiplied by twelve is the height of the mountain, while the same distance multiplied by the number of fingers of shadow observed at the first point of observation gives the distance between that point and the base of the object. Similarly the height of any object in the air, such as a bird or a cloud which is so stationary as to allow of the altitude being taken from two different points, can be determined by the same method, as well as the distance between you and a perpendicular dropped to the ground from the object.



مع منطول مان التجابط لابمكر الوصول لي تف في وضع وخط البسنان وادفيها وانت تنظره وعبر مرتفي المركز الغائرالمطوبخي اه كماباخوا سفاع المحواجب ثمايطر علي وفع العساده مزلصابع المطل ودكك حوالطاللوك غيقدم فناخري مصحالاستوالهاو على أسان من عان فعدم من المبال المان فانقس خالط للا الصبح المصم وجب العيشان عجمه عملاما جرنع للمال المسان فزدع للط للاولله بعاومهم مرى العيسان على المنولارال سأخرال أخرال أن والداس الملقبين المسرماير الموقف واصرم فانجعت ومجمع لموللج والمطوب وانعرت ماسجت فالط اللاول بمع ما بزالم فف الآول بن الملاف الذي ونتعموده وكار فالمواني عاب اوطبرتم امك العف ملائع كالحال فسندب موضيعن لف فهااد نف عد لأمكم عسره نعل مزالانم وما ببرج ومبعك وبن مطبح فالأض ملن الوتغير

346-347

And now that we have arrived at this point, having noted the terms used in geometry and arithmetic, called attention to the nature of the heavens, shown how to read the calendar and to manipulate the astrolabe, and have completed these subjects, it is time to deal with the expressions which astrologers use with regard to the decrees of the stars, and which are of interest to a querent. By the majority of people the decrees of the stars are regarded as belonging to the exact sciences, while my confidence in their results and in the profession resembles that of the least of them.

ASTROLOGY

347. Taba Nature of the signs to the characteristics of the four characteristics of the four combination.

As to the nature and temperament of the signs if they are written down in two rows, upper and lower, the first sign above and the second below it, and so on to the last, all those of the upper row are hot and those of the lower cold, while the pairs so arranged are alternately dry and moist.

Preface, India, p. 25. "That he believed in the action of the planets on the sublunary world I take for certain; though he nowhere says so. It would hardly be intelligible why he should have spent so much time and labour in the study of Greek and Indian Astrology if he had not believed in the truth of the thing." of. Chron. p. 217. He apparently also shared the general belief in the efficacy of charms and talismans, but his contemporary Avicenna is very contemptuous in his refutation of Astrologers. Risālah fi radd al-munajjimīn. of Mehren p. 237, Homenaje a D. Fr. Codera. Bardesanes, a Syrian Philosopher in the 2nd half of the 2nd century, condemned astrology in plain and weighty terms.

واذقد لمعنال وفالموضيح وفرغنا بودالاسان الإلحاضجاب في علالعدد مالمن وسيز للآبتاع لحصيفيد المند والاشان المجرود التفويم وأسبال ولاسط للاب فعدان لما فحكوا لموامنع الدبية مشاعد احكام النهم ما نط سوال الشابل مسودعلها ولانف اعنداح تراكماس من العاوم الماسيد وانصانا يتمقادنا فحض التمزه وهن العنساء وشبها بالجنف اداعلم فلبناك لعلاذك مأبحض بعالبروج مزداك بالف الدهاع طابع البروج كيف ع منحنث زجلمها الجشط والانجيباه في شطراسف الجند حال ابكام ل الميط والإعلى وجلهان وبدالاسف ل وحاً مارد مم بسعور خاوابد معانحت فرباست بمعانم قطبن معام المستن الاخها واذاعرف الفوهالف علمع للفعل للبرج حان سباغس المائسا كالمرعنا مرالع المراخ المالا المان اعلى والمحارث معام ابزن مسوب الملامز العبالم اللم مالمه أم المدن كالمربع منوب اللانط فالمالم والمسودا وكالحاد رطب فومنسوب الملهاوال الدمونك لمارد رطب فه مسوب الالباوالالغيم ودلك فيهذا للوول ع

347-349

	Dry	Moist	Dry	Moist	Dry	Moist
Hot	Aries	Gemini	Leo	Libra	Sagittarius	_
Col	Teurus	Cencer	Virgo	Scorpius	Capri cornus	Pisces

When therefore you know the active virtues of a sign whether heat or cold, and the passive virtues, whether dryness or moisture, it will not be concealed from you what particular element of the world and what particular humour of the body each sign resembles. Each sign that is hot and dry is related to fire and yellow bile, each that is cold and dry, to earth and black bile, each that is hot and moist to air and blood and each that is cold and moist to water and phlegm.

The Hindus regard as moist signs Pisces, the hinder half of Capricorn and the anterior half of Aquarius for reasons given above in speaking of their representations, viz. that the hinder end of Capricorn is fish-like, and that of Aquarius water. They do not however reckon Scorpius as belonging to the moist signs, but count it with the aerial ones, while Cancer holds an intermediate position, sometimes being regarded as watery, sometimes as aerial according to circumstances.

signs are male and the cold female. The planets are powerful in those signs which MALE AND FEMALE resemble them in nature and sex, but they partake of the nature of the signs in which they are situated so that a planet obviously male shows a tendency to femaleness by being in a female sign. The Hindus say that all the odd, i.e. male signs are unlucky and the female signs lucky.

a general agreement that all the male signs are diurnal and the female nocturnal. The DIURNAL AND NOCTURNAL diurnal planets are powerful in the day signs and the

¹ Corrected to posterior in P but not in A.

311	200	الإاز	Ti.	\;,\.	4	البروج لمجان
ابلاز	1.0	بلاز	1.6	المائر	المناز	المابر والخطب
14	18	أنحوار	Y.;	العاز		الروجالمارك

ماالذكرمنها والأنتى وجرح البارده المناف والمحروب من كان فري المناف والمناف وجرح البارده المناف والمناف المناف المناف

النصائب منها وما اللبلي النفاق فَ خَلَعُ النَّالْ وَمَا اللَّهِ لَا لَهُ اللَّهُ الْمُ اللَّهُ اللَّلْمُلَّالِلللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّالل

349-352

nocturnal in the night ones. In the Greek bizidhajl it is stated that according to some Aries, Cancer, Leo and Sagittarius are day signs and their nadirs Libra, Capricorn, Aquarius and Gemini are night ones, while the remainder partake both of day and night. The Hindus balieve that Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Sagittarius and Capricorn are powerful at night, the six others by day.

and Pisces are described as maimed, the first three because their feet are out off at the hoofs and claws, and Taurus in addition because it is only half an ox out in two at the navel, while Pisces is included on account of the absence of limbs.

Aries, Libra and Sagitterius are described as erect constellations in the books, the others are not KRECT AND referred to in this regard, but the Hindus OTHERWISE always say that Aries, Taurus, Cancer, Sagittarius and Capricornus are asleep and represent them recumbent, while Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpius and Aquarius are erect, 2 and Gemini and Pisces recline on one side. Their intention in this matter is unknown to me, for the position of the figures in the constellations is of no importance, and they offer no evidence to the contrary.

352. Fama al-insiyyah wa ghayrha. The following signs are represented as human: Gemini, Virgo, Libra and half of Sagittarius and Aquarius. Such is HUMAN AND the case in the figures shown above OTHERWISE with the exception of Libra, but when Libra is represented in the act of weighing, a

I I am indebted to Professor Nallino for the interpretation of this word, to the proper pointing of which AL comes nearest. It is the Pahlawi vizidhak (N.P. guzīda) chosen' a Aveologici (of Vettius Valens) one of the Greek works which reached the Arabs through a Pahlawi translation. See Nallino, Memoirs presented to Prof. E.G. Browne p. 351 and see reference to India I, 158. My first Latin book was a 'Delectus', never associated with the name of a compler. Cf. Grund. iran. phil. p. 303. yaiens also appears later 1999 476, 479.

المبدوج المهارب واللبليد بفاللبليد وخلف فوم فخط على دعرب البذينج الروي فعلواان للحل المسرطان وللاسد والفوس معادير ومطاركا الميزازم المبيء الدلوه لبلوذا لبلنه وسسابرها مشتر يحدالمه إزوالبسل مَمذَ عِبْ المندع ذَكُ الله له الوروللوذ اوالمسرطان المؤسول لبي بغوب بلالها السنه البام بنغوى المار فاالمقطوع والاعضا ميلال الودوالاسد والمؤند وذكل محول من الجل الاستعطاب فافالهواع بالملاف والرأن ومزالمؤدعلى تلموعل فيضف توتمقطع على الست ومزالج تبطع والاعضا فاالمنصد وعبر المنصب النصب والم والعوس مك ذي حرب في الحب ولمني السروح عي واما المند فذع واازالح لوالموت السنطان المؤس وللوى طلح مستلفيه علطهورها مالاشدوالسبنلدعليه شها وللوذاوالجون يطلعان المالمزعلي بهما ولما تحفق عرض للعسر مفرض مان العصلى المستريل وافؤ خال والبسهدائة المزوج الانسب ويجلبونا والسنبله والمبران والموسف الأول النعاب وذكك معلوم بانقدم والمسون للنسبد في من الما والمرالم المحال والم الموادف ب

352-353

human or bird figure suspends the balance or simply a human hand. The four-footed figures are Aries, Taurus, and Leo, while the hinder half of Sagittarius, sometimes the front half (of Capricorn on the analogy of Taurus) are also so reckoned. Then of these Aries and Taurus have cloven feet, Leo claws and Sagittarius hoofs. Again the people generally from youth up entertain certain ideas as to the signs, such as that Leo, Scorpius, Sagittarius and Capricorn (Piscesh) suggest beasts of prey; Gemini, Virgo, Pisces and the hinder two-thirds of Capricorn, birds; Cancer, Segittarius, Scorpius and Capricorn, reptiles; and Cancer, Scorpius and Pisces, aquatic animals.

The Hindus have a redundancy of interpretations of this kind; they say that the human signs are Gemini, Virgo, Libra (the fore part of Sagittarius) and the hinder half of Aquarius, all of which they describe as bipeds, while the quadrupeds are Aries, Leo, the hinder half of Sagittarius, and the fore part of Capricorn. Reference has already been made to their ideas as to watery and aerial signs.

353. Famā al-Eusawwitah minhā wa ghayr almuşawwitah. Gemini, Virgo and Libra are loud-voiced,
of these Gemini is capable
VOICED AND VOICELESS of speech; Aries, Taurus
and Leo are half-voiced,
Capricorn and Aquarius are weak-voiced, while
Cancer, Scorpius and Fisces are voiceless.

الاستعراما موزة انسان ام اوبن مفرد اماملط ابرلاسكال العيلاف ماما البروج ذواك الأبع قوام فبي للحل المؤد والاست والمنس المنوس منا عثعااول للويمنه أنسا أعالكون تمزهك الملطانورد وطف مالاسددو براز طلعي ردوجاف تم مرال وج جلدمابدل على وم الحبوان كالسد والعنفر بعلقور والمخرف ولللهاع المبناع وكالجوذا والمتنبله والمؤت والمكنزللا ومرابلوي ولالنهاع الطبر وكالسرطار م العنفرب والقوس وللريع بدلالم على لموام وللنش والسرطان العفر والمخت ودلالهم على للبوامات الماب وسبي داك في لجرول المتعنى فضيلامار من للنشباما للعول اوفا بعيز العقب ماما الهندفانم بزيد والتعسل وبقولون كانت وللجزا والمتنبلد والميزاز فالمسف الاولم زالفوس والمسف المالى مزاله لووان ولت الأبع في لحل الاسدواليصف الاخترالي وسروالسف الاولمزالي والمأبند والمؤابدما كاجكناه عنه فاللصوندمنها وعير للصويد للوذا والسنبله والمرازعم لمنى مالجوزامِهامنطعي ذلوالكسال وللجلوالتوزوالاسددفات سف مه، ت والموي والدلم والدطان العون والمطان المعنى المؤن

353-356

Knowledge as to voice and speech is essential as to whether in a difficulty indications in these signs are harmful or the reverse.

354. Famā al-walūd minhā wa'l- aqīm wa ghayrhum. Indications of the signs as to families. The watery signs Cancer, Scorpius, Pisces FERTILE AND BARREN and the hinder half of Capricorn favour large families; Aries, Taurus, Libra, Sagittarius and Aquarius small ones. while the first part of Taurus, Leo, Virgo and the first part of Capricorn indicate sterility. The production of twins is specially in charge of Gemini, but also is favoured by Virgo, Sagittarius and Pisces, and sometimes by Aries and Libra and the last part of Capricorn. (The fore parts of Capricorn and Scorpius indicate hermaphroditismA) In consequence of what we have said Aries and Libra are described as being of two natures, as are also Capricorn and SagittariusA. Virgo is called mistress of three forms, and Gemini as many-faced, because they denote not only twins but three or more children.

marriage, Aries, Taurus, Leo, Capricorn indicate
eagerness therefor, for Libra and
RELATION TO Sagittarius much the same can be said.
MARRIAGE With regard to the conduct of women,
Taurus, Leo, Scorpius and Aquarius
denote reserve and abstinence; Aries, Cancer, Libra
and Capricorn corruption and bad conduct, while Gemini,
Virgo, Sagittarius and Pisces denote a mean in this
regard; of the four Virgo is the most virtuous.

Joe, Scorpius and Capricorn are dark and anxious, and there is a suspicion of trouble DARK AND in Virgo and Libra.

ANXIOUS SIGNS

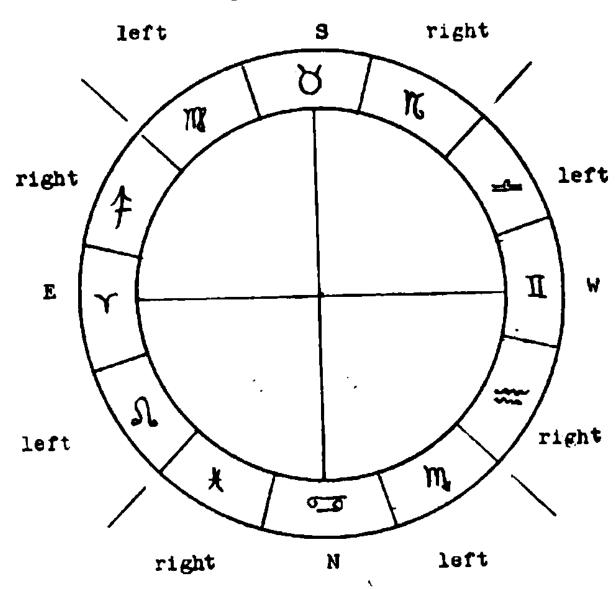
عديره الصوت مصناما بجناج البديم وفدالسوت والمطوع بفيا دبلهافه نالبروج اواصلاجه فاالولورمها وللعقرص البذوج المأبيع التي في المستخطان والعسقي وليلوت والمصف الاحتريز الجلى والمل والنود وللم از والغوس واللو قلله الولدواول المود والاستروالمستبلدوا واللبيء عنسه المياد وامالليته فمح للجؤا والمستلا والتورو للوت وربادل على لاسام الخلوالمرازواخ ليلاب فامااول المدى واول للعبةب فدل المنتي ولما فكناب الصال المدن الجل المازانة دولو برفط سعبر وقبل المري والقوس الد حماف لم المستنبلداند دو الإست صور والجورا كنب المودوالوج فازالاهام ورتباحا وزالوب الله ماحت فإجالمه المنطاح الجل المؤدوالاشد والموى للمنسد دوات سووج صعالمه وفلدان الهوس نيم فلدواما في الموز فلنوز والاسدوالعب فرب والدلى دالدع عفنهز وحصانهن والمبذان عجب اجف والجوزاوالمئبلدوالفورول لجزعلي فسطذكار وبهزوالم المباعث والبرورة والطلا والموقالات والعدارب

357-358

357. Fama dalalatha "ala jihat al-alam. Aries denotes the middle of the East, Leo a point to the left of that towards the North, and Sagit-

RELATION TO POINTS OF COMPASS tarius one to the right towards the South; similarly with each of the other triplicities. Thus Taurus

indicates the centre of the South, Virgo a point to its left towards the East and Capricorn one to the right and West. Gemini occupies the centre of the West, Libra a

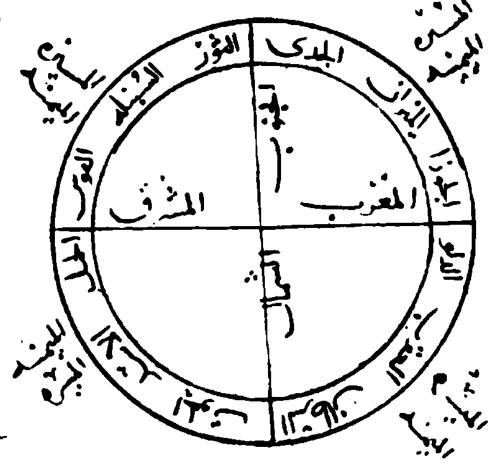


point to its left and South and Aquarius, one to its right and North, Cancer is in the contre of the North, Scorpius a point to the left and West and Pisces to the right and East. All are represented in the accompanying figure.1

358. Famā dalāhathā 'alā al-riyāh. A wind coming from a quarter associated with a particular sign is also associated with that sign thus the RELATION TO WINDS East wind with Aries, the West with Gemini, the South with Taurus and the North with Cancer. Similarly with the intermediate quarters, a S.E. wind is related to Virgo or to Sagittarius according as it is nearer S. or E.

I Which is corrected from the figure in PL and PP where the fiery (E.), and airy (W.) triplicities have changed places. AO AOI PLI correct. (S) earthy, (N) watery.

برل على بند بخوالمال والدلوعلى بند بخوالمال والدلوعلى بند بخوالمال والمند والمناس والمعرب والحوث بط مينت بخوالمث وصحما مينت بخوالمث وصحما مينت بخوالمث وصحما مينت بخوالمث والمناس وال



فادلالهاع الرائح والمراج حافظ المنتوب الد فالمبالل والدور المرزاد المور المرزاد المور المرزاد المور المرزاد المرز والمراك المرزاد المرز والمراك المرز والمراك المرز والمراك المرز والمرز والمر

359

of sold and the various parts of the body which are related to the several signs.

RELATION TO The head and face to Aries, the PARTS OF BODY neck and windpipe to Taurus, the arms and hands to Gemini, the chest, breasts, sides, stomach and lungs to Cancer, the heart to Leo, the womb with its contents to Virgo, the back and buttocks to Libra, the genitals to Scorpius, the thighs to Sagittarius, the knees to Capricorn, the shanks to Aquarius and the feet and heels to Pisces.

In this matter there is much confusion in the books, for according to some, not only the head and face but also the bowels are governed by Aries. The analogy in this case does not seem to be clear. But it is clear in the saying of a Brahman that if we imagine the zodiac to be a man, with Aries the head and the soles of the feet directed towards it, then the allocation of the parts of the body according to the Hindus conforms with what.we have said above except that the face is given to Taurus.

The signs are also indicative of the various diseases of man, of his complexion, figure, face, and the like, they also govern localities and countries, and denote various matters regarding animals, fire, water, etc. To facilitate study these are set down in the accompanying tables.

But God is All-knowing.

I The above matter is repeated in the column (560^a) adjacent to 560 which is not reproduced in translation.

الحاجنوب أوب نسب إلى سبله عادلا المهاعلى عنما الانساف المارولوجد الله والمجود الملكوم المدود والمنطق والمدود المنسود والمناولات والمله الاست والمعاول المنسود والموات المنه والمدود المنسود والمناول المناولات والمار والمنسود والمناول المناولات والمار والمناولات والمناولة وال

360

	ა 60	Dalalat al-buruj "ala'l-akhlaq wa'l-siyar. INDICATIONS OF THE SIGNS AS TO MORALS & MANNERS
1	Υ	Laughing and talkative, kingly and haughty, fond of poetry, sharp-tongued, lustful, brave.
2	ರ	Of good judgment, negligent, a liar, a cheat, lust- ful and a fool.
3	I	Generous, chaste, excelling in games, fond of philosophy and astronomy, munificent, violent, and a hafiz (has the Qur'an by heart).
4	e o	Indolent, dumb, fickle and changeable.
5	N	Kingly, formidable, sharp-tongued, hard-hearted, litigious, knavish, many troubles, a sinner, forgetful, powerful by nature, bold.
6	M	Liberal, good manners, truthful, well-informed, pious, a judge, thoughtful, lively, playful, fond of dance and music, a hafiz.
7	=2=	Thoughtful, polite, generous, indolent, cowardly, just judge, plebeian, excited in speech, a musician and singer, a hafiz.
8	M,	Generous by nature, anxious, deceitful, bold, rough, morose, sharp-tongued, a slayer, a hafiz, e fool, indolent, pleased with himself, bold.
Ş	*	Kingly, reticent, liberal, tricky, prejudiced, a capable mathematician, surveyor, thoughtful about the next world, fond of horses, particular as to food, drink and clothing, virile.
10	n	Arrogant, false, choleric, impetuous, changeable, evil-thinking, anxious, quarrelsome, opinionative, fond of games and life, crafty, forgetful, shaqq, bold.
1	1 222	Well-disposed, chaste, eager to accumulate riches, eager for magnificence and manliness, a gourmet, bad-hearted, inert, indolent, restful, too anxious about worldly affairs.
1	X	Good disposition, generous, elegant, lustful, un- stable in his opinions, of good faith, medicore in business, tricky and deceitful, liable to err, forgetful, foolish, bold.
	•	

The adjacent column in text repeats part of 359.

دلالانا سعر اعضاالان	الإغلاف والمتياب	بروج.
الراس والوجد	جُولَ مُلَمِمُ وَبِي بَاهُ عِبِ الاسْجِادُ عَسُوبِ شَبْنَ الْجَاعِ	المل
العه وحرا المطفوم	ا بعب العور بلب بكنّاب مكّاد سنواج من	
البران	احرم نطبف ما بم موعب المحد والعلوم الساوة يخزد	المؤزا
المصابر وليع وللدان عاد	بلبرابحرشلون	19,
القلب	ملوی اطبع بسور عضوب قاسی العلب لوح محاد المی معطمان مدل بندای محطمان مدل بندسیاغ	الرز
البرد وما محور الحو	مخصر الملاصدول البيد دانق حصم دو فكركر وطبر وصفه ولعب ورتس وصرب اوماد كافط	1000
الصلب والوزكان	الشعرذوغنان فأجافطر	41.
المداحتير والعدو	عوللودوه وخراع سح معلى معلم على عبوس عصوب الالمواجه و على المراب بدل منه الماع منه المنه ا	100
الفزاز	الوكالطبع لتوم كارتب ساح في المامهندس الم معتصر أفي المعادوالا مع الدوام لطيف للطع والمرف والماس يحالها المحاد	الوزر
الدكمناز	بناه كراب عندود مربع الانفلاب معلى المربطة العن العن العن العد	75
السأفان	حسرلهاق عبع عرام على المراه وطب الربي حجم حبر	الدلج
العدمان	منزالل مخطب كم المهرات لاملب عن يموسط الموفادو حراد خداع عطا الحراج في الم	75
	البرد وما مجور الحود المعلب والوركار والعرب	المار المراب ال

As To Figure AND FACE Medium height, thin, short-sighted, glance upcast, yes dark, or gray, or dark gray, nose and ears large ugly mouth, hair curly and reddish. Tall, broad forehead, eyebrows short, eyes black, the whites small, downcast, nose broad, the point upturned, large mouth, thick lips, hair black, neck strong. Medium height, good appearance, erect, fine lime beard and face, sharp-sighted, broad-shouldered, shanks long in comparison with fore-arm. Moderate height, limbs thick rather long, hair fine brown, nose crocked, teeth uneven, downcast look, corpulent, shanks longer than fore-arms. Full height, broad face, thick fingers, slender thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, accustomed to wins, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut heir, A prominent belly. Medium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, rlat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinct-ive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, heir coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. If the triphs, marks on arms and legs. Moderate size, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crocked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms.	•		
Medium height, thin, short-sighted, glance upeast, yess dark, or gray, or dark gray, nose and ears large, ugly mouth, hair curly and reddish. Tall, broad forehead, eyebrows short, eyes black, the whites small, downcast, nose broad, the point upturned, large mouth, thick lips, hair black, neck strong. Medium height, good appearance, erect, fine beard and face, sharp-sighted, broad-shouldered, shanks long in comparison with fore-arm. Moderate height, limbs thick rather long, hair fine brown, nose crooked, teeth uneven, downcast look, corpulent, shanks longer than fore-arms. Full height, broad face, thick fingers, slender thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, accustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Medium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinct-ive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, sheaks longer than thighs marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	- 1		'Ala'l-hilyah wa'l-surah.
eyes dark, or gray, or dark gray, nose and ears large, ugly mouth, hair curly and reddish. Tall, broad forehead, eyebrows short, eyes black, the whites small, downcast, nose broad, the point upturned, large mouth, thick lips, hair black, neck strong. Medium height, good appearance, erect, fine beard and face, sharp-sighted, broad-shouldered, shanks long in comparison with fore-arm. Hoderate height, limbs thick rather long, hair fine brown, nose crocked, teeth uneven, downcast look, corpulent, shanks longer than fore-arms. Full height, broad face, thick fingers, slender thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, accustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Ledium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinctive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, heir coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crocked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks			AS TO FIGURE AND FACE
large ugly mouth, hair curly and reddish. Tall, broad forehead, eyebrows short, eyes black, the whites small, downcast, nose broad, the point upturned, large mouth, thick lips, hair black, neck strong. Medium height, good appearance, erect, fine beard and face, sharp-sighted, broad-shouldered, shanks long in comparison with fore-arm. Moderate height, limbs thick rather long, hair fine brown, nose crocked, teeth uneven, downcast look, corpulent, shanks longer than fore-arms. Full height, broad face, thick fingers, slender thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, accustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Medium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinctive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eves small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Ilight, tall, good-looking especially from back, front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crocked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	1		Medium height, thin, short-signted, grance whose,
Tall, broad forehead, eyebrows short, eyes black, the whites small, downcast, nose broad, the point upturned, large mouth, thick lips, hair black, neck strong. Medium height, good appearance, erect, fine beard and face, sharp-sighted, broad-shouldered, shanks long in comparison with fore-arm. Lodevate height, limbs thick rather long, hair fine brown, nose crocked, teeth uneven, downcast look, corpulent, shanks longer than fore-arms. Full height, broad face, thick fingers, slender thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, acoustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Ledium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinct-ive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, even small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears cropked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	ł	Y	eyes dark, or gray, or dark gray, nose and cars
the whites small, downcast, nose broad, the point upturned, large mouth, thick lips, hair black, neck strong. Medium height, good appearance, erect, fine beard and face, sharp-sighted, broad-shouldered, shanks long in comparison with fore-arm. Moderate height, limbs thick rather long, hair fine brown, nose crocked, teeth uneven, downcast look, corpulent, shanks longer than fore-arms. Full height, broad face, thick fingers, slender thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, accustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Eddium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinct-ive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinct-ive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eves small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Inght, tall, good-looking especially from back. Inght, tall, good-looking especially from back. The provided received the figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears cropked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, wide gray eyes, ears cropked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow forehead, looks shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	1	,	large, ugly mouth, hair curly and readish.
the whites small, downcast, nose broad, the point upturned, large mouth, thick lips, hair black, neck strong. Medium height, good appearance, erect, fine beard and face, sharp-sighted, broad-shouldered, shanks long in comparison with fore-arm. Moderate height, limbs thick rather long, hair fine brown, nose crocked, teeth uneven, downcast look, corpulent, shanks longer than fore-arms. Full height, broad face, thick fingers, slender thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, accustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Eddium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinct-ive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinct-ive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eves small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Inght, tall, good-looking especially from back. Inght, tall, good-looking especially from back. The provided received the figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears cropked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, wide gray eyes, ears cropked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow forehead, looks shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	2		Tall, broad forehead, eyebrows short, eyes black,
upturned, large mouth, thick lips, hair black, neck strong. Medium height, good appearance, erect, fine beard and face, sharp-sighted, broad-shouldered, shanks long in comparison with fore-arm. Udderate height, limbs thick rather long, hair fine brown, nose crooked, teeth uneven, downcast look, corpulent, shanks longer than fore-arms. Full height, broad face, thick fingers, slender thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, accustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Eedium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinctive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crocked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Liedium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest houlders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	.	×	the whites small, downcast, nose broad, the point
Neck strong. Medium height, good appearance, erect, fine beard and face, sharp-sighted, broad-shouldered, shanks long in comparison with fore-arm.		O	upturned, large mouth, thick lips, hair black,
Medium height, good appearance, erect, fine beard and face, sharp-sighted, broad-shouldered, shanks long in comparison with fore-arm. Modeyate height, limbs thick rather long, hair fine brown, hose crooked, teeth uneven, downcast look, corpulent, shanks longer than fore-arms. Full height, broad face, thick fingers, slender thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, accustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Medium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinctive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crocked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Medium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	1		neck strong.
Beard and face, sharp-sighted, broad-shouldered, shanks long in comparison with fore-arm. Moderate height, limbs thick rather long, hair fine brown, nose crocked, teeth uneven, downcast look, corpulent, shanks longer than fore-arms. Full height, broad face, thick fingers, slender thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, accustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Redium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinctive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Iight, tall, good-looking especially from back. Front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears orooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Redium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	3		Medium height good appearance erect fine
Shanks long in comparison with fore-arm.	Ĭ	π	beard and face sharp-sighted broad-shouldered,
Hoderate height, limbs thick rather long, hair fine brown, nose crooked, teeth uneven, downcast look, corpulent, shanks longer than fore-arms. Full height, broad face, thick fingers, slender thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, accustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Edium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Note the size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinctive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crocked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks			shanks long in comparison with fore-arm.
fine brown, nose crocked, teeth uneven, downcast look, corpulent, shanks longer than fore-arms. Full height, broad face, thick fingers, slender thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, accustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Eddium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinctive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crocked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	4		Moderate height limbs thick rather long, hair
look, corpulent, shanks longer than fore-arms.	-	<u> </u>	tine brown nose grooked teeth uneven downcast
Full height, broad face, thick fingers, slender thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, accustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Eedium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinctive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shenks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Liedium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks			look complent shanks longer than fore-sims.
thighs, hip bigger, good-looking, gray-eyed, accustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Eedium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinctive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Liedium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest, face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	5		bill height broad face thick fingers slender
accustomed to wine, large nose, wide mouth, (teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Ledium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinctive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, peumoh and a mark on the back. Ight, tall, good-looking especially from back. front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	3		thicke him higger good-looking gray-eyed.
(teeth separated from each other), chestnut hair, A prominent belly. Ledium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinct- ive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yel- low, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoul- ders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crocked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks		Λ	iccountered to wine large nose. Wide mouth.
hair, A prominent belly. Eedium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Noderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinct-ive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest Good figure, delicate joints, smooth skin, fine face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks		3(/++> compared from each other) chestrut
is dium stout inclining to tall, long hair, moles on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Noderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinct-ive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Ilght, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks		Ì	ly the A second series bolly
on chest and abdomen, broad shoulders and chest, flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinct-ive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Ilight, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	•	<u> </u>	Mair a prominent beily.
flat-nosed. Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinctive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Medium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	Ь	١.	medium stout inclining to tall, long mari, more
Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinct- ive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yel- low, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad enest and shoul- ders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from backa front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks		me	
brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinctive marks on neck and waist, good feet. Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back. front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears cropked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	_	ļ	riat-nosed.
Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back. front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	7	_	Moderate size, good-looking, colour inclined to
Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, whites yellow, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from backafront view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crocked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks		-	brown and yellow, gray eyes, good nose, distinct-
low, face round, forehead narrow, hair coarse, slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest Good figure, delicate joints, smooth skin, fine face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks			ive marks on neck and walst good leet.
slender thighs and ankles, broad chest and shoulders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from backs front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest Good figure, delicate joints, smooth skin, fine face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	8		Head erect, good-looking, eyes small, will tes yel-
ders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back. Light, tall, good-looking especially from back front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest Good figure, delicate joints, smooth skin, fine face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks) Ym	low, face round, forenead narrow, nair coarse,
front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsoms. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks		11/4	slender thighs and ankles, broad chest am shoul-
front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crocked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest Good figure, delicate joints, smooth skin, fine face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks			ders, broad nose, paunch and a mark on the back.
front view, good eyes, long beard, coarse nose, complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crocked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest Good figure, delicate joints, smooth skin, fine face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	9		Hight tall good-looking especially from backs
complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than thighs, marks on arms and legs. Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	-	1	front view good eyes long beard, coarse nose,
Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks		1 +	complexion red, belly large, shanks longer than
Body slender erect, fine figure, face goat-like, wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks		1'	thichs marks on arms and legs.
wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	10		Body slender erect. Time Tigure, Tace goat-like,
hair, thin legs, active gait, handsome. Ledium height, tending to tall, forehead narrow, eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks		•	wide gray eyes, ears crooked, long beard, little
eyes dark gray, black, the black part wider than the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks		1 16	heir thin less active gait.handsome.
the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	11	-	hedium height tending to tall. forehead narrow,
the white, coarse lips, downcast look, body well filled out, legs unequal, good-looking, broad chest Good figure, delicate joints, smooth skin, fine face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks		İ	eves dark gray black the black part wider than
Good figure, delicate joints, smooth skin, fine face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks		1	the white coarse lips downcast look, body well
Good figure, delicate joints, smooth skin, line face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks		1	filled out legs unequal good-looking broad chest
face, medium stature, fairly broad chest, narrow shoulders, small head, narrow forehead, looks	10	}	Good figure delicate joints smooth skin. fine
shoulders small head, narrow forehead, looks	72		face medium stature fairly broad chest narrow
down, black eyes, handsome.		1 7	ishoulders small head narrow forehead. looks
. Idoati nigor das meneralms.			Acm block aves handsome.
		ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	Idonti nigar chas managam.

الملمد والصور	AS SA
مربوع إلى المناف عالى المناطق المراكة المراكة والمحالة مبد	济
الهط بالترامد عظم المجمد صغيرا كاجبر أسو حالعبر طلل مناصها حاجط التصرع والانسان الانساد أله المع المرعد طالب والعنق سط المتعرع طم البعلا	**
مروع حنزالهامد والمنظروالعن واللهد و حال حديد للوقد عربس ماس	.,3.
معرلهامدعلظ الالواح مبلاطول وفوالمتعرموج الانساروللامن	.9.
ئام الطول عم بسر المهدر والرجه على الاسابع د شق اعال ونداعظ حمل ال والهامال المالية المهال المالية المهالية الانف والبع الفراً على وسبعن اللاصلة به عظم الداب	الاتر
معدلالمرمط مسطالمع حسر الوحدد وحيلات فصلده و بطر و م	3
مُعَدُّدِ لَا الْعَصَاءَ مِنْ الْمِدِهِ وَالْبِدِرِ لِهِ فِي الْمِدِهِ وَمِنْ الْمُعَلِّمِ الْمُعَدِّدِةِ وَالْمُدُّمِينِ الْمُعَدِّدِةِ وَسَطِّهُ الْدُرْمِينِ الْمُعَدِّدِةِ وَسَطِّهُ الْدُرْمِينِ الْمُعَدِّدِةِ وَسَطِّهُ الْدُرْمِينِ الْمُعَدِّدِةِ وَسَطِّهُ الْدُرْمِينِ الْمُعَدِّدِةِ وَعَلَّمَا مِنْ فِي عَنْهُ وَسَطِّهُ الْدُرْمِينِ الْمُعَالِينِ وَمُعَدِّدُ وَمِنْ الْمُعَدِّدِةِ وَعَلَيْمَا مِنْ فِي عَنْهُ وَسَطِّهُ الْدُرْمِينِ الْمُعَالِينِ وَمُعَالِمِينِ الْمُعَالِينِ وَمُعَالِمِينَ وَمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ وَمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ وَمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعِينِ وَمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ وَمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ فَالْمُعِينِ وَمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ فَالْمُعِينِ وَمُعِلْمُ اللَّهُ وَمُعِلَّمُ اللَّهُ وَمُعِلِّمُ اللَّهُ فِي الْمُعَالِمُ اللَّهُ وَمُعِلِّي الْمُعَلِّمُ الْمُعَلِيلِي الْمُعَلِيلِي الْمُعَلِّمُ اللَّهُ الْمُعِلَّالِمُ اللَّهُ وَالْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلَّالِ الْمُعَلِيلِ الْمُعِلِيلِي الْمُعِلِيلِي الْمُعِلِيلِي الْمُعِلِيلِيلِي الْمُعَلِيلِي الْمُعِلِيلِيلِي الْمُعِلِيلِي الْمُعِلِيلِيلِي الْمُعِلِيلِي الْمُعِلِيلِي الْمُعِلِيلِي الْمُعِلِيلِي الْمُعِلِيلِي الْمُعِلِيلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعْلِقِيلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُلْمُ الْمِعْلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلْمُ الْمُعِلِي الْمُعْلِي الْمُعِلْمُ الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلْمُ الْمُعِلْمُ الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمِلْمِ الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي الْمُعِلِي ا	N'Y
مربع المهروب صغيرالعان في زصور مرود المحدصي المركمة المنه فالأار اصهبه طوم المدروال طهز وفي المركبة العدم عربين المنكبروالمدراف وطهن علاماء	1
ام الطول حبال وجدموض احسن مقدم العبر سبط الليد على الشهر على الراد الله على الشهر على الداد الله على المان على الما	النوثر
منتهب صافر للمسلاحس الفاقداد ومنه في الذير بي النعرس ط اللبطوللد	135
مربوع صعيرالجهدا كالعلم المتنبز عاللبص ممتلئ لفالساقين احرفها اطول فرالحزى عوفز الصاد صبح الوجد	الالو
صربه بزليسك ابره صبح منوسط الطول عصر على المحت صعد المار من المحد حاحط المرجعة سواد المردمل	次
اعرهااطول الخوى عرف الصورضي الوجد حسن المرين المن المراه صبح منوسط الطول عصر فلون مام المعتب صغر الرام منول لحمد حاحظ المرحد أسواد الحرف ملم	グ

362-364

ſ	7.00	
1	308-3	364 Dalālāt "alā al-alwan, "alā ţabqāt al-nas
ľ		wa ashab al-sine at.
ł		COLOURS, Indications of the signs as
j		CLASSES to colours 362
1		AND Hindu opinion 363
_ 1		ARTISANS Professions, trades &c 364
1		White and reddish. Reddish white. Kings, benk-
ŀ	Υ	ers, coiners, blacksmiths, coppersmiths, butchers,
l		shepherds, spies and thieves.
2		White and brownish not shining. White. Sell-
- 1	Ø	ers (Tailors) and weighers of grain.fisher-
		men, (cobblers) agents and farmers.
3		Greenish yellow. Pistachio green. Kings, cal-
	II	oulators, teachers, hunters, dancers, musicians,
h		painters, tailors.
4		Smoke-coloured not quite black. Dark red.
_ [Sailors, (water diviners, swimmers) A and canal-
		diggers.
5		Whitish red. White of clothes, withered vege-
Ŭ,	Ω	tables. Horsemen, coiners, falconers.
6		Whitish vellow Charates Waster comments.
١٣	77v	Whitish yellow. Changing. Vazirs, eunuchs,
1	1111	secretaries, supervisors, ordinary people,
7		dancers, singers, assemblies of men.
1		White tinged black. Black. Magnates and dig-
1	<u> </u>	nitaries, privy counsellors, merry-makers, philo-
1		sophersA, geometricians, merchants, (grammarians)
		devotees.
8	m,	Vacant P.B. and M. Golden. Physicians, en-
		chanters, megicians, sailors.
9		Reddish. Colour of palm fibres. Horse-deal-
		ers, middle-class people, busy-bodies, meddlers
	*	with other people's business, (who, eithough with
		honest intentions, excite strife) undertake
- 1		their burdensA.
10	γ	Colours mixed like a peacock, brown and green.
	76	Piebald, black and white. Hunters and slaves.
11		Yellow, sapphire blue and various colours.
•		Bright red turning yellow. Servants, traders,
	1	ass-driversA, makers of glass and jewellery,
	1	uneducated people, grave-robbers.
12		White. Khaki. Most revered and religious
	X	people. The last part of the sign for blind
	l ^	men, those who operate on them for cataract
	}	and sailors.
		I MER AND TAY A .

¹ PL, AO, AO1.

		1 1	
طنفات الناسرواصحاب	المنك	الاوا	البروج
الملوك والصارة والضاوب والعوارون والمعالوات والرعاء وعور للصوس	المعال	المدمره	X
الحاطون والجالون والحرازون والوطا وللزارعوب	اسص	اسفرواسود فعالبوت	زند
الملول والحار والصارة ب العاسوب و الحاسوب و الملوب و المعاسوب و المعاسوب و المحاطون و المجلوب المعلوب	انضر	اصعصرا	195
الملاحوب وحفره الابهار	44	دحایعر صارولسلا	11
المسارة في صروب والصارون وارح	البش	احراللوب مسريك نما	
الوزرا والساده والعاب وللدمنا والوساط الماس والرفاسون والمعوب وتما ماب الماس	مناور الواشي	اصعراللوب المالسانس	
اعلى المراتب والعطا والدما والملهون والعلاسفة والمسدسون والعياه والنيايث	اسود	اسصاف	7/
المع الجور والمعرمون والسحء والملاحون	لوب الرباب		W.
ناسوا الدولب والمناط الماس ومناع البد وم يسعر المورالياس وينجل لهم	لورليف العياب	لونه ال مره	نعا
الصارون والعد	الموصواد	معلوم اللوك معلوم إدم وله حصره	55
العدود الماوا كاروب ومستعلوا الحوامة	النفول المناوقة	ادرمرر اسماکوی دو انعازین	مع
الاعروب المعادو مل المروبي المعال ومربحرح المعادون المعا	اعيريول	1	(4)

t		
1		Alé-'l-bilad wa'l-nawahi. AS TO CITIES AND TERRITORIES
1		Babylon, Fars, Palestine, Adharbaijan, Alan.
1 2		Districts of 'Iraq, Mahin, Hamadhan, Mountains of
_		Kurdistan, Ctesiphon, Cyprus, A'.exandria, Constan-
		tinople.Omen.Rai.Farghana, and shares in the
		control of Herat and Sijistan.
3		Egypt, the cities of Barqa, Armenia, Gurgan, Gilan,
	I	Muque and shares in Isfahan and Kirman.
4		That part of Armenia Minor which is beyond
		Muqan, Parts of Africa, Hajar, Bahrein, Dabil,
	5	Marwalrudh, Eastern Khurasan, and shares in
		Balkh and Adharbadgan.
5		Turkestan as far as Gog and Magog, and the
		ruined cities there, Ascalon, Jerusalem, Nisibis,
	\mathcal{N}	the twin cities, Malatya, Sistan, Liakran, Dailam,
		Abrashahr, Tus, Soghdiana, Tirmidh.
6		Andalusia, Syria, Crete, the Euphrates and Meso-
J		potamia, Jaramaqa, the capital of Abyssinia,
	m	San'a, Kufa, the cities of Fars in the direction
	1	of Kirman, and Sistan as far as the horders of
	Į	India.
7	-	The Greek Empire as far as Tunisia, and upper
•	۱. 🗼	Egypt to the confines of Abyssinia, Antioch,
		Tarsus, Mecca, Taliqan, Tokharistan, Balkh, Herat,
	1	Sistan, Kabul, Kashmir and China.
8		The Hijaz country, the desert of Arabia as far
•		as Yemen, Tangier, Qiyad, Khazaria, Qumis, Amul,
	m	Sariah, Nahawand, Nahrawan, and shares in Turkish
	`	Soghdia.
9	 	Persian 'Iraq, Dinawar, Işfahan, Rai, Baghdad,
•	1	Danbavand, Darband of the Khazars, Jundi-Sabur,
	ナ	shares in Bukhara and Gurgan, the borders of
	1	the Sea of Armenia, and Barbary as far as Morocco.
10	 	Makran and Sind, and the river Mihran (Indus)
	76	and the sea between Oman and Hindustan, Eastern
	1 '6	China, Asia Minor, Ahwaz and Istakhr (Persepolis
11	 	Southern Iraq as far as Kufa and Hijaz, the
	- TITE	country of the Copts, the West of Sind and
	1	shares in Fars.
12		Tabaristan and the country north of Gurgan,
		Bukhara and Samarqand, shares control in Asia
	X	Minor: Qeliqalal as far as Syria, Mesopotamia,
		Egypt, Alexandria, the sea of Yemen and Eastern
	1	Hindustan.
_	سنسسب	

l Erzerum Nall. II. 41.

	7. 3
بابل وملسّطبر وادر سمال والأن	¥
سوادالمايس وجدال والأفراد الحبليوب ومدير وحريره فنرس وللاسكورية وفسطنطسه وعاب ورى ورغام ولدشري في الوق وسجسنا	الغ
مصروبلادرقه وارمسيه وحلان ومرطان وموقان وحرطان ولمسريحة كالمعهان وحطرمات	رُحُورُ
ماوراموفار رمندالصعرب وبعمر الوبعد والجروالحرس والرسل ومرو والرود وسرد حراساب ولدسرالاسة بح والزعاب	الإلا
الداد الماح ونهابرالعراب الملهاوع فلل والملاس وتصمين وللداس ومطهد ومبساب ومعظرا بوالدام والرموطوس والسعدو المرمد	Y.
والكوف ومالل عمار مرادا ذابس وسحسيان الاعتراكسيد	
الروم الماويقه وصبعد مصرال بحرائدته وانطا تدوطرسوس ومكروالطا فالعطخ وطبرستار وهله ويحسسان وكابل وتسمير والصبر	W.
ارمركها. وبالإمالعرب الالمي والمرسه وطعه وها دلكرر والرك وقوميروامد وساريه وزرا وند والله ولدرة ولدننه ك السعد	نون
المال والرسور واصهاب وبعداد والرك ورما ومروط والرانوات وحدرك سابور ولهزير في اراوح واروشو المراميد ومرم الى المعرب	(36)
الروم والاصوله واصطب	15
السواد الناجراكل ونواحي اللوفه وظراكاروارص لعبط وعرى السند وله شركه عارس	
شركه على مارس و كارا وسرفر و المرادم و القلا الماسام و الحردة و مسرود لاسلاديه و كرام و مربع المند	نج

_		
	366	Ala-1-amakin.
1		AS TO PLACES
1		Deserts, pasturing places for beasts of burden.
	Υ	Wood-sheds, places where fire is used, thieves'
	•	dens.places where jewellery is manufactured.
2		Mountainous places, orchards, pasture land, store-
_	8	houses for food, cow and elephant sheds.
3		Mountains, hills, mounds, hunting-grounds, river-
~	77	sides, resorts of acrobats and gamblers and
	II	musiciens, kings' palaces.
		Reservoirs, reed-beds, river margins, cultivated
4	l	Meserablis' Laada hede't taat meretre' og ta
	<u></u>	places, trees, wells, rivers, and places of
1		worship.
5		Mountains, fortresses, high sanctuaries, kings
	\mathcal{N}	palaces, desert places, quarries, barren saltish
	26	ground.
6		Divans, women's quarters, musicians' houses,
•	M	threshing floors, cultivated fields.
7		Small mosques and places of worship, castles,
•	<u>-a-</u>	cultivation, palm-groves, observatories, plains,
	3	orchards, tops of mountains which are cultivated.
_		High places, pools of bad water, prisons, places
8	١ ٠.	night places, pools of bad waver, prisons, prisons
	Jul 1	of grief and mourning, scorpions' holes,
		deserted places, vineyards, mulberry-groves.
9	٠,	Level plains, Magian temples, Christian churches,
	₹	arsenals, cattle-stalls, lime-pits, Pirrigated
	1 ′	orchards.
10		Castles, encient reservoirs, harbours, fire-
	•	places (weeping places), slaves sleeping
	1 76	places, holes of dogs and foxes, lodgings for
	1	strangers. The first part of the sign indicates
	1	stone and gravel and water wheels.
3.3		Running and standing water, heated bath-water,
11	1	Indivite and a condition was a 44 to be birds
	***	taverns, brothels, canals and ditches, birds
_		nests and resorts of aquatic birds.
12		Abodes of angels, holy men, Magian priests,
	 X	mourning places, cane-brakes, lake shores, salt
		marshes, granaries.
		

l AO^l and AB^l have yab" for bī'et. 2 P has şārūjhā for şahārīj. Tanks were plastered with şārūj, cement.

	793
العمارى ومراع الغنم والما ترضاع الخوامي ومعالح الماروما وكاللعوس والسوب المشنفف ملكنتب	*
ماور مرك العالمة المعالم والمواصع المعشه واماكر لبقر والبيلدوسون الطعام	الور
الخال والدادك واما لرائها دس وسعوط المصار وصواصح اللعاس والمعامرس والمعندس وصورالملوك حرار الماوا للحام والسواحل ومواصع الزرع والغرس واجراف الامهار ومواصع العداده	1,5)
حرارالماوالاهام والسواحل ومواصع الزرع والغرس واجراف الابعاد ومواصع	
الحال والعلاع والامنه العالم ومعور لللوك والمعاوز والرصرات	Jest J
الرواوس والمرهات ومنارل للنا ولللهر والسادرودل لدسروعها	Zi.
المساحروس العادات والعصور والعارات ومواصع الصدواله المراصد المربغة والصحارك والنساس وارص البطرون وسرافيا الني نزرع	الرار
المربغعه والصحارك والنساس وارص المحل وروس الخيال المنزرع المراه العارب والمحارك والنساس وارص المحل وروس الخيال المنزرع المواصع المواصع المواصع المواصع المواصع المواصع المروا لما تم والحيوا والسحور ومواصع المروا لما تم والمواصع المروم والنوب	A)
العارى الملس ومعدا المحوس ألبع ويواسع السلاح وأصار المعرولهمان	الور
العتموروالصهاركالعسفه ومرقاالسفن وللشتوقدات ومواسع ابن ومعالحة-	6
مواسع الما الكارى والراكروما سنجل جد الماد فا كلمات وخامات كر وسوت الرواى والقي وما يعفر المعاول واوكا را لطهور ومواصع طهور الما	ارعا
الماحللابكه والعادة والهاده ومواصع الماوالاطام وسواحل المالزكد	
Variable of the second	

367-369

ſ	347.7	69 Dalalat 'ala al-ashjar wa'l-nabat, al-miyah
I	307-0	wa'l-riyah wa'l nairan, al-jawahir wa'l-alat.
		TREES & CHOPS Indications as to trees & crops 367
		WATER WIND & FIRE As to water, wind & fire 368
		JEMELS & FURNITURE As to jewels & furniture 369
1		Fire is used. Copper, iron, lead; hel-
^	Y	mets, diadems, crowns and girdles.
2		Unirrigated fields, crops from setting out cut-
7	と	tings Clothes, necklaces, wool, hair,
		collars; sweet fruits, artichokes, bastard saffron.
3		Tall trees. Zephyr, gentle winds, animal
	I	spirits. Armlets, bracelets, dirams, dinars,
		attar; drums, lutes and flutes.
4		Tall and medium trees. Good drinking water,
	<u> </u>	rain, running water, and that which comes down
		from the sky. Rice and cane sugar.
5		Tall trees. Torrents, subterranean fires, minerals ex-
	1 🛆	tracted from the ground, cloudy weather. Coats of
	1	meil and cuirasses, tall metal vessels; emeralds and rubies,
		gold and silver and objects manufactured from them.
6	747	Sown fields, sowing and planting. All running water.
	אָת	Mercury; (berries, herbs and the ordinary seeds. OL)
7		Date palms, tall trees, and such as are grown on
		the top of mountains. Winds which favour trees and
	===	fruits, which make trees large and spread them; de-
	1	notes dark atmosphere. Silks, lutes and drums.
8		Medium sized trees. Running waters, rivers, tor-
	l	rents, underground conduits, black mud and drowned
	J M	land, such articles as are kneaded of clay.
	1 7	Precious stones from water, like coral; (drugs),
	ì	sel-emmonisk, water vessels, ameni, such things as are
		made with fire.
9		Natural streams and heat in the bodies
	1 4	of animals. Tin, gold, all manufactured articles
	1 4	arrows and (bows and)OL spears and ermour, earthen-
	1 ′	ward garments, armour, nibs (harf (burnt
		brick and lime depilatory.
10	76	Crops, herbage and the like, such as do not re-
		quire to be sown, fruit
11		Tall trees, plantain and ebony, myrobalan and
		belleric myrobalan. Seas, running waters, winds
	1 22E	which stir up the seas, and destroy tall trees
	1	and herbage; cold fogs. Tools and sites for draw-
	1	ing water end for building houses, and for dig-
_	<u> </u>	ging and planting trees.
12		Cotton swar fruit-bearing trees, sendal wood, camphor,
12	* *	Cotton, sugar, fruit-bearing trees, sendal wood, camphor, edible fruits. First half, medium-sized trees. Stegment waters & lakes. Resrlamother of pearl, coral; shoes, closs, soles.

الجواهب	الياه والطح والباح	الانتحار	الجوج
العامرواكررواللمروالموالمال والمال والمالل والمالل والمالل والمالل والمالل والمالل والمالل والمالل والمالل	البرار للتنتعلد		X
المهار الصوف والفع والماطرات والعلايد والها والكلوء و الالاك وحديثان والعصف		طرحرعدى الماوه والماب المركا مزدله والعروس المعاد	ريع
الأسور. والدملخ والمرام والرنام والمصطر والطباط والعملا . والأس الذم	الصاوالواح الطسه وارواح الحولاب	السحرالطوال	رُحِي
الادفقيط	الماه العربدوالامطارالكم	الشخ الطواللعذله	74
الدروغ ولكواش وأوارالغاز المرمعم والرروز والمادر لاقا والمصه وماجل ومراكبار	الاورمال روه اكرم المعه والمراد الاحاد	الشحوالطوال	Y.
الرس	حلمآءِجارك	طرودع موروالغرس والخور والقول والبسؤور المشنح	E.
الابديتم والجدادة المضابع	الماح اللواع للاسمار بمويها دريا المنطقة المنطقة المستعدلها وريدا على المنطقة	الماروالانفارالطوال وماررع ع رووس لخال	14
Ok	الماه اكاره والأياد والمرات والصيارع والسيول وأكاه والوق وما يح مرالطير	السحالمعدلدالطول	P
الصاص الرهد والمرفات فالت والماح والسمال والسامح ونكرف والاجر عالنوره	الاستعاليا العالية		4
	•	الطاقها شبهه مراندات ومالا تمراه ولأبوز	4
الات استنباط للباه وننا الرود والخيفر والغرس	الماه اكاره والمحاروالعواصف للتهمضا الفاكوللاسحار للفشده للدات والجنوا الشوير البرز	الاسمارالطوالأفومه والساح والاسوس والمبلج والعلمل	ريو
مان مرحنس لما فاللولو والعوف والمرطار والعال	المياه الراكوه ويجات	الاصلاحال السنروالعاح والحوح ويهماص وللشمس والعشدات والاحودوا بواع المار العلمه	3
		بوانصف الاحرم الاسمارللود	

ومولصف الاجرمل السمار المعدد

570

_		
	370	Delālāt 'elā el-'illel we'l-amrād. SICKNESS AND DISEASE
ı ŀ		At first very strong, afterwards weak and
1		lighte to disorders.especially in the need
	~	much as haldness, blood to the face, rashes,
I	'	lepra and scab, limbs worn out, phlegmatic,
1		ewest-smelling.
2		At first very strong, towards the end lean and
	l ب	spare, only moderately subject to disorders, for
	8	the most part of the neck like scrofula, and quinsy and points to freckles, ozaena and marks
	1	on back and breast.
		Healthy and aweet-smelling body, illnesses not
5	I	serious, generally catarrh or gout, not much
		44 e+ negg
4		Week and sickly gout gatarrh ganger balaness.
	0_0	lasses describes ringwith.congruit.ituituituit.
		Industrial services had the services of the se
5		At first strong, but afterwards weak and liable to disease, especially of the stomach and pain
	Ω	in the eyes, loss of hair; at first offensive
	1 -6	15
4		Strong, moderately lean, and slender, sickness
6	m	lmadamata long of helt.sel'a
7	- <u></u>	Limbs strong, sound, middling slender.
8		the elect strong and thickest but at the end OI
U	1	11400 mack and ginkly lillesses outsity wast
	l W	luses and Aughness of terent danger, guzges.
	L	LANGUAGE TATANTION OF UPING SUNUOUS
9		At first strong, at last weak and sickly, moder- ately thin healthy body, gout, catarrh, blindness,
	1 1	blind of one eye, baldness, epilepsy, superfluous
	/	LAIRENDE MARKENDE AND MARKE DR LUG LUGO
10	\	THOSE STAKING MIT ACUMA LIMBS GOLI GUG GUMP,
7(I
	1 7	Inage timours: the tendency to believes much
1	\	TILL BUTTER OFFICE OF 18 CT WHAT HIM BIGALI, TARVE
	يبيد ا	sound, diseases of the tongue, jaundice, catarrh, gout, bilious headache, pain in the eyes, and
	1	- Landar madel an Mintil Taliff (1) 11004 CLUL VEGATOR
•	<u>, </u>	TWOOL INTO ALANTY ARTANIELLY IN ILLEVALUATION
1	" _~	LAMEL! AND ALAMANA OT THE LIMBE DITTORS
	1 7	IAAAAMA WINAWATTI ABAUTUTI DELU JEST JEST JEST JEST JEST JEST JEST JEST
	1	catarrh and abundant hair, athith.
	-	The state of the s

¹ Such contradictions not infrequent.

ſ	العلل والامراض	is.
é	الادون الدون المرفظ مسمف معو فالالعلام المستقل المرب العرب والمائد في المرب الله علم الله	义
	اردوي الروائم عبم المرسي المعالم المائية والمؤوج المناز وللناو والكف ومز للماشم ودليد الرطس المعالم علامات ع الظار والمسرر	33
	العناطب الله منوسط للعلاواكرهاالذلات والغزس	1,3.
	حنبع ي العلام المعمالة الدوالغرير والمرطان السلع والقرع والدر والفرط والفرع والدر والفرط والفرط والفرط والمنابع ما المفل والمرافع والمنابع ما المفل والمواتب والمفل والمواتب والمفل والمنابع ما	15
	فؤى أدفياس صعف ومساز وهو كبرالعلل وسبام جهيز المعل و رجع المعن و رجع المعن و رجع	التمتر
	فوي مُعِدَد فِي العنامند والجافد سلم الاعنامستول العلل	*
	مُعْدِل بِدَالفَضَافَدِسَ لِم فِي الْجَعْمَا	بالإز
المعرر	اولد بيروالم معبف مرض الاعما ومراحا العالم المرها العراد المروالعساد	1
ليا	اولد معد واحن ضعف مرز معدل العنا فرسلم الاعتباء والما الملا والإنما المغرس الزلدوالع والعور والعلم والمشقولا مزالها كن والواده والا	الور
`	معف كالمرام سلم الإعناق المغلد للغرائم و كمنه العبر وسلان الرم والمكال والدار والأكاد والمبطاوع المعلى علم لدوالوذم وذلاء على المعلى الم	3
بردا	اولام والمره صبحت ومرض فهالاعضا علاد التعدادة الموروا في الموروا في الموروا في الموروا في المروا	dil
-	مسمة يجب عصيف فتوالمراص والأسمال المصنوالم وللود وكالم وللروالم	X

571-578

_		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	571	AN TO VARIOUS ANTENNA
1	Υ	all boored animals, wild and domestic such as gotts and sheep; also runs and deer.
•	מ	Cous, salves, elephants, gaselles; animals which become attached to man.
3	П	Domestic forts and stat birds as become teme; gaselles and horsed vipers.
4	925	Méptiles, aquatio and terrestrial enimals, that are numerous in the desert like beetles: poisonous lizards.
6	r	Wild horses, teme lions, I all animals with claws, black makes.
6) III	Magpies, black cross, bulbuls, sparrows, parrows, large serpents.
7	-0-	Birds, leopards, and Jima.
В	M	Reptiles, aquatic enimals, destructive wild beasts (of prey), many-footed enimals like ecorpions and wasps (and poisonous insects) OL.
9	£	Solid-hoofed animals especially pack-horses, males, asses. There is also an indication of birds and reptiles.
10	×	Mids, lambs, shimals that are herded, oresping things, apes, loopets.
11	226	Bipeds, vultures, sinur for mustr, eagles, beavers, jerboes, sinjab, sables, ermines, equatio birds especially black ones.
18	X	Birds, fish, large and small, aquatic carmivore, serpente,

578 The simin al-burdi.

					818	0
		Teers	Months	Days	Days	Hours
1	~	15	15	37 }	4(5)	5
1	な	8	8(8)	20	1	16
3	L	20	20	50 _	4	4
Ă	62	25	25	623	[5	5
5	£.	19	19	47	5	25
6	74	20	20	50	4	4
7	4	8	8	20.	1	16
8) The	15	15	271	8	3
9	£	12	18 ·	30	8	1.2
10	T.	87	27	67 1	1 5	15
ū		30	50	75	6	w 6
12	Ł	12	2(12)	5 0	1 8	(12)2

I Al-afric al-sa behan'l sibi" al-diriyah (like hunting-kepards).

2 No explanation is given of this table. It is arrived at by the second of two methods described in Abd Ma bhar's Makkhal f. 255%. The years and the months are equal in number to the minor years (437) of the lord of each sign (440) and the days and hours are the same number multiplied either by 5/2 or by 5/24.

No reason is given for the two desiriles of Satura being alletted different members (They are the same (50) in the Owen.

No reason is given for the two domiciles of Satura being allotted different numbers. (They are the seme (30) in the Opus Introd. Venice, 1506 where the four last columns are unexplained. But Vettius Valens p. 164, gives a reason; he assigns 1/4 of the O's great years to == , and 1/4 of the D's to Ruard diduttor for fig. 440 and the sum of these forms the great years of Al/ourse; (read upovo; 7).

The first method allows a year for every degree of oblique

The first method allows a year for every degree of oblique ascension of each sign in any climate and a month for every five minutes. B The humbers in brackets are the correct ones.

~~						
1	2	7	4.	(;	انياع ملوان	2.7
~	>	7		*	دوائد الاطلان الوهيد والاعلية كالمعز والساذ والصام والإبايل	Jy.
بو		70	*	٥	البغروالجاجل المنظم والمؤلاز وللبوالمات	m
>	>	8.	2	5	الطبورالاملية والماحم وبليات حافول	1.32
•	•	75-1	16	45	الموام ددوات الماء ذوات الانطاطية بن	18
*	7	41	ط	بط	الارام المهدوالسباع المارية وكالزى	N.
3	>	8	ج		المضاعق فالخواف البلب فالمجمع فودوالبغا وللماث للبناء	**
بو	1	*	. 2	7	المطروالمورولبلن	ببرز
7	7	1	V	مد د	الموام وجواز للاوالسباع المؤدم والمحام	10.5
	-	1	•		ملدعان البوادزولاسبالرادروالمغالب والمدوف داللم عاالطروالموام	المخار
1	1	1	کر ا کر ا	ڪر ح	المرى الملاريما رجي مرك على عشرات والفترود و المراد	125
1	9	V		۔ اد	والمروع والمرود والمساور والعصار في الما والمرود والمساور	الرو
L	1-	·	<u>+</u>	1-	الطبروللمال المتمال وسياع للاوللمام	35

573. ME al-nazar wa'l-sugut. As the complex must follow the simple we have now to consider the relations of the signs to each other.

IN ASPECT OR Each sign is in sextile aspect, INCONJUNCT tasdis, to the third and eleventh left and right of it, and there is a sixth of the zodiac (60°) between any degree of that sign and the same degree of those named Similarly the quartile aspect, tarbi, is between a sign and the fourth and tenth left and right, separated by 90°, and the trine, tathlith, between the fifth and ninth, distant 120° and the opposite sign, muqabala, is the seventh, 180°. There are

therefore seven signs to which the sign in question dexter 10 وسيرير 11 X m 12 8 T 7 82 m 6 73 sinister

The signs used are of conjunction, opposition, ∞ sextile, * quartile, □ trine. △

face and which are consequently considered to be bound in aspect to it. The two si gns which are each side of the one in question and their opposites, viz. the second am twelfth and the sixth and eighth are not in aspect and SLO KIRDAU as incon junct (sāqiţ).

turns its

ملنقة لللا معلى البوحية دواها ببهامز بعي فاللحصية اللبسيط فاالنطروللشفوط كأرج بنارالي كالديان الدوملي مظرابم تشابني الأين الإبهار حان علن معلاني يسر معتلا بنعل فرز مهامتين الأبن صكا المين أمااه الملاث اوالا اجرائيا والانجان لألبن منطن اللرح المالت موسعة العسروال عادى فيسراعن وأبسا فانص كم بعلا بالبدر بهالم والعاشق وبها المزلان ببعالها منهاملنه وجي بعالفلك وننظر الخاسد نلبثا أبروالي لمبعد شلسااء الاندبنه وببز العاجد بنها ارتبد بروج وه المنالك وبطراكم ابعدنطر مق المدوب موزلك المستدبر وج وهي مف القال والمزوج المناطرة تتم نربط وفك وللافل السبعد ومف آديما في كالمدين الخبة وبرسور د جه محال جيز التربع بانت وديده و فعل الميان المناسل ماس وعشرون تجدو فالمف المسليه وتاورد

374-376

374. Mā al-buruļ al-mutahābbiyah wa'l-mutabāghidah wa'l-muta'ādiyah. Signs which are in sextile or trine are friendly to each other, those

BIGNS FRIENDLY, in quartile unfriendly and that opposite inimical. Thus Gemini and Aquarius are in sextile to

Aries, Leo and Sagittarius in trine to it, and these are mutually friendly, while Cancer and Capricorn being in quartile and Libra opposite are inimical. The inconjunct signs to Aries are four, viz. Teurus, Virgo, Scorpius & Pisces.

375. Mā tartīb al-nazar. The following is the order in power of the various aspects. The most powerful is

conjunction, i.e. meeting in the same sign, then the opposite, then the dexterl quartile, sinister quartile, dexter trine, sinister trine, dexter sex-

tile, sinister sextile. When there are two aspects the more powerful renders the weaker one incompetent and takes away its power.

376. Hal yuwafiqun al-hind fl dhalika. The Hindus are partly in agreement and partly dissent from this doctrine. They are in agreement in regard to the opposite, quartiles and HINDU OPINION trines, but they say that while a sign looks towards its third, the third does not regard it, and while it does not look to its sixth, the Bixth does regard it. They do not apply the term aspect to conjunction, for they say that when one stands erect and looks ahead, one cannot see oneself. With regard to the relative importance of the aspects they say that from a sign towards the third and tenth signs there is a quarter of an aspect, and to the fifth and minth, half an aspect (towards the 8th and 4th three quarters of an aspect and to the 7th a complete aspect) . They describe the second and

twelfth signs as inconjunct to the first and it to

them.

Dexter aspects are those contrary to the order of the signs, so that a planet in Y casts a dexter quartile to one in Y and a sinister quartile to one in .

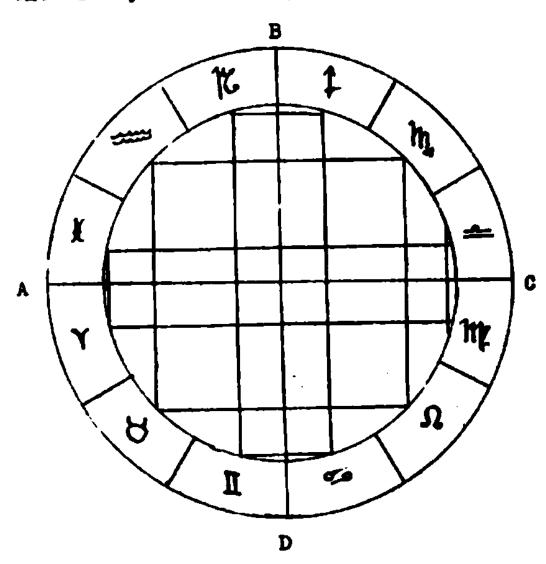
المياره ألنى تناطر من لمث النسالين. وللباعنده والمي تناطرع والمتعاديب الخفناطم فسأمكر بالكنال عللل منطاح من بح للهذاوالدلوعل مبيد وكالحيين رج للاسدوالنوسط ملبنه مؤيمها وفح عدو كالديم وتجالس طان وللدي على تربع دفه وبنسها وطاسنسانه وبرخ المزازعل مقالمت فهامتعادبان والروج المافطة عن للل المؤد والمتنبله والعنفر والجونه فأرس النظر اواهاللجامع مبذرخ ماجدتم المقابلة لم الربيح الإين تم الابتر تم الملب الإيزوالمتلبث الإيزواضعفها المت معروكل بيرواضعفها فافي كالمطم سط أضعي غمااوبو مزفئ وهلواففوا الميند فيخالك بوافنون وببن ذكك وحونط المنسابله والكرشع بزوالتنلبن تمعلفون فاوزاذكك وتجون ان الرُح بنطرال المروم المنال بنطر المبدوه وأبضا المبنط للباسادي وساوسينظر الب معوابسا بنطرالي المندويامند لأبنطرالب ولابموز الجامع ومطرا وعوات الانسان الواقف الاستوالا يرى تني زيد وأمافي الربيب بنعوث إن بنطرالسرح النالم وعاشره وبع فطروالخامس والمبعد يد نسف ذطر وال المنرورابع للثادباع نعلس والسابع تمام نطرف كاولجدم فاندوتا بد

377

377. Hal lilburuj ittifaqat ghayr al-naşar. Two signs equidistant from an equinoctial point fig. 242 are said to be equipollent, because the day hours of each are equal to the night RELATIONS hours of the other, and their ascensions BESIDES ASPECT

are equal2 in all places, 242 such as Aries and Piscos, Taurus and Aquarius, etc. The correspond-

ence is by inverse degrees, one being north the other



The vertical lines join equipollent signs, the horizontal those corresponding in their course. CBA. Southern half. ADC. Northern half.

BCD. Descending half. DAB. Ascending. The ascending signs according to Wilson are YUI, -mfbecause when in them the

sun's declination is increasing. I jutteficain fi l-quama - looduvouvouve of Demophilus. 2 icavápopa of Ptolemy.

3 The 30th degree being regarded as destitute of a compenion so as to associate odd degrees with odd and even with even. općiwa of Demophilus 4 !tuttafiqain fI'l-tarIqa. isobuvanouvra of Ptolemy.

south, the first of Aries being equal to the twenty-ninth of Pisees.3 and the 10th to the 20th.

Two signs revolving in the same parallel, North or 3outh (equidistant from a solstice) are described es correspond ing in course (in itinere), their day hours are equal as are their night hours, and their ascensions are identical at the equator, such as Gemini and cancer, Taurus and Leo. The

عنوسانطان فدوم سافط عنها هاللبزوج انعا فاتع بالنظر كالرجندودان مداورت المال والمال المال المنافية معنب الفي لاساعات مادا جنهاس المدلساعات باللخرومطالعما 2 جبه الامائ ساد بركليل مع بلوت وكالمون مع الداو وعلى الغياس فاما الانفافة درّجانها فع عوش ف للساللة رجه الاقبل خلط فقد والعرود بع الدرجه الاجنى للجن الجنب والدرج البائث وللارج البائث في مع الدرج العزر مِنْ الْجُونْدُ وَكُلْ رَجِينَ وَالْفِي مِلْ وَلَجِلَةِ الْجِيجِ عَمِيْ الْمُلْكِلِينِ مَا لَهُمَا يُمْ إِنْ شغفان الطنبقه وساعات نبادكاه اجدينها سسا ولمساعات المخروس وكلا سأعات الليل مطالعها فالعلك المستفير منساوير وذكك كالجزامع السنطان وكالتوزمع الاسد فأماهذا الانف فغ درجاتها فهيع تراضا وذكك ان الدرجوالاه ببالزال وطاف فقدمع الدرجعالاج مزالج ذاوالورجع المعالبة مز منعنده معالد دجدالعترن للجذا ويوجد لحذ للجبس الشائح المفارد الإباتر بذلك ولولا اللائم المطباق للعناه ليه وبترابومسترك ليجبز عالمعوجب واحدِم مع عند في البطر وعبر ومع ان فالبر من حال المنوع الله الإمان المالا من وافق مع المالة من والمن المناه وهم المناه والمناولة في المناه والمناه وال

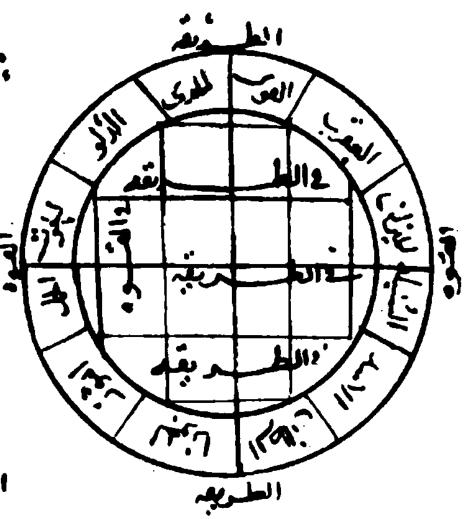
377

correspondence is also by inverse degrees, the beginning of Cancer corresponding to the end of Gemini, and the tenth of the former to the twentieth of the latter. These two relations receive different names in the books, and there is no permanence in such names, but that term is best which corresponds to the meaning.

abu Machar has called the two signs which have the same presiding planet (\$ 440) as concordant in itinere, and although this is different from the two kinds of agreement referred to above, it is a relation which has to be considered. With regard to the agreement which we have spoken of Abu Marshar calls the relation of Aries to Pisces, and of Virgo to Libra by power, and that of Gemini to Cancer and Sagittarius to Capricorn by course, as natural sextiles, although they do not regard each other, but since the nearest aspect to the inconjunct place is the sextile, he has called them by that name. Similarly the relations of Aries to Virgo and Pisces to Libra by course, and those of Gemini to Capricorn and Cancer to Sagittarius by power, he speaks of as natural opposites, although there is here no aspect. But in the quartile aspect it occasionally happens from these agreements as in the case of Taurus to Aquarius and Leo to Scorpius by power, and in that of Taurus to Leo and Scorpius to Aquarius by course, that the disagreeable emmity of the quartile lessens and its evil influence disappears, so that the significance of the relation gains in power, just as the removal of the inconjunction, obscurity and evil from those sextiles and natural opposites also takes place.

From those two correspondences to which we have adverted, power and course, the zodiac is divided into two sets of halves, 1/ northern and southern halves, 2/ ascending and descending halves (\$E^id

and habit).

معالد النبطان المؤا والمؤا معالم المؤا والمؤا مع الموي إلفا والفوس مع الموي إلفا والطوي الميا الميا الميا الميا الميا الميا الميا الميا الميا والمرب منامع عمم النظم والرب والميا الميا والمتنبلة الميا والمتنبلة الميا الميا والمتنبلة الميا الميا والمتنبلة الميا والميا والمتنبلة الميا والميا


معالانه وللمت علنوان وللمزام الدلوالجاب بكوذام المراه الدائم المراه المراح المراه الدراء المراه المربع في المراه المربع في المراه المربع في المراه والمربع المراه المربع
378

378. Mā nisf al-falak al-sā'id wa'l-hābit. The latter are marked out by the solstices, the ascending half

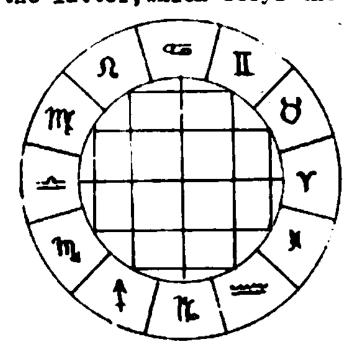
ASCENDING AND
DESCENDING
HALVES OF ZODIAC

comprising the following signs: Capricorn, Aquarius, Pisces, Aries, Taurus, Gemini, and the descending half the nadirs of these.

The Hindus call these halves 'ayana', the ascending 'uttarayana' or north, because although the declination of the sun in this half of the ecliptic is south, yet the sun during the whole of the half keeps its face towards its northern goal. The descending half is called 'dakshayana' or southern by similar reasoning.

Signs of the ascending half are described as signs of short or crooked ascension, because their oblique ascension is shorter than that in the erect sphere, while those of the descending half are said to be signs of long or direct ascension, because their oblique ascension is longer than that in the erect sphere. 242.

The crooked signs are also called 'obedient' and this is due to concordance in course, because when you compare two signs on one parallel, the one belonging to the descending half comes first by the diurnal movement, and the one of the ascending half later; so the former commands the latter, which obeys the command and always follows.



[According to Paulus Alexandrinus. Wittenberg. 1586 p E 5. The commanding signs are from Taurus to Virgo: the obedient signs are connected with them by vertical lines. The beholding signs from Gemini to Aquarius connected by horizontal lines to those they regard. So also Valens p. 24. But Chaucer says l.c. p. 58 "These crooked signs ben obedient to the signs that ben of riht Ascensioun (Cancer to Sagittarius)."]

I The southern signs were formerly called obedient, see Bouché-Leclercq, L'Astrologie Grecque, p. 163, as in the diagram from Paulus Alexandrinus, Wittenberg, 1586 p. E 5. For Ptolemy's use of the terms commanding and obeying see Tetrabiblos I. 17. The northern signs command because when the sun is on them, the day is longer than the night. Junctinus I. 69 adheres to Ptolemy's nomenclature.

مانسف الفاللصاعد وللحابط حااللينان يتهاعلي تنطبا المنتديز فروج المصف السَاعِدِ في للدي - والداو وللون المور والمود ١ وبروج المنعف للبطب فنطب هاالسند الباجد وللمت وسون كالواحد منها ذرا للمنعز فالمساعد منها اوما والحيلتمال لانالن فسروان المساعد منطؤما بلد اللهنوب فانعامع ذكك صابع فيوالعنابد السَّالمِد . ولمَّا المامط فيسمّونه دكشارا بالمنوب ملحاذكم افعن براسا بروح المسف الساع وبعقب الطاع لعضور مطالع الفاك عن طالع ما في العلك المستقيم . وعد تعم الروج المعرجه مطبعه والمشتنبه امع لمعخ الأنفاف العلب مقدمة ألسلار يخل انبن مادار زفيمداد ولحداد البرالذي بها فالسف المابط كان المرعد اللا المتعب بماللني في السف الساعد في الدُّ المن وبيعي والنَّالْ وبطبيد بالاتباع منحى مالكلكان الروج المتفقد والطبيعد سجلي الطبعة وانبدنه العكا ملخ والماسك تنساوك الاضلاع وكالك ببيروح المكث سبادا وبعوزعها بالغث نب شباداحدا ومستاها والانبد والغوم صلّت فادب على المجمع والانتلاماً والألها على الملك ملع النانالسنعلة والاسعال والاستعال كالمنان الاحارولانهار

379-380

as regards two qualities (# 347) is identical are situated in the zodiac at the angles of TRIPLICITIES right-angled triangles; they are consequently known as triplicities and are recognised as entities, although three in number, the effects of each being identical or similar. The first triplicity is formed of Aries, Leo and Sagittarius, all of which are fiery in their nature, withering and heavy, while the special domain of each is for Aries, fires in ordinary use, for Leo those present in minerals and plants, and for Sagittarius that which is distributed from the heart of animals throughout the body.

The second triplicity composed of Taurus, Virgo and Capricorn is earthy, generous with its wealth, and the interpretation of its effects is that Taurus is responsible for pastureland which is not sown, Virgo for plants which have neither berries nor seeds and small trees, Capricorn for sown crops and large and tall trees.

Gemini, Libra and Aquarius form the third triplicity which is airy in nature, sending winds abroad, and in detail Gemini is characterized by that quiet air which produces and sustains life, Libra by that which causes trees to grow, fertilizes them and produces fruit, and Aquarius by destructive storms.

The fourth triplicity of Cancer, Scorpius and Pisces is watery in sympathy, Cancer denoting sweet pure water, Scorpius that which is turbid and Pisces that which is stinking, distasteful and alkaline.

380. Mā al-murabba at wa burul al-fasul. Quadrants of the zodiac and signs of the seasons. Aries, Taurus and Gemini are vernal,

SIGNS OF THE SEASONS changeable, govern childhood, the east and the east wind,

the first watch of day and night. Cancer, Leo and Virgo are aestival, restful, govern youth, the south and the south wind and the second watch, Libra,

والمتورع المرزم المح في المان المحيوات والسُّود والسُّنيله وألجاك على الارزلة من العب والمراعى والمنبله على الهجد وبزر ويجر منعاد وللعري على طالم الخذع وَعِظم وللوزا وللوان والدلو شكتموابه معقالي ببرغلبودا ولعالموا المحى والمزاع المواالملغ الموا والدلوعلى المنطب والعواصف المض والسوطان والعفرب وللمرس مُلْدُمايُس مُل عِل المُن السيطان عِل عَل الله الطبب العِديد . والعسفرب على لمن لطعالم من والموت علله والملطع المسكريم والماجع ماللم بعات وبروج أعسول المل المودوللوذا وسيعداله بط المهاد والإرعلى لأول منها والسرطان والسرطان والسنيله صبغبد مول عابسكون فالتناب والجان علله ب ودعد للنوب ومزايباع اللبط والمفادع لللاحنها والمداز والعي غرب والفوس خريف تدل على إحدوم الهن على المستهولة ومن المهات على لغير ورعه الدبود ومزادماع اللملوالمهاد على المنافية والمؤتر والموزر منوبه ولعالب ووم الهزعل المنهضه ومزالحها تعالم الورجوالمال

380-381

Scorpius and Sagittarius are autumnal, changeable, govern adult life, the west and its wind, and the third watch, while Capricorn, Aquarius and Pisces are hibernal, peaceful, govern old age, the north and the north wind and the fourth watch.

The first sign of each season is called tropical as it is the turning point, the second fixed, because when the sun is in it the season is established, and the third bicorporal. Each one of these is related by quartile to the others of its kind, and thus Aries, Cancer, Libra and Capricorn form the tropical tetragone, the indications of which are gentleness, purity and sociability with a tendency to science and details. Then Taurus, Scorpius, Aquarius and Leo form the fixed tetragone, the indications of which are mildness, thoughtfulness and justice, in many cases of litigiousness and pugnacity, and sometimes of endurence in adversity and patience in trouble and injustice. Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius and Pisces, the bicorporal tetragone. indicate amiability, levity, playfulness, thoughtlessness, discord in business, capriciousness and duplicity.

The influence of the fixed signs according to what has been said is obvious, that of the bicorporal more obscure, and that of the tropical between the two.

We must now turn to the essential characteristics of the planets uncomplicated by any other influence, because the relation of the planets to the signs is such that when they enter them they undergo certain alterations; for the planets like the signs are spiritual forces which change the nature of bodies submitted to their influence, a retrograde planet for example, may change a temperament into a choleric one, or a joyful or anxious one, according as one of the four elements becomes preponderant and alters the activities of the spirit and the conditions.

JS1. Kaif tibar al-kawakib. The planets always influence whatever is receptive under them. So the results of the action of Saturn are in the direction of extreme cold and dry-THE PLANETS ness, of Jupiter of moderate heat and moisture, of Mars, of extreme heat and dryness, of the sun of not immoderate heat and

مزاداع العارواللسل علاابع منهم والرح للاولع علمسل عميما مابرج الماب أنب بنب في المسلط على الدقط إعدى واللك ذاجر الم مكانع عزعن الانواع الكندوافع عج تبيع مللوالك بطازوالمرازواليوي مبعد منسبدة لع المدوالط افعوالد كاواللطرفي العلوم وغام فرالعليم والتؤدوا لاسده المجسفي والدلوم ببعث ابتد ولعلي المهواله بروالانساف والتوك معنى للنومات وم ادلم على الله والمسرع العراب والمعدد وللوذا والمنسلدوالفوش ولبكوت مرتبعه ذاجت دبب بول علا للمتلكط وللفداولل وتجب اللمه وفلد ليليا ولحسكاف الانور واللون بلوني وللسانين بالملامان الدائي مِ الله وج الطرد الله فيها مولي علم • وذوات المندف احتى المقلمة فيها ملة للأرا للجوال المتولج بانفرادها فانعام للبروج مقام الاذواج الاحاد مع بع بي الما بها عمان المعرب مزاج الدن متعنب ونعر وبخرف بحنب غلبه الاخلاط وامتاجه إعلى ديسبراجوللامشابه لحاكماه كيف طباء الكولك للحواجب فلنه مام الف الملات فعلى المرفالموجود مزما فرد جلعوالرد والبس بافراط ومُزالمَتُ عَكَالِمُ والذي ونه بلغندال ، ممزاطم على للرقالب والمرافيا ع

581-382

dryness, less than characterizes Mars, the heat being greater than the dryness. The influence of Yenus is towards moderate cold and moisture, the latter predominant, of Mercury towards cold and dryness, the latter rather stronger, which influence however may be altered by association with another star. The moon tends to moderate cold and moisture, the one sometimes dominating the other. For the moon alters in each quarter in accordance with the extrinsic heat it is receiving from the rays of the sun. Comparing it with the seasons of the year, the first week has a spring-like character tending towards warmth and moisture, the second summer-like, warmth and dryness, the third after opposition. autumnal towards cold and dryness, and the fourth winter-like towards cold and moisture. Some people say that moisture always predominates in the moon whatever its station, but as a fact its moisture tends to warmth with the increasing light of the first half and to cold with the decreasing light of the second, because when the extrinsic influence ceases it can only return to its original condition.

With regard to the good and evil fortune due to the planets, Saturn and Mars are planets, Saturn and Mars are MAIRFICENT AND maleficent, the former especially HENEFICENT so; Jupiter and Venus are beneficent, especially the former.

Jupiter confronts Saturn in clearing-up unfortunate complications as Venus does Mars. The sun is both beneficent and maleficent, the former when in aspect

منالتن للبركاب العابدولك معداد اطمالمنه وجرارها المعربوسها من الذفع البرد واللطوم ما عندال ورطونها افسل مرفع دنها و عاما عطارد فالعالب علم البردوالبسر لانب الغابذ وللبنرض الأجيان تم هومنع بربحت من مارجدومسفل جباعه والماالغر فهواد دلا العابد رطب وديا فسرعر المرون وداعص والمبوسر ورا فسلطهم الاندسب الجوان العضب فهللوز للشنعا دمزال تمريخ برج ادماع المنهور عدالاصلال علي إس مسول المسنديك في الاول ماعلى على على على على على على المانى على طبعدالسنب حادا مابسا وغالباك مادد أمابسا وفالاخبرماد دادطها غ وفال قوم ان مطوع الفرعاليد الأثرا بلد فهوامد أرطب والمايس ل عبدا المتعنى ند فى السف الاول مادام نورة بالمسلم عمال الروده في السف الاخرورول عندالنعونه ودأك لفسانالمؤر بعجمدلاالعدوض للسنعادادا بطل لميكن مدعبالعود اللطاع فأجلها فالخيسه السعان وخل المراع فسأن بالطلاف وبالصبرها والمرتع هوالاسعس والمتري والزهس سجدان الإلمان وللسرك احترهما والرفسن استرها مالمستري بأذاذ المخالف على مابعق من المخته والزعن بأذ اللرتع فبروالتمس مع بد

382-385

and distant, the latter when in conjunction and near. Mercury also is either very fortunate or the reverse; it assists whatever planet is near it, but when alone is inclined to beneficence, the more so in proportion to its proximity. In virtue of its own nature the moon is fortunate, but its position with regard to the other planets changes quickly owing to the rapidity of its motion.

On the whole the effects of the beneficent planets may be described as virtue, peace, plenty, good disposition, cheerfulness, repose, goodness and learning. If these influences are powerful, they are friendly to each other, if weak, they lend each other assistance. On the other hand, the maleficent effect destruction, tyranny, depravity, covetousness, stupidity, severity, anxiety, ingratitude, shamelessness, meanness, conceit and all kinds of bad qualities. If powerful they help each other in enmity, but if weak, abandon each other, and when alone are active but cowardly.

Some people say that Saturn is at first inimical on account of Mars, and later fortunate on account of Jupiter because it accompanies them in all states. They say of Mars it is at first fortunate and later maleficent, and the same of the sun, but we know of no justification for these ideas, for the principle at the root of this matter is that any planet which has its two qualities in an extreme degree is meleficent; in a moderate degree, beneficent, and that if the qualities are unequally present, then it is neither called beneficent nor maleficent except under certain conditions.

Plany astrologers attribute a definite nature to the ascending and descending nodes, saying that the former is warm and beneficent and the latter cold, maleficent, and accompanied by a diminution of influences. It is related that the Babylonians held that the ascending node

بالنطره المبدية بلطيام بعدوالعث ب معادد بدهذا الماب على لطاد والطباء بطابق للخرس عللتوس والمبعد على السعدان فاذ اخلام في عد فه الما ليعلى ما بل واما الفرفاند سعد الااند عند النف برسع براه ضاعد من الحواج المزعد جركتدوالمنبوديد لبكادس فعلما المروالبول والملاح والمسالمدوالعلمان وتحسن لللن المسوور والاجمول كال والمنتايل فافقت توادث وتساد فئ وانصبغت تعاوننه فالخرف الجلدعافد ومنان فبلعالبوذ والمساده وللأس والماسدوالمسا ضدوالغوم والمشوير والكفغ انواتيك والفروجيح الزذابل فاز فريت نصادت وتبعادت وانضجف فتلك وكادل فعال قوم به فيال اولد غرض للربع وآخرة سيدم فباللث ترى لمشاد عنوا إعلية الإوال وولوا فللنه الالدسير ولغن مخرف والمراولهامي واحره الحتن لمراتجة وفائم مها مازالاسل فعزا الباب اللصل وحب اوطرع مائن بالصبعب معاطمة أسب اللغوسع وكلحو كبيرا خلف كمفائد والمعداد الطحلساس النعان والخرس للبن وابط فهل للراس والدب في هدا مع خل زانياس مَنْ الله والأب طباعاً صماله اس المعلاد الاعلى الذب الذب الأبيال المرابع الدب الأعلى الذب الذب الماء الم الماء ا

383-386

increases the effects of both beneficent and maleficent planets, but it is not every one who will accept these statements, for the analogy seems to be rather farfetched.

384. Fahal lil-hind fI hadha ral. According to the Hindus, Saturn, Mars, (the sun and the ascending node) are in general maleficent; (they do HINDU OPINION not mention the Dragon's tail. Jupiter and Venus are in general beneficent, and Menus are in general beneficents and maleficents. Of the moon some say that while waxing it is beneficent, and when waning, maleficent, while others assert that for the first ten days it is neither beneficent nor maleficent, during the second ten, beneficent, and during the third, maleficent.

385. Fama al-dhakar wa'l-untha. All the three superior planets and the sun are male, Saturn, among them, being like a cunuch (has no MALE AND FEMALE influence on birth). Venus and the moon are female, and Mercury hermaphrodite, being male when associated with the male planets, and female when with the female; when alone it is male in its nature. Some people say that Mars is female, but this opinion is not received.

Jupiter and the sun are diurnal and exercise their power during the day. Mars, Venus and DIURNAL AND the moon nocturnal and Mercury is either MCCTURNAL one or the other depending on the sign in which it is, or on the planet with which it is associated. Every planet assists those resembling it, the diurnal asking assistance from the diurnal and the nocturnal from the nocturnal.

The sun is lord of the day and the moon of the night, because their influence is exerted during these periods. Every planet which is under the horizon during its own period is without influence.

Some people say that the dragon's head is male and diurnal and the tail female and nocturnal, but this is quite illogical.

لاند وبعلم الدلالة وما كالم تعديف لهذا ودكك أندمني على تسبد بعيد ع عذعوان الخوط بالاف خوالم والممروالا المولاد كوز الفيد الملاه المبود باطلافي للشندى والمرض فأماع طادر فوسبسع المبود ويخرم الخورا فاالغز منهمزية وللدسهد اداد فن وتحراف المرتب ومَنهم سَعُولاندُ فِالمِسْدُ الأول بالكنم الغرى لاستجد وللغروب العشية الأوسط سعدون الاحبر عشر ماالدكرمنهاوالاني المنابع ليبهع المروعور وأبلن ينها كالمني والمفع والغر أمان وتجطاد وحومع الذحوز واني مع الامات لذلك مركا كمنة واثلن الذكون ففائد اذإخلابنف عقدد عب فوم المابث للرخ وَ إِوخِدِ بَنُولُمُ فَا لَهُ عَالَيْهِ الْرَجِي فَهَا وَاللِّي لِي أَجِلُ لِلسَّرِي والمُعْرِ فِعَالِي بَهُوب منالاته والزهسرة والغز للبيدة عطاد حنمادي للعباغيث مامازجر حود اوبرح سكلحوك فريغير منصلاو سنعيز الهاد بالمادد والليا باللبا والمنر لجدنوبذالها والفرصاجب نوب اللبالاز بعكوامر بنار بعلم و و و و المحال و المنافع الم عبطاه وقداناف قوم مزعاعلا المنكور الالامر كجبلي مادبا والاوتذال

387-388

587. Hal tabol dalalat al-kawakib. The indications of a planet do not always remain constant; they are dependent on its relations to the ARE INDICATIONS various signs, to other planets and CONSTANT? to the fixed stars, to the position

as regards the sun and its rays, and to distance from, or proximity to the earth. Thus Saturn which is dry as it rises becomes moist as it sets.

The effects which are thus attributable to the various situations of a planet present themselves in two forms, the one fortunate, the other unfortunate. Saturn, for example, which governs matters of the land, if in conditions of power and beneficence improves the agricultural conditions, blessings and good luck ensue and increased profits are realized; but if the conditions are adverse, the farming operations are attended by disappointment, bad fortune and failure.

All the indications of the planetary influences which are described in the books are set down in the

tables which follow.

388. Lims yatakarrar al-shai' wahid al-madlul 'alaihi inda'l-kawakib wa lam yakhtalif fi ba'diha. It may be asked why mention why one quality repeatedly is made of several

WHY ONE QUALITY REPEATEDLY is made of several ATTRIBUTED TO CERTAIN planets in connection PLANETS AND NOT TO OTHERS with one subject, when the

same is not the case with others (the signs)P.1 This is due first of all to certain defects in the art, and to confusion of reasoning. The masters of astrology first agreed to arrange things according to their colours, smell, taste, special peculiarities, actions and habits and attached them to planets in accordance with the nature, beneficence or maleficence of these, but other associations were suggested by resemblance in time of appearance or of coming into action. It is rare that only one planet furnishes the indications for one subject or object, generally two or more are associated, as for example when two elementary qualities are present obviously related to two different planets. Thus the onion is related by its warmth to Mars and by its moisture to Venus, and opium by its coldness to Saturn, and its

I P has burjī for bad ihā.

الإند مجيلة للبادبري المعناير عاله ولنفح د لا لاندالت السالي على المنعبون الدور والبروج ومع عدم المزالي والمائد والسياده ويد منطرها وسند اجوالها ماوصاعها مزالت وسعاعها العشرب والبعد فان خطي ما بشااذا سعد و مطبا اذا عبط تم بسبر ليالالواس المح لطما الكوكب بعث جاسله على سلام الدعل بالصفام كخرجل الذادل على اولد الارسير فالدان كالعلى الطالق اولما امر الدمن ووالدما وجمع للال نبها فإنصان على نبها ذاولها بعد وتعد مر حهدالمرارعدود امن شعاق مفها بالطابل يخرجه مافيل الكنب مزولالإلها وتودعماللاول لمنبكر، المنزواحدللالعلعلبه علالكوالبر ولمخطف بعضها لصلذ لأبعا الامول واضطراب فبأشاغ اناسجاب السناعه أنف غوا فعابنه وعلى تعديع الالوان والاداع والطعوم والمواص الانعال والاطلاف على المتعاني على المتعاني على المتعاني المتعاني المتعالم واجرباللالدعلى في أمايت كرف صحبال واحد بوجود حبنبر بنطاه ريف في المال المريف في المراب المراب المريف في المراب المراب المريف في المراب المريف في المراب ال

588-389

dryness to Hercury. So when any one speaks of Saturn as the significator of opium, it is merely its coldness that is referred to, and if Mercury is cited in the same capacity, that is due to its dryness. Those people who do not use discrimination in these matters are therefore responsible for the contradictions which occur in their books.

Again there are groups of objects which have as general significator one particular planet, while other planets are associated with the individuals of the group. Thus Yenus is the significator for all sweet-smelling flowers, but Mars in the case of the rose is associated with it on account of its thorns, colour and pungent odour which incites catarrh, while Jupiter shares with Yenus in the case of the narcissus; Saturn in the case of the myrtle, the Sun in that of the water-lily, Mercury in that of royal basil, and the Moon in that of the violet.

Similarly the various organs of a plant are distributed to different planets. Thus the stem of a tree is appropriated to Sun, the roots to Saturn, the thorns, twigs and bark to Mars, the flowers to Venus, the fruit to Jupiter, the leaves to the moon, and the seed to Mercury. Even in the fruit of a plant like a melon the constituent parts are divided among several planets, the plant itself and the flesh of the fruit belong to the sun, its moisture to the moon, its rind to Saturn, smell and colour to Venus, taste to Jupiter, seed to Mercury and the skin of the seed and its shape to Mars.

389. Kaif dalalat 'ala'l-jihat. I have not seen in the ordinary text-books any reference to a connection between the planets and the points

RELATION TO POINTS of the compass except in OF COLPASS Neyrizi's Book of Natur

of the compass except in Nayrīzī's 'Book of Nature, 'who in speaking of the four triplicit-

ies refers Saturn to the East, Mars to the West, Venus to the South and Jupiter to the North.

The Hindus, however, attribute to the planets certain powers which they call directional (jihatī) this belongs to Mercury and Jupiter at the horoscope.

I Suter Abh. Gesch. Math. VI, 67 is of opinion that several works attributed to Tibrīzī should be credited to Nayrīzī. Abu'l-Abbās P. has Nayrīzī. Nayrīz is 130 miles E. of Shirāz.

2 Kitab al-mawalid, not included in the list of Nayrizi's works given in Not. et Ext. VII p. 118.

موطوبته و معطلمون البنوال فبالم بروديد وعطار وبيوسيدماد ا سَـ بجنها إن الخطار دواذانسد عبره العطادة فالسوسر ولمرالق وم فهَذا الماب دُرْمِ فَعَلْفَ مَا فِي عُبْهِم إلى تساد ورُمَا السِّمْرَكُ فِالتَّيْ لِجِدِمِرُهُ . كواجب بعده كفيات وخوام ويزالانهاما يول علي وكدواجد مرادك مسارها فحافه المدحالا من الدالم على المالي بسر العطوب دواجها م بشادك المرتع به الورد المسك وشيرت والحن فلوند والحر عالم في الزكام فى المعدد مُسَّانَ عاالمسَّدى إلَى حَرونَ جل الايروالمُمْرَبِ والمسلوفروعاً ومُعالد فالمناهسعم والغرب فالمنفسر وكدآك بفتم المحواجب اجام الني مثالدب ين واجره بعب بهامان صلها المنفر وعرو فهالرجل مسوكها واعضابها وقسو دهالمرخ دَنَعَ الْمُعَادُهِ وَالمَرْ الْمُسْتَرَى وَوَرَفِمَ اللَّمْ وَجِمَالِعِطَادُهِ وَ وَيُعْسَمِ المناابعان المخالوا جدماذ كرماه في النيخ كالطير مُلافان مندلك وتحدد والماب الغروالمنش وأبط والراجع واللول للزعن والمجولات وي والمسلط المعادد متنزاب ونتحاد الزح كبعد لالاهاع الجهاذ اردك فالمداخ عاوماسو بماذك المتوري بج المستانا أجاكا لدع للغرف للعنا عاللغ

389-390

to the sun and moon at the tenth house, to Saturn at the seventh, and to Venus and the moon at the fourth. So it becomes necessary to associate the East with Mercury and Jupiter, the West with Saturn, the South with the sun and Mars and the North with Venus and the moon.

They have also an octagonal figure called ra's which they use in trying to secure victory in gambling. Here they place the sun at the East, Jupiter at the South, Mars at the South-East, the moon South-West, Saturn North-West, Mercury North, and Venus North-East, the West point being left vacant.

390. Kaif qismah al-ayyam balnaha. With regard to the distribution of the days of the week among the planets, it is natural that the PLANETS AS LORDS OF first hour of the first day HOURS AND DAYS OF WEEK Sunday should be given to the planet which is the cause of day and night, viz. the sun. The second hour is allotted to the next lower planet Venus, the third to Mercury, the

Are of day.

Arc of night

1	Day of 16 equal hours (40 gharts) = 240° equinost.													办t 20	eh	f	8	e (= Ins	12	50c	our:	8	I
A.	m_	Вал	1		121	1001	n ,	4 p.	m.	ı	80.	L		1		li	四	đơ	#		1	40	T	•
i	8	3	4	5	6	7	В			11			2	3	L	5	6	7	8	9	g	中	2	
0	Q +	ğ	A	h	4	8	0	\$	ğ	>	h	4	ð	0	Ç	ţ	D	h	4	δ	0	<u> </u>	2	D

Day of 12 unequal hours. 1/12th Night of 12 unequal hours are of day = 200

1/12th are of night = 100

Diagrem of equal and unequal hours with the Lords of the hours for a Sunday.

The Arabs divide the whole day from sunrise to sunset into 12 day hours and the night from sunset to sunrise into 12 night hours. In the diagram the day is much longer than the night, 16 of our hours to 6. Therefore the Arab hours are very unequal to ours, and are also unequal as the days vary in length. Here 2 spaces are given to Arab day hours and one to night hours, so 3 Arab day hours - 4 of ours and 6 Arab night hours - 4 of ours. I One of the games of nard.

عالنال وكزلل دبسبو العافق بمي المعتبد وتسعوز لعاد والمسترى بِدَ الطَّالِعِ وَالنَّمْ وَالمُرْبِحِ وَالْجِائِرُ . وَلَرْجُ وَالْمُرْبِ وَالْمُرْبِ وَالْمُرْبِ وَالْمُرْبِ وكل أن جون المرف سوماً المعطادد وللرعد والسلال الفي و والفرو ولم أضا سُل مُمْ رَضِيوب اللَّالْ الرَّبْ مَعِلَى الكف الكف العُلْمُ العَادُ وسِعِوف المَرْ عَا المشرق والمشفى عاللنوب والمزع علمانهما والع عاما بزلطنوب وللغرب وزيرعلم بين للغب والسال وعطادد عاللهال والنعم على إبن ومراله وأ ملابنبون باللزب شأكر فضيد الابام ببهابنب بول س مزاه فالابام معروم الاجد المصوحب الدي محالست الادف المماذ واللبل وسلبتها وعوالمتنزغ المساعفالمابن المصوحب الاي بوق بسايكال مِ العِيلِواللهِ عَلِيمُ والمُتَاعِد المَالمُ لمَعِلَ ادْد والمابعِد المُعْمِ للمُعْمِدِ للمُعْمِدِ للمُعْمِد لزُراوع النسد الليوم المارند وموالانتيزون ويسلت فيهالساععا لاول يندأ للغز والمأبشانيل على الكيال إن الاجدالاب وقلعادب وبدالسابع الاول منه الله من الماس الماعات الماعات الماعات الله الماعات ا الذى لالتا بعد الاول مند وقوم منتبو اأواد الماعل اللخيف مأذواجما اللاوش فعبلوالناعدالا ولنحلبوم مذعن واللبدون والألد

390-392

fourth to the moon, the fifth to Saturn and so on till the second day Monday whose first hour falls to the moon, second to Saturn, and so on in the same way until another Sunday arrives, when the first hour is again the turn of the sun. The lords of the hours having been determined in this way it was natural that the days of the week should be assigned to the planet associated with the first hour thereof.

Some people assert that the odd hours of the twenty-four are male and the even ones female.

391. Fahal fI hadha ikhtilaf. The Hindus deal with this matter in a better way. They reckon their day of twenty-four hours from sunrise to HINDU DIFFERENCE sunrise, and allot the whole day to one governing planet without making separate provision for the hours. Their night follows day, and their hours are equal which appears to be the most reasonable method. Our astrologers however, deal separately with day and night and divide them into unequal hours, so that the lord of the night which follows a day is the thirteenth planet counting downwards from the lord of the preceding day and (an easier calculation) the sixth downwards or the third upwards.

It is on account of this that the unequal hours are engraved on the astrolabe, but this method of division is contrary to nature.

392. Kaif qismah al-aqalim beinaha. With regard to the seven climates the first from the equator to its boundary is given to Saturn the first and highest planet and the one with the PLANETS AND CLIMATES widest orbit, because the first climate is the longest of all, the most generous in yielding the necessities of life, and its inhabitants resemble Saturn in colour and disposition. The second climate belongs to Jupiter and so on to the seventh which is allotted to the moon. Abu Marshar regards this as a Persian view, and says that the Greeks give the first climate to Saturn, the second to the sun, the third to Mercury, the fourth to Jupiter, the fifth to Venus, the sixth to Mars and the seventh to the moon.

I For a memoria technica of the planetary hours see Skeat l.c. p. 23-7, and for the Semaine planetaire BL. p. 480. Fig. 244.

مد من من من اعلى كم الله من اعاله من المن المناف المنطذ الباب احقراس تعالاه عبع لونساعات الموم الأبيع وعزين طوع المنزنها الحاده اكلفولهابب البوه والبراماب المادالوم لابجيلوزان صاحب على وللبسنطون عزالتاً على المستوج معذا عوالانهب اللهاس فلما المحزن وبأرا مانم بعسده والغب ومدين اجب المهاد وبرت بالبل مستعلون فبالساعات المعرب وبصورصاجب البلاللالجولي معوالال عنرم صاحب الموم بذا لمجدد المجدد والسهر لمواكسا درمغ النب ربراوالمالب ينهبذ التجعيد المساعد ولهذا لخطون اللنع مزائه آعات بدالانطولاب ودك اللب ومزاطع من على فيهم الافالمديما جعِل الافلام الافلم الأول عندخط الاستو الربط السعواج ماولما واوسعا لمعاددكك لأللا فلم الاول اصعمار فعدوا صنها وسكانها علالوزالمن ال زجل والحلافذ تمبتلوه المستذي فيعيلو للافلهالما الدوع في الحقيم بعر تسابع للغن وذعوليوم يشتران فأداى الغرو ازله بالهاع والروم على المدوه الأول أنبل والمأف المنتمل والمالف المطاود والماسر الفن والمادر الفن السادر الفن السابع المرابع
393-5

393. Mā tawāli" al-bilād wa'l-aqālīm wa asbāb sā" atha. To find an association between a particular place

ASCENDANTS OF CITIES, CLIMATES, LORDS OF THEIR HOURS and a sign or planet is a matter for investigation and research, but how are we to draw a horoscope or ascertain the lord of

the hour for a place, unless we know accurately the time of the beginning of its construction? And what city is there of which such a recollection is preserved? Even if a religious ceremony be associated with the foundation of a city, the history of its early conditions has passed into oblivion. Even suppose that is not so, and that we assume a certain date of its foundation, and draw a horoscope and calculate the lords of the hours in accordance therewith, how are we to do so for a well-known stream or a great river, since we can know nothing as to when water began to flow in it and excavate its channel? These questions are futile and their absurdity is obvious to the intelligent.

394. Ma sunu al-kawakib. The years of the planets are of four degrees, least, mean, great and greatest (B 437).

The last are only used for mark-YEARS OF THE PLANETS ing certain time-cycles, although some people say that in ancient

days the planets granted such long years of life. Astrologers of the present day only use the three former degrees for determining the length of life at a nativity, and the numbers which they thus elicit must not be interpreted literally as years, but freely, for sometimes they represent years, but sometimes months, weeks, days or hours.

395. Ma firderat al-kawakib. The years of a man's life according to a Persian idea are divided into cer-

tain periods (firdar) l governed by the lords of these known as FIRDARIA OF PLANETS Chronocrators (55 438-9). When

one period is finished another begins. The first period always begins with the sun in a diurnal nativity and with the moon in a nocturnal one; the second with Venus in the one case, in the other with Saturn, the remaining periods with the other planets in descending order. The years of each period are distributed equally between the sevenplanets, the first seventh belonging exclusively to the chronocrator of the period, the second to it in partnership with the planet next below it and so on. 2 I firdar, according to De Saumaise from maprobaptov, Bouché-Leclercq p. 491 n. The firdaria appear later as

ماطوالع البلاد والافالم واصليت والحوك فرجعة دلالدفها صاخد وللعول فيها علافا ربب فالمالطا إج وساجب الشاعد فلابع وللبادعة وطأ الامزوق بأبواي ادعط لذم بالعطان شاعل فالمدسداد سهوللانس معب اللانز المرتاء وللاح المنبدالوستد فبائتب اسبهاللها فالجيلا البطام لمزوف خرم أمزين جري الما فسأدذ أسناو المسنو المساوي أذبع مزان اكتاب عطروك وكبرى ووسط وسنعرى فالماللعط فالما تستعل ووب الانمند ومنهمن وعانالهولهب كانتبطها اعام فالدون السالف وفتطول المحاذ وآما المكأر الامناف الاخرفني أستعاللا فلعارموالد دمأنا بداستمراج الاوعان وللجدودات واست أستعل علايف منون باعبانها ولحزاع لا مطف ه وديما كأث شهون الواسايح اوابا ما اوساعاتٍ ما فردارا ف الصواحب عَ من المربع المولود مع برصلحب الفرد ادمن سنبه منفقل المرالاى بلي والاندافها في الولاد المارس مزالمترون الإلمير الغروبيتم على ببالاطلال بالموازع بدي سنواودارالكواب مقسد من الحوالية مستور في المالساج العرداد مفسد عملوه الايلبيم المفلع نغيب المكلكك

396-401

396-401. Taba'i al-kawakib wa dalalatha. The general characteristics of the planets and their

NATURES OF THE PLANETS ary qualities; 597 beneficence AND THEIR INDICATIONS or maleficence; 598 sex; 599 whether diurnal or nonturnal;

400 smell and taste; 401 colour.

Saturn is extremely cold and dry. The greater malefic. Male. Diurnal. Disagreeable and astringent, offensively acid, stinking. Jet-black also black mixed with yellow, lead colour, pitch-dark.

Jupiter is moderately warm and moist. The greater benefic. Male. Diurnal. Sweet, bitter-sweet, delicious. Dust-colour and white mixed with yellow and brown, shining, glittering.

Male (some say female). Nocturnal. Bitter. Dark red.

Sun is hot and dry, the heat predominant. Maleficent when near, beneficent at a distance. Male. Diurnal. Penetrating. Pungent, shining reddish-yellow, its colour is said to be that of the lord of the hour.

Venus is moderately cold and moist, especially the latter. The lesser benefic. Female. Nocturnal. Fat and sweet flavour. Pure white tending to straw-colour, shining, according to some greenish.

Mercury is moderately cold and dry, the latter predominant. Beneficent. Male and diurnal by nature, but takes on the characters of others near. Complex flavour and colour, the latter sky-blue mixed with a darker colour.

Moon is cold and moist, sometimes moderate, changeable. Beneficent and maleficent. Female. Nocturnal. Salt or insipid, somewhat bitter. Blue and white or some deep colour not unmixed with reddish yellow, moderate brilliancy.

ملهام	دلالهاعل الطغالواح	4,4	ذكريا	سجرا	طابعها	で変
	الطغروح	ولبلبها	وانثاعا	ويجمها	ا داد	34
المذاراكالك وماماح سواده صعم واللوب الصاص والخطالم	المساعسة والعموصة والموصدلانه والنز	نهاری	ذڪر	الحنر الأكبر	ماردمابس ما واطافهما	र्
الغبرة والسال المنتوسطين وجمرة والعنسا وجمرة والعنسا	الحلاوه والمراره والطنه	نهاري	ذحر	السعد الاكبر	طررطب ماعد <u>ا</u> لهما	えら
الجيره المظلمة	المراره	للى	ذڪبر فقبر <i>ا</i> ڻتي	الخسّ الاصغر	حارما بنس مافراط فيهما	
المياوالشفرة والمعود وفلاك ونهايون لوب صاحبالساعد	الحرافه	نهاری	ذڪر	خسع فر سعدع بعد	حارما بنس ولحرارتها الغضد	3
لماص الناصع ولما الادمة وم المساوعل في المساوعل في	الرسومه واللراده	L 3.	أنثى	السعل الاصغر	مارد رطعاعدال ولرطوبها التصد	170
معرح اللون لهمًا كرمراس الوكدزوارا-ابخ	ما خلط الم	بهارک میمعر اداماج عمره	د ڪر ونگريف مرکارچه	سعريزان ومنشه تعيره	ماردبابس في فط وللبوسم القصد	2,62
زرفه والماس مريع علص حمه معرد اوجوده لد الضي العل	ملوحه في الله المالية	بلى	الثى	سع الم المناخش فابل	ماردرطب منوسط ومغر اجبانا	3

と

402-406

402-406. Dala'ilha al-mutlagah, Kaifiyat, ashkal, ayyamha iqlimha wa ajnas al-ard. Indications as to 402 the properties of things, 403 their INDICATIONS form, 404 the days and nights of the CONTINUED week, 405 climates, 406 nature of soils.

Saturn: Coldest, hardest, most stinking and most powerful of things. Shortness, dryness, hardness, heaviness. Saturday (and Wednesday night) P. First climate. Barren mountains.

Jupiter: Moderate, complete, pleasant, best and casiest things. Moderation, solidity, smoothness. Thursday (and Monday night). Second climate. Easily worked soil.

Mars: Hot, hard, sharp and red things. Length, dryness and coarseness. Tuesday (and Saturday night)P. Third climate. Waste, hard and stony land.

Sun: Most expert, noble, well-known and generous things. Revolution, mines, worn-outness, empty and vacant places. Sunday (and Thursday night) P. Fourth climate. Mountains rich in minerals.

Venus: Most pungent, most agreeable and delicious, most beautiful, softest and ripest things. Squareness, dispersion, smoothness. Friday (and Tuesday night)P. Fifth climate. Soils with abundant water.

Mercury: Mixture of moderate things. Compounded of two things of this nature. Wednesday (and Sunday night). Sixth climate. Sandy soil.

Moon: Thickest, densest, moistest and lightest objects. Density, moisture, opacity, lightness. Monday (and Friday night). Seventh climate. Plains and level ground.

مالهامراحاس اللارص	افابم	لبابا	مالهام الخفاب والاشكال	ولالنها المطلقه	اسمااللواك
الحال الماسه التي لاتنبت	الاول	مومر الشبث	الغفروالبوم والصلاب والمصل	إبردالاشاواملها وانتها وافدرها	
الارضورالهله	المانى	نوفر الحبب	الاعدال والحدوره والملاسه	اعول المورولها وإهسهاواطها واشلسها	المحرك
الارصور للحسرمه المحشنه والضراص	الاك	ىوپر اللا		احراللبياولختنها	
للجال دوالعادن	المواسع	ىومر الاحد	اللاستداره والمعادر والعلا والصنروواخلا الدياس فيد	اسلالسالجين والنها والزما	74
الارضور للرب ه الحشره المياد	اكاش	بومر الجعد	المرسع والسيلاب واللم	ا ذلا للاستساولهما والزيا واحلها فالينا وارطبها	الكيه
المال	السآد	مومر اللارتعا	المرجم كفس عردبير	المدح للوسط المرح مرسيات مرجع من	عكارد
ڪرفائ ارض مشتوب	إسابع	مومر الاسر	العلط والطوم والمطعب وللعمه	اعلط الاشا والنها وابطها واحسفها	

407-408

407-408. Mālahā min al-amākin wa'l-masākin. Indications as to,407, places and buildings; 408, countries.

BUILDINGS AND COUNTRIES

Saturn: Underground canals and vaults, wells, old buildings, desolate roads, lairs of wild beasts, deserts full of them, stables for horses, asses, and camels, and elephants' houses. India, Zanzibar, Abyssinia, Egypt, Ethiopia between the West and the South, Yemen, Arabia and Nabatea.

Jupiter: Royal palaces, mansions of the nobility, mosques, pulpits, Christian churches and synagogues, science, books, ordinary vessels, teachers' houses, hamlets of leadworkers. Babylon, Fars, Khurasan, the country of the Teviks and the Berbers in Africa as far as the West.

Mars: (Fire-temples)^P, fireplaces and firewood, roadside fires and the vessels necessary for the art of the potter. Syria, Greece, Slavonia, North-Western countries.

Sun: Kings' and sultan's palaces. Hijjaz, Jerusalem, Mount Lebanon, Armenia, Alan, Dailam, Khurasan as far as China.

Venus: Lofty houses, vessels (roads) which hold much water, places of worship. Babylon, Arabia, Hijāz p and its neighbourhood, (islands and sugar-plantations), and cities of Mesopotamia and the Middle of the Marabas.

Mercury: Bazaars and divans, mosques, houses of painters and bleachers and such as are near orchards, irrigation channels and springs. Mecca, Madina, 'Iraq, Dilam, Gilan, Tabaristan.

Moon: Moist places, underground or under water brick-making, places to cool water, streams and roads with trees. Mosul, Azarbaijan, the narrow streets of the common people everywhere.

¹ parf and turuq are confused in this paragraph.

	مالهامرالإماحن	المالاتا
السندوالهندوللند والنبط وسودارها مرافعو والعرب والنبط والعرب والنبط	الاساب والنواونس والآباد والابنية العنف والطرو للربد والإسات والتعارف المشعدوم الطالبراب وانح والحالب ويتوسب النبلة	<u>.</u> چ
اهلاط وعارس واهليخ اسار والترك وربر واورقد اللغرب	المسا لرالعامر ومارل اسراف والمشاجد والمابر والبع والنابس والعلم المصاحد وطروالعادة في والعلم ومؤاصع مساع المصاحب	التنمرك
السام والروح والعمقل ومراب ماسر المعرب والشمال	مواصع الهراروللحسب وماعريم الطرق وحسط العسار	₽
اهر المحاروم المفرس وحمل الماب وارمنده والان والرماو حراساب المال الصر	سون الملوك والسلاطبي	3
المرابل والعرب والجمار ومامليده فالمام المرابل وحرسوه اووسط اجمه	الاماكرالمقعه والطوالي فها	100
مصع والمرسد والرص العراف والدملم وحملال وطبرستاب	الاسولس والرواوبر والمساحد وسوب المصورس والعصاب ومام رث	عطارد
الموصل وادريجاب ودرواناعوام مرالاس درايع	المار الربح كارض وللا ومضارب البس والمعرد فها الما والابهار والطرف ذولت المتعار	.સ્

409-411

409-411. Malaha min al-mardaniyat, al-filizzat
wa'l-jawahir, al-hubub wa'l-fawakih. Indications as to
409 mines; 410.metals
RELATIONS TO ORES, METALS AND and precious stones;
JEWELS, GRAINS AND FRUITS 411 grains and fruit.

Saturn: Litharge, iron slag, hard stones. Lead. Pepper, belleric myrobalan, olives, medlars, bitter pomegranate, lentils, linseed, hempseed.

Jupiter: Marcasite, tutty, sulphur, red arsenic, all white and yellow stones, stones found in ox-gall. Tin, white lead, fine brass, diamond, all jewels worn by man. Wild pomegranate, apple, wheat, barley, rice, durra, chick-peas, sesame.

Mars: Magnetic iron, shadnā (lentil-shaped stones) cinnabar, rouge and mosaics (fasīfusā). Iron and copper. Bitter almond, seed of turpentine-tree.

Sun: Jacinths, lapis lazuli, yellow sulphur, orpiment, Pharaonic glass, marble, re-algar, pitch. Gold and whatever is coined therefrom for kings. Orange and maize.

Venus: Magnesia and antimony. Silver and gold and jewels set in these, household vessels made of gold, silver and brass, pearls, emeralds, shells. Figs, grapes, dates, origanum and fenugreek.

Mercury: Depilatory, arsenic, amber, all yellow and green stones. All coins struck with name and number such as dinars, dirhams and coppers, old gold and quicksilver, turquoise, coral, tree-coral. Pease, beans, caraway, coriander.

Moon: Nabatean glass, white abones, emerald, moonstone. Silver and things manufactured of silver, such as cups, bangles, rings and the like, pearls, crystal, beads strung. Wheat, barley, large and small cucumbers, melons.

Habbatu'l-khadrā', the green seed of Pistacia terebinthus according to Al-Baitar, Not.Ext. XXIII, 234, stomachic; good for gums and teeth. In a qiţā' of Hafiz (608) evidently hashish, perhaps prepared as a confection 'pista-i,bang'.

	· B E. &	ر ار محریخ مع	مرا د
مالهام للحق والفواك	مالهامرالقارات والجواهب	مالهامن	
العلام والشابها وطوالوو والعوروالهاركام خوالعة والعار والشهداخ	المرّار وخدا كاريز. والحجاره الصلاه	الاسرب	نعل
الرمارلهاملشي المعاج والمعطروالدر	4 المحتسا والوتباوالحاب والربي الأحرول في اسع واصعر و عرب الفن واصعر و عرب الفن	الضاص العلم والاستيارالي والمستداله العاس والمرجل على المحال المحال	アジ
اللوزالمر وحدا كخضرا	المصطبروالساديه والزعم	الموروالمحاس	15.50
الأنزح والأدز المسلك	نام واللازورد والغوى والنارت للمعروالرج الاصفر والجلح والخام والمندروس والرف والعاذى وطريح بمس	الرهب ومانصاع من لللوك	34
النرفالعب والتموللجود والمسعسرولكلبه	اللولووالرسي والحع	العضه والرهب والخالطوعه	الهره
الماش والمافل والكروما والكر.سره	لعرورح وللهار والبشدوالنواد الربجداللما وطريخ اصفراو معرفولا	المار معنامه قدبته من الدر ودام وفلوس والصفر والمرود المرود المر	29
الحطروالمعروالقا والخاروالبطبيح	للولو والبلوروللر المختلى الهاج السط ودلاج المنض شند والدامج والح المساكل	العضدوامعليهام لكأمات ا	

412-413

412-413. Mālahā min al-ashjār, al-nabāt. Indications as to,412, trees; 413, herbags and orops.

RELATIONS TO TREES & CROPS

Saturn: Cak-gall tree, citron or myrobalan tree, clive tree and also willow, turpentine tree, castor-oil plant, and all those which bear fruits with disagreeable taste or smell, or hard-shells such as welnuts and almonds. Sesame.

Jupiter: Trees bearing sweet fruit without hard skin such as peach, fig, apricot, pear and lote-fruit, companions Venus as to fruits. Roses, flowers, herbs sweet-smelling or tall, such plants as are light and whose seeds fly with the wind.

Mars: All bitter, pungent and thorny trees, their fruit with rough skin, pungent or very bitter such as bitter pomegranate, wild pear, bramble. Mustard, leeks, onions, garlic, rue, rocket, wild rue, radish, egg-plant.

Sun: All tall trees which have only fruit, and those whose fruit is used dry, such as date-palms, mulberries and vines. Dodder, sugar-cane, manna, tarangubin and shir-khisht.

Venus: All trees soft to touch, sweet-smelling, smooth to the eye like cypress and teak, apple and quince. Sweet and oily berries, fragrant and coloured herbs, spring flowers and has a share in cotton.

Meroury: Pungent and evil-smelling trees. Savoury herbs and garden stuff, cames and things growing in water.

Moon: All trees the stem of which is short such as the vine and the sweet pomegranate. Grass, reeds, canes, flax, hemp, trailing plants such as cucumber and melon.

مالهامزاليبات	مالهامزالابنجاز	No.
المسم	المعتمر فالمها والرنون المافاد الماف الذب والمناوع الذب والمناوع المناوع المناود والمود والمود	Ŝ,
الزهروالوددوط نبار الرح المالية ولمن ادنفاع وكالخفيف منالي الملوى طوللفاح	والمرحلوم الاخاص والمنوق موشراك والمناس والاخاص والمنوق موشراك المواحد المواحد والمناس والمنوق موشراك المواحد المواحد والمنوق موشراك والمنوق موشراك والمنوق موشراك والمنوق موشراك والمنوق موشراك والمنوق و	3
المزدل المتحاب والبصار النوام والمبداب وللجرير وللرمل والفل والباذنجان رو	كاليخ من حان متوكد المرتفان كاوفسر اوجر اوخرافد ارجمون برساب كالرماب الكامفروالية مرك للفاعي والعوج	Ġ.
المحتون وغضب السكر والمز والمرتجبين	طاعي شاهند المرهادم كنزوما بستمان كنها بالبد ولها المحل والمن صاد والكرم	
الحوب والادهان الحلاوه و المحلف المحاف المحلف المح	على في الله طبب الرب المعضد المنطرك المرود الساعة والمنفر المنظرة والمنفرة ل	الأو أ
الماحر مالبقول المالبة وكالمالبة وكالمالبة وكالمالبة والمالية	على وبرالا بعد دفسن	7,1%
المنب وللمنا والبردى للما والمضار والذب وعلا بقور على ما وكالعليم	معلى معبى الماق دوائد. معب ولد الرمان لطبوالعنب	IS.

414-417

414-417. Mālaha min al-achdiya wa'l-adwiya,ālāt al-ma'ash, ahwāl, quwah. Indications as to,414,foods and drugs; 415. household

RELATIONS TO FOODS & DRUGS, utensils; 416, states of HOUSEHOLD REQUIREMENTS, being; 417, powers.

STATES OF HEING, POWERS

Saturn: Drugs cold and dry in the fourth degree, especially those which are narcotic and poisonous. Dwellings. Sleep. Retentive power.

Jupiter: Those which are moderately hot and moist and are profitable and agreeable. Fruits. Clothing. Vital, growing nutritive faculties and the air in the heart.

Mars: Whatever is not poisonous but pungent and warm in the fourth degree. Drugs. Business. Passion.

Sun: Whatever is warm beyond the fourth degree and is salutary and in general use. Foods. Eating and drinking. Youthful vigour.

Venus: Moderately cold and moist foods, useful and pleasant to the taste. Savoury herbs. Coition. Sensuality.

Mercury: Foods which are dryer than cold and are agreeable but rarely useful. Grains. Speaking. Faculty of reflection.

Moon: Foods which are equally cold and moist, sometimes useful, sometimes detrimental, and are not in constant use. Beverages. Drinking water. Natural power.

		_		-
مالهامزالفؤي	الإجال	المعاض	مالمامز الاغذيب والدويد بالأمز الشكلي	N. S.
الفوه المست	المراجع	16.5 ×	الاعدى والددوير البائي الجانب المائي المعندية المرتبط المائي المورد المسالد و	÷.
التوة العضاية والعاذم والماميد والرسع الح فى العنواد	3	16/2:	الخ معندل خارنها و زملوبها وسَافِها زوهِ المنجد عبس به	
العن العضبيد	بجعز	Nec'r	المبدالي عضان	
العق إلجبوانبد	To.	787	الى تسرخارية اعزالورجه الابعدوجي فعدو كاكان بسنعلد	المراز ا
العن المهواب	×	المر	الخفرل برودهاورطومها ومتعافان محافجه لابن	
القود المحكريد	(A)	٤.	الى منعنى الى المنطقة	77,764
العو. الطبيد	<i>"</i>	الرين	الئ دديم المرابطية المرابع ال	[a

418

418. Dalālāt 'alá dhawāt al-arba'a. Indications as to quadrupeds.

INDICATIONS AS TO QUADRUPEDS &C

Saturn: Black animals and those living in holes in the ground; oxen, goats, horses, sheep; I ermine, sable, weasel, oat, mouse, jerbos, also, large black snakes, scorpions and other poisonous insects and fleas and beetles.

Jupiter: Man, domestic animals and those with cloven hoofs such as sheep, oxen, deer, those which are speckled and beautifully coloured, and edible, or speaking, or trained such as lions, chetahs and leopards.

Mars: Lion, leopard, wolf, wild pig, dog, destructive or mad wild beasts, venomous serpents.

Sun: Sheep, mountain goat, deer, Arab horse, lion, crocodile, nocturnal animals which remain concealed during the day.

Venus: All those wild animals which have white or yellow hoofs such as gazelle, wild ass, mountain goat also large fish.

Mercury: Ass, camel, domestic dog, fox, hare, jackal, ermine, nocturnal creatures, smell aquatic and terrestrial animals.

Moon: Camel, ox, sheep, elephant, giraffe, all beasts of burden obedient to man and domesticated.

Naram A, shuturmurgh P, but perhaps for naram sheep &c. and not for ostriches.

إلى الماع في الماء	
الموامات السود و مأماوي المحري الانص الموالي والمعر والواب والمعام والمستحاب والمتوز والدلق المستابن والفازوا كمرابع والحراث المدود والعقادب و حالجي شروالمراغب والمفاض	;
و الماروالهاء الاطلب ودوات الاطلاف والمخفاف والفال الماروالهاء الاطلب والماروك وماكان	沙
ر منحكام الحنوان أجيام الاسود والمنو الفهود مر الاسود والمؤرو الرباب ولمناريز والمحلاب وكرسبع جن او كلب وللمات والأفاعي	2
الغنم الاذاوي والإماس وللنول والعنواب مالاسود والماسع	- 1
والوحوش الح يُعلم اللب الوسمة في المهاد المعاد والاوعال الماحكة بي الماحكة بي الماحد والطباء الاعناد والاوعال	
ولماللنسان ولماللنسان والانوان والانوان والمرابعال والمحال والمحال والمعال والمحال والانوان وي	. 5
والعام ومعلى المربح الطله وطحبوان معبرامابي	,,,
وي البناه والفبلد والزرّافدو كالذرّ	7

419-422

419-422. Delelat 'ele al-tuyur, el-anasir wa'l-akhlat, ashya' fi badan el-insan, fi bath al-insan.

INDICATIONS AS TO BIRDS, ELEMENTS AND HUMOURS, ORGANS OF THE BODY, VITAL ORGANS:

Indications as to,419, birds and other fliers,420, the elements and humours, 421, organs of similar nature, 422, vital organs.

Saturn: Aquatic and nodturnal birds, ravens, swallows and flies. Earth, black bile and occasionally crude phlegm. Hair, nails, skin, feathers, wool, bones, marrow and horn. Spleen.

Jupiter: Birds with straight beaks, grain eating, not black, pigeon, francolin, peacock, domestic fowls, hoopoo and lark. Air and blood. Arteries, sparm and bonemarrow. Heart in partnership with the sun.

Mars: Flesh-eating birds with curved bills, nocturnal, water hens, bats, all red birds, wasps. The upper part of fire and yellow bile. Veins and the hinder regions. Liver together with Venus.

Sun: Eagle, ring-dove, turtle dove, cock and falcon. The lower part of fire. Brains, nerves, and the hypochondria, fat and everything of this kind. P. Stomach.

Venus: Ring-dove, wild pigeon, sparrow, bulbul, nightingale, locusts and inedible birds. ----. Flesh, fat and spinal marrow. Kidneys.

Mercury: Pigeon, starling, crickets, falcon, aquatic birds and nightingales. Black bile. Arteries. Gall-bladder.

Moon: Ducks, cremes, cerrion crows, herons, chicks, partridge. Phlegm. Skin and everything related thereto. Lungs.

	<u> </u>			
	مالماز الانبا و برزالانباز	والاعلاق	دكالهاعلالطبي	
الظلا	المعوالالمفا: وللدوالمو والعطاءوالمخ والعوول	الاص الدود دمرا <u>ما</u> المعالم	طه الماوطراللبرالالوبان والجملاطيف المسود والوبان	3,5
الفواد بنركم الممر	المثرابزالمابعند والمطفد وللح	الهوا مالامر	ططارمستوى للنقاد المحساس ماسود والكاوو والديول عالوجاج والمديد والغابر	الانزى
الجد مرضد الرحسي	عروف الدمر. الساحنة متحر البداب	اعال الدر مالمره العغرا	الديلا المعرفف المنافبرولد الوطوكل والطمطوب فحلطا بر أحرُ والرابيل	المؤورة
المجداه	الدماع والجعب وما بنام المناب	اسعل المار	العمنبان البنزاه والأبول والقادي	(to
الكلبتان	اللوالمنع والمني والمنب		الفؤلخف والورشان الدبسون والعصافيرو البلامل ليطراد والفل ومالانو كلم العطب	?
المرأن	المِحُرُوف المابض ه	المن المسيخ[اکلم والسود ای الصفور والزاه وطبود الماوالزرارن	
الربد	لبكاءكماتباتر	اللغ	البطوالحوالي الرخم ومالل جرب وكل على الدطح والعما فيرو الدراج	الم

423-426

423-426. Mālahā min al-ra's, al-hawass, a'dā' elbedan. Dalālāthā falā al-aspān. Indications as to, 423, parts of the head; 424,

INDICATIONS AS TO PARTS OF HEAD, SENSES, MEMBERS and other organs; 426 OF BODY, TIME OF LIFE period of life.

sense organs; 425, paired

Saturn: Right ear. Hearing. Buttocks, podex, bowels, penis, back, height, knees. Old age.

Jupiter: Left ear. Hearing and touch. Thighs and intestines, womb and throat. Middle age.

Mers: Right nostril. Smell and touch. Legs, pubesPl.gall-bladderA, kidney. Youth.

Sun: Right eye. Sight. Head and chest, sides, teeth, mouth. Full manhood.

Venus: Left nostril. Smell and inhaling organs. Womb, genitals, hands and fingers. Youth and adolescence.

Mercury: Tongue together with Venus. Taste. Organs of speech. Childhood.

Moon: Left eye. Vision and taste. Neck, breasts, lungs, stomach, spleen. Infancy to old age according to its various quarters.

l Zahar, zahra is P. for gall-bladder, as in PP.

دلالهاعلالتان	ملهامِزاعِمْ الدرن	(), i.e.	مالمها فالزائر	The second
المشبخوخه	الالمئان الدر والمسارب والمول والعب رده والطعر والرحسين	b	الادب المني المني	3
الكهولد	الفراز والامعادالرم والملق	3	الادن ایسی	N. S.
الشباب	المتأفان المنزان المنزان المنزان المنزلة المن	7 24	المغن الامن	
المجولبدووسط المجنس المجنس	الالمر والمدرّ وللجنب والفروالاشناب والفروالاشناب	المنار	العبن المني	M.
للمالم والجسلوغ	الرح والمداكبروللات الماضعد والبراز واللمانع	الديروالات الإعتبان	المنخاز الإيسر	الغر
المبي	اللسان والاث المنظن	الذوق	الليان بنوعيد القرن	3,5
الطعوليد ومد على الموالة واول المنهز والمساب عوال والكرولخي ومرك علوالله والكرولخي ومرك علوالله	العُنْ والراب والرجم والمعرم والبطجال	المعاربة	العِ بن السرك	العربر

427-428

427-428. Malaha min al-angab, delalat Tala'lbild wa'l-suwar. Indications as to, 427, relations and connections, 428 RELATIONS AND CONNECTIONS figure and face.

RELATIONS AND CONNECTIONS figure and face.
FIGURE AND FACE

Saturn: Fathers, grandfathers, older brothers and slaves. Ugly, tall, wizened, sour face, large head, eyebrows joined, small eyes, wide mouth, thick lips, downcast look, much black hair, short neck, coarse hand, short fingers, awkward figure, legs crocked, big feet.

Jupiter: Children and grandchildren. Fine figure, round face, thick prominent nose, large eyes, frank look, small beard, abundant ourly hair reddish.

Mars: Brothers of middle ago. Tall, large head, small eyes and ears, and fine forehead, sharp grey eyes, good nose, thin lips, lank hair, reddish, long fingers, long steps.

Sun: Fathers and brothers, slaves. Large head, complexion white inclining to yellow, long hair, yellow in the white of the eye, stammers, large paunch with folds.

Venus: Wives, mothers, sisters, uterine kindred, delicate child. Fine round face, reddish-white complexion, double chin, fat cheeks, not too fat, fine eyes, the black larger than the white; small teeth, handsome neck, medium tall, short fingers, thick calves.

Mercury: Younger brothers. Fine figure, complexion brown with a greenish tinge, handsome, narrow forehead, thick ears, good nose, eyebrows joined, wide mouth, small teeth, thin beard, fine long hair, well-shaped long feet.

Moon: Mothers, maternal aunts, elder sisters, nurses. Clear white complexion, gait and figure erect, round face, long beard, eyebrows joined, teeth separate crocked at the points, good hair with locks.

	دَلالمَ إَعِلَ لَم السُورُ	مالميا مركانخاز مالانخاب	N. S.
الع إضر إل	مبع المنطرطول عنو وعبوس علم المام الرحف الحبيرة اسع عليط السفين ما والبطر فيرالمنع البود منع عالمون الإلادر ا مع الكذيف برالاصابع ملوى الما فير عطم لعد مبر اسع لكر	الإباد الإجراد والاخوه والاحتابر والعيسل	3~
	حنزلج كالم الوجدعلظ الارب نالة الوجنب عظيم المحنون كالمهولة خفيف الليم عربنها حعدلانعرا	الاولاد دادلاد الاولاد	12.55
	طوط الفاحد على المامد صغير العنيز والدي فرو للا جعد المطادة	الانتخو. الاوشلا	**
	عطم الهامد ممزابع مسرف المتعرب المتعرب مباخر عبيبه من الع الصوف دحب لبلوف دو عجسز	المناواللغن ارموسًا 12 والموالي	
7	مبيع مصلم ابنوم ترب من سمز كمد الملارح والعنبر سواد عااوفر من ابنها صعر الاسان طع المنق صعر الاسابه عليط السافين	المناولات والامعالات ماء الاولاد والولاد للوي	
	حسرالفامدادم فبخض ملوض الجهد علط الانبريس ا افرا بهنف العصور الاسلام في الليريس الشع د بعد حسل الملاطر طرم العربيب	الاخوه ا الخساغر	4
	والمرحيل واللوز على المرحور الوجه المعبد	النهائ ولكا والمحواب والدامات	العونو

429

429. Mālahā min al-sifāt. Indication as to disposition and manners.

DISPOSITION AND MANNERS

Saturn: Fearful, timid, anxious, suspicious, miserly, a malevolent plotter, sullen and proud, melancholy, truthtelling, grave, trusty, unwilling to believe good of anyone, engrossed in his own affairs and consequently indicates discord, and either ignorance or intelligence, but the ignorance is concealed.

Jupiter: Good disposition, inspiring, intelligent, petient, high-minded, devout, chaste, administering justice, truth-telling, learned, generous, noble, cautious in friend-ship, egoistic, friend of good government, eager for education, an honourable trusty and responsible custodian, religious.

Hars: Confused opinions, ignorant, rash, evil conduct, licentious, bold, quarrelsome, unsteady, untrustworthy, violent, shameless, unchaste but quickly repentant, a deceiver, cheerful, bright, friendly and pleasant-faced.

Sun: Intelligent and knowledgeful, patient, chaste, but sensual, eager for knowledge, power and victory, seeking a good name for helping others, friendly, hottempered but quickly recovering repose.

Venus: Good disposition, handsome face, good-natured inclined to love and sensuality, friendliness, generosity, tenderness to children and friends, pride, joy, patience.

Mercury: Sharp intelligence and understanding, affability, gentleness, open countenance, elegance, far-sightedness, changeable, deeply interested in business, eager for pleasure, keeps secrets, seeking friendship of people, longing for power, reputation and approval, preserves true friends and withdraws from bad ones, keeps away from trickery, strife, malevolence, bad-heartedness and discord.

Moon: Simple, adaptable, a king among kings, a servent emong servents, good-hearted, forgetful, loquacious, timid, reveals secrets, a lover of elegance; respected by people, cheerful, a lover of women, too anxious, not intellectually strong much thought and talk.

¹ pure in heart. 2 nast. 3 duplicated. 4 and amusement. 5 about them.

مالم المزالاف لاف	
عاب وع جبار محارض و معادر معنور معادر المور معادر المور معنور معنور على والمعنى ولا عبد المولاجد ولا بعض والماعض مماريق مصر على في والماء والماء الماء والماء والم	3
من للن ملمالجولم عطم الميورع من الراب صادق المخرى النسات صادف الوي على المناحز	17.25
اصطراب الراى وقلدالبات وللمؤق الجها والمرو والحف و والمؤلم والمالم والمالم والمالم والمالم والمالم والمناوعة والمناوعة والموادع المورع المورع والمناطق والمناطق والمناطق والمناطق والمناطق والمناطق والمناطق والمناطق والمناطق والمنائدة وال	
المعقل المغرف والمها والزهو الاستطالة والعظم والمطاف والجرس على المعتبية والمعتبية وحدالت المئز وعالم الماس والأنفراد للمراف المعتبية وحدالم عدد عد المعتبية والمعتبية والمعتبية والمعتبية والمستحدال عدد المعتبية والمستحدال المستحدال المستحدا	12.
حَرْبِ الْمُوالِمُ وَالْمُعَادِّ الْمُعَا وَالْمُعَبِّ وَالْمُخَاوَالْمُوا وَإِنْفَا وَإِنْفَا وَمُ وَ وَالْمُخ والعي والفووق البرز وضعف الفر مالصل فالعرج والمخراوالعدل والماء والمهرو الماس والطانب والم حاليد وجب الأولاد وجمهو الماس	الوز.
مراه العطف و الموالسك والوقار والأفر والصبر والحرف و رق الغور و الوقار والأفرال المراب و الم	3.43.
مرائد العلى واطباع مطباع الماس حريق ملا مع الملول عبر فرم وعلامع العبد المسلم المعلق الماس عدد وي العبد طب المفتر كالموم المستر المناح عام وي العبد عبر كوي المتنا عبر كوم الدب عبر كوم الاسراد المعتر همذر والمتنا كم السم والموس	الرا

430

430. Malaha min al-af'al wa'l-ghara'iz wa'lakhlaq. Indications as to conditions of life and activities.

ACTIVITIES, INSTINCTS
AND MORALS

Saturn: Exile and poverty, or wealth acquired by his own trickery or that of others, failure in business, vehemence, confusion, seeking solitariness, enslaving people by violence or treachery, fraud, weeping and wailing and lamentation.

Jupiter: Friendliness, a peacemaker, charitable, devoted to religion and good works, responsible, uxorious, laughing, eloquent, eager for wealth, in addition to affability some levity and recklessness.

Mars: Marriage, travelling, litigation, business going to ruin, false testimony, lustful, a bad companion, solitary, spiteful and tricky.

Sun: Longing for power and government, hankering after wealth and management of worldly affairs, and imposing will on the ignorant, reproving evil-doers, harsh with opponents. If sun is in exaltation, the position is favourable to kings, if in fall to those in rebellion.

Venus: Lazy, laughing, jesting, dancing, fond of wine, chess, draughts, cheating, takes pleasure in every thing, not quarrelsome, a sodomite or given to excessive venery, well-spoken, fond of ornaments, perfume, song, gold, silver, fine clothes.

Mercury: Teaching menners, theology, revelation and logic, eloquent, fine voice, good memory for stories, ruining prospects by too great anxiety and misfortunes, fearful of enemies, frivolous, eager to buy slaves and girls, busybody, calumnious, thieving, lying and falsifying.

Moon: Lying, calumniation, over-anxious for health and comfort, generous, in distributing food, too uxorious, levity in appropriate places, excellent spirits.

l little conjugal happiness, too much marriage.

مالهام اللانعال فالغرابر والاخلاف	%
العرم البعين والعنفر المسالة والعرق مع الميال العشر والنعاو الشاالم والعرائف وعد واشا والعسوله واستبعد و الماس بالنظيم والاستا	3
السي واستعلى العنول لم والمراد والبير معرف المام واطهار المرور والم والمارا لمرور والمارا لمرور والمارا لمروالة والمارا لمروالة والمارا والمروالة والمعلى المروالة والمارالة والمعلى المروالة والمعلى المروالة والمارات وال	11.35
ودرابه الله إن شاه الرعب في المال المستعلات والعرور المذي المن المنادة من المنورة المنادة المنورة المنادة المن	
المهر والحرط الأما والقدار العضب وإمان لهنزوالا الموصلة حدوسوا كماري المرح على المارة المارة المرح على المراح على المراح المراح المراح على المراح المر	3
في في المنظم المالك واذا كات في طبوعها فعلى والمروال عبد المالك في المستمراة المالك في المستمراة الموضوعة والمرد وكروالا المناب والعند ح والمرد وكروالا المكن والعند ح والخلاعد و حشر المنظور المنطور	7.1
وحد الرئيروالعطرو حالاهد والمضد والمتنوع المنطقة المعلم والمنطقة والمتنوع المنطقة الم	33
علاشهامان السعاد والغرورة المناب الم	3
الطحام مثله المنساح عكم المناعظ على المنطب المالية المناسب المالية المناسب المالية المناسبة ا	1

431-432

amrad, we tabout al-nas. Indications as to,431, diseases, 432, classes of ALD CLASSES

Saturn: Sickness, affliction, powerty, death, disease of internal organs, gout. Owners of estates, kings' intendants, religious of various sects, devotees, wicked people, bores, the overworked, eunuchs, thieves, the moribund, magicians, demons, ghouls, and those who revile them.

Jupiter: Sickness, fatigue, fever, death in childbed, Caesarean section. Hings, vazirs, nobles, magnates, lawyers, merchants, the rich and their sycophants.

Mars: Fever. Leaders, cavalry, troops, opponents, disjutants in assembly.

Sun: ---- Kings, nobles, chiefs, generals, officials, magistrates, physicians, societies.

Venus: ----. Nobles, plutocrats, queens, courtexans, adulterers and their children.

Mercury: ----. Merchants, bankers, councillors, tax-collectors. slaves and wrestlers.

Moon: Diseases of many kinds. Kings, nobles, noble matrons? celebrated, and wealthy - aghnya' - citizens.

l muta assifun, but here maldudun interesting people. 2 1. hara ir; hawamil, the proper plural is hamalah pregnant women.

دلالهاعلطفانالات	مانئة البهامز المطاوالأملض	Y'gy
ادماب المنباع دفها دمد الملول وشال الملاف العشقه المعدد العدد المدود و وللمنباز والمعوم و المناطق المناطق و المعدد و المناطق	المرص والوالسنة والموت والعلل المؤلف الملفيدة علوالمغرث	£
اللوك والوزرا واللائراف والعنطا والعنفا والنجاز والاغنبا ومزيح لوكنز علبدالشنبا	الاسفاء والعان والمحي وملعه الحل الطلوب وللم بالسوط وقطع المرحمة	? ***
الفوادوالاستاوره والجندد والمفاملون والمفاملون وساق للجاعد	الحرائ	Ĉ.
المدل الغطاو الروسا والفنواد والعجاب الرابر		المحزب
الاشتراف والاعتباولسا الملوك والزواب والراب المواولاد مسمر		ونون
المن زوالمناب والعاب الدواوبر		71
الملول والاغراف والجوابس والمشتربعنه وبالمل والاعنب الملكودون	و پُنے العلل و	Part .

433-434

435-434. Dalálatha "alá al-adyan: suwarha allati tasawwaratha. Indications as to, 435,

religions, 434, pictorial indications as to religions representations of the pictures of planets.

Saturn: Jews and those who dress in black. Old man seated on a wolf, in his right hand the head of a man end in the left a man's hand; or according to another picture, mounted on a bright bay horse, on his head a helmet, in the left hand a shield and in the right a sword.

Jupiter: Christians and those dressed in white. A young men with a drawn sword in the right hand and a bow and a rosary in the left, on horse-back; another picture: man on a throne, clad in variously coloured robes, a rosary in the left hand.

Mars: Idolaters, wine-bibbers, dressed in red. Young man seated on two lions, in the right hand a drawn sword in the left a battle-axe; another picture: mounted on a bay horse, helmet on head, in the left hand a spear adorned with red roses, pennon flagh, in the right hand head of a man, clad in red.

Sun: Wearing a crown; Magians, Mithraists. A man seated on something like a shield on wheels drawn by four oxen, in his right a staff on which he rests, in his left a mace gurz, beads kharaz; another picture: man seated, face like a circle, holding reins of four horses.

(jurz

Venus: Islam. Woman on a camel holding a lute which she is playing; another picture: woman seated her hair unloosened the locks in her left hand, in the right a mirror in which she keeps looking, dressed in yellowish green, with a necklace, bells, bracelets and anklets.

Mercury: Disputants in all sects. Youth seated on a peacock, in his right hand a serpent and in the left a tablet which he keeps reading; another picture: man seated on a throne, in his hand a book which he is reading, crowned, yellow and green robe.

Moon: Adherents of the prevailing religion. Man with javelin in right hand, in his left thirty, you would think there were three! hundred, on his head a crown, seated in a chariot drawn by four horses.

1 'sisad P. 3000

		==
صودها الجنسودها	دلانها عل الأدبان	1/2/2
سع براهم رام المان المرام المان المرام المر	المهود ته مشويد الماس	Ĭ,
ساسهماه سف مسوب وميمه هي صعوه والمستردور ودروه الموى ولي علي معلم عليد ساب مخلط م للإلوان ومسراه جرد	المفرابد وبين المساب	W. 25.
شاب را حب اسلام مساه مبعد مسلول ومست اه طور را وصوره اخری داجب مرساسه علی الارست و نده در رایخ ا علیج و قد حمرا و مین اه رامراف اوسیام خسو	عاره العنا رشوب الحر ويحد المياب	***
وطول المن عمر منوعي علمه المنه المردواك علم علم المردواك المردواك المردواك المردواك المردواك المردواك المردواك المردوال المركون والمرادوات المردوات المردوا	المتوح	Kr.
امراه دا كرحاد المعردوابه المسراه ادمناهامراه مطر المراه المسمرة المنعردوابه المسراه المراه المراع المراه المراع المراه ا	נעלגאין	
المار والمسطوس ميناه جد وجراه الح بعنواه ومورد التول وحل المراه المراح على المراح على المراح على المراح على المراح وعلى المراح	منظره الفقها ونجرك بريسة	***
امارهد رببناه جه وبسراه مبر حام حسب المام وعلى المدواوات	الدي برزڪل عالب	* 18

435

435. Dalālathā "alá al-sinā"āt. Indications as to trades, professions, etc.

Saturn: Building, paymaster, farming, reclaiming land and distribution of water, (fraudulent transactions,) apportioning money and heritages, grave-digging; selling things made of iron, lead, bone, hair; copper, black slaves; knowledge used for bad purposes, such acts of the government as lead to evil oppression, wrath, captivity, torture.

Jupiter: Noble actions, good government, religion, doing good; interpretation of dreams; goldamiths' work, banking; selling old gold and silver, white clothes, grapes and sugar-cane

Mars: Law-making, selling and making armour, blacksmiths craft, grooms, shepherds, butchers, veterinary surgeons, surgeons, circumcisers, sellers of hounds, chestahs, boars, wolves, copper, sickles, beer, glass, boxes, wooden cups, brigandage, contention, housebreaking, highwaymen, grave-robbers and prison, torture, execution.

Sun: Receiving, giving and selling gold-brocades.

Venus: Works of beauty and magnificence, fond of bazaars, commerce, measuring by weight, length and bulk; dealing in pictures and colours, goldsmiths work, tailoring, manufacturing perfumes, dealing in pearls, gold and silver ornaments, musk, white and green clothes, maker of crowns and diadems, accompanying singing, composing songs, playing the lute, feasts, gemes and gaming.

Mercury: Merchants, calculators and surveyors, astrologers, necromancers and fortune-tellers, geometrician, philosopher, disputation, poetry, eloquence, manual dexterity and anxiety for perfection in everything, selling slaves, hides, books, coins; profession of barber, manufacture of combs.

Moon: Engaged in business matters, missions, agencies, accounting; strenuous in religion and divine law, skill in all branches; practice of medicine, geometry, the higher sciences, measuring land and water; growing and cutting hair; selling food, silver rings and virgins, also indicates captivity, and prison for the deceptions of wizards.

كالهاعاليات	3.3
لبقعات والعناد عدم عان الإصبر والما و و و و و الطربات المربا و المربات الدياء و و و و و و المربا و المربا و ال الدياء و نفر فر الأشاو الموارث و حفر المهور و مع ما بغراج المالات و المربا العالم و المربال المربات و المربال المون و المربال و المربا	
الإعلالطيف والولامات المتعدوري والمروعان الروما والعامم مع الفضد والدهب المعدوري ولانسر والمار والاغاب مع الفضد وتنسب المنحد	· ; ;
لامراكشرط وبع الاسطور علها وصناعد للإبد وسباسر الأواب و آ) ذي الطهاء البيطي ومزاوات كليات وخار العبدان الله اللاب و ح لفرد ولكارز والرباب والعلم والماجل الرجاح والصبادر والملصس لفود والمعار والوباب وتعطع الطب بن ارقاب عان ذين المعد وسليالون	
الندوالاعطاوبع البياج	الغير ا
الماعدوللم المساعدة المسافرة المرافرة والتصاور والاصلى المساعدة ال	16
نا إن المامعان والمسادكات والمعاممان المساحدول والنح والمام والمسادر المام والمسادر والمام والمسادر والمام والمسادر والمرابع المرابع والمرابع والمرا	, 7/
سالات والوك الموالحات المفقد ع الدن المعدى عن المنت المعنى المعنى المعنى المعنى المعنى المعنى المعنى المعنى المنت	in

434-439

436-437. Awaitha min quadam we min their Suntha. The orbs and years of the plenets.

ORBS AND YEARS OF PLANETS

V				_		
Ort		least	meen.	Years great	greatest	
Saturn Jupiter Mars Sun Yenus Mercury Moon	90 90 80 150 70 70	30 12 15 19 8 20 25	45 45 40 39 45 48 39	57 79 66 180 82 76 108	265 427 284 1461 (sothias 1151 461 520	eyele)

438-439. Firderat we mudden al-sheraken. Periods of life (firderia) controlled by the planets as chronocrators, 438, and the times of association, 439, FIRDERIA AND THEIR (sevenths of the periods) of the other ASSOCIATION TIMES planets with the general chronocentors, 255.

Chronocrators
Indiurnal Innocturnal Times of association

Periods	nativities	netivities	in last six sevenths
1	Sun 10 years	Noon 9 years	In sun's period ly.5m.4d.7h. In moon's period ly.5m.12d.2h.
2	9 years	ll years	In Venus' period ly.lm.2ld.5h. In Saturn's period ly.6m.356.17h.
5	Mercury 13 years	12 years	In Mercury's period ly.10m.8d.7h. In Jupiter's period ly.8m.17d.7h.
4	Moon 9 years.	7 years	In Moon's period ly.Sm.124.21h. In Mars' period ly.10h.
5	Saturn 11 years	10 years	In Saturn's period ly.6m.25d.17h. In Sun's period ly.5m.4d.7h.
6	Jupiter 12 years		In Jupiter's period ly.8m.17d.3h. In Venus' period ly.1m.21d.5h.
7			In Mercury's period ly.10m.84.17h.
	ragon's her 5 years bether day	2 years	The Dragon's Head and Tail have no association times with the planets

I The orb of a planet is the distance within which its influence (amr) can affect another when applying to conjunction or aspect. The figures are as in Porphyrius p. 204, but vary

in modern books.

Cf. 394 and 522. The great years are the sums of the Explien Ptolemaic terms of each planet 453; the least of h 4 and) have been related to their periods of revolution, of @ to the Metonic cycle, of ? to its orb, while those of 6 and 6 and the greatest years remain unexplained. In the case of 6 and 3, the mean is least + 1 great but of. Vat. Val. p. 157 and BL.400

where © and) treated like other planets.

5 Vettius Valens p. 164 has another explanation for the great years (vikius evn) of the planets:
1 4 of @ great years + 2 great) = 57 (note 572)

2 of @ great years + least = 79

or f of) " + least = 79

or f of) " " + least = 79

of of) " " + least of 4 = 66

of) " " + least of h = 84 (the sum of the terms = 82)

of h " " + least of G = 76

4 Å span of 75 years is thus provided for.

فردانها	4	Ĭ.	5:	3	سبو سبو	12		N.
من دارات م	1 16/ L		۳۵	チート	3 3-1	7 18	7	3
وي داران الحالي الما الما الما الما الما الما الما ا	نجل ا	الزغزع	١٢	8.8	۷ı	FYV	2	がごろ
بوددو بهاد اساح در ا	الشمري	عطارد بم	18	4-1	4 4	114	7	3.3.
عرداد المراح الالال	النخر	الغزط	19	29	110	Iqey	٨	
فرداد المراددر	1	نطا	1	4-8	11	8 14 1 1 8 1	ور	الزوري
فاحار المراكا على	14.57	المشريع	7.	41	٧٧	الا عو	ڒ	33.5
يوردارعطالد لمع	فإذخ	13.7	۲8	-3-6	101	870		133

440. ME buyut al-kawakib. We now proceed to discuss the relation of the planets to the signs.

THE PLANETS

The zodiac belt is divided into two halves, the first extending from the DOMICILES OF beginning of Leo to the end of Capri-

corn, and this half is given to the sun whose domicile is the first sign, viz. Leo. other half is given to the moon; It extends from the beginning of Aquarius to the end of Cancer in which sign its domicile is. As the other planets have two methods of movement retrograde and direct, so also they have each two domiciles one on the sun side and one on the moon side, at equal distances from the in-Beginning with Mercury terval between Leo and Cancer. the nearest planet, Virgo on the sun side and Gemini on the moon side are assigned to it as domiciles, then Libra and Taurus to Venus, Scorpius and Aries to Mars,

Sr 23 m H Vehus В Y M Supator 16

Sagittarius and Piscos to Jupiter and Capri-COLD and Aquarius to Saturn as D in the annexed figure.

C ABC - The Sun half. ADC - The Moon half.

منعل المنعل المحات الحواجب فالمروج والمطول الولمافهاع مابيون الحوجب مفرالقل بسنزلع ماراول الاسدالي وللجري وبجي للمنوب فالماء ومرج الاسد والمنسالا خرافن ومومزاهل الحالية والمسرطان والمناجد بالمناجد وموتب المسرطاس والألهابر المعواجب فيجركها دجوبا وأشتعامد جولك والجديم استري المنتريب فيصف الفرغ جبى بنهاوامدى بلكوجب الذكالبجد بزلهم وعبر يعوم عجا يدعب لماالت بلدد المند بكرف بخالزب تمثلو لساولاڪو اڄ المفللباعلى الموان للسود بتحالفها والعسقرب مابلحا

441-442.

domiciles is always more congenial to the planets and it is said that there they are more joyful

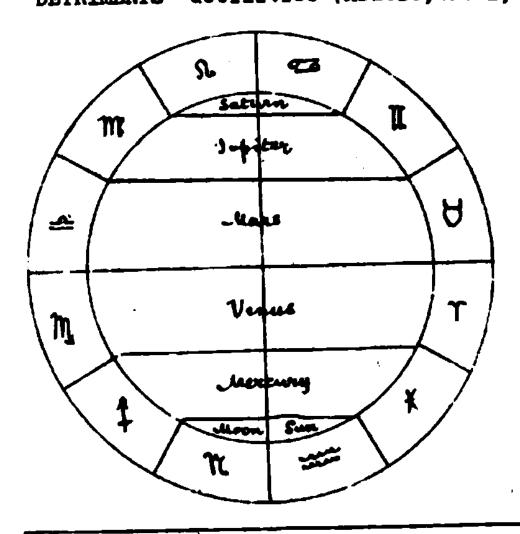
DOMICILES on account of temperament, formation, and PREFERRED sex. The sun and moon, however, as they are not confined to one domicile find condit-

ions in all. But of those which have two, Mercury prefers Virgo to Gemini, Venus Taurus, Mars Aries, Jupiter

Sagittarius, Saturn Aquarius.

The opinion of the Hindus agrees in some respects and differs in others; they say that Mars finds Aries more congenial, the moon Taurus, the sun Leo, Mercury Virgo, Venus Libra, Jupiter Sagittarius, and Saturn Aquarius. They call such situations 'mulatrikuna' and assert that a planet occupying one of these has more influence than in its own domicile.

442. Ma al-wabal. The signs opposite to the domiciles of the planets are said to be their detriments or DETRIMENTS debilities (Arabic, Wabal, Persian, bityarah).



The Hindus
while recognizing the
domiciles do
not know this
expression.
The detriments
are shown in
the accompanying figure.

l India II.225.

عوي في المراب الموسيداد فوله حيالاند بفرح نبدبسب موافق والطباع والدسكودية والانونبد والماللم والغز فلبر لهما عبريت واجربواف الطبع ، الما ماجها فالتنبلداوفو ليطارد مر للوزاء والنور للزهر و والحللزنع والفورلل وولالولرط و والهناء وعذارا يمنارب فيوضح فالمنه اخره مواللا دوالعسر والاسدالة من والمتبلد لعطاد دوالموان للفي والعوس للنفرى والدلو المطله فؤمن أروبتمي مولدي زويجو للحوكب فرشهاد دابرعل مَالُومَالُ عَلَيْحَ بِعَابِل بت الكوكب فهو المعي

للبوت مئون نعب و و الما المنوره الدالم المنوره المنوره المنابع النام و منطق عدده المنوره

443-444

445. Mā ashrāf al-Kawakib wa hubūthā. There are certain signs which are described as places of exaltation (sharaf) of the planets, like the thrones of kings and other high EXALTATION AND positions. In such signs the exalta-FALL OF PLANETS tion is regarded as specially related to a certain degree, but there are many differences of opinion in this natter, some saying that it extends to some degrees in front of or behind the degree in question, while others hold that it extends from the first point of the sign to that degree, and again others that it is present in the whole sign without any special degree. Below are the signs and degrees according to the Persians and Greeks.

> 21° of Libra Saturn ... 150 of Cancer Jupiter ... 280 of Capricorn Mars 190 of Aries Sun 270 of Pisces Yenus 150 of Virgo ... 30 of Taurus Moon 30 of Gemini Dragon's Head ... 30 of Sagittarius Dragon's Tail

The opposite signs and degrees are regarded as places of dejection for the planets, when in them, they are said to be in their 'fall' (hubit), and are therein confined and their condition deteriorated.

ence of opinion as to the signs of exaltation, but the Hindus differ as to the degrees in HINDUS DIFFER certain cases. They are agreed that AS TO DEGREES the exaltation of the sun lies in 10° of Aries, of Jupiter in 5° of Cancer, of Saturn 20° of Libra, the others as above, except

ما الشرك المصادعة المعادر المن الموجب المرف المعرف المرف المعرف ا

			•	
السوال	المريخ	المشري	دجل م	راجا
1 2	الدی کے		1, 199	الكواجب
יבע עם	الري	المطال بع	المراب ك	الزرافيا
	,			
ا الراس		عطايد	الزهر:	2 2 2 11
	المحر	٠٠٠	الوحر ـ .	الكواحب
الجوزا	النور 🕶	السنبله مه	الحدد معز	الشرافها
	entra in territorio in territorio della distribuio di la constanti di la cons			
العوس ج			i	

وه وطالعواجب البروج المي النظر الما المورات المدعدة ووبها بمل المدود وبها بمل المدود وبها بمل المدود والمرافع الما في المرافع والمرافع الما في المرافع والمرافع والمر

444-446

with regard to the Dragon's Head and Tail which are not mentioned by them in this connection as is quite proper.

1ty, 379, has a lord by day and another by night, also a third which shares this responsibilLORDS OF HIS ity both by day and night. Thus the TRIPLICITIES fiery triplicity has as lord the sun by day, and Jupiter by night, while Saturn is a partner both by day and night. The earthly triplicity has Venus by day, the moon by night, "ars being in this case the partner. The airy triplicity has Saturn by day, Mercury by night and Jupiter as partner, while the watery triplicity has Venus by day, Mars by night and the moon as partner.

				Their Lords						
T	he Tr	plici	ties	By 1	Day	By N	lght.			
at Fiery	Y	1 A	.₹	9	7	24	<u> </u>			
2nd Earthy	Ø	YYK	71	?			1-8-			
3rd Airy	1	2	===	1 1	18	``	1-3			
4th Watery	b	m,	X	<u>ll 2.</u>		5				

However Hashwiyite astrologers associate all three planets at the same time with each triplicity, and merely make the following distinction between day and night, e.g. the lords of the fiery triplicity are the Sun, Jupiter and Saturn by day, and Jupiter, the Sun and Saturn by night and the rest on this analogy. They do not desert their position (l.yar una) on consideration, but have filled their books with decrees based thereon, and propositions deduced from these (l.tafri*)

446. Munăzarah al-kawakih fi al-buruj kaif hiya. Whenever two planets are in signs which are in aspect to

l Al-Biruni had a poor opinion of the Hashwiyites - V. Chron.p.90, and 527 and 529. As to their doctrine, a creed of the common people as compared with the more asistocratic and intellectual Mutazilites, and the origin of the name v.Van Vloten - Hashwiya et Nabita. Inter.M. Congr.1897 and Goldziher - Livre de Ibn Toumert.p.65. Alger 1903. Diet.sci.terms p. 396.

2 The first page of FL has a table showing this arrangement.

مزالمزان أبوا فقون فبابغ وللإنجعلهن للواروالع نسد دكراً وهرالسوار اذمات المنك انت المساق دب للك النائدة الفارية بالهادلانس والليا المسترى وشربيستهمالبلا ونهاد أذجل وذب المنكذ الانتهر المهاد الرخي اللبل العَن والشُّوكِ للله وسَادًا المَرَة ودُب لللَّه الهوأبِم نَجُك اللَّه الموابِم نَجُك اللَّه المُعارد والسُنرَكِ المُسْدِي وُدَّب المُلَنْد المأبِد بالهادُ الزَّهِ واللِّه المرَّح والمرَّكِ والمرَّكِ الفز فاما جنبو يوالجين بحبلون للبركلها أدبابا للسلة في قف واجدوبني وأب النزعب بالهاد ففط ويجع لمون أدباب الملد المعادير بالمهاد الممرولل ترى الليل المت زي التروز ولي سابرها على والقياس والا بعود و ف والمت بريق و الحتيم مزالاج كام علما والقريع مناطئ الكواكب فالمروج لبف الدر الكوعبان لذاكا في رجز مناطم فاطرا بينا فلنكاما في رج واجتمرا عُمْعِبْ وَانْكُمَّا فِي دَسِبْرِوا مِنْ سُمَّا مُقْتَدُسِ وَانْ وَالْحِرْمَا فِي الْسِ الأخركالمنافر مندبر مولاجهالم وللغابس وانعاله م وبالعالاء كالمساهر منعج وانكان أبعما باللغوك الما مناظر منطب والصالح وما في العرصال المناظري من المديات المديدة المناطري من المديدة المناطري ال

446-447

ASPECTS OF PLANETS each other 375, they also are said to be in aspect; if they are in the same sign they are described as conjunct mujtam'in, while if they are at the same degree the conjunction is said to be partile (muqtarin). If one of them is in a sign third from the other, they are in sextile aspect to the right or left, if in a fourth sign, to be in quartile, if in a fifth in trine, and if in the seventh, opposite. Should their degrees be equal they are styled muttasilin for then between these aspects it is possible to construct either a regular hexagon, or a square or a triangle in the zodiac, or to divide it into two - 575.

ship or enmity between the planets is, according to us,
based on what we have said as to
FRIENDSHIP AND their domiciles, but astrologers
ENMITY OF PLANETS have different theories on this
matter. There are those who base
them on the temperament and nature of the planets themselves, Saturn and Jupiter being regarded as inimical
because the one is dark, maleficent and extremely distant, while the other is shining, beneficent and only
moderately distant. There are others who base them on

tant, while the other is shining, beneficent and only moderately distant. There are others who base them on their elementary qualities, those that are fiery being inimical to the watery, and the airy to the earthy, while there are still others who found them on the relative situations of their domiciles and exaltations, if the aspect of these is inimical then their lords are also inimical: further any planet whose domicile is twelfth from the house occupied by another planet is inimical to the latter. When the basis of enmity is arrived at in any of the ways we have enumerated, then that for friendship and indifference becomes obvious.

سُنَّاه كالاسلاع والمالل عُربع كذ لكله مُلْكُ مثلًا والملائع من المالغ من ال كبغ صدآفدالكولجب وعذلوندا لفالوذ خاف ما منالا سالم مام البوت واربابها والمجوزي وأل بزموب عِيْ مذاعب منهم نجوالع بالعبان بناح جبن يجمع المساد في الأرب حزجك المتنب فان ليرها مظلم في والاخرى مي معد معدل ومنم من عبر النسادة المصيغبن معاليج الناذي عروالمأى وللماي عروالارض ومنم مزع جلدمز لعصاع ببوتعه أوامشز افها فاذا تعادت بالمطه رتعاد اأجابها وبجعلهاج المبنج المعرب عدما لا واعتباد المسكرافد على احداب اصلاب داده والذي استعلدلبولف المرافلسفي مابشيد دكك وهونه ضيره أالمول

447

The views of Abu 'l-Qasim, the philosopher, based on the foregoing considerations are shown in the columns of the subjoined table.

Planets	mutually hurtful with	injur- lous to	offering friendship to	asking friendship froml
Saturn Jupiter Mara Sun Venus Mercury	Sun and Moon Mars Mercury Jupiter Venus Saturn Mars Mercury Jupiter Venus	Jupiter Mercury Moon Venus Venus	Venus Sun Saturn neither offers nor asks friend	Venus Moon Baturn Mars Jupiter
Moon	Saturn	Mars	ship Jupiter	Venus

The astrologers of our day however, lay little stress on the friendship or enmity of the planets in the matter of judicial astrology. The Hindus on the other hand regard them as equally important or more so than the domiciles and exaltations, we have accordingly set down their opinions in the accompanying table.

Planets	Friends	Enemies	Indifferent
0	489	ት የ	
D	စ	- none	h45q
8	40)	ğ	<u>ላ</u> ዩ
ğ	စ္	>	ካ _ኤ δ
4	∂⊙>	δÅ	ኢ
9	ηŞ	ò'n	4 3°3
ի 2	φģ	80)	4

l read istivanah.

2 % in MS.

3 h in MS.

			"	
الاعائدى	الإعاند للن	الاسرادمن	المناك	المنا
بالأغشسن	المرتخ	بالمشتوي	المثنالغز	دمر
بالقسد	الزغن	ببطادد	المرخ بعادر	いがい
بزُحـل	المنز	بالفسنز	المشترى للخن	للريظ
للرمخ		بالرخسن	زمل	12. N
المشعي	انگل		المرخ ونحطارد	الاحرن
معراست وجدد نلامستعی	بعبرجلند ملا بعاب	بالزمسن	المستمك لأخن	シグラ
المافض	المشعك	بالمسرعج	زچل	العرش
ياحزالها فهاعليه	كواكب علم ا ما از المستملا	مروالعراق-1	انالعطاالمتراو	واستجال
في اللوال اذكرت	ها بادرالسيمار	راوامت معاهوا ما مادو ماند، مط	رهاعطهه حا احمارا دمما	المنوفعوهاء
		- 0900	11:6,1	وكذلكيب لز
المؤشطون	اعراؤها	اصرفادها	į	الكواكب
علنزد	دخل الرهش	المشترى المزاع المجرّ		المناه
دخل المبتدى المرمخ المضن	لانعادبر ڪوڪب	المؤرد عطادد		1/20
وحر الرهن	عُلمارِد	المضمى المثنى الغر		المزنز
دخللستزالم	الفيز	المشر		デアイド
رنجل	الرهب. عطادد	المج المثار		المنترى
المشتري دنجل	المثر	والمطارد		11.00
المشترك	المخالف	الرقم عطارد		عطادو

447-450

As far as friendship or enmity is concerned, they are liable to change, because if a planet meets another in the 10th, 11th, 12th, 2nd, 3rd, or 4th houses, if if friendly the friendship becomes complete, if indifferent becomes friendly, and if inimical indifferent. Also if it meets another in any of the other houses, the effects are precisely the reverse of these.

448. La al-nimbahr. He shall now speak of the different parts of the signs and the fate of the planets therein.

the Hindus (nim bahr in Persian). The first half of every male sign belongs to the sun and the second to the moon, and on the contrary, of every female sign the first half belongs to the moon and the second to the sun. My friends, in this matter continue to obtain conclusions which differ from the above or are directly opposed thereto, and indeed the distinction between the two cannot be compared with that between light and darkness, as we have said and shall continue to say, but the people who have made use of this distinction are agreed upon its value, in spite of the opinions of others.

449. Mā al-wujuh. Each third of a sign - ten degrees - is called a face (wajh) and the lords of these faces according to the agreement of the Perfaces sians and Greeks are as follows: - the lord of the first face of Aries is Mars, of the second the sun, of the third Venus; of the first of Taurus, Mercury and so on in the order of the planets from above downwards till the last face of Pisces.

450. Ma al-suwar. The so-called 'figures' are in reality also the faces, but called so (suwar) because the Greeks, Hindus and Babylonians associations ed with each face as it arose the figure of a personage human or divine, 3 and in the

l cf. the statement India II 324, where a planet's nature is said to undergo a change towards friendliness in the Eastern and towards enmity in the Western houses without reference to meeting another planet there. Without reference to meeting another planet there. 2 Cf. India I 843 where the 'centres of the signs' should be the 'half signs'. 3 For a list of the Egyptian divinities according to Hermes, v. Ruelle, Rev. de Philol. 1908 p. 247.

من علادا المورد والسراف الاملية م سعبد الافعات فان الحريب. معالادا المورد عاشر او حادي عشرة الأماد المنزاد المعرم كان معب المراليد افتراز المان موسطا صادف وإن الناع و مسلا و المناف من مند إسار المدون م علاد استدن عداوت وانكان من سطاع دي وان المناف المند و مساد المناف الم

مالله بهر والمان المراب والمان المراب والمرب والمن المراب المان المرب والمن المرب والمن المرب والمن المرب والمن المرب والمن المرب والمن المرب المن المن والمن المرب والمن المن والمن والم

450-451

case of the Greeks the faces were also associated with such of the other 48 constellations ascending at the same time. I But this duplication of constellations is mentioned in connection with affairs, designs and undertakings which are peculiar to the country in question, and is used to obtain decrees with regard to these. We shall not undertake to give an account of it both to save space, and because it would be useless, as the astrological books we have are destitute of any instructions for using it.

of a sign are called darigan or Drikan (decanate), but their lords are different from those of DECANATES the faces, because the first decanate has as lord the lord of the whole sign, the second, the lord of the fifth sign from it, and the third, the lord of the ninth sign.2 The lords of the faces and of the Hindu decanates are set down in the table.

31gns	Lords	of faces		Of da	ri jan	
Aries Taurus Gemini Cancer Leo Virgo Libra Scorpio Sagit-	100 Mars Mercury Jupiter Venus Jaturn Sun Moon Mars Hercury	20° Sun Moon Mars Mercury Jupiter Venus Saturn Sun	Saturn Sun Moon Mars Mercury	P -	Mars Jupiter Saturn Saturn Jupiter	Jupiter Jupiter Saturn Saturn Jupiter Mars Venus Mercury Moon Sun
tarius Capricorn Aquarius Pisces	Jupiter Venus Saturn	Mars Mercury Jupiter	'	Saturn Saturn Jupiter		Mercury Venus Mars

l guparatéhhovta - cf. Bouché-Leclercq lc.125 and passim. Soll, Sternglaube, 1926, pp. 60, 142...
The lords of the decanates are the lords of the signs in the order of the triplicities 379, Aries, Leo, Sagittarius &c.

السُودَ اللَّه بِهِ والانبِينِ المُوعِد بِه المعلمِي المَّابِيدِ والمَالانوَعِ بُهُ اللهِ اللهِ مِلْكُ المَابِعِ بُهُ اللهِ اللهِ مِلْكُ المَابِعِ بُهُ اللهِ اللهِ المَّابِعِ المُابِعِ بُهُ اللهِ اللهِ المَّابِعِ المُؤَلِّذِ المَّابِعِ المُؤَلِّذِ المُحَالِ المَّنْ وَالْمُنْ وَالْمُنْ الْمُعْتِدِ الْمُؤْلِّذِ الْمُعْتِدِ اللهِ اللهِ المُحَالِقِ مَاللهُ اللهُ المُحَالِقِ مَا اللهُ المُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْدِدُ وَمِنْ اللهُ المُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ المُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ المُعْلِدُ المُعْلِدُ المُعْلِدُ اللهُ المُعْلِدُ المُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ المُعْلِدُ المُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ المُعْلِدُ المُعْلِدُ المُعْلِدُ المُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ المُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ اللهُ المُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعِلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ اللْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ اللْمُعْلِدُ اللْمُعِلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِلْمُعِلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِدُ الْمُعْلِمُ الْمُ

	الارك	ازباب	ومح	11	ارباب	
المسترى أر	النرك	الرح ك	الرهع ك	النرو	المل ب	الحد
رخل ل	عطائد ڪ	الرحرة سا	رخل ل	الفمر ڪ	عطاد ا	المئور
ذحل أ	الرم حك	عطاردا	T.	المرج	المنتوكسة	الجوزا
المئتزىل	المرّخ حك	الغر ـه	النمز ل	عطاردسك	الزهع ـــ	المواك
	المبتدى					
المرض ل	دہل ھے	عادر-ا	عطادحل	الرقع ك	النمرية	الشنبله
عطاردل	نبل ڪ	الأص	المشترى ل	زطرك	الفرك	النزان
العر ل	المترىء	المركح	المنعره ل	المرك	المرح	المقرب
المثرك	المرنخ حڪ	المنتوي	نبل ل	القرحك	عطادح	العي
عُلادِل	المِمْن ڪ	دول . ا	المثرك	الملح	المشتع	الجوك
المرض ل	علاد ڪ	وطرا	العر ل	5,6	المرجع ف	الدلو
	الر ک				<u> </u>	

452

452. Hal ista amal Batlamiyus athlath al-buruj. Ptolemy has also made use of the thirds of the signs. He determined by experience and observation of the signs the changes in the at-PTOLEMY'S SIGN-THIRDS mosphere which are indicated by the signs as a whole, by the individual thirds in these in longitude and by their northern and southern parts in latitude. So whenever the action of the planets on the weather and of their situations at the times of conjunction and opposition in longitude and latitude when weather prognostics are sought it is not easy to estimate the combined effect of all of these influences, as well as of the association and separation of the planets and the fixed stars. The following table is taken from Ptolemy.

Indications of

	Whole Sign	North Part S	outh Part		2nd Third	3rd Third
	Thunder &	bringing heat	Bringing	Wind, rain & thunder	Temperate	Burning hot plague
~	rain	& destruction				epidemios
_	Heat inchin-	temperate	unsettled condition	earthquakes & hot	oold and	heat, light- ning thun-
b	ing to moisture			winds destructive	temperate	derbolts unsettled
I	Temperate	winds drying up ground	scorching heat	moisture		
<u></u>	Improvement	scorohing	scorching heat	hot winds & earth quakes		winds
	Warm Heat	heat Wind	Moisture	Hot depressing a tmosphere	temperate	destructive moisture
$\frac{a}{a}$	Moisture &	Wind	Temperate	Very hot & destructive	temperate	Very wet
JA .	thunder Changeable	Great heat	Moisture bring	fine	temperate	Very wet
	Thunder &	Wind	Moisture	snow and	temperate	earthquake
	lightning	Wind	Very wet&	wind moisture	temperate	Very bot
3			Very wet &		temperate	rains
7	Very wet	Very wet bringing	ohangeable		1	1 .
	Cold and	destruction Great heat	wind and	Very wet	temperate	winds
×	≂ wet	Wind	Show Wet	moderate	very wet	very hot
	cold and wet	WILL				1

مَلْ مَنْ عِلْمُ الْمُوجِ جَالِهُ مُنجِعِدِ الْجُن والقباسات للبودج بة نعابر الاعوب دكالان استلم البرج وليطل المير ألل نب ية العلول وبلم خالمنال وللمنوب في المحض في عُرِف والمات المسحواجيم المعالب فالمواواجان وغرف موضعت وافعات الاجماع تعالات تنبالات المحمق لمذه أجرات للخطولاً عَيْمِنهم بجف دلالت المنتحدين عزج وكل بجن وبويير المروج للورا لائحرو عورالمالكانا الكعج عومالواح مرط عدر لامر مور الرعار الماذي اع و عوب للراح عرالامطا 14.2 137 30 12-5-رطب مد معبد مانی لمورماي

453

453. Ma al-hudud. These are unequal divisions of the signs known as terms, P.marz: with each one of them a planet is associated. People however differ TIRMS in this matter, some holding to the Chaldean, i.e. the ancient Babylonian method, others to that of Astaratus, while others again adopt the scheme of the Hindus. None of these are employed by professional astrologers, who are unanimous in using the Egyptian terms, because they are more correct. Those who have expounded Ptolemy's works use the terms which he records having found in an old book, and which he has inserted in his Tetrabibles. We have constructed a table showing both the Egyptian and the Ptolemaic terms: there is no use discussing any others.

				- 4 4		D+016	mart a	Iords	of T	erms
Signs	FEVD	tian	Lords	OF 7	<u>'61718</u>	Ptole		1		
YUDGUMENATUL	4 9 5 7 6 7 6 7 2 7 7 9 1 2 9	912 914 412 913 911 917 914 913 416	\$20 422 917 919 421 421 421 \$19 \$22 420 \$19	\$ 25 \$ 27 \$ 24 \$ 28 \$ 28 \$ 424 \$ 28 \$ 424 \$ 28 \$ 426 \$ 1,26 \$ 28 \$ 426 \$ 28 \$ 426 \$ 1,26 \$ 28 \$ 1,26 \$ 1,26	\$ 50 \$ 30 \$ 30		914 915 413 913 913 914 914 912 714	\$21 422 \$20 \$19 418 419 421 \$21 \$20 \$20	26 125 225 225 24 24 24 25 25 25 26	430 630 430 630 630 630 630 630 630 630 630 630 6

¹ The table from PL is substituted as an example of its calligraphy.

2 Vettius Valens, p. 14 seq. for characteristics of each

author of several astrological books, among them one

term. v. B.L.pp.206-210.

3 This form occurs in A and P and in Abū Ma'shar's Mad-khal, f. 190-3, also as Astartūā in B.M.'dd.23,399 of Abu'l-Hasan 'Alī, and appears in the Latin translations of the latter works as Aristotua (Albumasar, Introd.1489, V.8.) Attarathyk, (cf. Bouché-Leclercq, p.215 n.) Asthoatol, (Bonatus, 1550 p.46) Professor Margoliouth sugrested it was probably the name of a Greek astrologer.

A variant in AB' f 83a l 4, Arastrātū points to (an) Erasistratos, who, Dr. Withington shows me, according to a list of books in a Greek translation of a work of Mashallah, (Cat.Cod.Astrol.Graec.Cod.Flor.P.81-2) was the

ماليلود والما فون المراف على المسلطان و والمحود على المحراب المحال المواد المراف والمراف وال

كالمالمة ووعالا محمعا لاستحرف و و و و و المرم و حرود المرم و حرود و المرم و المرم و عرود المرم و عرود المرم و حرود المرم و										
بوس	د المنطل	, 29.	_ - >J.	خدا	1	راك	ردك	<u>حرو</u> رز	ابار	ĵ
1	4	35 18	- 10 mg	35	7	7	2 12		3	1
45	33	ا کار	* **	ر چ	4	بگر'	ブジ		الع الع	7
>	J. 10.	او د	jí	7 5	Ž	که که	9)	江	, '(37.
1	, ,	SA SE	51	E ,	(مرد	Jir	77	درگ	7	35
45.2	jť	(و بط ک	* *) ² ,	5	7,3	وي	ייר. ני	بزر	,
	N)"	عز	(و ا	3/4	'مرد	الرام	الهزا	300	אני נד ור	31
2	يار مو	في الم		٢),	ר על	ر بر بر	54'5	× ×	7	٠ <u>۶</u> ٠
بالأز	21/24	9	グノ	7,7	3	37	1. J.	رو رو	7	<i>"</i>
الرك	X	7) 44	٤	ا ع أو		اور	37.56	رو ک	رين	فز
رم ر	M	J.	ירי די	روري	7	Y	05	45.	","ys	70
7	الزار		36	(مر)	1	45.	75)	3	7

454-455

454. Hudud al-hinduwan, The Hindus use only one series of terms for all the male signs, and the same series in the inverse direction for the female signs. This is called their tri-HINDU TERMS shanash, lor the divisions of the thirty2 degrees. The result of the arrangement is that the division of the sign is not the same in the two sets, and consequently when it is desired to know which term applies, it is necessary to reckon it out. The series is shown in the annexed table as reported to us -

Terms of male						Terms of female
signs from the	5	5	8	7	5	signs from the beginning a/c
beginning a/c to the Hindus	8	h	4	\$	ð	to the Hindus
						•

455. Al-nuhbahr, The Hindus regard the ninth part of a sign (nuhbahr) -3020' - which they call nuvanshaka, as very important. When a planet is in its own domicile and ninth, that ninth is called NINTHS OF THE SIGNS 'bargutam' or most important. The table shows the ninths of all the signs; the lords of the ninths are the lords of the signs concerned. The first minth of the tropical algns, the fifth of the fixed and the ninth of the bicorporal ones are called 'bargutam' (vargottama). 5 This is an entirely Hindu method on which all are agreed. My friends have altered the order

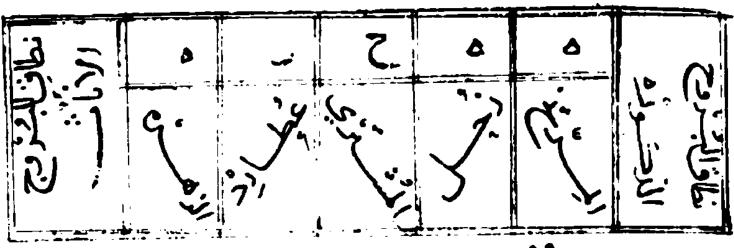
(cf.395 n.) In a similar list by Abu περί φαρταρίων La shar occurs ή βίβλος τοῦ Αρτασέστρου(1. 'Aρασεσηάτου) There is no hint in Wellmann's article (Pauly, Real-Encyk) of any astrological leanings on the part of the real Erasistratus, who flourished in the century after Ptolemy and Valens.

The terms of 'Astaratus' are distributed between the seven planets (Madkhai, f. 193). The first term of each sign is devoted to the planet whose domicile it is (fig.447) and the following ones to the other six in descending order: e.g.

Aries. 6 4 4 5 3 2 6 o and) occur only once in the first term, the other planets twice. There are slight mistakes in the terms of v म 🖘 ८३

l India II. 213, trihádháaka.

² AO thalathin AOl AB APl thulthain PL has siyak burj with marginal correction siyak. 3 India II 223:in MS. barguaim.

فأى للوود مستعلون عيد مناذ اواربابا في جمع البروج الذاك منوا المان عنوا المناف و المان عنوا المناف و المان عنوا المناف و


النمسه هـ ورنج المزح ونسب المدنواسك وفريما على عطبه جلاخيار المالح فله عطبه جلاخيار المالح في المرافق البيت محركوار المالح فله الاعطون والمنطبة على المنطون والمنطبة المنطبة
455-466

of the lords of the minths and have arranged them in the order of the spheres, but it is better that we abstain from using it.

	\$ 1	/m =	< x	< m	
1st 3°20'	Aries Mars	Capricorn Saturn	Libra Venus	Cancer 1500n	Tropical signs
60401	Taurus Venus	Aquarius Saturn	Scorpio Mars •	Leo Sun	Fixed
100	Gemini Mercury	Pisces Jupiter	Segitten Jupiter	Virgo Mercury	Bicor- poral
13020	Cancer Moon	Aries Mars	Capricorn Sa tu rn		Tropical
5th 18 ⁰ 40'	Leo Sun	Taurus Venus	Aquarius Saturn	Scorpio Mars	Fixed
200	Virgo Mercury	Gemini Mercury		Segittar. Jupiter	
23°20'	Libra Venus	Cancer Moon	Aries Mars	Capricorn Saturn	Tropical
260401	Scorpio Mars	Leo Sun	Taurus Venus	Aquarius Saturn	F1 xed
9th 30°	Sagittar Jupiter	Virgo Mercury	Gemini Mercury	Pisces Jupiter	Bicor- poral

The 1st 5th and 9th of these columns form respectively the fiery, earthy, airy and watery triplicities, 379.

456. Mā al-ithná ashriyāt. A sign may also be divided into twelfths (ithnā 'ashriyāt') 2000, each of which has a lord, the first twelfth TWELFTHS OF having as lord the lord of the whole THE SIGNS sign, 440 the second, the lord of the next sign in succession, and so on to the end of the series. As multiplication is easier than division, and it is difficult for any one to subtract by 2 1/2 degrees, people simplify the calculation by multiplying the number of degrees and minutes of the particular twelfth, the lord of which one wishes to know,

1		<u> </u>			=
F. 5. E	المالية المالية	F. 1. 1.	6. P.	انمو	
المطال المز	المرارادمن	للوی دخل	المل الدمع	5	
الارالم	الععر أاريح	الدلو رخل	المور الزمع	مر	9
المستلوعطارد			للوزأ عطارح		
المداز للغم	المذى دجل	المركب	الموال العن	5	2
العقرب المرئح		النوز الرض	الإسل للخمس	۔ امر	اوو
القوس المد		لبؤنا عطارد	المشبله عُطارُ	8 4)
	الحل الزع		المرآل المرمن	5	9
<u> </u>		الاسد الأبر	العفرس المرلح	م و	
للمتالمتري	المورا عطاد	المبنلد عطادر	العوس الأثرب	8	

مالانبي عيرمان وإضاف المالزال وج فسيستور العالم مالانبي المار الما

456

by twelve, and then for every 30° counting one sign in the direction of succession from that in which the twelfth is; the last complete 50° indicates the sign whose lord is the lord of the twelfth in question. The lords of the various twelfths of the signs are shown in the table.

This is the division as to which the Greeks and the Hindus are in agreement, but I have always been surprised that my friends have not altered it according to the succession of the signs or some other scheme. For if you proceed according to such a method you do not commit other absurdities to mention which this is not the place.

Lords of Twelfths of the Signs the Withs X ne 8th 乔b oth Oth 4 2nd 6th 5th 1st 12th 11th 10th Mars 22g 5th ith 6th 2nd 1st 12th 11th 10th 9th 8th 7th Venus 4th 5th 6th 2nd 1st 12th 11th 10th 9th 7th 8th Morory 3rd **5th** 6th 2nd 1st 12th 11th 10th 9th 7th 8th 3rd 4th Moon 7th 6th 3rd 2nd 1st 12th 11th 10th 8th 9th 4th 5th Sun 7th 2nd 1st 12th 11th 10th 9th 8th 3rd Mercury 6th 4th 5th let 12th 11th 10th 9th 8th 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 8th 7th Venus 1st 12th 11th 10th 9th 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th Mars let 12th 11th 10th 2nd 3rd 5th 4th Jupiter 9th 8th 6th 7th 2nd 1st 12th 11th 4th 5rd 5th 7th 6th Saturn 10th 9th 8th 1st 12th 3rd 2nd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th Saturn 11th 10th 4th 3rd 2nd 1st 6th 5th Jupiter 12th 11th 10th 9th 8th 7th

		مو		رع	دالمبر مراب	ارب		٠, لا يح	كاب			6 <i>2</i> -9
	للوز	الالو	145	الغور	العقوب	() () ()	الينال	الاشد	المظال	الموزا	المثول	J.
المتخفظ	<u> </u>	7	>	•	9	د	7	2	4-	1		
وسين	~	\	•	و	ر	2	2	_	l		1	1
22/20	2	0	9	7	2	کے	2	l		1	-	γ.
~i,	٥	9	ر	٥	2	-	ſ	1	1	-	الا	3
المغمر	9	,	2	2	1	•	1	I	-	*	5	٥
3/6	7	2	2	-	6	-	1	1	7	5	•	9
المسوه	7	٦	1			1	1	1	3	8	9	۲.
S	6	-		}	1	1.	٨	3	٥	9	٥	7
المنوي	1	6			1	Ł	5	•	9	1	2	2
يلي.	6	-		1	7	3	٥	و	د	7	4	Ļ
320	-	1		7	3	•	9	١	2	7	1	Į.
	1	۰	7	3	6	و	٠	ح	ط	4	6	*

457. Ma al-derejat al-mudhakkarah wa'l-mu'annathah. L'any controversies exist as to the sex of the various degrees of the signs, and these dif-

MALE AND fer very much as to their basis.

YEMALE DEGREES Whatever decrees you elicit from a method founded neither on proof nor

analogy nor on the order which the intelligence demands remain obscure until we cease to follow a path which leads nowhere. There is no sense in people who proceed on such lines, but, nevertheless, they accept indications from the sex of the signs in the same way as from the signs themselves.

Those people, however, who use a method based on order, whatever it may be, do not accept the indications from the sex of signs as a whole, but regard the first degree of a male sign as male, the second as female, the third as male and so on by odd and even, and similarly the first degree of a female sign as female the second as male, etc. as in the case of the male sign. Again there are others who proceed by

	_				_		twelfths of a
Aries	7	52	б	¥ 7	8		sign $2\frac{1}{2}$ 0 in- stead of by
Taurus	7	∎θ	15				degrees, just as the whole
Gemini	# 6	11	¥ 6	4	¥3		sphere is di- vided into
Cancer	2	¥ 5	3	#2	11	=4	3 twelve signs
Leo	5	= 2	6	=10	7		regarding the first twelfth
Virgo	# 7	5	∌8	10	ļ		of a male sign as male, the
Libra	5	# 5	11	#7	#2		second as fe- male, and the
3corp10	6	# 7	4	¥ 5	8		first of a fe- male sign as
Sagittarius	2	3	7	=12	6		second as male,
Capricorn	11	■8	11].
Aquarius	5	27	6	±7	5		
Fisces	10	#2	3	₩5	10		

ماللارجات للمذكره والموثثر تعاشله إنهااختلاما عنزا وبورطين ويمنه عن المعادية والمعادية والمعادية والمعادية والمعادية والمعدول الجاميل جعن مُال صحيح على مستدلون المبزوج على المنكر والكتب فالفن لصلوانطام امنهم وشكك فالدرّجان المفتهام والسووس فعول زحد منطاعة ذكمنك ودرحبسونشال ودرجاته والدرجا الالال يخاوج س مونن والمان مذك الخرما المياجي المحار الدنجات بالجرع ومنهمن سكك مذالاذ كيز والنامن في النام الأناع رابسدون اواداورحان ليكور ع كارج برالاكور

457-458

etc., while some of our predecessors considered the first twelve and a half degrees of a male sign to be male, and the second, female, the next two and a half, male and the remaining two and a half, female; procooding in the inverse manner with the female signs.

With regard to schemes not based on order, a table like that which we append, must be consulted (in which the female degrees are marked with an E).

450. Ma al-darajāt al-mudiyah wa'l-muzlimah. The distinction drawn between luminous and dark degrees is like the last not founded on any system BRIGHT AND and consequently recourse must be had DARK DEGREES to the subjoined table.

Astrologers, however, use it for making decisions as to colours, good and evil, strength and weakness, joy and sorrow, difficulty and ease. But no two books are to be found which agree on this matter, nor are they likely to be found.

The table shows several degrees of light and darkness, brilliant(b) neivir, luminous (L) mudi, dusky (d) quitmen, dark or shadowed (s) muzlim, while some degrees are empty or void (v) khall. **6**1 **b**5 54 48 **b4** 85 45 Arios Ъ2 **b**5 75 . 96 42 L7 45 Taurus 47 99 TŽ **D**5 45 26 75 Gemin1 **PB** 82 22 42 IA **D5** 47 Cancer **P9** 75 43 65 **b7** Leo 45 67 74 **76** 45 L **72 Virgo** LE **b7** 45 45 **P8 b**5 Libra 45 **52** 15 16 15 76 43 Scorp10 Sagittarius P3 **45 b5** 42 14 **b**5 65 14 Capricornus 47 15 **b**5 45 98 75 54 Aquarius 410 13

76

14

47

Piscos

اليائن ومزالا والمنهائ ونجرون على المنهاء الذوب المائت والمنهاء المائت المائن والمنهاء المائت المائن المنهاء ا

							وموحه وح
		ناو در	川-		الرداد		ट्रा
خالد ا	نین د	مطرد	ے وہ	فندح	مطده	فمرح	احل
فندس	> 0	حالمه و	2 04	حالم د_	مثيد د	ومدح	المئور
مظلد ر	نبن و	حالِد ـــ	ی و	فمه ح	01	حالم و	للوزا
مطد							الحواد
							LYI
							النبك
	خالم مس	.ب د.	- 40	ے وہ	ع م	بره د	الدائ
قند ح	مضبد د	معالم	منبدو	فارغه و	ه سف	وبد ح	الععرب
		فند ر	نظرد	بی ر	حمد ح	ين ط	الموب
بي ه	ضيفو م	فندب	ے ور	معلام ه	7.5	فهد د	المرك
	ع من	حلد	2 6	فئم د	٠ ٥٠	کر ح	الذلو
		فمهد	مسدح	حابہ ح	ンジ	فمدو	الأن

459

459. ME al-darajāt al-zāidah fī al-sa'ādah wa mā al-Ebār. There are also degrees which increase and diminish fortune. The former

DECREES INCREASING OR are those in which if the lord of the period whether sun or moon, or the degree of the

ascendant or the part of fortune is situated, the good luck and power of each is doubled. The latter are like pits, abar, in which the planets are enfeebled in their action, being neither able to effect good if lucky nor evil if unlucky - the tendency is therefore towards peace. Both are shown in the following table.

Degrees increasing fortune in the upper row, (pits abar, A chahha P) in the lower.

Aries	19th 6th	11th	17th	23rd	29th	
faurus	8th 5th	13th	18th	24th	25th	26th
Gemini	11th 2nd	13th	17th	26th	30th	
Cancer	1st 12th	2nd 17th	3rd 23rd	14th 26th	15th 30th	
Leo	5th 6th	7th* 13th	17th 15th	22nd	23rd	28th
Virgo	(2nd 8th	12th 13th	20th) 16th	21st	25th	
Libra	2nd* 1st	5th 7th	12th* 20th	30th		
Scorpio	12th 9th	20th 10th	17th	22nd	23rd	27th
Sagittarius	13th 7th	20th 12th	23rd 15th	24th	27th	30th
Capricornus	12th 2nd	13ths 7th	17th* 17th	20th 22nd	24th	28th
Aquarius	7th 1st	16th 12th	17th 14th	20th 23rd	29th	
Pisces	12th 2nd=	20th 9th	24th	27th	26th	

The m indicates mistakes in MS: brackets omission.

¹ lord of the ascendant ABl .

ماللة جان الرابع المنعان وما الإبلاع المالله في المالكة والمالكة والمناكلة والمناكلة والمناكلة والمناكلة والمنطقة والمن

1	2	ارمالات	عالإ		م مأجر	المنعا	المبعث	Con
		25	\$	بو	l	نظر	177	الحل
Ì	حو	ڪد	ڪد	t	*	20	المات	النؤر
	ر		4	ىر	+	ال	المحاد	الجلوزا
		ل	ي د	7	1	1	الابار	الميطاز
	مح	4	پ	-9	7	0	المسين الإياكر	الاسد
إبر	حال	ڪر	ڪا	بو			الجال	النيله
			ل	5	ر	7	المعلق الإدار	للرار
	حر	ڪ	ك	و	5	b	الأباد	العفر
	J	ڪ	ڪد	5	5	خ	01V	العور
	\$	ڪر	5	مد	3		الأبار	الحاك
		25	400	7	ہو	3	Wil	الرلو
		5	<u>ڪ</u>	ڪد	ج		ور وسلا ا//ا	الإنسا
					40		יעשר [-

460

460. Ma al-mawadir al-dallah rala al-afat fi al-There are certain situations which are said to be injurious to the eyes. These have nothing to do with the signs. PLACES INJURIOUS although some reople say that there TO THE EYES is a hint of this action in Libra and Scorpius, but they are places which contain certain nebulous stars, or certain animal figures from other constellations which are able to cause this injury. The really nebulous stars are four in number, one in the left hand of Perseus, and this one does not count because its latitude is high, and it is far from the course of the planets; a second, behind the aselli on the surface of Cancer, this has to be reckoned with; a third is behind the 19th mansion of the moon, which is described in books dealing with the heliacal rising of the stars (Kutub al-anwar 166) as the venom (humah) of the Scorpion, and this is of the number, a fourth, as is the tipl of the arrow of Sagittarius; again small stars in a group have a cloudy effect such as Haq at the 5th mansion of the moon which is composed of three stars Ptolemy regarded them as cloudy, in the head of Orion. but they need not be included on account of their bigh latitude. The Pleiades also resemble Haq'ah and belong to this series since their latitude is low, the moon passes by them and the sun also comes near them. Now those two luminaries represent the two eyes and their action vision.

The dangerous places in the animal signs are those like the sting of Scorpius, nighter P, the (point of the P) arrow, nushaba of Sagittarius, and the shaukah sharp tail of Capricorn, because its hinder end is fish-like. The hinder end of Leo is also included, as is the star between the eyes of Scorpius and the water below Aquarius masabb al-mā'. We know of no nebulous star towards the hinder end of Leo except the tuft between his tail and the Great Bear known as dafirah, which is composed of small stars non-luminous, looking like a cloud shaped like an ivy-leaf, the 'hulbah' of the Arabs, or

¹ Several MSS have fain for sinn.

ماللواضع للالله عالافان إلعيزمن لانعلوبيوا النزوج وانحانوا فالعاف فيج المرازوالع غرب دابعه مزعف العلالد معن الدلالد معلك بخاب ومواضح مزعود النواب مودم فكك الجوانات مضرفالعاس بللمنبغذا دبعداه لماالذي على على عاملان الغول ولمن عبدود فيهن ابكاركمَنْ عرضد وبعن عزم والمسبان والمابد معلف الانزالذي على المسرطان مهرمهاالمالك مامع الشوله مزال فارجان عنصون العقرب ولاناسم عمرالعفرب وكب الانوامهومها والمابع الذبعلى بزالهام والمحواجب المسادمن النواب اذاك انتجمع عنسبه تالمتحابه كالهقيد المحالح اد معلا روالب سيطلمورج لماسي باواحداد لست بركن لحث عرضهاد الرمام المعتبدة مزعن الجلدلفلدع صهافان اطرع سنركم العربيد و قرب المتسمين وهما دبلاالجنبر والفج اللوجود منها والماموا فبع الإضاد من ورّ للموامات فكلتو لم م العقب وعدا بدالاي شو كدا بديلان بسكنب شكدوقا ذكرا فهنه الملدموخوا لاسدوما بزجني العب غرب ومصب للا واماموخسوا لاسد فلااعف منكما يشبك المجابيات سهي المسغد ببره المحضا بزخب الاسد وبزالي بر الاكبرفانها كواجب مرسيفار مجمعد معلقهاب منتب عدعل وفع

460

tuft of the lion's tail. Its northern latitude is twice as great as the south latitude of Haq'ah, and therefore we think that it cannot be reckoned in this series, besides the dangerous weapons of the lion are his teeth and claws, not his tail. The stars between the eyes of Scorpius extend from the diadem to the heart, and are scattered luminous stars. The water under Aquarius is composed of four small stars near each other situated below the point where the beginning of the flow of water is pictured. Some people call this place the urn of Aquarius, but there are no stars there, and so an urn is assumed in the hand of the man from which the water flows, just as a sword is assumed in the right hand of Perseus.

Our foregoers settled the position of these stars in their time, since which 600 years have elapsed; we however show them in their present position (1340 of the era of Alexander) but it must be remembered that their position increases by a degree every 66 years, 1 i.e. approximately a minute a year.

This is the table, and God is all-knowing.

¹ About 72 - The addition of 12030 to the above figure gives approximately the present longitude of these stars.

للاب ونُم الحله المحرَّم منها إلى المنها والمال صعب عرض المعتدر الجور الداما تُعد في الجله الا إن صون و مخوالا المحاجر المالي و المالي و المالي و المالي و المالي و المالي عنوالج عب فالمحواج المى الإحلال الفلاسة و المناور و المالي عنوالج عب فالمحواج المى الإحلال الفلاسة و مناورة و المالي و المالي و المالي و المالي و و الموالي المناور و المالي حوج و الموالي المناور و المالي و المالي المناور و المالية المناور و المالية المناور و المالية المناور و المالية
زوعلما في الجوول كلي تنيي در درحه واحده الفرس فل سند دفيف عد و احده ع

460 Stars from certain signs which harm the eyes

Name of	Begin	ing wi	th an		ig with	
Stars	Signs De	RLGGR	ae funik	Signs De	Stees	Filmute
Pleiades	Taurus	150	55* -	Taurus	170	20'
Praesepe	Cancer	240	-	Cancer	840	-
Denebola	Virgo	50	-	Virgo	70	-
Between the eyes of Scorpius	Soorpius	150	-	Scorpius	19°	-
Sting of 1 Scorpius		10°	401	Sagitter- ius	11 ⁰	10'
Venom of Scorpius	Sagitter- lus	140	52'	Sagittar- ius	14 ⁰	541
fip of arrow	Sagittar- ius	18 ⁰	10'	Sagittar- ius	18 ⁰	20.
Tail of 2	Aquarius	10°	-	Aquarius	12°	-
Water of Aquerius	Pisces	30	p=	Pisces	40	

We now proceed to consider the conditions in the signs from their relation to the horizon, which we have already referred to as the houses' and their adjustment 341, and we adopt the same order as that used in discussing the indications of the signs and the planets, to facilitate the recognition and comprehension of the data ascertained.

Inshallah ta'ala

MS. has here munit al-fakkah (Alphecca, Corona borealis), present longitude 11010' Scorpius.

One would assume Shaukah to be a spike of Capricorn,
and not the tail, but the longitude corresponds to Deneb
al-jadi.

		·				
	L	المنت		را	المب	الكراب المنازة
ريني	67	Ġ.:	٠٠٠٠ ١٩٤٠	27	(%:	بالعنز خاصه
5	y	الثور	C .	۵	الثوز	النثزيا
*	16	المولاب	8	ڪد	المرطاف	المعلف
*	د	المنبله	Ŗ	9	المئبلد	ورالا
*	ط	العقب	8	مه	العفرب	مايئ النقرب
_	l	الفوس	مر	4	العوس	ميرالفك
ن	•	العوس	<u>ن</u>	ىد	العوب	حمالعنرب
L	と	النوب		と	العوب	ناحارامي
8		الرلو	*		الالو	شوكه الحدن
Y	>	الجؤا	2	2	ابلوت	Ül

ولنكرالان الإجال إلى المهد البروح لحرب الافغ فق مناذ لأكبف البوت والاسوب فيها المخرج الحرب المرابط المرابط والدعواج والدعواج بمن من من المواج المرابط المرابط المرابط المربط المرابط المربط ال

461. Delelet allati takhuşaı li'l-mawelid.

SPECIAL INDICATIONS OF THE HOUSES PECULIAR TO NATIVITIES

I Soul, life, length of life, education, native land.
Suckling, nutriment, disaster to eyes if overtaken by ill-luck, livelihood, household requisites,
assistants profession of children.

III Brothers, sisters, relations, relations in-law, jewels, friends, migration, short journeys, intelligence, knowledge, expertness in religious law.

Parents, grandparents, descendants, real estate, fields, houses, water-supply, knowledge of genealogy, what succeeds death and what happens to the dead.

Children, friends, clothes, pleasure, joy, little acquisition of property, accumulated wealth of father, what was said of him at his burial-service.

VI Sickness, defects of body, overwork, if unfortunate accident to legs, loss of property, disease of internal organs, slaves, maids, cattle.

VII Women, concubines, giving in marriage, marriagefeasts. contentions, partnership, losses, lawsuits.

vill Death and its causes, murder, poisoning, evil effects of drugs on body, inheritance, wife's property, expenditure, poverty, extreme indigence, feigning death.

Travel, religion, piety, fate, seriousness, attainment of knowledge from the stars and divination, philosophy, surveying, sharp discernment, trustworthiness, interpretation of visions and dreams.

Rule of Sultan, government with council of nobles, absolute authority, success in business, commerce, professions, well-behaved children, liberality.

Happiness, friends, enemies, concern for next world, prayer and praise, friendship of women, love, dress, perfume, ornaments, commerce, longevity.

Enemies, misery, anxieties, prison, debt, fines, bail, fear, adversity, disease, prenatal fancies of mother, cattle, harbours, slaves, servants, armies, exile, tumults.

نهالها	بلوز
الرصاع والمغذا وأفعالهم والمرتب والمضر والمعامر	(8)
	ki 🖍 🥒
الاعي والاجوات بالافربا والاصهار والمرصعات بالاضلا والفرار الاشر	W,
الفرسد والاحلام والعهر والعنفدية الانب الفرسد والاحلام والعنفر والعنف والعنف والمناخ والمناذ والمعادة والمعنور والمناذ والمناذ والمناخ والمناذ	
الإمان المساد والمعالموت وماعلف المبت والمتساء و معية الإصل للمست ما معالموت وماعلف المبت والمتساء وا	4.
فلد و دخا برالابا معايف الدالمولود بعيمون من المرصور والمانوف والمانوفار المولود بعيمون المرابع المرسور والمنافوفار والمنافولات والمنافوفار والمنافوف	28
وما طن الإعضاو العسد والإياولا واسب ب	
النساوالمسراري الترفيخ والعرس والأصنداذ والمنادع و والمسرد و المسرد و العرس والأصنداذ والمنادع و والمسرد والمسرد والمسرد والعسر والمسرو والمس	(,
الموت واسبعه والفشاق لمهوم فقت ادالملات مزالا وا والموازيب واموال النشا والماع الف غرول كابعد للشاده والموف	
الد فروالوروالعبان والفضاوالوفار وبعدمه المعوزم جهد المنوم والدكمة والمنطقة والمنطقة والكفاء	
علل لمطار والمابيت والذكر الرمع وبعد العنوف والامروالله والملاعد والإسا	
والهان والصاعد والاولاد الجرد و في الفيوه المساعد والاولاد الجرد و في الفيوة المساوالعنو المساوالعنو	
والليام الطيب والمرنب والعان والعان والليام الطيب والمرنب والعان والعان الاعرام المنت والعجزان المجزو بالديور وللغرامد والعضالد والحرث والنكر	VCK
والاسفام وماملى المعلى في الدوار المواسى المعيده المن والمؤرد والمراد والمراسية والمراد والمرد والمرد والمرد والمرد والمراد والمرد والمرد والمرد والمرد والمرد والمرد والمرد	رونا

468. Dalālathā allati yata'adī ila'l-masa'il.

INDICATIONS RELATING TO HORARY QUESTIONS

I Asking horary questions, important public matters, nobility, advancement in rank, witchcraft and spells.

Examining the querent, lending and borrowing, counting friends, arrival of stranger, enemies or friends, mandate of amir, winds when they blow.

III Secrets and news and commentaries, well-born

ladies, journeys by water.

VII

I

X

old and hidden things, treasures, thieves'
hiding-places, schools, fortresses, fetters, [dismissal from office], opening abscesses, lancing and cautery, stepfather, prison.

Messengers, right guidance, bribery, rectitude, distant places, poor harvests, securing the wealth

of the ancients, feasts, food and drink.

VI Lost and escaped, some lost trifle which does not turn up, affairs of women and eunuchs, suspicion, hatred, calumny, violence, dissipation, deceit, terrors, prison, enemy, poverty, moving from place to place.

The absent, thief, places where travellers assemble, treasure, death of contemporaries, foreign travel, sudden murder [for a trifle], denial, obstinacy, claiming a right, cheapness and dearness.

VIII Buried and hidden treasure, things ruined or lost or old, middens and rubbish-heaps, sickness of friends, lawsuits without a case, folly, contention, pride, dullness of the market, leisure.

IX Failure, abandoned business, books, information, ambassadors, miracles, roads, brothers-in-law.

Kings, notables, judges, the celebrated in all classes, amir and his conduct in office, things newly legitimized, wine, step-mother.

The treasury of the Sultan, its officials, trouble in the office, foreigner's child, servants child, (read 'abd) things which are sound, beautiful, advantageous, the beginnings of affairs, friendship of the great, bribery, food.

XII Fugitives, writers, those who neglect devotion, a precious gem, prisoners, the matter which preceded the question, property of oppressors, thieves, lost property, scorn, envy and fraud.

	Lig 885	الوز
	المسبل الامور الطاهي والمشرف والربان بدايكاه والمعروال بيد	CIE
	موروساطوالاحدوالعطاوجتاب الاصلفاوقدوم الفاد واعلاهافا وكالدارة	1 136
	الاسراد والاخاذ والمجبان وحرابر النشا واسف اذللار	
	الاشالفاية والمعشود معال فيدمو معال المسابط المور والمعارط المور والماق العدوالمات والمعارط المعارط والمعارط و	الب
	الإشارة المراباء الرخ والسام المشارك على المنهد والتسلط على والسامة على والسامة والسا	ر کام
1	المالدوالان والمخالصانع لكف والانحارة وامور النسا ولعب ازوالهدولة والمهر وللوزوالعنوز واللاب والاهوال والميزولا عداد الفقر والنفل المات والمارو ومعمل المسافر والتكورمون الأوان والاعتراب والعراف	KLY
	العاب والمعاذه والاستفاف النصروالغيلا	(%)
1	التطاور أنخف كالمرف المراوسال اوعبود للرارا والحد سامع مراغ والمراف المراف المر	U.
	الموال وبكسنى مركان وردال والأساو الإساو العلجب الطرف واخى	Cip
	المول والانراف والفصاء المشتم ون الخاصر والعامه وسورير و المادة المدادة المدا	. 3
عرا	والمثر المهد للمن الذاف و ما منه المعر الأمه روم والمعابب وولذالهز	\$5.00 B
	الموال الطلة والمدور والعام والعراب والمعان الموان المن والمسلة الموال المالة والمدور والعام والمالة الموان الموا	برنيا
	الوال لعبه والمراح المراح المر	

463-472

					•		7127		_	
Al-buyut. THE HOUSES	463. Delēlēthē relētl-18nēn. THEIR INDICATIONS AS TO YEARS OF LIFE	464. Madhahib al-hind fl al-buyat. OPINIONS OF THE HIMBUS AS TO THE HOUSES	465. Delâlâtha 'ela el-a'ûâ. Their indications as to organs	466. MACHARID Al-hind fill-arda. OPTHIOMS OF THE HIMDOS AS TO THE ORGANS	467. fartid quartide. Rabe of their powers	468. Alwende. Their Colours	469. Pahr al-kawakib fiha. Joys OF SHE PLANETS IN THE	470. Zundr gawi al-kawakib fibe. Kvidence as to Pones of Planess in thei	471. Welkyathi bi teriq el-hind. Their lokos according no the hindus	472. Al-dhakar wa'l-unthë.
I	Infancy	Boul	Heed	Tead	12	blue	À		٧L	male
11	Rest of Childhood	Riches	Hook	Face		&Team		4		Tenal
111		rother	Arm & Hand	PAR	18	70110	A	ĉ	,	2810
IV	DIG age	Parents	3100	Heart	7	red			5>	Tomal
	Death	Friends	Heart	Belly	8	wh to	╁	H	╟┼╌┼	male
		gures			Ш		LI¥.	Щ		
VI.		Cattle				plack	<u>l</u> o			Tenal
AII	Prime of life	M1408	Baok Hipa	FOLTO	4	mi xo d	 .	🗣	h	melo
VIII	_	Death		C. Paris	H	plank		ъ		Temal
	segiming of youth	Journey		1ghs	6	Wal to	0	Å	$\lceil \cdot \rceil$	2810
X		Dilice	K	3008	H	red .	11.	0	0 ર્ડ	Temal
I	routh	Income	Ci	1708	LO	yello	4	Π	1	male
1	I BARPH						1 Tr			Tomal

·	_								£	
3	177	STATE OF THE PARTY	12/50	الرئيا	واحا	1.33	\$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$	مرالح	415	73
دحر	عورد ا. للم	نزر	عطاد	امر طل		VX.	المر	اننز	لايات البی	(K)
ابي	الع العالع	المنتوك	المراج	احر		الوجه	المن	اللا	المسي	
دخر	الع العالع	للرخ	العر	اصفر		المضلأ		الأنوه		Vy.
ابی	الرجوج اوالع	المقر	لاوح وب	احر		الغلب	بعاد	でである。	عود المرتب	N
دى	مانع الرابع	ر. منزل	الأغره	اينر		البان	العلب	الوف المعل		· Ž;
انئ	بانع المبابع	خنزل	المزخ	اسوح		ابن	البل	العود		الإز
دحر	دکل	النفع	لارح بد	ناع لوزاده الوزا		مامدل من المئن	المراب رالزرق	انتا	ا حال فالمرز	(2/2)
انج	ما مع المابع	زُجِل	بر بر	اصود		المكرز	للأكر	المؤت		الاز
دخ	ر المعاشر	عطارد	الممر	امپنر		الفوات	افغوان	الموات الوات الملاك	7	C
ائی	المر اولانك	الثمر	پز بز	احر		ان	الرك	لعل	وصط المساب	
دخو	الخار	خنعك	المشرك	اصغر			الساح	ارجل	احر المباب	13.5
انج	العالع	مثغرك	زحل	اخز		ان	الم	ىزچ		3.7

473

473. Ahwel ukhar muta'alliqah 'ala'-l-buyüt. CHARACTERISTICS OF THE HOUSES IN GROUPS OF THREE & SIX

HARACT	EKISTICS OF D	THE UNIONE TH	_			
	I II III	IA A AI	AII AIII IX	XIIII		
Body	Body & Soul:	Body with-	Neither body	Soul		
	some say body	out Soul:	nor Soul:	without		
Soul	without soul	some say	because 1t	poda:		
	because it is	body with	contains the	on ac-		
	at a dark	Soul, be-	houses of	count		
	place until	cause it is	death and	of		
	it emerges	situated	travel	rapid		
	into light	be tween		ascen-		
		light and		sion		
		darkness				
Right	left	right	left	right		
or let				white		
COLOUR	red	black	green	slow		
rast	moderate	slow	moderate			
CZ ejow			deficient	good		
good	deficient	good	detioiena	B00		
or bed	.	1				
luok		-	S	E		
Direc-	l _N	\ "		ļ —		
tion Sex	female	male	female	male		
Temp-	cold and	cold and	hot and	hot and		
arement_	dry	wet	wet	dry		
				4 777		
Hindu	from III-I	from IX-IV	4-134	from X-XII		
ideas	Ascending bo	m Descending	bow falling,	Ascending		
as to	rising,	unfortunat	ie.	bow		
halves	fortunate.	· §		rising, fortunate		
divided		•		I of amig ad		
by line	: 	ļ.		1		
MC to	1	`		1		
IMC	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	chatra - par	9.50		
Halves	nawa = ship					
givide	underground		above ground			
loy line	night of pla	net chtmass	day of planet allied to leftness			
LLOW	allied to ri	'Su <i>r</i> nese	and length.			
6	and shortnes	1 3 4	1 414 2016 411			
<u>00.</u>	<u> </u>					

الما	1.5	(للو)	8. P		المهم		اللبح	4.4	2	عنرالهند		7
ماد	Kyn-24/11/2/5	11-8	ومسط		֖֝֝֝֝֝֞֝֝֝֞֝֝֝֞֝֝֓֓֝֞֝֞֓֓֓֓	المخ	الحائث	اكالهوم	والمن المثل	حشراا	مؤللتن مازال عويب	اللارزية الله
	Karine College	اسود		مغبل	377	5	ارديطب	رم اسا الم	المنفائما	7	ائت لالايارة العول	6.7 (S. (S.)
ار ا	King de San		مفبال	رابل	₹	ينكي	طزرطب	1)	والمستفسالمار	16/0/2 14.2	2 Windy War	12 10 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12
3	المناء		نطی	٠٩٠		3	4	74)	والنيذ المابط	3	in the start	

474-475

When a house is formed of two signs, if these are about equally represented, the lords of WHEN HOUSE FORMED the signs are also the lords of OF TWO SIGNS the house, if both are in aspect; if only one is in aspect it becomes the more important, while if both are inconjunct, that is superior which has the greater number of dignities. The victory must always be given to that one which has the highest number of degrees in the house.

475. Ma sahm al-sa'adah. The Part of Fortune is a point of the zodiac, the distance of which from the degree of the ascendant in the PART OF FORTUNE direction of the succession of signs is equal to the distance of the moon from the sun in the opposite direction. 5 The method of determining this is to find the place of the sun (Place 1), then that of the moon (Place 2); the ascendant is Place 3. Then subtract Place 1 from Place 2 beginning with the signs. If in Place 1 this is a higher number add 12 signs to Place 2 and subtract. Next turn to the degrees and subtract as before, if impossible, deduct one sign from Place 2 and add 30° and then subtract. When finished with the degrees, proceed with the minutes the result is the distance of the moon from the sun. Then add Place 3 by signs, degrees and minutes, and look at the result; if the minutes are more than 59 carry a degree to the degrees, if they are more than 29

l According to modern astrologists to that sign which contains the cusp of the house.

² Cf. Bouché-Leolereq p. 299 seq. 5 Or the distance of the sun from the ascendant is equal to the distance of the moon from the part of fortune in the same direction. Fig. 541.

كمعط البن لذالت ترك وندوجان الإبدان فرج بهاا حظادتها والصنطام بآدب الخليل الخارج في كالمت اسعر ماسم السيعان سومينع بزالفل ببيغ الطابع لايدال بحج بعبا مساويالبع والفرع المنفر لساالكوال ومعرف انتصع معوم المنتر في ومنع اول ومعوم الفريد مونيح ماب والطالع ومنح مال مم لمقيمان الموسح الاول مر الموضع المأب وبدام الكبوح فبلفها مزال بوح فان كلت بروج الموسع احترود على الماب المعرث الوب وب الالمنها والود بالأول معصات المأسة فان إنه عن فان من فعيج الماسندواجداً و ذع على وجاء كلامر المنسردن الال منهاء المنسر عابو للإله ل من الحال المنب بعامانسر مزد بان المابذ واحده و د دعل على المنافذ المنا معلى ذلك مامح الموس الاول فقدام تنسف عنده الاي حيل إلموسع الماسة والمرفابغ على المنابغ الماجدة المرفان المرفان المواب المنابغ ا

E

120

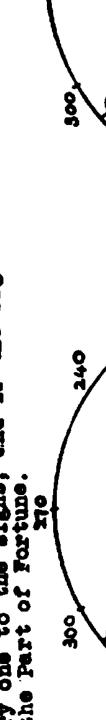
ã

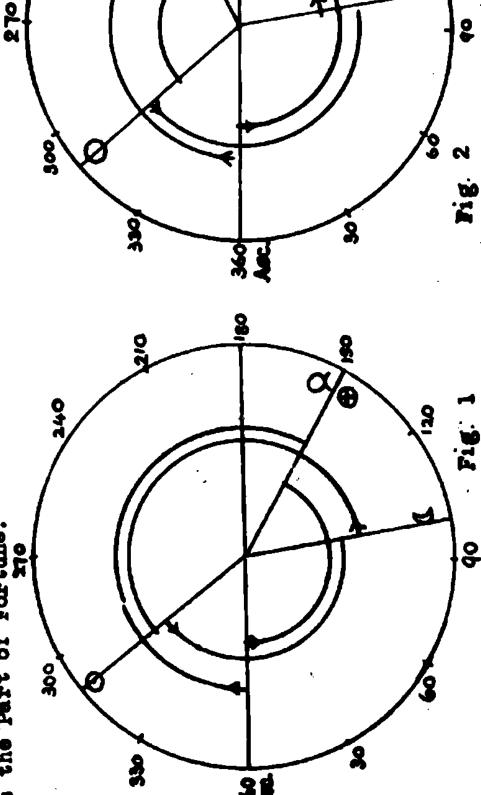
210

240

(B)

475





the same direction, 7 from O seconding to succession and rection. The Part of Dasmon A Part 86. The Part of Dasmon f16. of) from O according to succession, and measured from the to succession is the distance of of from Daccording to succession ascendant in the opposite direction; (nocturnal) the distance of Ofrom - modified from BL. the asoendent in ascendant in the same direction. the Part of Dacacon of the signs measured from opposite direction. 116. ascendent in Part of Fortune (diurnal outer to succession (nooturnal) HOT: 128 sured from dis tanos endent in urnal) sured tune; To the control of the

مع مع مسر و بالخاصة المنفي و لاجله على بور واحدا والصان والمرب و المراب على و بالما على بعد و المنافية المرب و المنافية والمنافية المنافية المنافي

							ا. المالموس	دنان	الفرملهب	0 2
	الع	الط		الم		الدو	- 70°		7	
Į	بقع	مام م	وهمح		ح	212	بعسر	حالمرا	دماعلى و	مندافلغ
			d-	יט	ں 	977			_	
İ	i	8	i	9	•		باللله	تم معت	بكلنعنه	خىصائد
I	ÌÌ		٢	Я	عو	4	* 1	•	فالبسلاز	311.
ı			<u> </u>					يم ي	ومالبسار	سهب وارد

المرم فرجات الفرفاميم ملافاك ملفوا مرضوح الفرالى و ما واحده و رد العرف المرم في المسلم على و ما المربع المسلم المسلم والمعروب الفرالي و ما و و و المربع الم

475

Take the Mollowing as an example. The ascendant is 8°20' of Virgo, the sun is in 27°44' of Cancer, and the moon in 15°25' of Taurus. These are placed in three rows as above described.

	Sun	Moon	Ascendant(1)
	Place 1	Place 2	Place 5
Signs	60	01	05
Degrees	27	15	08
Minutes	44	•	80

The number of the signs of the sun being higher than that of the moon, 12 must be added, making 13, from which the 5 of the sun must be deducted, leaving 10. The degrees of the sun are also higher than those of the moon, therefore I must be deducted from the signs, leaving 9, and 30 added to the degrees, making 45, from which 27 falls to be subtracted, leaving 18. Similarly with the minutes I degree must be carried to them, leaving 17 and 60 edded making 85 from which 44 subtracted leaves 41. The result of the subtraction of the sun's place from the moon's is therefore 9s 170 41', to which the place of the ascendant being added gives 14s 250 61. From the last figure 60 must be deducted and carried as 1 degree to the degrees, and from the first 12 must be deducted leaving 2, so that the result, the Path of Fortune, is 2s 260 01', viz. 260 01' of Gemini.

This is the method of calculation adopted by Ptolemy for the part of fortune which he never altered, but others proceed in this way for diurnal nativities while for nocturnal ones they put the moon in the first place, the sun in the second, and the ascendant in the third, whence necessarily many disputes.

¹ or 1s 15° 25°
Asc. 5s 8° 20°
6s 25° 45°
3s 27° 44°
2s 26° 1°

² In which case the \oplus would be in % 20° 59° at the same distance from the ascendant in the direction of succession - and in Fig. 541 in \neq 15° 50°.

مَسَادَت حَسْده عِيْرُود دَاالْنَابِي عِلَالْمَابِي عِلَالْمُعَادِث لَمْ وَسُنُور وعوباالموسع المأب وكالت العابق ابيع على عدو خسير فالعبدا مهاسير

فدُ. عناما والفينا الدورم المروج وهوانًا عِنسر فسأدما ب المرضع مُلاا وذلكموضع منهالم عبان وظاانه بدللوذ لبدست معسر بردرس ودقيقه واجه صواعوالمتم الذي استعطيط وسطام الطرف لأبغب

متمالتجان

ابدا واماعين مبطة مالهاد وتقلت اللل فيسع الفرد للحال الأول والنمسر ب

الماء والطلع فالمات وذلك عالمندا لحالات فلم عبرسهم للسجيان ما أخى

476

Ptolemy recognized only one Part of Fortune, but others have introduced an excessive number of methods of casting lots at nativities. We reproduce in tables those which Abu Marshar has mentioned.

In each case there are three things to be attended to, Place 1/ the beginning, 'mubde', Place 2/ the end, 'muntahe', and Place 3/ the casting-off point, 'malqe', which are treated as in the preceding paragraph, the position in a figure of the heavens of the fortune or lot in question being thereby determined. These three points are called respectively, 'manque' 'manque' minhu' and 'muzad 'alaihi'. Sometimes the same arrangement is used for both diurnal and nocturnal nativities, but frequently points 1 and 2 are interchanged for nocturnal ones.

It is impossible to enumerate the lots which have been invented for the solution of horary questions, and for answering enquiries as to prosperous outcome or auspicious time for action; they increase in number every day, but the following 97 different lots, 7 of which belong to the planets; 80 to the houses and 10 to neither are those most commonly in use.

¹ Madkhal Kabir - ff. 293-300 are occupied with a detailed description of the various lots and f. 331 seq. with the summary used by Al-Biruni. 2 The amount subtracted, that from which it is subtracted, the amount added.

والماعن ففيدا فرطوا والموالد وعز بود حمادكر ابومعت ربوجدا ولفانطاد كالمتممنه المتداسيامداوه الموسع ع المحاللة لومنها وم المومنوع في المحال أنا في وملف امنه وموالمومنوع بأ المالس وانطبت فكن منفوص ومنفوص عند ومرا دعليه ألم علمف فحال وهي إماان ان المسلم الموصع مسبر ماللبسل عالف اداما السهام الله ومعجوها للسابل كالاسعاد معدها غومنناه لاماداد دايما فامر عسى المالاوربيفها ولعدم البنسب لم يعلى النبخ والاستبعال والعدا كمستعال هم

476

Numbers		tween l	Place 2 son	from Place 5	Diurnal or Noo- turnal
	Fortunes of the	e Seve	n Plar	e tsl	
1,	Part of Fortune or &	0	>	Ascen- dant	change
2.	Part of Daemon ² Q and religion	>	0	10	19
3,	Of friendship and love	⊕	Ω	n	**
4.	Of despair & penury & fraud	Ω	•	**	
5.	Of captivity, pris- ons and escape therefrom	h	⊕	.,	,,
ů.	Of victory, triumph and aid	Ωto	4	,,	
7.	Of valour & bravery		⊕		"
	Fortunes of the				
8. 9 .	First House - Of Life Pillar of horoscope	4	For tu	"	•
v.	Nativities, Perman- ence Constancy		Ω	,,	, ,
10.	Reasoning & eloquence Second House	ξ	Sortu	N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N	 "
11.	Property	Lord of II	Cusp of II	,,	"
12. 13.	Debt . Treasure trove	ħ¥	Å	17	same
14.	Third House - Brothers		Fortu 7	nes "	"

These are the seven Universal κλήροι
1. Τύχη 2. Δ

Ανάγκη Δαίμ**ο**ν

Z poos 3. Nepedis Ning

Τόλμα

of Trismegistos. B.L. p. 307.

2 The lot of the sun, which is the lot of the unseen and religion (sahm al-ghaib wa'l-dIn) κλήρος Δαίμονος. B.L. p. 295.

Al-Biruni said that an illiterate soothsayer's accurate prophecy was due to the coincidence of his C with his Asc. Chahar Maqala p. 67. V. also p. 63.

<u>-</u>		والمستداري			
		├ ──-		الملكولاللتبعة	{ }
الطالع	عالب	الغيس	الممس	سمرافز وعوشم المبعادة المساق	J
	محالم	المرشي	القر	سهم المروعة مم العب والدب	
الطالع	مالع	العب	شهنو السعان	معركالمذولل المنسن	7
الطالع	عالم	المعان	العب العب	سم المفرو فلد للبياد لعطارد	>
الطالع	عالم	المعان	رحل	سم الوماة البخوم عبو مندائبل	٥
الطالع	<u> کالم</u>	المشترى	العب	سهم العائح والنمر والطفر المشترك	
	علام	البعان	المربخ	سهرالحامد وللحراه للسريخ	1
الطامع	عالع			سهام الموت لاتناعسر	
				الطالعلة ثلثانهم	
الطالع	مخالف	رنجل	المشترى	سهموللجباه	2
ااطالع	مخالف_		المعان	سمعاد الطالع واللولود وهوسم	4
الطالع	غالف	المرشخ	مطارد	مهم المنطق والعنسل	_
				الملفولة نلناستمر	
الطالع		در مد مرالمال	نال	مهملاك	l
الطالع		عُوارد	دخل	مهرالمرم_	
الطالع	كالعر	المرمره	عطارد	سهماللفظه	*
			į		
				المأك لدملنا سنمر	
الطالع	خفئ	المظترك	رنجل	سعمالاعنى	مل

Number of brothers Death of brothers & sisters	ō Ā	ት 10° of III	Asoen- lant	same ohange
Fourth House	- Bigh	t Fortur		
	0(4)	ሊ ነ	" 1	**
Parents Death of Parents	À	4-740	· •	•
	I	ስ	· #	#
Grandparents Ancestors &	h	5		
relations	"		*	#
Real estate a/o	ţ	24	**	**
Real estate a/o some Persians	h	>	77	#
Agrioulture,	\$	λ	h in	same
tillage	1 .	Lord	}	
Issue of affairs	λ	of S	"	"
Fifth House	Five	Fortune		
•	4(2)	ጉ	7	change
Children	1 4	l .		1
Time and no.	0	4	19	same
of sexes Condition of	-1	, ,		i
males	*	1 7	7	"
Condition of		₽ .	1	
females		+ -	77	- "
As to whether		Lord	t	1
expected	1 >	of		
birth male	1	house	Pl "	ahana
or female	1	of D	1 "	chang

	<u> </u>				
الطالح	منغؤ	رخل	عطار	سكرعدد الاخوه	4.
العالع	J. J. J.		.	مهمع تساللخوه	نو
				الالع ولم كانسانه ف	
The	A	ゾ	4	سهروت الإما	و
7/61	Alle	533	ሃ '	مهرون الإبا	ح
A STATE OF THE STA	-8/2	ズ	YIZ	سهرالاجاد	ىط
(4)	die	35	y '	معرالمير وهوسوالاضاولك	5
J. Lall	·4	العمو	*	سعوالعفادات السياع لمزمز	5
(E)	علامر	(5.4)	7,86	معموالعقادات لمعنوالفئوتن	ڪ
المالخ	لغن	\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	e:,	سهمالفلاحدوالزراعد	. J.
(18)	معور		المح	سهرعواف الامور	5
				ا كامرولدج أسيوره	
7/10/1	V/K	ኦ ,	57%	سهرالولا	25
C/6,	معور	5.5	الرية	سهروف الوادء عددم ذكورم وأمانم	ڪو
العالح	رفز	للموى	Ċ,	سهرطل الوالانكور	حڪر
(K)	منغور	(6)	العرز	سهرطال الولد الانات	8
रीक्ष्या	·ix	الغز	4	سه ذكو المنوالم لود المثوله الوسته	ڪظ
				النادى فلدان بعداسه سي	

476

	Sixth House ;	Four	Fortune	. 1	
5 0.	Disease, defects, time of onset of them a/o Hermes	λ	\$	Ascen- dent	ohange
31.	Disease a/o to some of the ancients	ğ	8	*	seme
32.	Captivity	Lord of time	Lord of house of Lord of time of AO		
53.	Slaves	¥	of VI	:	eome
	Seventh House -	Sixte	en Fortu	pes	
34.	Marriage of men (Hermes)	ኢ	\$	•	
35.	Marriage a/c	0	\$	•	-
36.	Trickery and deception of men and women		•		
37.	Intercourse	•	"	*	
38.	Marriage of women (Hermes)	Ş	<u>ት</u>		•
39.	Marriage of women (Valens)	D	\$	*	•
40.	Misconduct by women	•	*	-	-
41.	Trickery & deceit of men by	•			
42.	women Intercourse	1	"	-	77
43.	Unchastity of women	~	•		*
44.	Chastity of women	*	ę		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
45.	Marriage of men & women (Hermes)	\$	VII	,,	•
46.	Time of marriage (Hermes)	0	>	-	-
47.	Fraudulent marriage & facilitating it	h	\$		9

CEL	محلامر	(c)	y ,	سهم المرشروالعبوب والرمأند لمرسس	ل
العلاج	کوز	4	3-6	سعرا المرامز ليعش العدما	Ŋ
26/	معو	**	134	معرالاتبادى الوثاث	لد
المعالة	Sec.	الغند	24	سعرالجيب	7
				المابع ولهستنجستيهما	
Cles	معو	رود	٦,	مهوزونج المال لمرس	L
33	کور	3		سهروه مع المال والبت	al
رها	منو	رزوع	المتمر	سهم كوالر حلاح المشاوخ واعمر	
نطابع	موز	الزخل		سهرجاعالنت	j
C/B,	المنعو	Y	الزغن	سهرتزونج المسالم	الح
500	رق:	2)	~e,	سهرة وبع المشاله الس	4
(23)	المنون		الزر	سهر نحور المساود ما به	مر
5,100	کور	15 x	-	سهم السالاحال عالم	ما
(8"	معو	Č.;	211	سهداع الفت	
5789	انوز	الرح	خن	سهرخزالت او فاحتف	
(181)	معور	وسي	الاوس	سمعفافالمراه	<u>مح</u>
العلاج	لتوز	المأية	C-1	مرة مدااسلا والمنالم	
C16,	امنوز	بغذ	المرا	المعامر روح المراب	do
J. Wall	كوز	الأغن	<u> </u>	المرا الذية ومليه	مو
			· - •	سهم جلدالذو بح وبيسين	مز

		476			
4 8.	Sons-in-law	ት	\$	Ascen-	change
49.	Lawsui ts	đ	24.	*	
	Eighth Hous	- Five	Fortun		
50.	Death	- 4	Cusp VIII	of h	54116
51.	The Anairetai (al-quttal)	Lord of Ascen-	>	Ascen-	change
52.	Year to be feared at birth for death, famine	dent \	Lord of House in which	dano	
53.	Place of murder	*	0028	Degree	same change
54.	and sickness Danger and Violence	•	Å	Ascen- dant	•
	Ninth House	- Seve	Fortu	196	
55.	Journeys	Lord	Cusp	*	eane
56.	By water	h	150 00	"	change
57.	Timidity and hiding	D	Å	w	
58.	Deep reflection	ስ	>	"	•
59.	Understanding and wisdom	ካ	0	•	
60.	Traditions, know- ledge of affairs	0	4		
61.	Knowledge whether true or false	ĻΨ	▶.	"	same
62.	Tenth House	From time	ford of	unes	
63. 64.	Kings and Sultans Administrators, vazirs, etc.	exal	of tetion D	-	change "

_		-			
Chin	رز	, i.e.	٢,	شهرالاحهال	
العول	لغن	المنزر	(*)	سهراطفومائد	T
				المان لدحم منهار	
4.	منو	7	العزر	سهرالموث	C.
71891	Y.	, ill	(18)	مهرالحوالب النكال	i
CUL	· ju		λ',	سهرالسنعالي عافع للولود وباالموت فالجنط	1
7,10	*	'	ソ	معووسع المقراب وانبع المرض	7
(181,	عالز	D. P.	7,	سهرالحظة والمشك	ن
				الكاح والاشبعد اسهو	
4001	معر	الانجام	Cir	سهرالسف	Å.
(%,	مانز	(ch.	J P'	سه والسف والماء	نو
51191	Vi.	م الرو	رقار	سهمرالورع والدب	اد:
(8/1	عالمر	رنت	<i>y</i> ,	سهوالعقرالعود	7
200	14	المخر	4	سهرالعدم والحلر	कं
Car	ماهر	***	30	مهم الاحادث مغرف لخبار الماس	5
5/2	معر	العور،	3.4	مهرالمنز احتجهام باطيل	1
			-	الماشولداساعتسسه	
(B)	تالغ.	1	بهدحر	مهرز المودومس كرن جرلابدام لا	}
510	14.	1	(*)	مهالمول والمسلطاب	#
(8)	ملامر	べ、	7)65	سهم المتعيز فالوزيا والسلاطي	سل

	4	76			
55.	Sultans victory	0	h	Ascen-	ohange
66 .	oonquest Of those who rise in	ኤ	•		•
67.	station Celebrated persons of rank	•	0	4	60206
68.	Armies and police	\$	ስ		change
69.	Sultan. Those concerned in nativities	λ	•	•	seme
70.	Merchants and their work	Å	8		ohange
71.	Buying and selling	Я	•	•	•
78.	Operations and orders in medical	0	*		
75.	treatment Mothers	\$	>	*	-
	Bleventh Ho	use - 1	eleven P	orunes	
74.	Glory	•	R	tasb	ohange
75.	Friendship and enmity	1 "	"	. •	*
76.	Known by men and revered, constant in	•	0		•
77.	affairs Success Workliness		4 04		
78. 79. 80. 81.	Hope Friends Violence	490 3			30 <u>110</u> 0
82.	ponse	1	1	1.	1

C/6/1	مالر	メ	المغر	سهم الملطاز والمضروالمغلب	
العالم	VK.	A CONT	Ÿ	سهرالاز ينفهون على	مبو
(1811	منغق	\\ \\	١٠	سهم للعرو فبزع الماسرود ويلااه	سن
2/61	ile	١٠,٠	(C)	سهنزالاجاد والمترفط	2
7/8/1	معو	ie,	احل	سم السلطان واع عليع لا لولود	سط
العلالح	V/K	الافن	7.16	سهالعال ببيم والخارات	ځ
2/1/4/	كالع	36	بغبره	سهم المفارات والمشراد الببع	k
4/10/1	·K.	5	¿	مهمالعراوالامرالاكلابرمز معالميته	عب
(1/4)	محالتر	ii	العن	شهكرالامر	*
•				المادىء زولما حدعتها	
1 W	il	4.	SIL	شعرالثرف	عد
(1/4)	عالمر	4	500 Jan	برلك شبلا المام	عد
الطالع	if		06	مهالمروف للامرا للرم عناهم الفاي	26
(18,	عالفن	2011	معام	سمر بطح	عز
الطالح	W.	الفن	٥٥	مهمالمهوات وللرضط إلاثيا	ع
(18/1	عانز	24	ア'	سمرالها	عط
الطالح	الوزد	7,16	منة,	معر الأضاية	و
(181)	منو	علاد	الومع	سهم لاصف راد	فا
العنالع	احقونه	Sich	Ti,	مهم للمسب كن المبرع إلمرب	ف

85.	Liberty of person	ţ	0	Ascen- dant	obange
84.	Praise & accept- ation	4	\$	**	
	Twelfth House	- Three	Fortu	108	
85.	Enmity a/o to some of the Ancients	ኢ	ð	•	90796
86.	Enmity a/o Hermes	Lord XII	Cusp XII	,	
87.	Bad luck	۶.	€	*	•
	Altogether 7 Fortun	es belo	ag to 1	he Plan	ets and
	Ten Fortunes not r	plated	to Plan	eta or	Houses
88.	Hailaj	Degree or &		Ascen- dant	same
89.	Debilitated bodies	₽	8		ohange
90.	Horsemanship, bravery	h	•	,	
91.	Boldness, violence, and murder	Lord	>	•	•
98,	Trickery and deceit	Å	Я		"
95.	Necessity and wish	h	8	•	same

5891	CK.	الأحق	3.6	سهروه المفش	2
CE	عالر	ري	33	شهوالملايح المحرد	اول
				الثانع في المثلث النهم	
NA.	موز	الإذ	Y	سعولاعوالهنبالع دما	مه
CE	تعقو			سهرًا لاعظام س	وو
West of the second	نعوذ	Se Se	Ś	سهرانشت ا	ور
		_نمانوز	مالبيونه	الكراكسماللكواكب كوسفيها	غملك
	•		سإل	السهامالئ تنسالكوك	
21601	نغ	الفرد		سمرللبلاج	J
(4)	die	Ç.	معرو	سمهوكالاحاد	1
المالخ	· Sign	الغرا	4	سمالغروسيهالخاعد	7
(K)	كالعز	ان ا	J. W.	سم للحراه والمساق والمقال	>
المالخ	V.	بجرب	760	مهم لناراع والمكرول لمرك	0
2	منق	(*)	y	مهموضح لبطجه والبغبد	و

476-477

94.	Requirements and necessities a/c Egyptians	ŧ	Cusp III	Ascen- dant	5 022 6
95.	Realization of needs and desires	⊕	¥	**	n
96.	Retribution	8	P	**	change
97.	Rec t1 tude	2	δ		

477. Fahal mukhtalif famal hadhihi al-siham wa hal yatafaqa ithman minha. There are people who adopt methods differing from the above under some circumstances; e.g. with regard to DIFFERENCES the lot of parents when Saturn is under IN PRACTICE the rays of the sun, they take from Jupiter to the sun by night or vice versa by day, and cast from the ascendant. Again in the case of the lot for grandparents, if the sun is in Leo, they take from the beginning of Leo to Saturn by day, and by night in the opposite direction. And if it is in the domicile of Saturn then from the Sun to Saturn by day, and vion versa by night, in both cases cast from the ascendant even if Saturn is under the rays or otherwise afflioted. I Should two lots indicate the same point, it is regarded as very fortunate. In some of these

(8)	141		المح	سهدر للواح والعرفان للمربز	ر
Stall	نغ	214	**	مهموالمرد زه وربلح للواع	2
(K)	عالر	£.	· 12	سهرالجزا	کے
العالغ	*	· ist	A.C.	سمرعللت	2_

مناك سبعد منسوزت المهاعثر منس باللحولج والبق

فهلنخلف عملها م المستهام وهوالنفو المالفها المنطاع ال

477-479

cases the instructions for day and night are the same, in others different as may be seen from the table, in the former event there is no advantage to be derived from a separate calculation.

casting lots is a very long one, so that one might think there is no end to it. For instance OTHER LOTS there are those which are cast at the turn of the year (the entry of the sun into Aries) on worldly matters and affairs of empire, and those which are cast at conjunctions and oppositions of the moon to elicit prognostics as to weather, as to success of ventures, and other horary questions. We append in tables the opinions of others on these matters which we have derived from books on the subject.

479. Pahadhihi sihām tasta amal fi tahīwīl sinī al- alam wa'l-qiranāt.

LOTS WHICH ARE CAST AT ANNIVERSARIES OF THE WORLD-YEAR, 249, AND AT CONJUNCTIONS

1.	The sultan's lot	MC @	MC anniv.	74	same
2.	By another way	Deg. Asc. Conj.	Degree conj.	Ascend	₩
5.	Victory ¹				
	A ghalbah P firuzi	0	Lord of VII (Degree of Des-	*	. **
4.	Battle	\$	cendant)	Degree Lot of Victory	•
5,	Second way a/c to Umar[b.	ii)	4	Ascend	**
6.	Third way al- furkhan]	Å.	*	•	n,
7.	Truce between armies)	Å		•

In MB. Falh oultivation.

الاتفاق بنها ومنه الماشق في الإلهارة عالف اللهل العصر ولما المبحث و في ورد و المناق بطول و المحاد و في ورد و المناق و المالك و المناق و ا

	فَهُن سَهُ امِنْتُ عَلَى بُعَادِ بِلْ سَيْ الْجِالْرِوالْفُ وَالْفُ وَالْفُ وَالْفُ وَالْفُ وَالْفُ								
ועש	المهاز والال	الى	م	تالشعام.	ات				
المبوي	Lee.		W.	سه والسُلطان	1				
(48)	منور	ر بربر	ور المراز	وبوجه	1				
الطالع	Je.	N. Ida	ريم	سهرالفيلج	٧				
	منو	ve;	المرخ	سهرالفناك	۸				
الطالع	محو	الغنز	C;	صوحه إخر لعرز الفرخان	0				
(18)	مو	wi,	7,	عَبُوحِهِ النَّ	,				
5/8/	Le	7:14	Vij.	مهمالمع إلواجر	ر				

		479	9		
8.	Conquest	0	\$ 1	Ascend	58110
9.	Triumph	⊕	4	*	change
10.	Of lst conjunction	Ascen. year conj.	Degree conj.	Ħ	Bame
11.	Of 2nd conjunction	Ascen. conj.	Degree conj.	**	**
	The following lo four quarters, an he moon.	ts are a d the co	ssociated njunction	with the	years, sitions
1.	Earth	h	4	Ascend	86E6
2.	Wa ter	D	4 9	w	*
5.	Air and wind	Å	Lord of his domi- cile	. 	••
4.	F ire	0	8	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
5.	Clouds	\$	λ	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	ohange
6.	Rains	•	Ŷ		
7.	Cold	¥	h	Ascend	*
8.	Floods	0	h.	,	at moon- rise

I pLI has gap here to 489.

CVK)	منور	(*)	النز	منه والغلب	7		
الطالغ		لمنفوح		سهرالطفر	ط		
C.K.	30		J'Ali'	سملغراللأول	_		
ألمالغ	لوز	الأرسم	14. CAR	سم العُرارُ النَّاكِ	L		
لأنب	وهن سام سنرل فها السنوزولياعها والإجهاعا والاستقبالاز						
	**************************************	,					
Ch	مو	33/	5	سم الادف	J		
5/87	كر	المغن	رنها	سمالي	_		
(%)	معو	1/2	27/16	سمالمواولأماح	7		
Fild	لو	المحرية	4	سيمالساد	>		
CE,	مو	4	47	سهالغبوم	0		
المر	W.	العي	مغ	سمالاصطار	9		
CK,	كالو	\K :	2,16	سم البرد	ر		
الوز		9,3	\$. C.	سمالتبول	7		

479

Lote as to prognostics regarding crops &c.

	Tota da to brognoseros referrares erebs me.						
1.	Wheat	0	24	Ascend	ohange		
2.	Barley, meat	•	*	**	*		
5.	Rice, millet (P. gāwars)	4	ţ	**			
4.	Maize	~	h	"			
5.	Pulse	\$	Å		, ,		
6.	Lentils and iron	8	ħ	•	-		
7.	Beans, onions	አ	\$		*		
8.	Chick-peas	9	0	•	-		
9.	Sesame, grapes	ት	\$				
10.	Sugar	\$	¥				

وسيام الاستعان المستعان					
العالغ	C.K	الأو		سهمرالجنف	1
48	عالغر	(A)	الغر	سهمالتعبرواللم	_
الطالع	le de	الاهن	5	مهم الأزو الاور	7
CKI	عالمر	4:	الأوي	مهم الدره	٥
العالج	C/K	7,16	C.	سمرالماش	0
CK,	Jale .	4:	المن	سهم العدس وللعد	2
العالم	Jek.	2	X	مهم ألبا فلي المبل	1
CZ,	كالر		العره	سهرالحم	2
File,	V.		V	سهم التميم والعب	2
CAR	مالعر	7.6	الفر	مهرالم	2

		479			,
11.	Honey	, >	1 0	Ascend	change
12.	011	ं ठ	>	,,	**
13.	Nuts, flax	•	\$	**	,
14.	Olives	Å	>	"	"
15.	Apricots	ስ	\$	**	77
16.	Water melons	4	\$		•
17.	Salt	,	8		**
18.	Sweets	0	₽		*
19.	Astringents	Å	<u>ት</u>	-	79
20.	Pungent things	\$	"		79
21.	Raw silk, cotton	Å	우	19	**
22.	Purga tives	, ,	à	77	•
23.	Bitter purgatives	ስ	\$		•
24.	Acid purgatives		4	*	#

					7-7
STAIL	W.	<i>"</i>	ve,	سهرالعيل	6
(K)	علامر	ver,	E ST	سهرالدهن	
W.	W.		(*/	سهلجوزمافئاب	\$
(48)	الخلفر	بخ	7:162	سهمالزيتون	J.
JAJ N	Pelf.	论	Y	سهم لملش	d
(E,	عالعر	3.18	للهزي	سهمالبطع	بو
المز	1	الغ	خز	سهمالملح	ىر
(K,	عالم	ري	الممر	سم للاعات	\(\)
المالح	Vet.	<i>'</i> '	7/4	سهمالعفوصات	ىد
CK,	Ale	Y	2	سملابعات	5
الطالح	W.	المقره	7.6	مم القطن الفتى	كا
(4)	علامر	\	2906	مم الأدر بالسهله	5
فاليا	C.	نمع	(ب)	سهمالمهادالمن	5
CE	علامر	53	y '	سنمالملهالم	ڪد

479
Lots cast in connection with horary questions

1.	Secrets	Lord of	Cusp X	Asoen.	same
2.	Urgent wish	Lord hour	Lord	#	change
3.	Time of attainment	Lord hour	Lord I	**	"
4.	Information true or not	Å	•	,,	•
5.	Injury to business	Lord aso.	⊕	**	same
6.	Freedmen and servants	4	<u>ት</u>	¥	
7.	Lords and masters	es .	er i	>	
8.	Marriage	\$	Cusp VII	Ascen.	•
9.	Time for action (Walls)	0	ኒ	,,	
10.	Time occupied therein	•	ł	•	-
11.	Dismissal or resignation	<i>f</i> •	4,	2	-
12.	Time thereof (Wālis)	Lord of the affair	•	Cusp X	,

	وهام المنتعل المسابل					
ZVA	الم	الماريع	(E)-	سهرالضهر	1	
	3\4	CE.	1	سمحوزالجبد		
7/6/	V.		4	سهم وفنعي للطيعد	7	
C/6/	عالع	ve.	2,160	سهم خول لجرو ماطلد	>	
JUNI	نفر	30,00	CUL	سهمنض كالبعاب	8	
7.186	امه ادو	4	منزو	سهمللروالعب	9	
الور	Les,	اعر	44	سهم العرب وللوال	ر	
C/4,	9.9	6	الفي	سمكوزالتزم	ح	-
الطالخ	لنقن	كززى		سهم ف العمل لوالبس	2	
(4)	منفو	1	الزر	سهم ألم المعلق المبر	4	-
رخل	الرنز	لاتوى	رش	سهم وقت الغرل	l	
W.	معنور '	0/6/	للمرا	سمالوف لوالبس		~ ===

479-480

15.	Life or death of absent person	>	\$	Ascen.	8036
14.	Lost animal	0	,	#	**
15.	Lawsuit	δ	Å	*	
16.	Successful issue	0	4	**	77
17.	Decapitation	D	8	AIII	,
18.	Torture	•	72	Cusp	77

480. Fama al-sahman wa'l-bahimatan. On the practice of sortilege by two arrows and the interpretation of animal omens.

ARROWS AND ANTIKALS

The book of Hermes known as the 85 Chapters disousses the indications derived from both. As to omens from two animals, Masha'llah mentions that a black animal should be interpreted as Saturn and a yellow one as the Sun. As to sortilege by two arrows none of the interpreters has been helpful in furnishing an explanation with regard to them except Mahnillah whose examples are founded on the lives of kings. Other members of the profession are inclined to adopt long calculations by many and devious methods neither Some of them at the restricted nor free from error. entrance of the Sun into Aries in discussing the permanence of empire and the probability of rebellion take the first arrow as equivalent to the distance of the sun from the middle of Leo, and the second to that from the moon to the middle of Cancer, both cast from the ascendant, and the same for day and night, while others who have studied the subject most earnestly assert that the first arrow represents Saturn himself and the second Jupiter. What has been written on this subject alone would make two large books.

والها	190	(* ,	الغرو	سهرحياه العابب وموبئه	+
الطالع	Jac.	艺	V	سهرالنسالد	ىد
Clay	ممنغى	2/16	·2	سهمرلکفنومد	de
الغاد	كور	لنونى	C.	ستماصابدالجل	ىو
وري	منفخ	(4)	الفوز	سكيم منرب الجنف	مو
الأزام	لغن	Je,	rei	سهموالعذام	*

فالسهما والمهمنا فهمنا في المدر المان العد الماور الماور والمادر والمالات المدر المادر والمالات المدر المالات العد المالات العد المالات العد المالات العد المالات العد المالات العد المالات العد المالات العد المالات العد المالات العد المالات العد المالات العد المالات العد المالات العد العالمة المالات العد المالات العد العالمة المالات العد المالات العد المالات العد المالة المالات العد المالة ال

481

481. Famā al-tasmīm wa'l tashrīq wa'l taghrīb. We now proceed to deal with the various positions of the planets in relation to the sun, which are responsible for the most CAZIMI complete changes which closely ORIENTALITY resemble changes in their indications, OCCIDENTALITY due to the vicissitudes of natural 152. conditions.

If a planet should be within less than 16' of conjunction with the sun or have passed it by less than the same amount, it is designated as 'samim'. The superior planets, however, are only in such a position in the middle of their direct course, while the inferior planets are in it in the middle of their direct and retrograde courses. In regard to 'tashriq' orientality, the inferior planets in the middle of their retrograde course resemble the superior in the middle of their direct course. If the superior planets and the inferior ones in the middle of the retrograde course exceed the minutes of taşmim all2 are said to be 'muhtariq', combust, until their distance from the sun is 60; thereafter they are no longer so styled but are said to be under the rays. In this condition they remain like prisoners in confinement until the distance of Venus and Mercury from the sun amounts to 120, of Saturn and Jupiter to 150 and of Mars to 180. This point is described as the beginning of 'tashriq' orientality, 3 but they are not necessarily visible at this period, for the time of visibility varies with each country and climate. But the term tashriq is properly limited (to the heliacal rising) and after this they are designated 'musharriq', which the Persians call 'kanar-i ruzī'. Thereafter the higher planets differ from the lower, for the former continue tending eastward till they are 300

in the middle of the heart, (Lane) of the sun. In astrological works, cazimi. The Cent. Dict. suggests a derivation from qalb and shams, but Kaşamim, as if the heart, is more probable.

² End of lacuna in PL.

I They are now west (right) of the sun, rise before it in the east, and become morning stars.

بعلام لموبلنج نانيجون خاما فلنجدل لانليا ذكراجوال العجاجب بالاسافد الالممر فانهاا فوي المجن لولالإنها واشد عجار كالإجوال الطبيعية فالنمم والمنزو فالعرب اذاعان العوب مع النفرق في النهاستدع فرد فيف ما دونها ومنبع مفارسها علا فالكوك بمحصمها فاما الحواجب اللذالع لوثير فعض لهاذ لك فع كالمدين الاستفامه فقط والمالله فلمان وغير الماكات في والحدم وسط الاستعامه و وسط الرجوع نصل الحرمنها مواذ لوسط استفامدالعلوسب المزالست منب فاذاجاوذت العجلوس ذابوالنصيم واوزها المسغلبان وسط المزوع شب كها عنرفد ال زيب بريع المرعف سنددجات دبرولعها بمدالاجراف فبرعت السعاع فععانها ناهب البئروزمنه والطهورال انصب العدب النمر وبزك واحدم المراه عظادد النيعبث ردرجه وزجل المتنزي حسد عنزد حدوا لمرنع عازجه منص ف المادل أسريقها ولبر تعي م الطهور للابساد فاند عنلف في للافالم والاصاد والماهو عرام المورد وبعرد للنهم سرود والفرس سمح سينج بار رُورْی ثَمْ بَفِع المنشال بِزالع المعلی فامالله العبادة فانها نشم منت ود

481

from the sun, and after which they are said to be weakly oriental till a distance of 90° is attained, and the name tashriq does not cease to be applied for at sunrise they are in the eastern quarter, while whenever the 90° is exceeded the term orientality ceases to be applicable. Thereafter the first stationary point is reached, after which the retrograde movement sets in; when this is concluded there is again a stationary point before the direct course is entered. Arrival at opposition to the sun occurs in the middle of the retrograde path, which is thus divided into two sections, lst and 2Md.

The higher planets after their station until they are distant 90° from the sun are in the east at sunset, but when less than 90° incline to the west, and when the distance is 50° this situation is called the beginning of occidentality (taghrīb), till Mars is 18°, Saturn and Jupiter 15°, and thereafter they are under the rays, until only 6° separate them, when they are combust, until only 16° remain when they are again in tasmim.

In the Almagest the opposition of the higher planets to the sun is called the beginning of the night (ἀκρόνυχος), latraf al-lail). (kanar-i shab), it is a situation which is peculiar to the higher planets, for under it they rise at sunset. The Persians however, are in the habit of using the expression Kanar-i shab for both higher and lower planets, but that condition which they call the beginning of the night is really occidentality, therefore they add west, so as to distinguish between the two.

I The Mafatih al-Tulum defines the expressions Kanar-i ruz and Kanar-i shab incorrectly as respectively visible at night and visible in the morning.

الانسواليو المودية مرام والمتراف والمتراف المترافي المارية ولأرول بهاالانم اللانها تسعون فشطلي بالبردالة فاخارادالبيد على بعدد العنمام المسرق لما خصواً مُ مَمْ بعدد للنبوع وبرحم بعبكا فأمد مفتم عنفام الرجوع للاستفامد وبيث واستقبالما المتر بدوسط الرجوع فترسف والآل زجوعا ونسف يدالكنزرجوعا مليا ومجبع الاستفامعال انصبرالبعد بزالتروسها متعزج بجوري فاغرب الشريح للنرف واذ انفش عضه بنطاله بجوالمعزب مقين فاذاصادهدا البيد المنزي معنواول المغرب المات بسير المعد المرح نازع سرد دمد ولسكل المين والمسترى حسده ورجوتم بسبر العبدة للت عللناء المان بحوال بمها وبزال ترست درجات العدف وبد وبعود اللعبم معدبتني المجتسطي مفاملات العيكوس النمير الإجوال المريسي لطاف للبراودكك يا المتروالفرمس بما بلغتم كالسي لحكم الأاخر يعبها والسفيلي وهوالنعرب ابضالك عندفي اول اللبل مُسمَّى مَلِمُ بِمُسلَّدِ بِهُ مِلْ اللهُ وَلِي اللهُ وَلِي اللهُ وَلِي اللهُ وَاللهُ وَاللّهُ وَاللّهُ وَاللهُ وَاللّهُ واللّهُ وَاللّهُ وَالللّهُ وَاللّهُ
482-485

482. Hal-i suflian az pas tashrīq. We said that the orientality of Venus and Mercury occurs on the retrograde pathl and is not

INFERIOR PLANETS
AFTER TASHRIQ

retrograde path¹ and is not completed till a distance of 30° from the sun in both cases. Thereafter they are stationary

and then comes the direct course to their greatest (western) elongation, after which they again begin to approach the sun. All of these situations are called oriental, until 120 separate them from the sun, the beginning of their matutine occultation in the east. They are under the rays until 70 from the sun_and are then combust till they reach the limit of samim and conjoin with the sun in the middle of their direct course. Z Thereafter they pass out from samim, when their situation in the west resembles that of the higher planets in the east to the extent which has been noted of them in regard to combustion and being under the rays and visibility at evening twilight. Then they cain their greatest eastern elongation and stop before they again retrograde, passing through all the stages the distances of which we have noticed till they return to tasmim on the retrograde course.

Venus and Meroury as regards

Venus and Meroury as regards

HOW VENUS DIFFERS orientality and occidentality,

FROM MERCURY HERE as has been done between Mars

on the one hand and Saturn and

Jupiter on the other, (astronomers are agreed that

no such distinction is necessary between these two

planets) for Venus has a very high latitude, and

sometimes conjunction occurs when it has attained

its highest north latitude, it then remains visible,

so that the expressions combust and under the rays

cease to be applicable, although the planet is in

those positions; similarly at tasmim when the north

After inferior conjunction.

² Superior conjunction.

^{3 149,60 221.}

كلبهما مبلغان لإبعيك برعزال مرفالاي تبيغ السروه والأعامد تم الاستقامد م بلوغ اصامالما بان لمِعادُ مِز المُعدِعِ المُمْثِى ثُمْ باخْوالْ الْفُرابِ مَنِها وهُما ويجبع ذلك وسومان المزنول إنب براتني بشرد زجه وخلك اولعنها فيلترف طلغروات تمسيران تحت الشجاع الأب بسبر عذاالب دون سمح درجات فيجنز فان عندم فارتد النمريب بران مبميزع وسط الاستفامد فم بوارب علمانة المعب بعيدة للمالك بالكعيات في المسترف المساد برا لمنصون لاحد إلها وكونهما تختالنبع اع وبرو رسمامند بالعشبات للنعرب ثم بمبرال الم غابدالبع دغ المنزع الأمامه والرجوع والعود اللكلاف المكف ومعتد لمغماا لابعاد المديون لمما والنسيم بالجرع في اختصاح فهل بفيص اللغرم في خلك عن عط ارد الما في نعرب المزنول النعرس فانجب ان بحون بهافصلاك ان فصل المرتب الأ الصاب الصناعد على اذكرمام بجعيلوا ابضابن ذيل المسترى فبنفرقا فداما مام عليد واما ما بزار في وعُط ارد فالما كنت العنص اور بالفن له النصميم والكيخيران وهي في النصاعرضها في الشال منكون وفت كونها وعلى النصميم والكيخيران وفي في النبياع طاهره ذال عنها سأنان المنها وكذلك

483-486

latitude exceeds 70, it must not be described as samimah nor muhtariqah but simply as accompanying the sun, muqarinah.

484. Famā hāl al-qamar min al-shams. The position of the moon with regard to the sun as to tasmīm and combustion is similar to that of RELATIVE POSITION the other planets, as long as the SUN AND MOON distance is less than 7 east or west of the sun; beyond that it is under the rays till the distance increases up to 120 which is approximately new moon; thereafter the various distances described as phases (254) which produce the quarter, half, three quarters and complete illumination succeed, and are followed at the same distances on the other side of opposition by similar figures.

Astronomers agree that all three higher planets from
the time of conjunction to
POSITION RIGHT opposition, and both lower planets
AND LEFT OF SUN from conjunction on the retrograde
to that on the direct course, and
the moon from opposition to conjunction are to the
right (west) of the sun, while the higher planets from
opposition to conjunction, and the lower from conjunction on the direct to that on the retrograde course, and
the moon from conjunction to opposition are on the left
(east) of the sun.

486. <u>Hal tataghayyar ta'thIrEt al-kawakib</u> bitaghayyur ahwalha. It may be asked whether with the changes in situation of INFLUENCE OF PLANETS UNDER the planets described. CHANGED CONDITIONS their action also changes. If their action did not change, there would be no advantage in paying attention to these situations. Astrologers are however agreed that the maximum influence of the planets is at tasmim, and during this the indications are of happiness and good news; they are also agreed that such influence is at its minimum in combustion, until it arrives at a point where unluckiness changes to ruination. However, distinctions are made in accordance with the concord and discord of the nature of the

بذالسبم اذا كانعُرضا والسلاك من ودجات المريضة ولاصمها ولنعن أن الني فطحال الفرمز المتي الزيدا وكالكؤاك فالنسب ومفدان فإالبتراواذ احطانه وماب ووبر للمرتب فيجت المرو مالمغب افل سبع درج وفي المعوز تخسال عاد اداد البعد على المال النعت ردرجه محدالاملال بلف رب تمالابها دالي حضناها سد العاشيسان والخيب فهاللسوف ربع جرمه وبغض نعو وبالمنارا عدك كدوة خيق الاستقبال في البعد برافط برز الاملال الما المرعز المن والله المر الذيعال أعال ناعد مواز للله العلوس المون وفن الجيرافه الحيماللم والمسفليان مزلدن خبرافهما بدوسر الاستفاره والقرمن الاستقبال الاخماء ببكوزمن امنه غرالم مرواما المبدار فهوالع الورجزوف مفالمد الممرا إمفارتها والسفلين للن لحرافها فوسط الاستفامد الاحرافها في مسط الأجوع وللفي مزالاجباع الاستفال ع هو العام المالك المحال المعال المعال المالية المالك المعال المالك لولم ببغيزما كالخصيل والهافاب فأماالي دخوا عانفياسها الالمترفق لجمع على النصيرة على المؤه والحرب بدوال المال على الفر موافي المخراف الدين على المال المال المال المال المال المال المال والمخالف المال المال والمحال و

486

planets, as e.g. heat may become increased and moisture diminished, consequently the injurious influence of combustion is less with some planets and greater with others. After conjunction, the planet, when under the rays, is like a sick person advancing to convalescence, and when oriental attains full strength and is in a position to bestow all its benefits. The Persians call this its vazirate, [and any one who wishes to do a good act, does it at this time.)P They extend this name to the whole of the position right of the sun, until at a distance of 500 from the sun the beneficial action begins to stop, and the indications of happiness to become moderate, till at 600 the action changes, this point is called the minor unlucky point, 750 the middle unlucky point, and combustion (on the retrograde) the major unlucky point. The planet at the first resting place appears strangled, hopeless, in the first section of the retrograde course sluggish and depressed, while in the second section hope of succour is given, which is confirmed in the second station, delivery being near at hand, while the direct course indicates, as its name suggests, prosperity and power. Similarly the nature of the planets alters from their rising to their setting in the excentric orbit, being dry during the former and moist in the latter, without however the nature of their action being affected. Also from rising to setting in the orbit of the epicycle, for from the oriental phase to the first stop they are moist, then to the middle of the retro rade course marm, then to the second stop, dry, and back to orientality cold. The reason of the change in the orbit of the epicycle is that the action of the latter is bound up with the sun, and it is said that nearness to the sun means dryness and distance moisture. Combustion also changes the nature and other conditions like rising and setting which bring about

l dasturiyyah. (dastur vazīr bud)P position of thority.

الطباع ومنافز كالمخ يفطا لمروبضع فالدطب منساد بذكك ملاستعران بالإخراف اعل على المستعلمة المستعلمة المستعلمة المستعلمة المستعدابا الإبلال والفنق ويستحل المنزن كالمع الذي عبر يغوي على كالبطابا ومبميد الف وريسور و و فعوها البناعل البام علام ولياج بالمنز ونجوعها باخت فالوفف فينوسط والالهاع الاستعباد والحروانجس عنهاضع مك الدلام العب بنيط الامر مراكب الاستغرال ب خسكه وشبعيز المنف الاوسط واللاجتماف الشف الانعبر والمعوجب فالافامه كالمتبز الاسبرو فيالرج كالمجير المضرب الوجد وفي المجع الكنية شال جج المنجات وبف الافامعالماني مفى الرجاقه من الرجا والاستفامد كاسهاوع الاقبال والفق وعنك تنغير طباعا بالمعود فكالملاح فبكون بإبساً والمبود فبنع بعون لمبائر غير النعب وعبفت والفاعليه وتنعير اسَانِ الله وبرالسبود فيدوالمبود فيصون وللالفي فالمام لأول رهبه والعسط الرجوع جانه واللغام المان بايت والالزنوالخذ ما ذن وأما نعبت العبد الفاعل لانابوذ فك الدورمنو طوالتمر وفرفر أن المعبد الفاعل المورض الماعدة المعام ومغين العلام المراحد الماعدة الماعدة المعمد الماع مع مع بن العلام المعرف الماع مع مع بن العلام المعرف الماع مع مع بن العلام المعرف الماع مع مع بن العلام المعرف الماع مع مع بن العلام المعرف ال

486

action in the epicycle different from that in the excentric orbit. The circumstance that the planet is posited in moist places of the signs or terms gives friendliness; again, in the matter of maleness and femaleness they change, becoming male when oriental and female when occidental.

Again among the signs the planets also are affected by the indications of the whole sign, just as the soul depends on the condition of the body, and so a male planet becomes effeminate when in a female sign, and is even affected by the male and female degrees of a sign, so that there are mixed indications of eunuchism and hermaphroditism, effeminate men and masculine women.

So also in quadrants of the sphere in relation to the horizon the planets may change in the matter of sex, and also at the cardines. The effect of situation at the cardines however is simply to increase the influence of the planet, so that good fortune at a cardinal point is increased, especially if the sign be a fixed one. Calamity and adversity are also intensified in a fixed sign especially if cadent to the cardines, while they are weakened in a tropical sign especially if not cadent.

Some people assert that the west is favourable to the lower planets, and the east to the higher, but you must understand that this is derived only from the analogy of maleness and femaleness, the east being male and the west female, while the criterion of the difference between them is distance from the sun.

It has been shown that the orientality of the superior planets occurs on the direct course after combustion, on this account they are then more powerful because as it were, they are escaping from distress and calamity; comparable to this is the vespertine visibility of the inferior planets, which also occurs after combustion on the direct course.

وعيره فلذااضاف ذكك الحالم يودوالمبوط بازل الله فكأكالاب وبغيز على كما الحوعب للواصع الرجين العبروج والمدود فعنبع بروم والمرز مالما بست فبحدث الشزيق فرحن وكبذ النفس سأنث وكاك إلاوح بنع دلالدالزح اباع المفرخ إج الدرخي للحوعب الاعرب بعندد برح ائع على المن ومع بعض المربع ببب درجامة المنحره وللوند فرادل مع مانجانالادله على لمنبان للنبي مونى لأجل ممنعي المالمت المتاه منبرة ارماع الفلك المحسب لافق معنى للنحود والانه شاوب الطباع الأنعم سعبر فالاوبادوغيره أخاسد فالانتدفاللاله والاضجف بجظراسعان المتورية الاوماد وكاصه اداكات بأوجآ كابن ومشتد تزلخوس البروح الماند وخاصه اذاكات عزالاؤكاد ذابله ويعوز أغرها بفالمروح المغلبه وخاصداذ المنيئ فالمج وفرفال فنم النالمغه المسف لمن والمز فللعلوب وكانم دهبوا مذالي المشاكله في المعتم بالنصوب كالمنوند وإطلفواالفنس وععقين ملك اوز فيها الإمعادع المخرصع لممان المشري للعب لوبيجور والاستفامه بهناك براف فبوافها لاند لها بنداد الابعاب مزي بالورطد ويواذس المهود المنفيلين فالمعب بالجشيان سنفير فأسل فالخالك

486

The occidentality of the superior planets occurs likewise on their direct course as they proceed to combustion, so to this is comparable the matutine occultation of the inferior planets also on their direct course. The crientality of the inferior planets resembles that of the superior ones in as much as in both cases it takes place after combustion: if the inferior planets were at that time direct there would be entire agreement of all in the matter of orientality. But the occidentality of the inferior planets, when their movement becomes slow, is a much more injurious and weakening influence than the occidentality of the superior ones because the former have now turned their faces both towards the retrograde course and combustion; so the superior planets in their oscidental phase are safer than the inferior, because it is only succeeded by their occultation.

We have extracted from Ya qub b. Ishaq al-Kindil all that a beginner requires to know with regard to the different indications of the planets as to their powerful influence in orientality and their weakness in occidentality, although these differences do not amount to being exact opposites.

I The "Philosopher of the Arabs" - 9th Century. For his philosophical work of. Hügel, Al-Kindī, Leipzig 1857: for his scientific work Wiedemann, XXXVI, XLII, XLIV: for his astrological writings Loth, Al-Kindī als Astrolog, Leipzig 1875. V. note to 250.

المعنان علما تعرب المعلوسة عورة إستفاعها وهي حاجها الله عالى وبواد براغه فالسفا برخ المستوب المستفاعة والتسمسة بنير فأنه على المستفاعة ولا المناز بالمستفاعة ولا المناز بالمستفاعة ولو عام المرالم المستفاعة ولا المناز المستفاعة ولو عام المناف المستفاعة ولا المناف المنا

الحزول

487-488

487. Dalälathä wa hiya mucharrigah.

486. <u>Palālathā wa hiya</u>

INDICATIONS WHILE ORIENTAL

INDICATIONS WHILE OCCIDENTAL

	TUDIOTATIANO MUITE ANIMATE					
'n	Beginning of old age, happy in farming and art of irrigation, profound and effective judgment, sharp and authoritative dispatch of all business matters.	Advanced old age, miserable standard of living, business mean and small in extent, work in connection with irrigation and wells, poor food, fraud.				
4	Beginning of manhood and naturity, good conduct, beauty, slegance, desirous of office as vizir or qudl so as to insure justice, many possessions good reputation, joy in children.	Advanced middle age, occupations of moderate importance, position as prefect or law-agent, and all things connected with religion such as copying books of traditions; immoral acts, pilgrimage, sufficient wealth.				
\$	Leading in battle, commanding armies, reputation for courage sagerness for conquest; quickness in business; success in mining.	Mean positions in the army such as butcher, cook, smith, farrier, surgeon; theft; work to do with fire and iron.				
0	Tashriq and taghrib indicating position relative to sun are inapplicable to the sun itself.					
Ş	actions when oriental are less effective than when pooldental.	Beauty, hatred, love, joy, glad- ness, pleasure, marriage, gifts; as to crafts, forbidden pleasures, work with colours, pictures, brocades, embroidery.				
¥	Intelligence, reasoning power long consideration, wise de- pisions, poetry, elequence, slerk of taxes, surveyor, orderliness, affability, medicine, astrology.	Same as under tashriq but less efficient; occidentality occasions little harm to it and to Venus.				
	From middle of month to 22nd denotes mature manhood, thereafter to conjunction, old age.	From conjunction to 7th day, childhood, from there to opposition, youth; when the moon is under the rays it points to things secret and concealed, and especially it points to the ill condition of creatures resembling the light at that stage.				

دلالهادى فينس	دلالهاوف فنتعن	
المسوح الحاسر وسفا المعاشون المدار	اول المنهود والسيال بليات وصناعا المرعد	5
الاعلام فنغ المدرولابطا فالأبلولمة والأبار والعلم الدى وللسل		2,
احراكات نهال والمسناعات الموسطو الفرز	اول المكنها ل مرالين و الحال المالية	3
المسلوالازكوبالذك المساء عللهسو	ومراولم الوران والفنها والصافرالماس	3
والمساخذة والمفاوسة المال المالية الأعال لمساخذة والمفاوسة المالية المواد المالية المواد المالية المواد المالية المواد المالية المواد المالية المواد المالية المواد المالية المواد المالية المواد المالية المواد المالية المال	. ما و فلا سیاسه الح وب و فواد الحوم و فعد	*3
واعازالمارولكوبدوالساعات المؤرو المسار كالعصاب والطباح ولكعادو المسار	المسئ فالجن ولكوم عاالمة والعلم	1
ومراوله عراحات	المعادب المشروة والمغرب حاصلات	1
	بماملااتسال لما بدا	
المالعة فموالمسن والفرح والعلم والله	العالما فالمتزبوانفس	1.3
الملائم والأسباع والبراونو وعر	منهابذالغرب	J'
ماد ڪنهاهُ بيڪل النيز او د بيس	العماد المعرب بالمورواست الملكا	.7-
المعرب عليه وعلى رهم والا	والمساعة ومعلماهد نفرزوهم وعلم الطب والغوم ن	3.5
من المناع المابع ذال بمرول كالعبول المناء المناء	منعه النزالال والعزب	3
دل عاد ارول عام وهو عاصد ولا على	مر المالا عالم المالا	عرد ا
عادعاروا سال سيلد لا البور مراس		

489-490

489. ME al-ittisal wa'l-insiraf. The terms application and separation (ittigal and insiraf) refer to the formation of aspects between the planets and withdrawal from such APPLICATION positions. These are dependent on the AND SEPARATION signs, and the same names are employed which we have already explained in regard to the aspects of the signs, 375 viz. conjunction, two sextile, two square, two trine and opposition. When two constellations are in aspect, planets within them are also in aspect, when the former are not in aspect, the planets in them are inconjunct and concealed from each other. When two planets are in the same sign or in two signs in aspect to each other and at the same degree, they are said to be conjoint in reality, and the one whose orbit is lower is said to apply itself (ittagala) to that whose orbit is higher, because the lower one is swifter and constantly overtakes the slower one. Consequently the moon applies itself to all the planets and is applied to by none; Meroury applies itself to all except the moon, Venus to all except the moon and Mercury, the sun Mars and Jupiter to those above them, Saturn alone applies itself to no planet because all are below it. When of two planets in aspect, the degrees of the inferior one are less than those of the superior planet, the inferior one is said to be proceeding to conjunction and when greater to be separating from the superior. At the time of conjunction the lower planet is said to be conferring counsel (dafir tadbir)1 on the higher and the latter receiving counsel from it (madfu'ilaihi). This is conjunction in longitude.

is like meeting, and separation like parting, so an inferior planet when it enters a sign inferior planet when it enters a sign application where it comes into aspect with a superior one, begins to show its movement towards conjunction, which increases till conjunction is completed, unless something else intervenes such as its being outstripped by another planet, or deserted by the superior planet.

I dafara is here used in its sense of giving, not that of repelling.

ما الاتصاك الانصر إف مامقة ونان البطرة ونظر العواكب شعلن البزوح فالحواجب فهابناهم فهأمشاط وبالاشاع المخ فالمصاحب المفادن والنشد بتروالتهع بزوالسليز فالمعيابل دنيا لاننا لم بعينهاعر بعض ملدسنن وكلحوجبر فرح اوبي حبن اطرزاذ إناه د مُجامَما فهما عِلْحابُ كالنسال والمنسَل في مَاهوالا بي فلي واسفالل نَوْاسَع تسائح بعداملخ الفيروالأهر مسلها آسهى عطايد والفرز فالهانج لدهما والتمر مص المالع الهدون السفية والمرتخ بسلطافه فدم الميسرى ورجل والأسماكا يحتد والمتدى سبارة بالاحتان وزبل سائة م الصحاب اصلا المهاكلاونه فاداكاللم لحالك كباطرن فادرجامن العلي كان الباللانسال بومنسانيوه وانصان البعيا المراجا لهو منفرف عندبجوماا تصليع وأستحاله على المنها دافع تدبر والعياد كملاقوعاا لبد سذاه الاسال الطرك الملك الإسالع بالحل الاسال علام والانمراف كالفوف مانالسم الذاجسل وسيح البطرفعراخ والتحرك والكوك

490-492

leaving the sign in which it was before completion, or by itself becoming retrograde and thus frustrating completion. But there is much difference of opinion as to the amount and limits of completion. Some people say that it begins at 5 degrees and continues till the degrees are equal, the 5 'dead' degrees, 491, being made the basis of this interpretation. Others say 6 degrees, because it is the fifth of a sign, and the average of the planets' terms, 455. Others again say 12 degrees, the distance at which the light of the moon is obscured by the sun, and still others, 15 degrees, the orb of the sun, while others say the average of the respective orbs of the planets in question (456). Again many assert that only complete conjunction need be attended to.

Separation begins when the degree of the inferior becomes even a minute higher than that of the superior, but, on account of the trace of influence which remains, the completion of separation should be determined by the amount assigned to the beginning of application.

degrees referred to are five degrees beyond the ascendant in the direction THE 'DEAD' DEGREES opposite to the succession of the signs. Ptolemy does not reckon these as belonging to the twelve houses, and does not regard them as cadent to the ascendant, but if there is a planet in them he associates it with the ascendant.

are two other kinds of conjunction besides that in longitude, viz. in latitude and in CONJUNCTION ONLY nature. The former occurs when the IN LONGITUDE? latitude of two planets is the same either north or south, and the degrees of latitude are equal. Then they are said to be conjoint by latitude. If the degrees are not equal one must look whether that of lower latitude is rising in the quarter in question, and whether that of higher latitude is setting in the same quarter, if so, they are said to be moving towards conjunction. If the

الوائق الله لوي عزالرح فبالع مالاتسال بداوا دمولد السفلي للرج عليا من الانسال وفد اخلفو لندجك فقيوم فالواان لماله مرحسة دبيح سوبغيما واغلوافد مالدرجات لحراكم بدواخرو فالواازا فالأوسب حرب لانعاخر المرح الذى واطلعداد المعدل للوالحواجب وبسرطاح التيعش بسبالمعد الكنوب للفر واخرو والعاحم عن درجه بسبب ود الممرالمعروف بفوه جرمهالمامها وخلفها ومذبهم حقق فج لهدا الانصالة اكان فيهام ليسف عموع قوة جرمبهما عماد حك قوم في للفادند وأبؤه بالماطر الأخرة إنبهل والماالانماف فلمرلة عرسوى رمادات درجات السفلي على وحاف العلوب حزائم عالواولود فيف واحده لاندا مفراخ الصورواما في بفاالالد فستنجل مهاالمف دير المدكون للانسلاخي كوركم الانساف عدم م فالدحات المندهجة حدج مل دحه الطالع الخلاف التوالي نواما بطلبور فالبان عشرولاذا بليع الطلع واذاكان فبماكواجب عن كائ فالطابع فهاللانصال وع غنزالطول لدنوعان عرض عطبعي ماالوح غربها عُدالكَ مُعْرَعُونا عِبِطْ والْبِهِ والأولسِعِدفَها فهوذ إهِ اللَّهَاللَّا

492

latitude of the setting planet is lower than that of the rising one, they are separating. If both are rising one must see whether the extreme latitude of the lower is not less than that of the higher one, if so, they are moving towards conjunction; if less, that cannot occur. If both are setting, and that which has the higher latitude is quicker in setting, they are said to higher latitude is quicker in setting, they are said to be proceeding to conjunction, whether that is completed or not, because that of lower latitude may move to the other side (or the other may overtake it)?

The superiority of conjunction by latitude to that by longitude is due to the fact that it does not occur except when the planets are in aspect.

There is another advantage viz. that suppose an inferior planet applies itself to a superior in longitude and then to a third in latitude which is inconjunct to the superior one, then the latter does not continue in conjunction by longitude at the same time.

Conjunction by nature occurs when two planets are in equipolient signs, 377, and takes place when they arrive at corresponding degrees in these. B.g. Jupiter is in 20° of Aries and the moon in 5° of Pisces, when the latter has attained to 10° of Pisces, which is the corresponding degree to 20° of Aries, the conjunction by nature is completed. The condition becomes fortified if the planets are in aspect during this conjunction in nature. Similarly if two planets are in corresponding degrees in signs correspondent by direction, the conjunction is complete; e.g. Jupiter is at 20° of Aries and the moon at 5° of Virgo, then complete conjunction will occur at 10° of Virgo. Aspect here also improves the condition.

مروات ألا عن عرسا بسيد في الحديد والأمل بسط فيها فنوسر في عز الأسال انصلامها عرز فيها تمكان في الأفل على المالي في ال اللاسلام واعزين الني ان والعرف المعرف المعرف المعرف المعرف الدب مرحببينا كتنعضا لانداضر طلخ وج ككالمق اللفعل المرمضلا وإن كالمعاما بطن سكان الاعتريم سااسرع بدب وه منود اجهال ولأسلافها غرورتا لمبغما بنف الالاعل عضاال جبيد اخزى مؤام فاالمذع المحب بالطول فلاندكل بكوز للاع ندمنا فم المسبعد ولك فابن شالماان بنسل وعب باخرع لم يمن مع الطول وبنسل معد البرس أفيط غرب وكالعلي والمالغ والمالمال والمال والم بحونالعوعهان فرجن مفين فالني فاخاجم لاع الدرجا المنفنان فالغره مقداسلام لاف بسون للمستريدة عشرن وبعمز الجلوالم فيخسر مِنْ لِلمِنْ فَعُومُ مُسَالِهِ وَالمَ ذَلِكَ عِنْدِلْوعَدُ عِرْدِ رَجِ مِنْ لِلْمِنْ ثُمَ انْ الْمُرْدِجُ الْما فهواو صدللامرا ومحويل برجيز متف عبن الطريق فاخاج صلاعل الرجيز المقنقبن الطريقد فغلتم الانسال خلاف سكوز للتنع ينجث ديوا والغرز وخترج مزالت سلم فبرعوز عام الانسال باعدد دج مزاله بالموالل فأ

193-494

1008 testimony and dignity (shahadah wa muza amah) are synonymous terms and are applicable to synonymous planet in two different ways. One con-

TESTIMONY planet in two different ways. One con-AND DIGNITY cerns the fortunate position which it may occupy, nasib, hazz: (bahraP) if e.g.

it should be lord of the house, 440, in which it is situated, or be in its exaltation, 443, or in any other position congenial to it, it may have one or more of these dignities. If however it is not in a favourable situation it is said to be peregrine (gharIb), while if either in its detriment, 442, or its fall, 443, calamity is added to the alien situation.

The other kind results from something outside the situation of the planet, and is of three varieties. lat, when it is in a situation favourable to another planet and on this account has the advantages of that other attributed to it, whether that be lordship of a house or exaltation; 2nd, depending on the disposition or essential nature of the planet, as e.g. the testimony of Mars is connected with war and lawsuits, of Jupiter with riches and estates, of Venus with amusement and marriage; 3rd, dependent on time, such as day for the sun and night for the moon, or the lordship of the day or hour or the like.

494. Fal lilshahadat tartib. The dignities have a certain order of precedence. Most important is the lordship of the house, next,

ORDER OF PRECEDENCE exaltation, then, term, then triplicity, lastly, face; and so. a certain scale of numbers

I Verbal noun of za ama III to become chief a/c lane = muzahamah the & replacing the Z (as in 502 AB.) but Muzā am a dignified planet and muzā amiyyah dignity in the abstract also occur. D.S.T. p. 618 muza amah is the claim of a planet for dominion (zavamah) in a sign in which it has a fortunate position (Khatt for hazz) and such a planet is called the muza am of that sign or shahid, witness. M'U p. 229 "muza amah i.e. hazz such as lordship of house, exaltation or the like". Dozy I 593 gives a faulty definition of muz am with a partial quotation from Slane Prol. II 219 n. 1 as = promittor (which need not be a dignified planet or a planet at all) and as occupying the second place in the zodiac in the direction of the Succession of Signs - a definition of promittor in connection with the operation of direction V. 521" AO1 and AB1 have muraghama (alienated) by mistaks.

مَامُنَا الْمِسَاءُ وَ اللَّهِ مَالَمُ الْمُلْسَاهِ وَلِلْ الْجِيمِ الْعَطْنَانَ مُرَادُوانَ مَا الْمُلْسَاهِ وَلِلْ الْجِيمِ وَالْعَظْنَانَ مُرَادُوانَ علمعنى اجد وبفعان الحواجب على اجدنوعين اولها على وضعدالذى عوبد مان اله فيد نصب علوم و بطلمللبن كان المرف برعون فيمشرفداو غيرذلك مابنولا وسنب السعهوسها فالدفيداو شهادات وإزلم بفولة في موضعه شيم الولا بدنهو فبرعرب وانصاف الموصح مُضاد الغوِّ ابْصَهَا بدِ كالومال والمبوط فَلَكُ بليد مَابِرم على نعرب ع والنوع الناب بفع على غيرموضيد وسفه الملاح روب الماعليموضع كوب اخراد اولم مذخطام المخطوط المذكورة منى سبم العادل ساق على ذَكُ العرجي وبَعُال رب ببنداورب شفد امام جعد سفد وطباع نفسد على المُونْ عِنْهان المربع بن الفيال وللمنومات وشان المنترى على الله وللافالنوالأمن على الهووالكاله والمام حصنوالنوب بالمثلاف الشرابهاد والعز بالليل دب الموم حالسنا عدوامنال ذلك هاللتهادان تربنب المترم بالمزاع زياجب البث أصلجه الشرف بمسكب أبادغ صكب الملدة صاجب الوجدف يستب ذكاح جلوا عياد البيت خسنة ويجباد النزف أدبع تد والمولاد والمثلث الثنب والوجواجد

494-495

has been assigned to them, viz. 5 to the house, 1 4 to exaltation, 3 to term, 2 to triplicity and 1 to face. The dignities of the various planets may therefore be added up and compared with each other, so as to see which is pre-eminent. It is related that an authority on this subject assigns 30 to the lordship of the ascendant, 20 to exaltation, 10 to lordship of face, 5 to that of term, 3 1/2 to that of triplicity, 4 1/2 to that of the hour, and finally to the sun or moon, whichever is lord of time, as much as to the lordship of the ascendant. The figures are then added and compared. This is the practice of the Astrologers of Babylon and Persia, who regard the lordship of the face as very important. But among the Astrologers of the present day, the triplicity is regarded as having precedence over term and face, and indeed the latter is often considered of no account. Further in certain circumstances changes may take place in this order, e.g. the lord of exaltation may take precedence over the lord of the house in matters of empire and government in high places. It is necessary to know that these dignities are strengthened by aspect, or by other conditions which replace aspect, because if the numbers of two planets add up equal, one of which is in aspect and the other inconjunct, the former is preferred even if its favourable positions and testimonies amount to less than those of the latter.

495. ME al-mubtazz. The word 'mubtazz' means a live al-bait, a standard allowance to the house.

2 One of the meanings of bazza is to gain the mastery, and the derivatives in the Tafhim are not recorded in the ordinary dictionaries, but the Mafatih al-vulum p. 229 the ordinary dictionaries, but the Mafatih al-vulum p. 229 the al-ibtizaz, the possession by a planet of many dignities in a sign, the planet itself is called mubtazz valaihi. The Tafhim has ibtizaziyyah alaihi, the mastery valaihi. The Tafhim has ibtizaziyyah alaihi, the mastery of a sign. The word has undergone a considerable change in the Medieval Astrologies. Abu Marshar A2 al-mubtez, Hali, 22 seq. al-mutez, Alcabitius p. 81. al-mutem.

Junctinus I, 1307. Al-mutaz, id est planeta qui habuerit dignitatem in ascendente gradu. 525.

id... 141. Al-muten, hoc est vincens, habens plures dignitates. Wilson, Almuten, The strongest planet in a figure in essential or accidental dignities. The change from z to m or n is probably due to the circumstence that ziis frequently used as a contraction or substitute that ziis frequently used as a contraction or substitute for m and n. Cent. Diot. and N.E.D. Almuten for O.Fr. for m and n. Cent. Diot. and N.E.D. Almuten for O.Fr. al-mutaz = al-mu'taz as if from azza VIII - ingenious but not in accordance with the history of the word.

. لجمع المستونب الاعداد خطوطها ومقابل بنماجي مرف الفاضل والمابس متجسى عزن كالماستين أندسكان بسع لساجب البث المبرولساجب شرفه عشرن كيكب الوجدعش ولساجب ليلاخت ولساجب للكرنك ولصاجب المتناعداديع ونسيف وليصاجب المؤبد بزالين مثل مالعلجب الطالع بمتعبر فالكواجب الجنبيد لها بعيمها مبعض وهذادا يبنبدراب فرمااهل الفرس في مقرع صاحب الوجد و واما قوم مرجع المغمر فالمم مولى الله من الوجد ومنهم مركي بلف الى الوجد اصلاً وبفع . ٤ مذا الربب اخلاف سب الإجوال فأنصل جب المربب اخلاف على المجب البب ف الموزِ السلطان والمراسد والمرف وتحب انته المن والمنهادات الملااومابغوم مفامر المطرفانة ادلاجتمع ليسكول والميرم وعصب بنسادار اوتساوت اجزا حظوظها كاللغية مالماطئها بالمحالف واجن عان على احتب ما المشنو المنزم الغالب وعوم طاو ومفيد فالمطاف مكافؤ كالمتحاكب فجالوت واحترهاتهان فيوضعه مرالافئ والحواجب والمفيد بعوا تواحساه المستها والمستادة على المحلال المستوسد والمعتب المستوس ال

495-497

victorious planet and victory may be arrived at in two ways; 1/ mutlaq absolute

(essential), dependent on dignities THE RULING PLANET due to position in the orbit, or in "AL-MUTER" relation to other planets or to

the horizon; 2/ muqayyad limited (accidental), when these dignities are referred to one of the characteristic properties of the twelve houses.

496. M al-hayyiz we me al-halb. The terms 'hayyizd and 'halb' are related in meaning, and they share one

condition viz. that when a diurnal HAYYIZ AND HALB planet, 386, is above ground by day and beneath it at night, and when a noc-

turnal planet is above ground at night and beneath it by day, it is said to be in its halb, and a planet is described as in or not in its halb. When in addition to this a planet is male, 385, and in a male sign, 548, or female and in a female sign, the condition is called hayyiz, and a planet is said to be in or not in its hayyiz. Moreover it is obvious that hayyiz is more comprehensive than balb, because every bayyiz is a balb but not every halb a hayyiz.

Abu Harshar in this matter has increased the number of male and female degrees. It should be known that Mars in this matter of payyis is different from the other planets, because it is both male and nocturnal; if it is above the earth by night and below_it by day and

in a male sign, it is then in its hayyiz. 5

497. Mā al-munākarah. Munākara (contention) is nearly the reverse of payyiz and occurs when a diurnal planet is in the domicile 440 of a noc-

turnal one, and the latter is in the CONTENTION domicile of a diurnal planet; or when a nocturnal planet is in the domicile of a diurnal one, and the latter is in the domicile of a nocturnal planet.

2 The initial verses of Tall b. Abi al-Rijal's Astrological Arjuzah are devoted to al-mubtazz.

4 E.g. & in Y and & in & or & in & and & in &.

I The Arabic 'hayyiz' 'natural place' is the translation of the Greek discoic, preferred position. Cf. BL. p. 103 n. 2 and p. 39.

³ Hayyiz translates the Greek diperic and is translated 'dustoria or ductoria sive securitas' Bonatus p. 135. haim for hais, Alcab. 17r, aym. Bonatus p. 671. See note

عائن أربا للعن شن كان يح ذال يحويب المعادى عادا و والازمر وبلاتفها واللليجي كالمنط المنون الأمن المتهام فاعوليك ماذا اسا فلبكون المحجب النكري برج دحرة المني فاني فوللبز معواع مزل للم فناد ابومج شرأم الورجات المذعني والمونث فبدوا لمرع على الخ مِنْ الْسُحُولِ بِهِ امْرَا لِمُؤْمِسِ الْدُذْ حُدُو لِلْمِجِ الْمُلْذَا حَالَ الْمُلِ فوفكادم وبالهاديمها وبرج ذعنفو فيجر ماالمساحكم مسمرماد للزوم حوالحوب المارى برج حوب لل وذكك الحوجب فربج حجيب بهادي اوكون الحوجب الللي برج حوب نمادى ورخ حرب الجلي مأفرح الكوت السحاجب تغرح بالمؤة والمنعان وتطب انفتها بالمسول وحطوطهاؤخ فاحبنبها المح كراونغ بالمعون جلهاا وجزم افنع جالبيرعر المشمع الإمال معلعلى مسترفه والمسفليمة رسبة الاستفامه ونعزح ٤ للهان الي لمهام المشرف علام والمل عليف وبفرح في معنواليي حافرها في الجواول الموند ونفرج به الادماع نعر اللاق فنرح المعلمير فالربع بن المرابد بن والمسفلهان والمنهم الماضين ع

498-500

498. Wa farsh al-kawkab. The planets are said to be joyful, powerful, happy and in good spirits when they are in congenial sections (huzuz) are in congenial sections (huzuz) or hayyiz; the quarters friendly to them N. S. E. or W. 389, and also when far from the sun those which were previously in distress, like the superior planets when oriental and the inferior when occidental in their direct course. They are also in their joys in those preferred houses which we discussed (469) - this is the best known of all - and finally they are joyous in those quadrants depending on the horizon; the superior in the increasing quadrants the inferior in the decreasing ones (205).

499. Mā al-iqbāl wa'l idbār. Prosperity (iqbāl) is essociated with the cardines, as these indicate a happy mean; adversity (idbār) with the PROSPERITY cadent houses, which point to destruct-cadent houses, which point to destruct ion and excess. Being in those houses which are succedent to the angles is beyond the half-way line to prosperity, for they are the north alcohold at these from advanced to the prosperity.

beyond the half-way line to prosperity, for they are the paths leading there from adversity. But this prosperity and adversity are not all alike, just as the cardines are not alike but are higher and lower in glory and dignity. And indeed the cadent houses are not alike in their destructive influences, because although the 3rd and 9th houses are cadent, the 6th and 12th are not only cadent but are also inconjunct to the horoscope.

500. Mā al-hisār. A planet is said to be besieged (hisār) when situated between two others, as e.g. when a planet in sign 1 is surrounded by others in

PRSIEGED signs 2 and 12. It also occurs when three planets are in one sign, the middle one whose degree is less than the one and higher than the other is said to be corporally (bi'l-jirm) besieged. Again a planet is described as besieged by the rays, when in front of it is another in sextile or quartile and another behind it in like aspect. When besieged by two infortunes 3822 the influences are extremely bad, while if between two fortunes, they are extremely good. I wiedemann LXIV, 208 has noted the astrological meaning of these words usually associated with the trepidation theory 196.

2 In the Mafatih al willim hisar is restricted to this condition. (Ki miyan Ishan düstist ya muzaram-i u bashad min musadaqahau min muzahamah AB) part note 510.

ما الافالعالاطان الابال موالحون في الاوماد فالماادله الاكوان ومشابه الاعتدال بالطبع والادبانهوالمكون الذالميد فانعااد لدالفساد وللزوج عزالا عندال فأما المصون فبإطالا وماد فأند مجاوز حدالنوسط من البن الافيال الما من له السّال الدم الدور الدوس ما صلح اللافيال الادار بجتب تفاضل الاوماد وهإمليها في المنزف والفضيله وتفاصل الدالمه في الحول والردبله فالثالث والناسع ذابلا والكنا يبروالناج عشرم الزه الساقطاب عنالطابع ماليحصاد بفع الرجد محون الكوي معمود ابن عرجين لذاكان لحدما فالبدوالاخر فالمعنن وبفع الجرم فبرح وط رهوان بحواله وجامزه والمرافع والمرهاافل والمرد والمنوالا اكتدرجا منه وبفح بالمعاع بمعون الحويب في برجد والمامة عاع <u> ڪوب و خلفد شعاع ڪوڪب آخرو بھون لڪسان بريڪٽ بن ۽ عابدالداء</u> وبرسورين عأبدالجون ماالمهم عدك وكوك إحمع علالملجر وزدأة الالمظ كاجتراف والرجوع والوبالعالميوط والزوال والمفهط ومصادب الغورونطرم البد بالبغنافه منه في الالالغان فالعِدة على العنوالالعام والمدك فان ما الانعام والمدك فان

unfavourable conditions is heaped, and in evil case on account of being combust or retrograde, or suspicion in its detriment or fall or in a cadent house, or inconjunct, or antagonized by infortunes, or whose aspects are inimical is said to be suspect (muttahim) in its significance. (If it shows any promise, it is unable to carry it out. P)

502. Ma al-in am wa'l-mukafat. If a planet is in its fall or in a pit,459,or in a sign in which it has no proper section, it is as it were connected by the fined in a tight place or cave. If now AND REQUITAL one of the planets friendly,447, to it or its sponsor applies itself to it, and gives a helping hand to deliver it from its calamitous situation, it is described as conferring a favour on it, and is called a benefactor (mun'im). Again if the benefactor arrives at a similar disadvantageous situation, and is applied to by the first planet, this is

503. Mā dhu'l-yamīnain wa dhu'l-yasārain. When a planet is in the cardo of mid-heaven and its sextile and quartile rays fall together above and quartile rays fall together above TWO RIGHT AND searth, it is said to have two right TWO LEFT HANDS hands, if these fall below earth two left hands. The indications of the former arc success and victory.

504. ME khala'al-sair. If while within a sign a planet does not enter into conjunction with another, although in aspect to other planets, with a said to be void of course (khall's-sair), and is regarded as having separated from conjunction whether in that sign or not. (This name is given to it because the field is empty and it moves without any companion. P)

and no other planet has been in aspect with it from the time of its entry to that of its exit, it is said to be feral in its course (wahshi 's-sair). This is practically impossible with the superior planets and the sun, and can rarely occur, but

superior planets and the sun, and can rarely occur, but with the moon it is necessarily the case and frequently occurs. If the moon with its rapid motion did not exist,

I min muşadaqiyyah au muza amiyyah.

اذاكانكوك فموط ادبر مزالابار وخاصه بدالبروج المولاحط لذفيها فاند كالمجوس فالمطابق فللطامير فاذاانسل وكوكب مرمسا دفيه المزمزاعبداخدين واغامة ماتونط فتحمينها عليدال انصفطف اللبعميل ما كانفع للاول ونع عليه الأخرفه عوز فلك افاه علىعس ماذ والممنهز وخوالسك أفبرلمان البين فهوالكوكب الذي بحوزة ومرالما ويقع تسريده وتربيع مساً فوفالانف فسب العلية المدون له سب بليد كاعريذ عالممنه في المله كانت ذكر الله والماذ والمستاذ في والذي المناف فالماونشدب وتزبيه دسجانت الانت عاخلا الست موكر نحرب غبرسا فلاعن الكواجب الأسل بحوج مدامية برجد فخلوالدسين سوأ كانصرفاع راضال كانلاء ذكلاح أولمبعض وبتخاليال بزع الانسال عَما وَجُنْ السِّيعِ عَا موكوزالكوكب سافطاع مناطئ الحواجب كلهامنذ اولاخ منع الله الله الدون معدون مفروض فرس منع المالك المراب عندون معرف والمالك الفرا

this might very well happen to the inferior planets, one of them moving rapidly the other slowly. Some people say that when the moon is feral, this is a substitute for conjunction with the planets in whose terms it happens to be within the sign, but this opinion is trivial (muhalhal) and quite unsupported.

'familiarity'l of the various forms discussed should be completed between the inferior planet COMPLETION OF conferring counsel (al-dafi') and the CONJUNCTION superior receiving it (al-madfü' 'ilaihi) 489, there must neither be return (radd) nor evasion (faut) nor intervention (i'tirad) nor refranation (intikath) nor abscission of light (qat'al-nur) nor prevention (man'). Each of these will be distinguished and interpreted.

1. Return. This happens to a superior planet when retrograde or under the rays, for from weakness it is unable to hold what is offered to it, therefore returns and does not accept it. If the situation is such that there is reception be tween them, or if the inferior planet is at an angle or both of them are at angles, or succedent houses, the end of such return is satisfactory. If however the inferior planet is in the weak situation described, and the superior one at an angle or in a succedent house, the result is destructive even if at first hope was indicated. If both are in a weak situation from the beginning to the end there is nothing but destruction and ruin.

2. Evasion. This occurs when an inferior planet is about to conjoin with a superior one; before this takes place the latter moves out of the sign, and the inferior planet applies itself to another planet either in the same or another sign, the first aspect never having been completed.

3. Intervention. This occurs when an inferior planet tends to become conjunct with a superior one, in the latter part of whose sign there is posited a third planet lower than the superior and higher than the inferior planet. Before the inferior planet complet

I an astrological expression for relation of planets by aspect, conjunction, equality of declination (antiscions) &c.

المسرم السبريلامسخ فإلزج وعطارد ان بهن ما وحثى المسبر عيد بطبق احتهاوا لألح الكغرة مرالفة من بفيركون الفي بعجدود الكواجب اذاكان جنى السبر منام النسالد بهاوهو رائه لهل على السك عبرنا بنسب ماذيم كورالاضال بالابكون بزلسفالاافع وبزالع اوكلافي البرع مون الانصال المي ذكراها ددولافون والاعتراص ولااستات ولاقطع ولامنع الماالرد نهوم العلوجاد اضعف الجعه أوالكوزت المنباع فبعجز عنصبط مأبد فع البدو برده فانصان بنها قبول اوكانالهمل ونيرام علمه وللأماد الأماد المبلها صلح فساره فاالزدر المِعَافِد وان المنعف للاكور في المسفلي كالعلوب في وتدراو ما بلبد مندت العابد وإن حالا سراوان المعاعد المع الامر علدالفتاد واماللفوت منوذهاب سفل الانسال الاعلى بنفوانه فال الاعلى برجه فلكام الانصال م بحول للسفران إنصال بحوكب إخراما فالنرج الذي فببر واما عندلنف الدمنية وفباللانسال بذلك للاقل فيعنو تدماكا فبداولا والماالاعتراص فهوان فرهب سفلي المالك بعلوي عيد ويجز اخرالبزح كوكب مستولا اعنى على السفلي السنل العبدي تبغف

conjunction, the third intermediate planet retrogrades towards the superior planet and passes it by, till the inferior inevitably conjoins with it and not with the

superior one.

4. Abscission of light. If it should happen that the intermediate planet is not in the same sign as the superior one, but in the next and retrogrades into it, this intervention is one of two methods of outting off the light. The second method is when an inferior planet tends to conjoin with a higher one and a third still higher is situated towards the latter part of the sign, then before the inferior planet can conjoin with the intermediate one, the latter moves to the higher one and passes or conjoins with it. The inferior planet does not conjoin with the intermediate one but with the superior later.

5. Refranation. If an inferior planet tends to conjunction with a superior one but before completion becomes retrograde the familiarity is said to be

frustrated by refranation.

6. Prevention. When there is a third planet in a sign between the inferior and superior ones, it prevents the conjunction of the former with the latter until it itself has entered into conjunction. Then two planets tend to form a familiarity with a third at the same time, the one by means of corporal conjunction, the other by espect, the former renders the latter vain if their degrees are equal; but when their degrees are different, and the one casting the aspect is nearer to completion than the one tending to conjunction, the former is preferred. (When however two planets apply themselves by aspect to a third at the same time, that is preferable, whose reception occurs first. P) Certain aspects must have an advantage over others, just as corporal conjunction has over aspect, so that the more powerful aspect should interfere with the weaker, but astrologers have not pronounced on this matter.

507. Mā al-qabūl. Reception. When an inferior planet arrives in one of the dignities proper to a superior one, and makes known to it the RECEPTION relation thus established, there is an exchange of compliments such as 'your servant' or 'neighbour'. If further the superior planet happens to be in a situation proper to the inferior one, mutual reception takes place, and this is fortified, the richer the situation is in dignities,

مام ذلك الأصال أن يرجع للنوسط خوالعلوي بخان حللعتن وكوب أبصاالمسف لح بدلابالأول فانصحان للن سلب فلبذ البلوي تم دخل علم الجوع منواج ي وجع قطع النورة ما بنهما النصي والصلا السنا و فرا كامد عاد زللنوسط العلوي فب برايم الله فلي للاجلويد وز الموسط الاول ع واماً الانتحاث فوذهاب السفل المالانسال يعلوي بمؤد عَن رجوع مَعْرَ الفظاعام ذكك م واما المنع منوسكون منوسط فبابر سفلي علوي فاند منع المن المناع المنال العلوي وندوابدنا فالأسال المامع ديمنع إسال النطر اذاكات بوفت وإجدفت اوت درجات الجامع والتاجر فاماان كأندرج اللطاف وباللانسال بهواوليه وإنساون درجان مناطر واسلامها بعوجب إن كانالاناله الماليولا والعرابة وكانافهاس وجب ازمة اصللط وبمنه اقواه ضعيف كامنع الكامعد النظرالااز اصحاب المساعد لم بنكرو إنه هذا المعنى أ مالكفته لساحان جوزالسنلي اجدة طوط العلوي فيعرف البريالة مرالات بدالم كرن قول الماليك والما غلامك والما جادل فان العلوم

especially when the aspects indicate no enmity nor malevolence. When reception does not take place the result is negative.

508. Ma al-dafi". We have already stated 489-506 that al-dafi' is the application of one planet to another and is described as bi'ltadbir. The inferior planet making THE DONOR application is not specified as dafir unless it is in a dignified situation proper to it without regard to the situation of the superior, the madfu'ilaihi, this conjunction is called daf alquwwah, and if in one proper to the superior planet, daf al-tableah, which is the same as qabul described above, or else the inferior planet is in a place proper to itself which also happens to be congenial to the superior planet; this is called daf' al-tabl'atain, because the natural properties of both are united. The same expression is used when one (an inferiorP) planet in its hayyiz conjoins with another (a superior one P) in its hayyiz, the planets being both either diurnal or nocturnal, for the hayyiz requires two conditions to render it complete, 496.

509. Ma al-muradafah. When a retrograde inferior planet follows and overtakes a retrograde superior one, the situation is called 'muradafah'. Here follower there is no return on account of the similarity of their situations but if there is reception the indication is for the successful termination of business which was threatened with ruin. However this conjunction, although there is no refusal, is not equal to one in the direct course but is far inferior in significance.

There are other conditions which are efficacious

besides aspect and conjunction. When
SUBSTITUTES FOR an inferior planet and an intermedCONJUNCTION AND late one both apply themselves to a

ASPECT superior planet, the latter is called
a collector 'jam'', because it assembles
the light of the others. If these are in aspect to each
other, this is just as good as conjunction with the
collector; if they are not in aspect, that collection

اذاكان ماالدا بعجم ماالدا بعج ماالدا بعج مالدا بعج مالدا ومع مالدا انالاافع موالانسال وبوسف بالمزير ولايملوا الدافع مزان بيهون بد بعين خطيط نفسه مزعب اعنباذ جل للافوع البدنبي أبساله دفع الفق وال مجعونة بعن حطوط نفسّه مزعبراعنبان حال للرفوع البر فبسرح فع الطبيع وهوماذكرناه مزالعبول بعبنه اوميتن وعان بإبرج الدابع وبحول لكل احدمها فيدمزاعه وبسرح فع الطبيع بزكان العافع منها د في المسينة نفند وطبعد صاجدمعاالد ونبتي بدابضاا بسالك وكبيدة جبع ماء فبجهد لانالجرنكم الابهالبرفاد الأسل ويسب بالركاد بجبن بعوعب نمادى فج بن سي نهاد الطبيع بن ما المرا وفر ع ع النمال النجعدوهوان بعد زالسفلي في جال دنج عدمت لآبالعلوب محال نجوعه فلابكون بنها ذح انسا و بحالهما فان ان فنول دب على الامونالفاسِ وكرن عذا الانسالكنف وم الانسال في حالل سنعامد اذالنسل صحبان تفلي مستر المبعلوي فعدج توزها فان المال المسلان فالم بنام المالية المسلان فالم بنام المالية المسلان فالم بنام المالية المسلان في المسلمة المسل

510

of their light by another planet is effective in place of conjunction although they are inconjunct.

If an inferior planet separates from an intermediate one which is inconjunct to a superior planet, and thereafter conjoins with the superior one the light of the intermediate planet is transferred to the latter. This is called 'nacl' or translation and occurs between two planets which are (inconjunct or between two which are) in aspect but far from conjunction. This condition is effective in lieu of conjunction.

There is another form of translation, when the inferior planet conjoins with the intermediate one, and the latter has already been in conjunction with the superior planet; it is just the same as if the inferior had applied itself to the superior. This occurs when the inferior planet is inconjunct to the superior one because, when in aspect, it is swift in arriving at the

conjunction with the superior one.

In the books, one always finds the naql of Mars by the sun to Saturn described as the greater nagl and that of the moon by the sun to Saturn as the lesser nagl. If two planets are inconjunct to a third or to a certain place in the zodiac, and then both conjoin with one which is in aspect to both and also to that third or that place, the result is like mirrors reflecting from house to house. This has also been called 'radd' but in view of what we have said before about radd, the use of that word is ambiguous. There is also another aspect of real translation which is not much enlarged upon, except in relation to separation; they say that when an inferior planet withdraws from conjunction with a superior one and conjoins with another then nagl occurs, light being transferred from the one to the other and as this translation is an effective substitute for conjunction, it follows that it should not be void of the effect of separation. However some other word than 'radd' should be used for this condition perhaps sarf or Taks (conversion or inversion) to remove the ambiguity.

ساطره الاختام اجتماع تووهمامقام الانسل مزعبر يطرو عداعو المع فازلنم حلفذه المده والمعل عبكوز لغيا فيابز للناخر زاد ابيدانسالها عبوم يذا النقائعامدوللفن وجد أخرد هواز عهدان مقلى بوسط وحداكم للوسطم سل بعادي فبوم مفام انسال السفيل بالعيوي فلأعند سفوط أجدها عزال خرلان السفلع والطرسربع اللجاف واصلة العلوي فيعين المستب ان فاللرسخ بن الشروذ كبى المقالل عظرون فالفئ فنها أسرالم والاسغرو وباسقط ووال عِنَالَتُ اومونيع مغروض في العلك عُ سَم الزيري بالمرها وسطرابا ذك اللا إوللونع منص ف كراه عب سن ويمام عن الحروم ومرسوا منادح أوله معافرهم والرح استباه فإلاتم وجغلوله وجهالخ وهوالنعل بعبنمه لمزبرما منمود كرالانمراف فالواانداد اكان بنحوكير تلاسرفالسفلي العلوى فهاوانسل اجرفقد ودولودها على الأخروصا مام الاول مقام الانسال فحب الانجلوا عذاع تقية إلانمراف وانحجل عام الراح عَامِنَالُهُ مِنْ مَقَامِهِ مُلْلِهِ وَالْعِصَرِنَادِ الْاسْتِياةُ ؟ فَيُعَمِالُهُ مِنْ الْمُعَلَّالُهُ وَالْمُنْ الْمُعَلَّا الْمُعَلَّالُهُ وَالْمُلَامِنَا الْمُعَلَّالُهُ وَالْمُلَامُ الْاحْرَا الْمُعَلَّالُهُ وَالْمُلَامُ الْمُلَامُ الْمُعَلِّالُهُ الْمُعَلِّالُهُ وَالْمُلَامُ اللَّهُ الْمُعَلِّالُهُ وَالْمُلَامُ اللَّهُ الْمُعَلِّلُهُ وَاللَّهُ الْمُعَلِّلُهُ وَاللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّلِمُ اللَّهُ اللْمُعِلَاللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ ا

511. MS fath al-bab. When two planets whose natures are opposed conjoin, this is called opening the doors. So the conjunction of the sun or OPENING THE DOORS moon with Saturn indicates quiet rain, fine drizzle or snow-storms, that of Venus and Mars torrential rain, hail, thunder

and lightning, and that of Mercury and Jupiter the opening of the doors of the winds.2

512. Kaif yakun quwwah al-kawakib wa du'fha. In dealing previously with the relations of the planets to the sun, to each other, to their own orbits, to the zodiac, and STRENGTH AND WEAKNESS to the horizon, we have dis-OF THE PLANETS cussed as far as possible the

good and evil effects of each, as well as the summed effects of more than one. Each planet has a most favourable situation, and when some advantage is lost, its power is diminished to a like extent. The converse is true with regard to unfavourable situations.

A planet is at the height of its power when the following conditions are present. Motion direct, rapid and increasing, far from the sun's rays, oriental if superior, occidental if inferior, in aspect to both sun and moon, and these in a fortunate state, besieged by fortunes or aspecting them, relieved of infortunes, associated with fixed stars of the same character, rising in its own orbit, passing above the infortunes and below the fortunes, north latitude increasing, happening to be in domiciles of the fortunes, or their huzuz or in a place resembling its own nature, or in houses most congenial to it, in its own hayyiz, at an angle or

¹ The context shows that it is not opposition in the Zodiac (as Dozy incorrectly quotes from Muhīt) but opposition of natures, 447, or of domiciles which is responsible for the atmospheric phenomena. PL has halhai ishān; PP khānihāi ishān; the definition in Muhīt, buyuthums. The figure in 440 shows that the domiciles of the pairs in question are opposite. 2 If you see the moon separate from Venus and apply itself to Mars or v.v. this is also opening of the doors, Albohazen Haly p. 396.

بسي في باب ما مِسال المروالم والمنس وسل في فيزاب ما مسال الفر والسم والما المروط إليهم منح باب المطر الساري والوداد والبلو وانسال المرم والمرتع بمع ويهر باب المطر الشرمع والبرد والمرف والرعد وانصل عطار دمالمت ريبي فيرباب لأبلح كف بكوزق الكولك وضعفام مندع البوالمام الثمر بعب مأم بعض من اللاعهاء من الكابروح وكر شكاللبوت مابعلمد الجوده والردأة بدفكاه إحديثها ومجوع صفاء للوده كلها في وحدو الداوجلها بحوز غايرالفي له بيت ما تصابحون له تنافع الفنى وخلفاتها وعجوشها جلدبكون لأعابد الضعف وعشب افها بحوننا فعراله بماما على جداله وبدفي كان الحواجب مستنفيد بغ سبرها سريعدناب وعرالخف الملتعاع ربد مسترفدان علوب ومغدية إنصان سفليد بع منظر مزالير تزوه أسيودان عود لمفهول والمنجود لماجا صرم اوالهاما طن والجوس عهاسا وهداد العواجب للابتد المساحله لمأفي الجبلع مفادس مصوت بداولا علاجب ببعون مرما للاحود فوقالنجش فتجن السعود فسكان بدجهة السال مباعي وكب مِنْ لَبُوج فِيهُ وَلِهُ المُبِعِدِ وَحَ لَمُوسِمِهَا وَفِهَا سِنَا كُلَّا فِي هَا عِالُومِ إِعِالُومِ إِ sharif mahmoud

512-513

succedent thereto, in a quadrant of the same nature, and increasing, elevated high above the malefics and

conquering.

But when slow, [retrograde, under the rays, occidental if superior, and if inferior moving slowly] westward towards retrograde, inconjunct to sun and moon, or in an unfriendly aspect to them, without reception, the infortunes in an inimical aspect, or besieged by them. associated with fixed stars of a contrary nature, setting in own orbit, so that the malefics pass above and the benefics below, decreasing south latitude, in unluoky houses, in parts of signs foreign to them, in detriment or fall, in a contrary hayyiz, distant from the angles or succedent houses, in a quadrant of different nature, at the madir of their joys, and conquered by the malefics high above them; this is the But in all conditions there is acme of weakness. always an admixture of good and bad, often difficult to interpret, and requiring all the resources of the art as well as experience and industry.

513. Fahal tanfasil al-nayyiran fi dhalika rala al-kawakib. In regard to the foregoing there is considerable difference between the sun and moon on HOW SUN AND MOUN the one hand, and the other DIFFER FROM THE PLANETS planets on the other. When IN THIS REGARD both of the luminaries are

in aspect to each other, and to the benefics, and are in their own sections of the signs or those of the benefics, both of them are strong. But if they are in situations unsuitable to them, and the malefics, full of enmity are above them, and the benefics below, or are colipsed, or near the dragon's head or tail, especially the latter by less than 120, both of them are weak. The moon is especially so when near (muhāq) or in conjunction, or on the wane, or under the

line dropped.

بوتعلية الاوفئ لما وسحائت وحبزها مقبله فإلادما جروبا بلها والازلح والادباع المابع للساحله لهامستغليظ النهر ضاغره لما فح فوترة العَالِم فاذلحات بطبده الخارجوع ذاعبه وعزالغ وسكامطد اولها مالط مبادبه عبر قابلدولله سرالع المطرح بالمواوه اولها جامره والتوات الماده الها معتادن وكاشد في الاحهام في مجب بعلوه المؤسف المزدون الموح وهُبطت إلى الجنوب وبطت بيون المؤثر فخطوطه اعرب على الهاب وكأت فج وبالمااوهبوطها وخلاف جيزها وذلك عزالاؤماد ومابليها فالاياء الناقسد المساق لها في خطار الفراجها واستعلن المؤسِّ على الفريد منداه خال المقوة والمنعف السبطين الصلام فأتخلف المربع ولامدا الخ لليجوزعنج الاربب للزاوله ع فهل منفض للبران فبخلل عاله عالك البرورك النافيان البران ضاطران مع المبعود اوسطما مكالم بخطوط السع فهما قومان واضج الملابها وعاداهما المجوش واستجل علماه

sharif mahmoud

513-515

earth, or in the combust way, 514, all of which increase its weakness.

Many people include among the inauspicious situations for the moon the being in the last part of a sign, and in the 12ths of both malefics, setting in the south, and being in the ninth house from the ascendant, all of which are not exclusively applicable to the moon, especially the last part of the signs, where all the terms belong to the malefics, 453, a situation bad for all the planets, as are the 12ths referred to. There is also to be considered the quarter of the heaven, and the fact that the ninth house from the ascendant is the nadir of the joy of the moon, 469, and this is peculiar to it.

is the last part of libra and the first of Scorpius.

These two signs are not congenial to the COMBUST WAY the sun and moon on account of the obsourity and ill-luck connected with them, and because each of them is the fall of one of the luminaries 443. They also contain the two malefics, the one by exaltation (Libra, Saturn), the other by house (Scorpius, Mars). The peculiarity however which has given the name muhtaria is that the exaltation of Saturn is near, the fall of the sun being on the one hand and that of the moon on the other, while the adjacent parts of both signs are occupied by terms of lears. 453.

are as many divisions of astrology as there are elements in the universe. These may DIVISIONS OF the either simple or compound and JUDICIAL ASTROLOGY on both the influence of the planets is active. The former on the whole do not submit to such influence, nor to any change, except where they come into contact with each other, when, because they are mutually opposed and violent, they are always in strife. Such admixture does take place on the surface of the earth, but is only completed by the heat of the sun's rays. So all four

النود والمسكور في وقت المؤمة عن الارض لللول عالط بفرالم وملك مناحرزابه فالضعف وفدع في مناحد فوم عص في اواخر البروح وا أساعنز بالنختن في الجوب عابطاً عَبْ مَا مِع الطالع ولمِرْ خَلْحَالِم ما بغنط الفردوز عبن مازاه اخر المزوج كهاجرود المخروع على الحال الأنبع بنراب نع الفزو المحواجب كلها فاما ماسع الطالع فهي علم و العز وهونقسه ماالطنوبين المحتنفه على الجزللبران وبالعبرب وكالمزال ومزعاره وافتدر البزلان والماد والمالا فوطعا والنسان لمابة بالجدهما بالبب والاخر بالنرب تمخض بملوضيع الذي فكرا الأفراب نرف نيط وعبوط المرمن فمع حنبد و عبوط الغرع الغاء طيالمنبز معلائم فيابز حكلم الزجن المحرصنف ننفسم لجكام المخوم الملفجوف الفلك مجالخ إحز للاذ بعد المامفرده والما بالتزي بطاصك لاسبا اخر وعطى المزيز البحوات والجركات متأن فاما المفردات فانفيا لانعلانغام بج النباء الما تعبلة اطرافها للنمائد وسبب النباج الداع بالاجالم الفهم وذكك لهاعل بدالان مرويم المداجها بالمان النبعاع

515

elements become united, and the surface is the place appointed for the action of the planets, which extends as far as the power of their rays penetrates by reason of the presence of interstices. Then these rays return by a contrary motion and carry with them the aqueous vapour which they have produced, and they rise from the earth until they reach a point where the power of such movement becomes weak. So this motion and agitation is the cause of all the vicissitudes and disasters of nature, the resultant phenomena being either permanent or temporary.

Anything therefore in the way of heat or cold or moderate temperature, of moisture or dryness owing to movements of the atmosphere, or of the various forms of moisture carried by the winds such as cloud, rain, snow; everything that is heard in the air such as sharp claps and rolls of thunder; everything that is seen such as lightning, thunderbolts, rainbows, halos, meteors, also shooting stars, comets and similar atmospheric phenomena; everything that occurs in the earth in the way of tremors, and subsidences, and in the water as tempests and floods, and the flux and reflux of the tides - all these form the subject matter of the first division of astrology. These phenomena are not permanent or rarely so; rain, snow, comets and earthquakes are those which have the longest duration; were they not sufficiently widespread their concentration in one spot would be disastrous.

A second division is that which is concerned with the mixed elements, such as occur in plants and animals, and is of two kinds, affecting the whole of a population or only a part thereof. Famine may be

الحاصالليها وبكرنس الطبابع للانبع فسنطح الانف حوالموضيع للوصوع للسوان تباسكالاكواجب عندوالحب بفلالبعاء السآبد فهاوَ للاعلى الخلط ببعث فرفع مأنع ومرائل و دجن في الآو الحبث بضعف البحكاسد فنكون فالتربيكات اسباب المصور والهساد بالعالم والذي بحن كالك اماد وبقيام والماسر بع الزوال والفياداد فبالموام خصبات المحوالزد والاعتدال وجدت منيال طويد والبسرو حنكات الأبلح والمنعركات بهامز الهيطب والامطاد والأوح والسرد وانواع المذي وسمع فبدمز المزعد والمدات والصبيعه وتؤي فبدم البرق والمواعق تُم المُستَّةِ والْمُ الآب والسَّهِب ثُم السحواجب المُستَّمَة و المُرسِّر وسَابِيِّمادُ تَرْتُوادِ إُ-الجووماكان والارض والزلادل وللمتوف وبالمامرا لموود والطوفانات والمبول فهو فتريح بكوره المسروب ولمن حكين المعاجدا واحترها رماما الامطار والمسلح وللدسات والنلاذل فانها وان لمرتم فرمالك بقونها على وضح ما ملك مرم سلوه امر المركب مراك باصراعي البات والمجوار ومابي علرام هما وهودو وجه بن المنظم المدوانوع وجري عسد

taken as an example of the former, due to failure of crops or drought, and spidemics such as spread from country to country, like the plague and other pestilences which depopulate cities.

The latter variety is more localized and scattered in its appearances, it results from psychical phenomena, such as battles, struggle for power, change of dominion from one land to another, deposition of kings, revolutions, emergence of new religions and sects, so that this chapter is a long one and this variety the more important of the two.

The third division is specially concerned with the environment of the individual human or other, the events which affect him in the course of his life, and the influences which remain behind him and in his progeny, while the fourth has to do with human activities and occupations. All of these are founded on beginnings or origins 'mabadi' possibly trivial.

Beyond these there is a fifth division where such origins are entirely unknown. Here astrology reaches a point which threatens to transgress its proper limits, where problems are submitted which it is impossible to solve for the most part, and where the matter leaves the solid basis of universals for one of particulars. When this boundary is passed, where the astrologer is on one side and the sorcerer on the other, you enter a field of omens and divinations which has nothing to do with astrology although the stars may be referred to in connection with them.

516. Fama al-mabadi' allati biha turraf durub alqism al-awwal. The fundamental principles which are

PRINCIPLES BY WHICH
INQUIRIES BELONGING
TO THE FIRST DIVISION
ARE KNOWN

applicable to enquiries in the first and second of these divisions of astrology are substantially the same. They are based on the greater, intermediate and lesser con-

junctions, the exact places at which these coour and the ascendants at these times; further on the thousands known as hazārāt, hundreds, tens and the firdaria. There I Al-kindī conceived that these played the same rôle for events in the macrocosm as does the horoscope for the life of the individual.

القط المتكارز مزأفات فالزوع وبفسل الأبوع تعم ملحداو مالكث ل ومُثَالِطَاعُونَ لِلْمَادُفُ مَا بِدَعَلَى بِالْمِلُولِولِوالْ . ولَلْمُ وَيَمَا يُسِيبِ مِنْ خَلِك منبن والتخاصاً ملبله ومسل فلك عواد ضرير لي ومادع والدوك العلام وخروج للذابح مالمكوك مظهود المذاهب والدمان فلزعذا ماب عشرالمفا سديد الفوه وهذامم ماب سده ومابخت كالتعمران وعبن ورماند فكاند والاجوال تطبف موقد دعم اوبه في عبن مزافاده ونسله . وهذا فيم المنطب احوال افعال المن ومفعولاتهم وهوفتم وابع و معاف لك منى على ادب لما فاز جُهلت فيتلوه فتم حامِر ليغِرَب كَلُ الأحوال وهي عيولذ الميادي وبريفادب الصناعه المزوج مزعها وبملط بطبق علائها الامزمز طي الكالكاب حَمَّا بِنَ لِلْزُومَ إِنْ وَلَاكُ مُنَاسِبِ النَّصَامِ للمُفَرِّمُ ومِي فَالْمِنَا مِعْطُ وَالْكِهَا مُد مزاخ فاذلجاو ذن براه فاسته مرجان الزجرد ونالخيم وانح كالنجم مدح فاللباد كالم يعف بماض وبالعشر الأول مذاوالفيراليان مستركان المبادى وعلقرامات العا والمواضع المح بمنهالة بدفها مع بعام المستنبع على المنه الفرامات ومنطو العمام العالوف المهوفه ماله فادات ومراطبين والعنزات ومزالفردادات ومنهم مزمل خرفها

are people who take from the conjunction and opposition of the moon which preceded the enquiry, and substitute this for the above, and there are others who depend on the nearest collipses past or future, of which the most hurtful are those of the sun, especially if of considerable extent.

517. ME tafail dhalika wa tafairhu. The degrees at which Saturn and Jupiter meet in conjunction, together

ANALYSIS AND time, and the ascendant of that time, and the ascendant of the INTERPRETATION OF THESE the year of the conjunction all move in the direction of

the succession of signs through a whole sign in a complete solar year. The point arrived at is called a terminus (intihā'); moreover this terminus of each year is in the sign next after that in which it was the year before, and in the same degree thereof, e.g. if the terminus of the first year was in 10° of Cancer, that of next year would be in 10° of Leo. The matter of the thousands and what follows them is in the like case, and there is no difference between them except in the different amount of time allotted to the degrees and signs. This is a usage of the Persians and became known to us through their language.

We have stated before that according to Abu Ma'shar the years of the universe are 360000,2 the deluge being in the middle of these. This statement occurs in his book called 'The Book of Thousands' where the degrees of the zodiao are each made equal to a thousand years, so that the fraction belonging to a year is 3 3/5 seconds. This is the great division; secondly, the signs are made equal to a thousand years each; this is the term of thousands. Thirdly the signs are made equal to single years, the terminus of years being thus produced as we said before. Fourthly the I According to Abu Marshar in his Kitab al-uluf, when the heavens were first set in motion all the planets. the sun included, were in conjunction; when the same phenomenon again presents itself, which may not ocour for millions of years, the world will enter on a new period. Reinaud, Abu'l-fida, I. CKCI. The Book of the thousands on religious houses treats of birth, duration and end of the world, and fixes the times when great changes in Empires and Religions will take place. d'Herbelot, IV. 695. 2 204

مابعة بمأمِزاجهاع اواستقبل مقبعه مامها ، ومنهم رَطِ والعرَّالِ النَّالِيةِ النَّالِي النَّالِيةِ النَّالِيةِ النَّالِي النَّالِيةِ النَّالِيةِ النَّالِي النَّالِي النَّالِيل

دنجات الفرالمات مكوالعها وطوالير سبنها عرك المؤبر الموال ليروح تحريب بسنوف الزوح با سنذ ما مد تنسيد وبسرا المهنيج الذي ببلغد منه فالإنها اذن جون في كالبد في البرح النّابِ مُلْ وَبِاللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّا اللَّا اللَّاللَّا الللَّا اللللَّاللَّمُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ ال الانهاالأول سندما بذعشن دنح يزبخ المنطان فبجوز كألب الأنهالاول المستناله المدبع عشرة درج مزالا بمرا الألوف ومابنيها مت من العنادع ما الامقاد مرالا مندماها عمليها في الارجات الروح وهي العال الغرس لذكك استنهر التمهامالفا دسيس مقد غد شاان سي العلاعيد أع عيز للم أبر ومتول لف شند بنوسطها الطوفال ولذ كاب فها مُسَى الالوف وأذا فِيرِ بن الالوف وبزدنات الفَلَال لَعُلَال عُلَال عُلَال الله سندفسادت جيدالسندنلنز توليد فالمناخاس فالبرا وسأة العطر بروادى

sharif mahmoud

517-518

degrees are made equal to single years, and this is the small division.

Between the units and thousands two other terms are introduced, one in which each sign equals a hundred years and another in which each is ten. Nothing is said with regard to the share of the degrees in the case of the tens and hundreds such as we have spoken of in the case of the thousands and units.

We have previously discussed the extent of the firdaria, and placed in a table their order at mativities (438-9). But here the order changes and that of the signs which contain the exaltations of the planets is adopted (443); viz. 1st Aries which has the exaltation of the Sun; 2nd Taurus of the Moon; 3rd Gemini of the Dragon's Head; 4th Cancer, of Jupiter; 5th Virgo, of Mercury; 6th Libra, of Saturn; 7th Salittarius, of the Dragon's Tail; 8th Capricorn, of Mars; 9th Pisces, of Venus 445. The order is therefore, Sun, Moon, Dragon's Head, Jupiter, Mercury, Saturn, Dragon's Tail, Mars, Venus, and then back to the Sun. The distribution of partnerships is as before, but the lords of exaltation have precedence over the lords of the firdaria, which however preserve their own order and the partnership in their own sections, except in the case of the Dragon's Head and Tail, which do not enter into partnership and are therefore alone in their firdaria.

These are the principles which must be relied upon and used at every anniversary of the world-year! and its quarters, also at every conjunction and opposition of the moon, especially those which occur immediately before the anniversary and the quarters.

518. Fama al-adwar al-madhkurah 'inda al-qiranat wa arba'ha. The revolutions which are mentioned in connection with senjunctions,517 n. 2, have a duration of 360 REVOLUTIONS REFERRED solar years. They are divided TO AT CONJUNCTIONS differently into quarters, by

AND THEIR QUARTERS

some people equally into 90 I The entrance of the Sun into Aries. But in 1020 the Perigee must have been some 140 E of the winter solstice in which case the relative duration of the Sessons would be S 92.8, Sp. 91.4, W. 53.6, Au. 88.12.

فم وازالينا بزام إد السنين وبزالد ذجات ليعل ودجد سند فحمك السندالسغري ويفع إب الأباد والالوف منعتان ساق لهاالالهات لسكل يج مابست في الديم او فالاخل على المح عزد سنين مما ببعظ لعشرات مللائر معلايح شباعل إسمايت تع ولماالغ وازات فتنعن سنادر ملالوالد ترسها مارفع لاالباب صغير منيها وبسكون كم ينبها ومسكون تربب بروج الاستوافي فيسكون العجارس مثلًا للشروملحد شرف ليلك عُالعَرْصاحِب شِف المُوزعُ الأس صاحب شرف لبلوزاغ المشتري صلحب شرف المتطاف ثم لمخطارد م لرُطلُمُ للانب مُ المرَّبِ مُ المنهُ وبعود المائز وينصون فيهد المرَّجاياسوا حاالمفرمناناب لانزاف فيهاصا جب الفرداد بج منف زديد فتمندر الدبرتمب ادكه الترك ابعد ككنه نوبهما خلالا اسوالاب فانهم لا بخلون وشركة مبنف ددان بفردار بسافلانساد كهاكوك فمن وللبادى المعكلبذ المحماج المعسبلبة غولسفالها وارماعها وي عُلَّلاحُمَاعِات عَلاستَفَالات وخاصهُ مَانَدُم مِندَ فِالْخِراوالارَباعِمُ عَلَيْلُوا مِا الْمُعَالِمُ اللَّهُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعِمِيلُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعِلَّمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَلِمُ الْمُعَالِمُ الْمُعَلِمُ الْمُعَلِمُ الْمُعَلِمُ الْمُعَلِمُ الْمُعَلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعَلِمُ الْمُعِلَمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلَمُ الْمُعِلَمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلَمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلَمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلَمُ الْمُعِلَمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلَمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلَمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلَمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُعِلْمُ الْمُعِلْمُ الْمُعِلِمُ الْمُع

years each as if quarters of the ecliptic, by others, substituting the relative duration of the seasons of the solar year into a first quarter of 90 years, a second of 85 1/4, a third of 90 and a fourth of 94 3/4.

519. Famā al-mabādī' allatti bihā yakhtasa al-qism al-thānī wa yatamayyaz min al-awwal. In addition to the

PRINCIPLES SPECIAL TO THE SECOND DIVISION AND DIFFERENT FROM THOSE OF THE FIRST principles laid down for dealing with questions of the first order, the following are adopted for those

of the second. The turn of the solar year and of its quarters, the conjunctions, oppositions, quarters and other phases of the moon, also the experiences of people in all places as to the rains (anwar, 166) on the days of the past year, further, the eclipses, combustions, conjunctions, retrograde movements of the planets which have occurred in the year. There are astrologers who note the ascendant at the time of the entry of the sun and moon into the signs, and deal in the same manner with the five planets, but this is obviously going out of the way without advantage.

- the Salkhuda (Persian for) lord of the year which, at the anniversaries of the world-year LORD OF THE YEAR (solar year, is at the ascendant or one of the angles with dignities in its own degree, or if there is nothing there, that which is in a succedent house. If there is nothing there also, then it is that planet which is not inconjunct with the ascendant or its lord. According to the Hindus it is that planet which is next in order of the lords of the days; to each planet a year being given. They make a great deal of this.
- 521. Famā al-mabādī' allati bihā yata arraf alqism al-thālīth. The principles adopted for questions
 of the third order are as follows:
 PRINCIPLES OF THE For every creature there is a time
 THIRD DIVISION of its first appearance, and decrees
 are then sought from the ascendant
 and the figure of the heavens as to its condition. This
 section is exclusively devoted to man, and must not be
 1 Haly p. 255, VI. 3. alcalcadeny; cel id est annus et
 cadeny id est dominus.

الماللادواد فكاعامد مهالممايد وستون ندر والأماع ادماعها منهر سوى الاذماع بجبول كالحرمها منهون الدورمقام سطف الجزوح ومنهم منطالف فبنما فيعج الدبع للاوك نسب ينصنده والمليذ حروكاتوك سندوثلثالمن والمالك منجيز سنده والابع اربعا وسعيز سندلونه اسه زلاند فيم الاورمقام سندواد باعمامقام ففنوله اع فاللباد كالمخال المساللة ويغير مزالا الأ هي وبالك بني منافد ما لفباس الباب الدي الفي الدي المراد بالفياء الأماية الاول مراد بالمناعات والاستقبالات والنبيجات بنهاوالعاشيسات والانواللز حوره وابارااسند مزعادب اطرك ليعبدتم ما يسعور في الدنين الحسوفات والاحتراء ... والانسالات والرجعات فعزاجياب المساعدم وسنخرج الطوااح لانعال عل إحدِم المعرّ والعرم والمروح وتعاونهم اللاحواجب المنه ودلك بعينف غرمندما لجنبند فاالسال خزاه مي دياويل سيالعا إ بسخ فني ألج ومن المنطق السّا فطع ماط ورب وهوعند المندالكوجب الذي لأالنورع فالناماب الامام للتحك سندبا عال لح

employed for plants, crops or animals. There are two initial points, sowing or conception, and time of appearance (want al-nujum) or birth. From the arrangement of the stars, the hayle 12 becomes known, and the kadkhuda, the ruling planets of the houses, (mubtazzat) the gifts (allowances of length of life), ataya, the additions, ziyadat and deductions nuquanat therefrom, and the murderers (qawati') which put an end to it.

At the anniversaries of the birth there become known the progressions (intiha'at), the apheses (tasyirat), the lord of the revolutionary figure (sahib al-dawr), the divisor or distributor of the fortunes of life(janbakhtar or al-qasim) 7 and the mudabbir its partner8 in administration, the lords of the weeks, and the firdaria. I These are included in the Persian version. 2 Hyleg of the Latin and English renderings, Greek αφέτης. According to Vullers the derivation of haylaj is uncertain. It is equal to the Pers. Kadbanu (mistress of a family) interpreted by astrologers as signifying the body of the 'native' as opposed to Kadkhuda (master of a family) signifying the soul. Under the root 'hlj' Lane mentions the myrobalan fruit (Pers. halila, Arab. halila) which in the stomach is like a good housewife in the house. Bonatus p.677. Ylam v. note 495 M'U. Both haylaj and Hadkhudā are significatory and their marriage determines the length of life but of. Nall. II 355. For an incorrect definition of hayla; see Fagnan. Add. aux diction. Arabes. 3 Persian for head of a household (in Turkish pronounced Kiaya, a steward); translation of οἰκοδεσπότης)της γενέσεως), the alcochoden (a telchodela, acolpodebia &o for other renderings see Abu Ma shar E IIII) of the trans-4 v. 495. 5 plural of gati, translation of avaipérai . 6 The aphetic theory rests essentially on the assimilation of the Zodiac to a roulette on which the life of the individual is projected with more or less force from a certain point of departure (an aphetic place) and is arrested by certain destructive (anaeretic) places before having passed a quarter of the circle.BL. p. 411. TasyIr = Mosois - directio defined by Junctinus p. 379. v. 523. Athazir Haly p. 157 v. 254. 7 'quem Arabes vero Algebutar, Persae autem zamoctar appellant' Junet.p. 1068. Both (and numerous other variants such as alieriustar Haly p.157, algerbutaria. Abu Ma'shar E IIII De mag. conj. Ven. 1515) represent the Persian jānbakhtār. Mru p.231 has by mistake jānbakhtān, which Suter suggested should be janbakhshan, probably influenced by the Arabio & Latir terms. Wiedemann p. 242. 8 Particeps Junet. 1.c.

لعك إلى العالم والمكالم والمكالم والمكالم والشكال المحوليب فيبطل والدوليز فيننعا مبلد فامرالبات والززع فيدليلون ماخلالانسان لأمبدان لجدمها وفت الزرع وبعشرف بشفط المطف والاخر وقت الجوم وهوالمواد م الكواجب واستحالها فيها بعرف المبلاج والحاصاة والمبرات والعطاما والزماد ات والمعسامات والقوالجع ومزعاه بلسف لوالبد الانكه اأف والمشيرات وصاحب الدوروليا بغنار اعظالها م وللدروه وبالم الانابع والفزدادات ما تفصيل خلك فنسبع للواداد اولدكان ضعيف الفوة تبغير ماد فسبب فلانومز عليد وذكك الان كالما ادبع سنب وتسحى فالرشب فللجون فيراو ف الملافحة المستنب خالستوفها للوبيد المتخشرة فبال استعامها فادامح عندم الله وسبه نطره اجند لالعبلاح على بلج املانطن مِنجسه والمعاصليب للوبم ِللذبن والأبدالاخ والالذ درج الطالع . والمابع سم السعيان والماس جزو الاجماع والاستعباللعد ويصونا لمبلج اجزهن إذا صحت المشرابطدوا فويانا طرب البرمن اعدر المسكومراه بميلى الامادعدى الدعيرة مابلها الاوسطور والزوامل المسمر

522 522. Mā tafsīl dhālika wa tafsīrhu. As to the analysis and interpretation of these, the infant (almaulud) is at first delicate and weak. is unfavourably affected by the least INTERPRETATION change in its condition, and it is im-IN DETAIL possible to have confidence in its survival until it has attained the age of four years. These are called the years of rearing by the astrologers. The first thing they do in these years is to ascertain whether it is going to survive or not, and when in their opinion it is sufficiently strong to be reared, they look whether there is a haylej or not. This they search for in five places; 1/ the lord of the time, day or night; 2/ the moon by day and the sun by night; 3/ the degree of the ascendant; 4/ the part of fortune; 5/ the degree of conjunction or opposition of the moon preceding the birth. The haylaj is one of these. After it has been determined according to the proper rules, I then the most powerful planet_as regards dignities (muzā amah) of those in aspect2 to it is the kadkhuda. If it is at an angle a large number is assigned, if succedent an intermediate one, and if in a cadent position a small one. These are the numbers which we discussed under the years of the planets (457) and according to the condition

bers indicate years of life or months or days or hours. These are the gifts or allowances ('atlya) of the kadkhuda. In the event of its being in a maleficent or weak position, every fortune which is in a friendly aspect to it, or is in reception with it, adds its smallest number to the allowance, in the form of years or months according to the strength or weakness aforesaid, while every infortune in inimical aspect deducts such a number. These are styled the additions and deductions. The result is the longest period of life to which the native can attain, if one of the anaeretai4 does not interfere. Sometimes in a nativity there is no haylaj, in which case the length of life must be estimated from the numbers of the fortunes present. The anaeretal are moreover malefic in themselves and their rays are inimical like certain fixed stars which are known for their I The haylaj must be in an aphetical place, either near the East or West Angles or in the IX, X or XI house. 2 An alternative definition is given by Junct. p. 141 "the most powerful planet in an aphetical place". 3 Chron. p. 90. 78 on the length of human life. 4 Saturn and Mars.

of the kadkhuda as regards power or weakness, these num-

اعنى بن الإعداد عن المن فسبها ع بحون العدد بسبا لمن العن والمنعف بجي بجون بناغ منوزاً غُ الماغ ساعات و بماسقط المختلف بعضها كالعربدالك وخزاه غربه كالتعريزالا فراليرع عبد وتبولعان السنع كالمستنب فوند ومنجند وبنقس مند كالخر فأطرالبدمز المبعضد عن السغة ويحكنك و وبسكون لكابَسل ع يذكك هواصم ما ملغة للولود م العُزان إنعلم مدغ خال عاطع وزيا البك في الموادم المج وبعرض على معدب فاماالعواطع فاعاآخام المخوش فيعب اعانها العنى واحساد السولي الأبن للعروف ماله طع اذالها المستبر المهازه ف نصور العطير على سيماوموا فبع ادماع المتنالغول إبدا مكل معد وسعادات كافي للاخرواجارالسناعدب تنبلون واضيح الأملاك في العطيد دون واضع الاباع مالعوالح حنبي منها درماالطلل والفر مازل وبما معطم الاحزب ومها درجان الرابع فالمنابع والأمر فلاكث افردت بوعوها فمبستن لكاسنة طالبها عنداوغ الشراا وبعدائم كاكفها فاصللواد ولسعاسه طلعداد اصلعت المرم يحل برح مثل دُجانها و دُعابها في المرح المحات وبده و المحالة المرابع المراب

522

evil effects 460. When the direction arrives at them, at the time when the half-year or quarter or yearly allowance is due, disaster results and then the fortunes can do nothing against the unfavourable situation.

There are astrologers who regard the situations at the thirds of the year as gifts of the kadkhuda in place of the positions at the quarters. But there are many anaeretai, among them the degrees of the ascendant and of the moon, if one of them interferes with the other, and again the cusps of the 4th,7th and 8th houses. These

are separately dealt with in the books.1

Each year the ascendant is ascertained when the sun comes round to the same minute of the scliptic in which it stood at the birth, i.e. the anniversary (tahwil), and also every month when the sun arrives at the same degree and minute it occupied in the radical or revolutionary figure. The lord of the ascendant at birth is the lord of the first year, that of the second, the planet next below in the order of the spheres, and so the lords of the revolutionary figures for succeeding years are reached in the same fashion as you proceed with the lords of the hours, 390. The Babylonians adopt the same method, but start with the lord of the hour of birth, instead of that of the ascendant, the second being next in order below.

The termini of the years are determined as follows; a sign being given to each year, the end of the second year is in the second sign at the same degree as the ascendant, and so with the third. When the signs and degrees of the yearly terms have been learnt, each year is divided into (thirteen) months of 28 days 1 hour 51 minutes and a sign to each given, so that the last month ends at the same degree as the radical ascendant has I Apparently Capella was regarded as one. Then Abu Sahl on leaving Khwarizm with Avicenna was overtaken by a sandstorm he forstold his death within two days because the direction of the degree of his Ascendant would then reach Capella (not Capricorn as in translation) 'va en quti'ast', Chahar Maqala p. 87. 2 At which time a theme of the heavens or revolutionary figure is constructed in the same way as the 'radical' figure 'asl' at the birth. 3 According to Hermes, De revol. nativ. II p.219 and Junot. p.1051 the dominus anni is the lord of the sign of the year (as distinct from the Salkhudā of worldyears), and to Wilson p.280 that planet which has most dignities and is strongest in a revolutionary figure.

والذيامغل فالشندالأ ابدكالعل إدباب السآعات فبلغ لسنتك المصليج الدور وأعل المعب لون السندالاول بسساعة المولود و والنابند للذي اسفل وموساجب الدور وامالت اأشار السينطة اجباله على ترسيد سندسك اسالمتي ف المندالا بدموالمرج المابد مزالطالع مملح سما مدوف المالي المرح الماك عذلك واذاع ف برح المنه للمنبي للمنبي وتجايد المرمند في المهاات السهوريل شنع عنرون بوماسا عدواجدي وخسور حقيف وركب فيتول ربح الانهااليه شلة دُجات النَّسل فِ إمنهَ أَلْت الآيام وجدلك لع مِبرَ وَ لَلْمُ سَاعِانِ وَسُولَ دفقد رسج وبجولالبد مجاتاته أالمهن ع ماماصل السبوع فانطمني الأبانهمنذ ولأده للولوحاذ االفياسابيع وحبنطت مرات الالفتاء عدن مي عالع الأسلح الذي المنع المغد سلجب الاسبوع تم احزمًا بف لم ماجعة عن سبعيد مصاحب الطالع ثم الذي فلم الخلاف واللبروج وللواميع الأسلم كالصاحب البوم مزلمبوع ذكك الموح ومنهم مزبير المعبر الالحواج بالوالل وج فاستأبوا لمعدوات منهام مذخ والسبر والانهاات

the same sign as the first, while the first month of the next year has the same sign as the year; similarly a sign is given to each of thirteen periods of 2 days 5 hours 50 minutes, the end of the last of these periods coinciding with the end of the monthly term.

The lord of the week is determined as follows: take the days elapsed since birth and divide by 7, note the product, and count on the same number of signs from the ascendant of the radix, the one you arrive at is the sign of the week. Then count the remainder which is less than 7 from the lord of the ascendant in the direction opposite to the succession of the signs, the sign you thus arrive at is the lord of the day of the week in question. There are astrologers who proceed in the direction of the signs, not contrary thereto.

523. Fama sa'ir al-ma'dudat ma'ha. We have referred previously to the Apheta and its direction in regard to

OTHER THINGS TO HE Here its meaning requires to a certain extent to be explained, because in nativities the aphesis

is not calculated by the equal degrees of the soliptic but by degrees of ascension. So the aphesis from the degree of the ascendant and the planet which is situated there is calculated by oblique ascension at the locality in question, one year for each degree. So also the aphesis of the planet at the occident angle will be according to its descension at the locality, because the setting of any sign at a locality is equal to the ascension of its nadir. However with regard to the M.C. and I.C. and any planet situated there, the aphesis is in all localities by ascension in the right sphere. So if a planet is not transiting one of these four degrees but I Cf. Junctinus p.1138 who is more accurate. The year is divided into 13 months of 28d 2h 17m 38m, 9m,14m, and the month into 30 days of 22h 28° 35m 16m 18mm;

2 Of the last complete week. 5 But probably not its real lord, 590.

4 This is Ptolemy's method of determining the length of life by the time taken by one planet to reach a certain point of the zodiac or the former position of another planet by the diurnal movement calculated in planetary hours (1/12th of its diurnal arc) acrd the dependence of oblique ascension. A year being assigned to each degree, 90 years would be the allowance if the points sere separated by the semi-diurnal arc, which converted into degrees of right ascension might be considerably more.

نسرى بطالع البلالمعل نجدسند والمادرجد الماديد والمعولي الني مصوريها بمعادب البلده محصالح مطرالطالح وماملوه مزال ووح الانعارب كأرج فالملابكون أوبه لمطلع ملبن والماك لعدين ونجى سط الساء ودلانغ والبيولي لبلغها فيستبر فجيج المسايئ عطالم الفاك المستعم فإن إست للسعوب المسيرة من الدرجات المنبع فحان فابر وندبن المسترس بالملح بمزمط الع المعذب بعلط وبوسا المستر ملمانسيرون للملاح لأندد لبلام ولابسيرون عن الاطلاح أوالمعانوا تعون حب العرد رجد الطالع على المنابر سواحات ملاجاً فان ا بكن فاذاع ف بالنول أو بقائ فن ادبر للوصيح الايم لمغ ملا المحكان المركب سلجب وتك الموسع موان مالمرطن عنادلا الفزاد اكان من بع المبلاج المعضع العالمير كان بهامنفساً بالمدود و انجابها سمار العسر مكل عوم المرود كالموالق الماء عليه المان ببالنسد من وبا المدواما المنزات فلك ليبر مزالكواكد منعك منهان بنيد المالابرازم علم والمبر المطلق للسنو المجالا لموالمعوالمعوص الوي ممان بالمالع وربة والمبالع خسد عاصلالمولد اوبغولم وأما الفردارات

a point between two angles, its ascension is compounded of those of the adjoining angles, and the calculation is a long and difficult business.

An arc of direction is always calculated from the haylaj, the significator of life, and never from any other point except in special cases. The Kadkhuda is the significator for the length of life. The degree of the ascendant is always made apheta whether there is a haylaj or not. When at an anniversary or any other time there is ascertained the point at which the direction of the haylaj has arrived, the lord of the term in question is called qusim or divisor, in Persian, jan-bakhtar, bringer of the fortunes of life. The name quaim comes from the circumstance that because life is situated between the radical place of the haylaj and the anaeretic point (qati'), the interval is divided into sections by the terms of the signs, and the lords of the terms become the lords of these sections. Any planet which is in the term of the apheta or directs its rays to it becomes associated with the administration of that section.

With regard to the ruling planets (mubtazzāt): in the various houses of the planets are numerous dignities and associated therewith presminence in the possession of these (ibtizāziyya). The mubtazz without qualification is that planet which at a nativity is predominant (mustauli) by virtue of numerous dignities at the ascendant or its lord, or at the five aphetic points in the radix (asl al-maulid) and similarly at its anniversaries. The firdaria we have already discussed both in relation to the years of the world and to nativities.

524. Fakaif dabt al-mawalid wa 'amalha. Procedure to be observed at a birth.

When the child is born you must take the altitude of the sun if it is PROCEDURE AT day, and work out the ascendant and its A NATIVITY degree. This is the horoscope of the nativity. If it is night, then the altitude of a wellknown fixed star which is on the rete of the astrolabe must be taken. Do not concern yourself with the planets which would only involve you in difficulties, nor with the moon, for working with it would be a mistake unless it is necessary. Further if by day or night the condition of the heavens is such by reason of cloud or the 1 The divisor is important for indicating the profession a native should enter. Junet. p.1070 from Albohazen Haly f. 95 and also to a certain extent 'alcelcadeny', 520. p. 255, see VI. 3.

شد عزما به ساما جدم ن العلاء المولادع فك عصبط الموالبلاق علها اذاخرج للنزين بطالع غسال تفاع المرالهادواسخلج الطالح بنجار على منحن طالح ذك المالود وانحان للفزار شاع احد المحواجب المابندالمعوفرالى يحون فيندو الاسطرلاب واستخرميت الطللع ولامستعرال يحواب المنعين فإن المعل بهامتعن ولكا الفر فاللعمل بالإسب الاازميج الخ كدمروده مانعا فعان عزاج ذالاز ماء مرضام اوغماومااشبكه فلبزالامغ فدالآ اعدومامنى زانهان عالليل واستخراج الطلاح منة على المدم ومعرف للاص على وجهز لما انعف م المعل والاعلام الولاده فبرسد لما وبضبع بنحان لساع انعللاً إو احداكة لأنساني بي انع بحالها الزمان وذكك وفك معلوم منطلوع المنزأوغيها وماأنسبه ذلك فإذاحات الولاده عرفت منالات مامض من التناعات والوجد الاخر اللانولام مضع الألدلومن الولاده وتراعكا المعفان مفلام المتاريف والمساء التمر الالفنلخ العضب الولاده مر المرمان و فيها فإن المعفر الدفواي إبدانين المعنول المعنول المرافع المرمان و فيها في الموادد من المرب في الموادد من المرب في الموادد من المرب في الموادد من المرب في الموادد من المرب في الموادد من المرب في الموادد من المرب في الموادد من المرب في المرب في المرب في المرب في المرب المرب في المرب

524 - 525

like, that you cannot get an observation, then only the determination of the time remains.

when you know how much of the day or night has passed, the ascendant can be calculated by the method we have described. The number of hours elapsed can be determined in two ways, the first by having a water-clock or other apparatus for measuring time going before the labour comes on, the clock having been set by sumrise or sunset or the like. When the birth takes place, the hour must be noted. The other way is to set the clock going at the time of birth if previous notice has not been received, and watch it until it is possible to take the altitude of the sun or a star. It is then possible by counting back the numbers of hours shown by the clock to get the exact time.

If there is no clock available, all that is meeessary is a cup of any material which will hold water: a hole must be made in the bottom of any dimension you please, and when the child is born you may proceed in one of two ways at choice, first by letting water into it and second by allowing water to escape from it. If you choose the former, place the oup on the surface of olean water, watch till it fills and sinks. Immediately take it out and empty it, and place on the water egain, and count the number of times it sinks until the sun or a star is visible. A mark must then be made at the point the water has reached to indicate the fraction to which it had sunk. Then take the altitude and note the time, and proceed as before till as many sinkings, together with the fraction marked, have taken place as noted. Then take the altitude again and determine the number of hours from the second time the cup was placed on the water, and count back the same amount from the time the sun became visible, which gives the time of birth.

If you choose the second way, place the sup on something like a trivet, and take a pitcher full of water, and fill the oup, when all the water has poured or trickled out, fill again and count the numbers of pitchers used till the sun or ster is visible, if there is water in the cup make a mark, and proceed as before with the determination of the time.

525. In lam yatahaqaq rasad al-waqt midhi yu'mal.

Should no observation have been made at the time of
birth, the determination of that
IF TIME NOT NOTED time is beyond the reach of selence,
USE OF 'ANIMODAR' for there is no way of knowing it,

فانت على مرزاح خال للافيها والاخراخ الموالمة منها فلينو لتنبيا عاللالسان ومخالى للاولى كالمسلات وعلمت في الما في المعالمة علوالع وعلم المعالمة والمعالمة والمعا وعدللغصات وإجفطها إلى انف تنبز لك المفراد العواسب فتسكبن واغ فصع غضه غامن الإنه عالمسك في العنصد وعَلِم الله على الما المعرف للأخبى الفيا واللاج أي فن المن عاعده منهم المنه عللا إوارسا الماني المنون مناع المنون المنون المنال المنال المنابع المعتمع في المنابع المن ادمكع المسرواء فالماض ابزخ كم الوفت مبزوف وضبك الأبنيع المراكمان فاذاع فت المتاعات فانجع بملها مزعن الوفت الذي لمسبا فك من المتراق الكهر منتولى فندالم لأولاح الماتنخ الابدعلى اللانب وملنه عود وعلاء المأولاة البنعان المودير عرد السب المان بنعظ المتراوال مَانْ الْبُنْدُمَا مَا فَعِلْ وَعِدِمُهَا مُا أَعْدَالِعِلْ عِلْمِ مَا مُا أَعْدَالِعِلْ عِلْمِ مَا مُانْعُ عُ

525-526

but astrologers by estimation and conjecture arrive at one little different in the sign of the ascendant, when an attentive observer employs cautious questioning. But it is necessary that there should be a certain degree for the ascendant, so they find a way, by using an indicator (namudar) which furnishes one which they assume to be the degree desired. The indicator most in use is that of Ptolemy, 2 which if it does not disclose the exact degree is the best substitute. The method in question is to ascertain as accurately as possible the time communicated to you, and determine the ascendant, the cardines and the places of the seven planets. Then find the degree of the conjunction of the moon which occurred before the birth if that was in the first half of the month or else the degree of opposition, if in the latter half. Then determine which planet has the most dignities and testimonies, then the one that comes next, and so proceed with the others till the last and note the result. The most important testimony is being in aspect to that degree, for when two planets are equal in the number of their dignities, the one in aspect whatever that may be, is preferable. Then examine which of the two most dignified planets is nearest to an angle by counting the number of their degrees. Thereafter transfer the angle to the degres of the nearest planet and derive the ascendant from that. If the degrees of the two planets are very distant from an angle, take the next planet in order of dignity, and examine the others till you find that which is nearest to an angle and proceed as before.

There are astrologers who do not attach any importance to the relative distance from or nearness to an angle but simply make the degree of the angle which is nearest to the most dignified planet3 the place (from which to derive the ascendant) without altering its degree to that of the planet and proceed as we have said.

526. Fakaif yu'raf masqat al-nutfah. The essential condition which makes it possible to discover the temperament, constitution and form

TIME OF CONCEPTION of a native as well as the conditions which take place in him

I The animodar of the Latin translations 'Rectification'; on the use (and futility) of namudars (numudhar) in relation to the Mativity. Chron. p. 290.

² Tetrabibles. Bk. III, cap. III.
3 P. has 'the same as the degree of the latter'.

الدنبخه علواطريبا بئوف بالمنوذنات بوصل الدنب مافلندفها علىها د دجد الطالع واحتماست على عونمو ذار بطلبي على مولونت انداب المنفضة درج الطالع فالدرج الوغزج هواول الدرجات بعردت الطالع الاستدلال طنع هذا المنودار انتعبن مقوله فت الذي عبرب الخبرونهم الطالع واومان علب وموافع المسكواجب المسبعيدة مفصلج والاجها المنقدم للولان بالنصف الاول خالهني وبطلك اعترال والحب مزاعه وشهان بندتم الذي تبلي فها واج بعيداً خرّ وبجفطها وبجع لنطن الحالج و مافضالهم أدات المح بعامة وم احوالمصوحبين منى خياجا في المطوط أو سطوالح دعات المفقم من عزاع الجلزو الحلافي ما حدوا فرب ومَوْسَجَامُد اوْفَ بجع لحالك لامساوي الأبح لدزجانه ومستخرج الطالع منه فإنكاث درُ الله بعيد حاعزة رَّجان الاوماد كلها محمد اخذ العيم أ_الدي بلوع ب المأعدوا عبربدأبضا ما ذكراحة بحلافة ومزالمغين مطخنة هذاالباب الفرب المسكف فيحع إح ذجان الوكولاف المالي اع مسكاما لا الماما مل دنجاندوالج صلون على اعتماه فكبف يغرف سفط المحف هوبرواللانمأن فالبرف منه مزاجده بنبت وطبت وإجوالم وهوجنبر

526

during life within the mother's womb is the ascertainment of the time of conception. Authorities insist of use being made of this. It is possible to learn from the mother or the father if they agree the beginning of the phenomena of pregnancy, the direction of which they have month by month or week by week ascribed to Saturn

or Jupiter and so down through the spheres.

The procedure adopted by astrologers is founded on two principles either of which is satisfactory if properly executed: 1/ it is assumed that the degree of the ascendant at birth is the same as the degree at which the moon stood at the time of conception, and 2/ conversely, that the degree of the ascendant at the time of conception is the same as that in which the moon stood at the time of birth. In the first place it is desirable to ascertain from the mother whether it is the 7th, 8th, 9th or 10th month of pregnancy, having done so look at the ascendant and the configuration of the heavens at the time which has been approximately arrived at; if the moon is at the degree of the ascendant, give to the ascendant of conception the same degree. Then the child has completed so many full revolutions of the moon before birth, either 7 (191 days 6 hours), 8 (218 days 13 hours) - here be careful not to say that an 8 months child is not viable - 9 (245 days 21 hours) or 10 (273 days 5 hours).

If the moon is not at the degree of the ascendant, whether above or below the earth, if above, look how many degrees separate them, and take a day for every 130 ll; and for every degree 1 hour and 5/6, and every minute of a degree 1 5/6 minutes of time, and subtract the result in days hours and minutes from the days of that month of which you have been informed. If the moon is below the earth, take the distance from the ascendant to the moon, and proceed in the same way, but add the result to the days of the month in question. So the greater or less number which you

I The mean tropical movement of the moon in a day.

وندأم وللفملا باستعاله وليعز مزليا للأبداو الام انعاما وافنزعليه وجعلوامبداالمذبر فالملك فللخاخ المشترى وإغراف الاملاكين شهراسها ومن اسبوعا والمالا بحبيتهلوه المغيز فهيز علاه لمن تراد فبز مني على المل وأجره اان وجدالطالع للملاد تحون وضع العروف الرتيع والمخزموخالعذاعي إنطالع المسقط معوضيع الغرو للبلاد فإزارد تعابسنعلو نرفع ف فرالام أولاه لمسبعداولمان اومنعداوعن منه زالمل انصان الفروغ الطالع الاى منعت بالنعبز فحد تجدالطالع فاحعاج دحد الطالع درحدالفي وللولود فعاسنوفي إدوارا نأمد للفر وولدان كانصعداسهم فعابد ولحدون عبروما ومنت ساعات وإر كانكاملهم فؤمان فاسعروما ولمنعزب اعده لاعلك فغاللوسج اللولوح لنابراسة كاببروانكان ليتجدا سرفع ماسنو حسروا معزيوماً وعزر ساعدون عان لعنره المفرنع ما مزولله وسيعبروما وحرساعات و راسي الغرب و درجه الطالع فهواما فوظ لانص والمانج بمامانكان وظلان ضالانعات الم مزد وموالفره الدرج الطالع واجع لظ علنع شرد دمع واجدي عشره دفقه يوما واجد خولك تاعد ومسكولي الرسلعة وللحقمة مزحهم وقيقد مرسم اعد وتمساس فااجتمع معلم والساعات فانفسها مزالا بالذخر عرفاهام النزادي

526-528

arrive at is the time spent by the infant in the womb. Count back therefore from the time of birth the number of days and hours, the result is the time of conception. Thereafter ascertain the position of the moon, and when you know its degree make this the degree of the ascendant, for this is approximately accurate from the data available.

527. Fama al-qism al-rabir. For horary questions of the 4th order, the ascendant of the beginning of the matter in hand must be ascertained, whether that be determined THE FOURTH DIVISION already as in the case of a nativity, and therefore known, or whether a time has to be selected or chosen as a starting point. The purpose of this section is to select a suitable time for carrying out some business so as to insure the presence of fortunes and the absence of infortunes, just as we protect ourselves on the surface of the earth from the rays of the sun, by selecting northern aspects, and shady spots and using moistened punkahs and ice-houses.1 In this matter pay no attention to the silly talk in which the Hashwiyites persist and their denial of what we have accepted in this matter of 'elections'

The essence of this section is so to adjust the cardines that the malefies are as distant as possible both in themselves and their rays, while they are to be kept illuminated by the benefics and their light, especially the ascendant and its lord, also the moon and the lord of its house, and the significator of the business which is the subject of the inquiry. Also see to the moon and the lord of the ascendant and the significator that they are in aspect to each other, and place them in such a position that they all cast an aspect to the ascendant lest the election should turn out to have bad effects. This is a long and wide field of enquiry into which it is impossible now to penetrate further

further.

528. Fame al-qism al-khëmis wa mabedi'hu. Rules
for questions of the fifth order.

In view of

THE FIFTH DIVISION AND ITS PRINCIPLES the fact that I al-khuydsh al-mablulah wa'l thaluj al-madfunaha. Khaish hai tar va yakhha zīr-i zamīn aganda, ? P. has 'who are always crying out "Would that a miracle could happen to us that this calamity should be frustrated and that we should be made happy".

الخال عللواد ماستضرو اللطلح لوغنيذ م مطرو الدمز الطالع مصابح ووالفر والكراب الاي المرف عيده ملك لما المرام الدالم المؤلب عند هي فلي المذالما بع مساجدومللنيوس فرالبن الذي تبيز الموال صاحبه والصحيب المس بهافنزومام زمني الأومو في حلد البوت الانجه و مُعرف بفل انعل في الراف بدا مِنْ عَبْدِ مِعْنَامُ وَاسْمُ الذي مُرَاكِ الله عَالِلسَالُهُ للبِيكَارْبِ مِنْ اللَّهِ عَالِلسَّالُهُ للبِيكَارْبِ مِنْ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَالِلسَّالُهُ للبِيكَارْبِ مِنْ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَالِلسَّالُهُ للبِيكَارْبِ مِنْ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَالِلسَّالُهُ للبِيكَارْبِ مِنْ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَالِلسَّالُهُ للبِّيكَارُبُ مِنْ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللّلِي اللَّهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ عَلَّالِمُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهُ اللَّهُ اللّهُ الللّهُ اللّهُ الل بعذاللاتم وشموس لمد عليد مرزم عبو والمنج زان برو ما عرى أراح استراب الطلع لماعق النوال ثم سِلم ن ما المط سِطر عند مزالع لا اعزالَمُ المُ الدُوال مِه ومهر ر وبدفها علالوله فاخده استماج الغز للانع الماضها والمكحشو باللغ زالورب للمؤيميات فتم مفرفول كبل المرون باز بليث علصبن ملنا والإنجلوا وعمد عندنك غ بسلها جنيده لااعرف بعدا سنجت ام الرماعد لمذا وجهاسو كالسنداد لطور منادلجهام واجلد الدنب عجالت المنعاف لده ما أمرى بدع المعنوصير موملجني فبله مبضد اؤنخى الهوال ومااحتر افتساح المخرف فيعلم لاكال

528-530

the nativities of querents regarding various contingencies are for the most part unknown, astrologers deal with the statement of the querent as a starting point just as if it were a nativity. The ascendant of the time is taken and investigated, as well as its lord and the moon and that planet which the moon is leaving. These are used as significators for the querent, and as the matters on which guidance is sought belong for the most part to the 7th house and its lord, or to such other house in which the question is comprised, 461, and its lord, also to that planet with which the moon is about to conjoin, there is no reason why with a little care and attention an answer should not be found somewhere among the twelve houses. This division is known as that of the questions.

529. Fama al-mas'alah al-bikariyyah. In case of an idlel request or one for a general prognostic the custom

IDLE AND GENERAL follow the same procedure as in other questions, namely to ascertain the ascendant of the time of the query.

They then examine the aspects as they would at a nativity and make conclusions i.e. as to the remaining period of life and the conditions therein.

There are however astrologers who increase the range of horoscope inspection by claiming to elicit the past life of the querent. Hashwiyite astrologers, inclined to falsification, when such a question is asked bid their clients return and sleep on the matter for three nights and concentrate their attention on it during the day, and then question them. After satisfying myself as to their writings I know of no method of dealing with them except insisting on exposing their vicious decrees and their leading the querent into or me by the bad advice given him.

530. Fama al-khabi' wa'l-damir. Khabi' refers to hidden objects (concealed in the hand) and damair to

THOUGHT READING querent. What greater ignominy is likely to be the part of Astrologers

than that resulting from hasty dealing with such

l bikari is a Persian word. 2 Which he appears to have done in his "Kitab al-talling" ald sina at al-tamwih".

3 For instances of successful thought-reading of the tales of Al-Kindi and Al-BIruni in the Chahar Maqala p.64, from which the meaning of demir may be gathered. That given in Prol. I. 233 'pensées secrètes du destin' is too restricted.

اجتروا بعروان كالانم تخت الأض فذالارجان المى مرحة عدالطالع الالق وافعلها ماعضا فالبغيع معكم كلابام والساعات فردهاع اللابام المي فرحونا عامع الشغرالذب اخبروابه فلجضل بعدالرمان والنفسان فيومست ذكك لمولو وجنا فانجع بدمر وفسالولاده الى راخي بنهالي ف مستط النطف درسي مونيع العن م الجول درجات الطابع للمولد كدرجات الغروفلا يعرسه عشب ماحسبام اصولهم م فاالفسر الرابع ومباحب مولموالع الأبياانية واانعف معرفت انفاف الموالداء المحتر لماالوف وجفظفت والفعد بنهاان بزاد فمساعوا وبنقس عث احسها عف إنالسنز في الصف عجب أذما المالرالسَّالِيَّ الطلال والميور الماوله والملوج المدووه ولا بليف في اللاب الله الله الله عروم بم الجنب بدابطالم اغن مراكح خبار ومداد الامر فبرعل سلاح الاؤماد واجابها عزالموروا بوارها وننوره ابالمبود وخاصد الطاليرمنها دربه والغي وصاحب بندوالابل على الذي متعالم ومراعاة ارتباع الغروم الطالع ودليل العمل منجاما طرز اللطالع المناز الاخرار للفي والأفياد ومومران العبل questions and in comparison how numerous are the lucky hits of Magicians who keep up a patter while they are on the look-out for tell-tale indications and actions:

Now we have arrived at a point of the science of the stars which I have regarded as sufficing for the beginner; any one who exceeds the limits set out above exposes himself and the science to derision and scorn, for such are ignorant of the further relations of the art and especially of those which have been ascertained with certainty.

Conclusion of the Book of Instruction on the Elements of the Science of Astrology Composed by Abu al-Ralhan Muhammad b. Ahmad al-Biruni. May the Mercy of God be upon him. Abundant Mercy. And His blessings on Muhammad, his descendants the pure in heart.

All glory be to God first and last.

As the Colophon has no date, the following from the first fly-leaf of the MS are added.

By the accident of time this book came into the possession of the poor dependent on Allah the all-sufficient Auhad b. As ad b. Mihrla'r al-Mustauff. May the Most High God improve his circumstances, and favour the realisation of his hopes in this world and the next. May he cause him to select aright the winning arrow from the quiver. In the month of Allah, Rajab the Deaf, 879 AH. (Jan. 1436 A.D.)

He, the Guide. This book came into the pessession of the poor slave in need of the Mercy of our Lord the Creator "Ala b. Al-Hunain b. "Ala al-SahqI. May God overlook his sins by Kuhammad and his family and his generous associates. In she year 889 AH. (1485 A.D.) Praise be to God first and last and may He bless our Lord and prophet Muhammad, the best of mortals, and all prophets and saints.

Well endowed is he who with sufficient humility unites intellect and Soul For these two form a fortunate star-conjunction which has an enduring influence with the people.

عَنْ لَا مَلَ الْمُعْدِينِهُا وَاقَدُ الْمُنْ تَعَانُ وَالْمُ الْمُعْدِينَ الْمُلْكُونَةُ الْمُعْدِينَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدِينَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدِينَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَا الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَا الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَا الْمُعْدُونَا الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَا الْمُعْمُونَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْدُونَ الْمُعْمُونَ الْمُعْمُ الْمُعْدُونَا ا

القرائعة الماج المنافع الماج المنافع ا

INDEX

(Prepared by Mrs. F.G. Gardner)

```
Abjad 41-3
Algebra 37-40
Aliquot parts 11
Al-muten 308
Altitude 132-6; by astrolabe 199-203
Amplitude 129
Angles 3-4; zodiacal 149-50
Anniversary 150
Anomaly (mean and true) 94-6
Apogee of planets 64, 104; of sun 88; epicycles
   93-109.
Apparition, stars of perpetual 131-2 Aros 4; angles in 10; similar 22
Aristotle on celestial spheres 45
Arithmetic 23-37
Ascendant 149, 200-3
Ascending and descending 110
Astrolabe 194-7; uses of 197-209
Astrology 210; zodincal 210-73; planetary 231-62;
   signs and plonets 262-8; judicial divisions 317-33
Astronomy 43-210
Autumn 185
Auzīn 140
Avicenna on astrology 210 n
Ayana 229
Azimuth 134
Bargutam 266
Beardless man
               181
Bhukti 105
Brahmanda (ninth sphere) 44
Calendars 186-91
Cardinal points 49-50
Cazimi 296
Chameleon 47
Chronocratora 239, 255
Chronology 161-73
Circle 4, 5, 10, 11, 20-2; Indian 49, 56-8
Cities in olimates 143-5
Climates 138-45
```

```
Co-ascensions 145-7
Combust of planets 64; way 317
Complements of arc and sine 5; of parallelograms 9
Cones 18-19; sections 19
Conjunctions of moon 64-5; 150-2; of planets 151-2;
   of sun and moon 152-3; completion of 311
Constellations, zodiacal 69-70; northern and southern
   72-6; names of stars in 77-8
Creation, seasons of 182
Cube 17: numerical 28
Cupola of earth
               140
Cycles 171-2
Cylinders 18 '
Dakshayana 229
Danger in heavens
                 272
Dates 171, 183-4
Dawn and twilight 51-3
Day, cause of 49; 51-3; world days 113-4; length
   130, 138; arc 121; of week (Hindu) 165; of
   month (Persian) 170; special 183-6; lapse of,
   by astrolabe 201-4
Decanates of signs
Decimal notation 36
Declination parallels 56, 59-60
Deferent of epicyole 92
Degrees of circle 57; 'dead'
                              304
Depression (altitude) 132
Divisions of earth 141-2
Earth 45-6; size 118-20; land under sea 120-5;
   latitude and longitude 126-8; climates and
   divisions 138-42; cities 143-5
Eclipses 154-60
Reliptic 55; equinoctial points 56-7; size 118
Elements, the four 119
Epicycle 61, 92-4
Equant of epicycle 93
Equations 38-40
Equator 124-5
Equinox 56; equinoctial circle 55
Bras 172-4
Erect posture 125
Ether 43
Fasts and feasts 174-86; Jewish 175-6; Christian 177-9;
```

Persian 180-2; Greek 183; Soghdian 184; Magian 185

```
Firdaria 239, 255
Figure 4
Fortune, increase and decrease 271; Part of and
   horary indications 279-96
Fractions 33-5
Golaxy 87
Geometry 1-25
Ghari 55
Onomon 9; shadows of 183
Ralb 308
Hayyiz 308
Heavens 45
Horary questions 276-93
Horizon 48
Hours 53-5
Houses of zodiacal belt 149, 275-95
Injurious places in heavens 272-4
Intercalation 164
Islands 122-6, 143
Kalpa 115
Lakes 123-4
Land, disposition of 120-6
Lanka 140
Letitude, celestial parallels 56; stellar 59;
   planetary 60, 102-3; lunar 101; terrestrial 126-8
Letters (as numerals) 40-3
Line 3
Liquorioe 47
Longitude 126-8
Lord of year 322
Lots (in nativities) 282-95
Map (world) 124
Mercury, special movement 98-9
Meridian 49; shadow and altitude 135
Meru (Miru) 140
Mile, Arabio 119 n
Milky way 87
Months 161; 165-70
Moon, sphere 44-5; 64-8; 81-6; 96-7; 101; 152-7;
   160, 233; in nativities 240-58; 316
Moroccan algebra 41
```

```
Movements 47-8; of sun 69; of planets 191
Muhūrta 55
Nativities, figure of heaven 190; terms 265-74;
   indications 276-95; principles of divisions 322-4;
   procedure 327-30
Nebulae 69
Night, see Day
Numbers 24-57
Numerals, Arabic and Moroccan 40-2
Nuvänshaka 266
Oblong 7
Occultation 151-8
One (unity) 25-4
Orbita see sun, moon, plenets, stars 91, 101-7
Orientality and occidentality 296-9
Parallaxia 158
Parallel lines 3-9; of declination and latitude 56
Parcoliptio 88
Perigee of planets 64, 137; of sun 88-9
Permutation 18
Planets, names 60; spheres and movements 44-8;
   60-4; orbits 91-2; rates 94; positions 96-7,
   99; movements 108-14; size 115-9; Conjunctions 150-2; positions 192, 804; nature 251-9;
   indications 240-54; orbs and years 255;
   domiciles 256-9; espects 260-1; related to
   signs 262-8; to sun 296-308; application and
   separation 303-4; dignities 506-17
Point 5; cardinal 49
Poles of sphere 20, 55
Position see planets, stars, sun
Prayer time 52 n 4, 137
Prime vertical T36
Prism 18
Proportions 11-4
Quadrilateral figures 7
 Ratios 11, 14, 15, 17
Rising and setting of stars 204
 Sandhi 52
Sankalita 29, 31
 Scorpions 182
```

```
Secent 25
Seas 121-4
Shadow 49-50; 153, 157, 199
Siddhanta 113
Signs see Zodiao
31ne 4, 5
Solid 2; regular 20
Solatice 56-8
Space 2
Spheres 19-22; celestial 45-5
Square 7; power 17; numbers 52
Stars 46-8; 58-9; 68-9; 75-86; 115-8; 147-50
Steel-yard 17
Sun 44: 47-9; 88-91; 157-60; 199; 296-8; 516
Surd 32
Surface 2-3
Tangent 10
Thaneshwar (TänIshar) 140
Thought reading 332-3
Towns, latitude and longitude 126
Transit, in conjunctions 151-2
Trapesium
```

Thaneshwar (TänIshar) 140
Thought reading 332-3
Towns, latitude and longitude 126
Transit, in conjunctions 151-2
Trapezium 7
Trapidation of orbits 101
Triangle 5-6; 16
Trigonometry, spherical 23 n
Triplicities 230, 259
TrIshānash 266
Twilight 51-5

Ujjain 140 Unity 23-4

Value of # 57 Vetoh 47

Winds 49

Years 162-4; 171; new year 180

Zodiac, symbols 43; signs 58; constellations 69; succession 87-8; houses 149; calendars 187; nature 210; compass and winds 216; indications 217-24; mutual relations of signs 225-8; ascending and descending halves 229-32; relation to planets 256-8; degrees 269-70; fortune 271; indications in houses 275-95; part of fortune 279-82